

THE
MODERN PART
OF AN
Universal History,
FROM THE
Earliest ACCOUNT of TIME.

Compiled from
ORIGINAL WRITERS.

By the AUTHORS of the ANTIENT PART.

VOL. XXIX.



L O N D O N :

Printed for S. RICHARDSON, T. OSBORNE, C. HITCH,
A. MELLAR, JOHN RIVINGTON, S. CROWDER,
B. LAW, and Co. T. LONGMAN, and C. WARE.

M.DCC.LXI.

Modern History :

BEING A

CONTINUATION

OF THE

Universal History.

History of the German Empire.

CHAP. I.

*Containing the History of Germany, from the Election
of Conrad, to the Succession of Otho.*

INTRODUCTION.

WE have, in the Antient History, traced the gradual decline of the Western empire, which, after having been weakened by divisions and intestine broils, was deluged by an inundation of fierce and warlike nations, who have likewise been described under the names of *Allemands, Gepidæ, Franks, Suevi, Heruli, Burgundy, &c.* We have seen how *Odoacer*, king of the *Heruli*, made such a successful expedition into *Italy*, that the emperor *Augustulus*, being in no condition to make head against him, was obliged to submit, and his resignation put an end to the empire in the West. The *Heruli* were soon expelled by the *Ostrogoths*, and these, in their turn, subdued by *Justinian*, who re-visited this province to the

Eastern empire; but the popes found means to obtain the temporal, as well as spiritual, jurisdiction over a considerable part of it, while the rest was erected into a kingdom by the *Lombards*, who were very troublesome neighbours to the pontiffs, and at length besieged *Adrian I.* in his capital. In this emergency he had recourse to *Charlemagne*, who came to his relief with a powerful army, defeated *Desiderius*, and caused himself to be crowned king of *Lombardy*. The pope, in order to express his gratitude to that victorious monarch, and secure the protection of such a powerful ally, did, with the consent of the *Roman* people, declare him emperor, and dignified his dominions with the appellation of the new Western empire, after he had agreed that the pontiffs should reside in *Rome*, while he himself should choose his residence on the other side of the *Alps*, where he might be nearer the center of his territories.

THUS *Germany* became the seat of the Western empire; the history of which it is now our purpose to display: but, before we proceed to a detail of the events which compose it, the reader will, doubtless, be pleased to find some general account of this great body, in a summary sketch of that constitution by which it subsists; that, from such previous information, he may conceive a distinct idea of the politics which actuated particular states, as well as the motives that influenced the resolutions and conduct of the community.

*The limits
of Ger-
many;*

GERMANY is at present bounded on north by the *Baltic* sea, *Denmark*, and the *German* ocean; on the south by *Italy* and the *Swiss*; on the east by *Prussia*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*; and on the west by the *Low Countries*, *Lorraine*, and *Franche Comté*; so that it comprehends the *Palatinate*, *Cologne*, *Triers* and *Liege*, which formerly belonged to the *Gauls*, and is dismembered of *Friezland*, *Groningen*, and *Overyssel*, which are now incorporated with the *Low Countries*.

SINCE the reign of *Charlemagne*, this country is divided into *High* and *Low Germany*: the first, towards the south, comprehending the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Barvaria*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Austria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, *Tyrol*, the *Swiss*, and the *Grisons*; while the provinces of *Lower Germany* towards the north consist of the *Low Country* of the *Rhine*, *Triers*, *Cologne*, *Mentz*, *Westphalia*, *Hesse*, *Brunswic*, *Misnia*, *Saxonia*, *High Saxony* upon the *Elbe*, *Low Saxony* upon the *Elbe*, *Mecklenburg*, *Lauenburg*, *Brandenburg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Pomerania*.

*its divi-
sion;*

GERMANY is likewise distinguished by those countries that border upon the *Rhine*, the *Danube*, the *Oder*, the *Elbe*, and the *Weser*; and, thirdly, it is divided into certain generalities

ties or large provinces, called circles, comprehending the princes, prelates, counts, and cities, which, on account of their nearness to each other, may conveniently assemble about their common affairs. Under this appellation the members of the empire were divided by *Maximilian I.* into six parts, namely, *Franconia*, *Bavaria*, *Suabia*, the circle of the *Rhine*, *Westphalia*, and *Lower Saxony*: he afterwards added those of *Austria*, *Burgundy*, the *Lower Rhine*, and *High Saxony*; so that the number was augmented to ten, and confirmed in the reign of *Charles V.*

EACH circle is provided with directors and a colonel; the first being invested with the power of convoking the general assembly of the states belonging to the circle, and of regulating its public affairs, while the colonel is intrusted with the command of the soldiers, and the care of the artillery and munitions of war.

As all the members must contribute for the occasions of the empire, each circle is taxed for the support of the troops and other public necessities, at the rate of so many horse and foot, or a certain monthly sum, distinguished by the name of *Roman months*; an appellation derived from the first use of that tax, which was levied for the support of 20,000 foot and 4000 horse, to accompany the emperor in his journey to *Rome*; and those who could not furnish soldiers, paid a monthly equivalent in money.

THE circle of *Austria*, of which the emperor, as archduke, is director, comprehends all the provinces depending upon the empire, which are possessed by the house of *Austria*; for the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, together with several other states, which they possess independent of the empire, are not comprised in this circle.

THE circle of *Bavaria*, so called, because that duchy constitutes the principal part of it, includes several other independent states; the elector, as duke of *Bavaria*, and the archbishop of *Salzburg*, being the directors.

THE circle of *Suabia*, which, more than any other, abounds with imperial towns, has for directors the bishop of *Constance* and the duke of *Wirtemberg*.

THOSE of the circle of *Franconia*, denominated from the province of that name, are the bishop of *Bamberg* and the margrave of *Bayreuth*, or *Culmbach*, who possesses the burgraviate of *Nuremberg*.

THE circle of *Upper Saxony* is under the sole directorship of the elector; but as for that of *Low Saxony*, which is one of the most considerable circles in *Germany*, the king of *Sweden*, as duke of *Bremen*, and the elector of *Brandenburg*,

as duke of *Magdeburg*, are alternately con-directors with the eldest of the dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*.

THE circle of *Westphalia* produces such plenty of men and horse fit for service, that, in time of war, the states of this province choose to furnish their proportion rather in those, than in money: their directors being the elector of *Brandenburg* and duke of *Neuburg*, with the bishop of *Münster* (A).

THE circle of the *Lower Rhine*, which is also called the circle of the four electors, because it includes the three ecclesiastic electors, and the *Palatinate* situated upon the *Rhine*, has for directors the electors of *Mentz* and *Palatine*; while those of the *Higher* or *Upper Rhine* are the bishop of *Worms* and elector *Palatine*, as having succeeded to the duchy of *Simmeren*, tho' the first pretends to be sole director.

As for the circle of *Burgundy*, which takes its name from that province, now dismembered from the empire, and belonging to the king of *France*, it was formerly under the directorship and sovereignty of the king of *Spain*, and comprehended not only *High Burgundy*, or *Franch Compté*, but likewise the seventeen provinces of the *Low Countries*, which in the reign of *Charles V.* were received as members of the empire, independent indeed of the imperial chamber with respect to justice, but subject to pay as much as is levied from two electors, in case of a war against the *Turks*: however, this contribution was never raised; and is now intirely omitted in the rolls of the contingencies of the empire. Exclusive of this circle, therefore, the contributions for a *Roman* month, paid by all the others, amount to 2419 horsemen, and 12,400 foot soldiers; or, in money, to 75,840 florins; and this tax is augmented double, triple, and quadruple, according to the number of troops to be raised, but always in proportion to the established rates in the book of matriculation.

and that
of the
states.

THE empire of *Germany* is a body, of which the emperor is the head, and the states are the members. These states are divided into three classes, namely, the college of electors, the college of ecclesiastic and secular princes, and that of the imperial towns, which are admitted into the diets or general assemblies.

(A) The elector and duke are directors of this circle, as being possessed of the duchies of *Juliers*, *Cleves*, and *Beyne*, the counties of *La Mark* and *Ravensberg*, together with the lordship of *Ravensberg*.

CHARLEMAGNE, and his successors, possessed the empire by hereditary right; but that race being extinct, the princes assembled, elected *Conrad*, and afterwards *Henry the Fowler*, who was succeeded by *Otho*, surnamed *the Great*, after whom the emperors enjoyed their dignities by succession, though the consent of the people was necessary, touching the capacity of him upon whom the empire devolved. This custom continued till the reign of *Henry IV.* who gave occasion to the constitution which regulates the elections of the emperors, and by virtue of which he himself was afterwards deposed. The confusion which necessarily attended the election, on account of the great number of princes, states, and sovereigns, who had a right to vote, induced them to transfer that power to seven chiefs, whom they denominated electors, and who were afterwards confirmed as such in the reign of *Charles IV.* by an ordonnance called a *golden bull*, which regulates the form of the election, and the power of those electors, which is now hereditarily annexed to certain states of the empire.

The nature of the election of the emperor.

BEFORE *Charlemagne*, and a long time after his reign, the empire was altogether monarchical, through the whole extent of its dominions, both in *Germany* and *Italy*; but since *Frederic II.* the electors and princes have insensibly acquired certain rights, to which they did not formerly pretend; so that the government is become monarchical, and partly aristocratical; for there are certain prerogatives which the emperor enjoys by his sole power and imperial authority; while in other affairs he must have recourse to the voice, and solicit the consent, of the princes and electors, and even of all the states of the empire, in consequence of a solemn capitulation which he signs at his election. He assumes all the marks of the antient emperors of the West, with the titles of *semper Augustus*, *Cæsar*, and *sacred majesty*. His crown is closed above and surmounted with a globe, which is the symbol of universal monarchy, and the Christian princes allow him the first rank, on account of his dignity: he convokes and dismisses the diets and other imperial assemblies, having a right to authorize their resolutions, which are afterwards published and executed in his name: he confirms the alliances and treaties which have been made by their predecessors for the welfare of the empire: he alone enjoys the benefit of what is called the first prayers, that is, the right of filling up the first canonship, or any other dignity, in the cathedral and collegiate churches, as well as in the abbeys, of the empire, that shall be vacant after his coronation: he creates and confers all the other secular dignities, such as

His dignity and prerogatives.

king, prince, archduke, duke, marquis, landgrave, count, and baron. To him alone belongs the power of bestowing the great fiefs of the empire, the investiture of which he gives to the ecclesiastical princes by the sceptre, and to the secular by the standard or sword: he receives the oath of allegiance from the electors, princes, and all the members of the empire; and all the dominions which devolve to the empire, by forfeiture or otherwise, are intirely at his disposal: he grants pardons and remissions, institutes or confirms universities and academies, and possesses other prerogatives, which are marks of sovereignty. But he is obliged to consult the electors, before he can alienate or mortgage the effects of the empire, grant the privilege of coining money, or confiscate the estates of rebels. The general consent of all the estates is necessary in regulating the affairs of religion, in making or annulling laws, fixing the value of money, proclaiming war within or without the empire, imposing subsidies or general contributions, raising troops, building new fortresses, or putting garrisons in the old, and in making treaties and alliances. Nevertheless, if the affair is pressing, no more than the consent of the electors is required; and in truces or cessation of arms, the authority of the emperor is sufficient. To these restrictions he subjects himself by a capitulation made at his election, which is a contract between him and the electors and princes introduced since the reign of *Charles V.* before which time, the ordinary constitutions of the empire served in lieu of this capitulation. In the absence of the emperor, the sovereign power devolves to the king of the *Romans*, as perpetual vicar of the empire; but in default of the emperor and king of the *Romans*, the authority is transferred to the two vicars of the empire in *Germany*, namely, the elector of *Bavaria*, and palatine of the *Rhine* (for the right is contested), and the elector of *Saxony*, who each, in his own extent of principality, exercise the same functions in all things, except the grand fiefs, called the fiefs of the sceptre and the sword, which can be bestowed by none but the emperor.

His restrictions;

his substitutes.

Revenue. The domain possessed as emperor, and the revenues which he draws from the empire for the support of his imperial dignity, have been formerly very considerable; but at present are so much reduced, as to be altogether insufficient to maintain the posts of the empire; so far, as they from being able to support his dignity, or contribute to the subsistence of his troops. There is not one town belonging to him as emperor; and in case the *Germans* should elect a prince destitute of hereditary dominions, the city of *Bamberg* would

would be assigned to him as the place of his habitation, and the bishop in that case be obliged to retire to *Villac*. The emperor's revenue consists in aids, which are called *Roman months*, paid by the states and members of the empire, in some other subsidies from the imperial towns, which amount to about 40,000 livres a year, in taxes of the chancery, and exactions from the *Jews*, distinguished by the name of *oblation money*.

BESIDES the *Aulic* council, which shall afterwards be mentioned, there are three others established for dispatching the affairs of the empire. The first is the council of state, composed of a president and four and twenty counsellors, who are princes or counts of the empire, and other considerable noblemen, and ten secretaries for expediting letters and decrees. The second is that of the finances, composed of two presidents, one director, with fourteen assessors, and six secretaries. The third is the imperial council of war, consisting of two presidents, who are generals, and seven counsellors, who are camp-marshals, major-generals, and colonels, with an auditor-general, registers, and secretaries. The title of king of the *Romans*, as it is at present understood, was altogether unknown in the time of the first emperors, who were actually sovereign princes of the city of *Rome*. *Charlemagne* having destined the succession of the empire to his eldest son, bestowed upon him the quality of king of *Italy*, a title which *Lewis the Debonair* and *Lotharius I.* likewise conferred upon their presumptive heirs; an appellation equivalent to that of *Cæsar* among the antient emperors, and to that of king of the *Romans* in its present signification. This last title began to be in use about the tenth century, when it was supposed that the pope had the sole right of creating the emperor. Accordingly many emperors contented themselves with this appellation, until they were actually crowned at *Rome*; and in this sense we must understand the second chapter of the golden bull, which, speaking of the election of a king of the *Romans*, mentions him only as a successor in the empire, who could not be qualified as emperor till after his coronation by the pope.

AT present, the king of the *Romans* is he who is chosen by the princes electors, during the emperor's life, to conduct the affairs of *Germany* in the emperor's absence, as vicar-general of the empire, and to succeed him on the imperial throne at his death, without any other election or confirmation. This is an expedient used by the emperor, when he wants to see the succession secured during his own life, or is no longer in a condition to manage the reins of government.

ment. The king of the *Romans* is not crowned with an imperial, but with an open crown; nor does he receive the oath of allegiance, till after the death of the emperor; nor is he honoured with the epithet of *semper Augustus*; nor does he bear the spread eagle with two heads; nor does he exercise any power in the empire while the emperor is there in person, but, in his absence, commands by virtue of his dignity.

The electoral college.

WE have already observed that there are three colleges in the empire, a distinction which was established in the diet of *Frankfort* in the year 1580. Of these, the chief is the electoral, which originally consisted of seven electors; an eighth was afterwards added; and it is at present composed of nine, in each of whom are united the two qualities of prince of the empire and elector. As the first, he is sovereign in the extent of his own dominions, with certain restrictions, which render him dependent upon the emperor and empire. As elector, he has a right to elect the emperor and king of the *Romans*, and precedes all other princes of the empire, not excepting cardinals and kings. This college comprehends three archbishops and five secular princes; the first are those of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologn*, who, according to the golden bull, are great chancellors of the empire; the secular princes are, the king of *Bohemia*, great cup-bearer; the duke of *Bavaria*, great master of the palace; the duke of *Saxony*, great marshal; the margrave of *Brandenburg*, great chamberlain; and the count palatine of the *Rhine*, high treasurer. The number of electors was augmented by the emperor *Leopold*, who erected the house of *Brunswick* into a ninth electorate, under the title of elector of *Hanover*, on pretence of giving satisfaction to the protestants, who complained that their authority was diminished, by the palatine electorate's passing into a catholick branch of that family. The secular electors have both an active and a passive voice, each having a right to chuse and to be chosen emperor; whereas the ecclesiastic electors can only chuse without having any right to be chosen. The three archbishops must have attained the age of thirty years, before they can obtain that dignity; but the secular elector is at age at eighteen. During his minority, his nearest relation is appointed as his tutor or administrator, and exercises the electoral dignity, maintaining the rank, and wearing the habit, of an elector. We have already observed, that two of these electors are vicars general of the empire, which they govern upon the death or resignation of the emperor, when there is no king of the *Romans*. Each exercises a

sepa-

separate power in the provinces of his jurisdiction ; except in the chamber of *Spire*, the acts of which are signed by the names of both, because there justice is administered by all the states of the empire. Each of these secular electors has a vicar, who performs his office in his absence ; and these vicariates are hereditary. The ecclesiastics acquire their electorate in the manner by which prelacies are obtained ; but the seculars acquire it by collation or succession. Collation takes place in default of male issue legitimate and laick, and is sanctioned by the emperor ; who is obliged to complete the number of electors, and confer the vacant place upon a *German* prince. The succession subsists conformable to the salique law, according the right of seniority, being independent of all transactions, testaments, and other civil acts, which are used in other cases for changing the order of succession.

THE electors have the right of possessing salt-works, and all sorts of mines, in their own electorates ; to coin gold and silver money ; to levy the ancient taxes ; to acquire the greatest fiefs, in preference to all others, and to be invested *gratis* ; to refuse compliance with any privilege contrary to their own ; to exercise a superior and sovereign jurisdiction in their dominions : tho' the vassals of all the electors, except those of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, have a right to appeal to the imperial chamber ; but the most characterizing distinction of the electors is their right of choosing and deposing the emperor.

THE next college comprehends all the other princes ; *The college* either secular, as dukes, margraves, landgraves, burgraves, of the counts, &c. or ecclesiastic, such as archbishops, bishops, *of the princes.* abbots, &c. that immediately hold of the empire. Those, who compose this college, have the right of sitting in the diets or general assemblies with a deliberative and decisive voice, and contribute to the necessities of the empire, according to the tax established by the matricular book or register of the states. The archbishop of *Saltzburg*, and the archduke of *Austria*, are alternately directors of the college of the princes of the empire ; and this alternative is not regulated by the different sittings, but by the different subjects that are proposed and discussed. Besides these princes, there is a number of counts in the empire, who hold of the empire alone, and are divided into four classes ; namely, those of *Wetteraw*, *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and *Westphalia*, together with a great deal of free noblesse, distinguished by that of *Franconia*, *Suabia*, and the *Rhine*. The princes of both orders hold immediately of the emperor and the empire, and generally receive their investiture by the sword from the hand of the so-

vereign seated on his throne; tho' the counts and barons of the chamber of *Spire* are invested with the standard or ensign, representing the arms of their respective countries. They have power to appoint judges for the administration of justice; which some of them exercise as sovereigns, while others are limited to certain sums, above which, all causes depending must be decided by appeal to the chamber of *Spire*. They are allowed to establish new laws, create magistrates, grant letters of grace, respite, safe-conduct, majority, and legitimation. They have the right to succeed to bastards, to raise and quarter soldiers, erect universities, coin money, make arms, and cast artillery; to increase the number of their fortresses, and secure them with garrisons; make alliances among themselves, as well as with strangers, for their common defence; and, in a word, to reign in their own territories, as the emperor reigns in the empire.

*The college
of the im-
perial
towns.*

THE third college is that of the imperial towns, which, like the other two, assembles apart, in order to deliberate upon the proposals that are made for the occasions of the empire; and the cities, which compose it, are called imperial, because they hold immediately of the emperor and empire. They, as well as the other colleges, have a right to sit in the diets with a deliberative and decisive voice. They regulate the form of government in their own jurisdiction, creating magistrates and officers of justice, and enacting laws, regulations, and statutes, by their own proper authority. They have a right to coin money, to fortify their towns, to levy soldiers, and to exercise every act of sovereignty, which is exercised by the princes of the empire in their different principalities. Formerly, the number of the imperial towns amounted to eighty-four or eighty-five; but is at present reduced to fifty-eight, separated into two benches in the assemblies; namely, that of the *Rhine*, and that of *Suabia*. The first comprehends the cities of *Cologne*, *Aix la Chapelle*, *Lubeck*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Frauckfort upon the Maine*, *Wetfler*, *Gellenhausen*, *Dortmund*, and *Friedberg*; while *Ratisbon*, *Augsburg*, *Nuremberg*, *Ulm*, and two-and-thirty other cities, are comprehended in that of *Suabia*.

*Of the
Hans
towns.*

THE appellation of *Hans* or *Anse*, which, in all probability, comes from the German word *Anzee*, signifying *near the sea*, is given to a confederacy of towns, that engaged in an alliance for the mutual support and improvement of commerce. About the year 1164 the city of *Bremen* formed the first scheme of this society, with several other sea-port towns in *Livonia*; tho' the number that first entered into the association is uncertain. Be that as it will, it afterwards increased

to such a point of importance, as to comprehend fourscore principal trading towns; among which were many foreign places, that desired admission into the confederacy. Accordingly we see in the old list *Antwerp, Dort, Amsterdam, Rotterdam, Bruges, Ostend, Dunkirk, Calais, Rouen, St. Malo, Bourdeaux, Bayonne, Marseilles, Barcelona, Seville, Cadiz, Lisbon, Leghorne, Messina, Naples, and London.*

In the flourishing times of the society, they chose four towns, where they established free staples, or general factories, for the convenience of their shipping and the sale of their merchandize; for the trade was chiefly carried on by barter or exchange. These were *London in England, Be-gues in Norway, Novogrod in Russia, and Bruges in Flanders.* This *Anseaticque* alliance, which at first had no other aim than the security of commerce against pirates, and the mutual advantage of extending it among the towns concerned, by peaceable and friendly communication, became strong enough to maintain an offensive war against *Waldemar III. king of Denmark*; whom they obliged to sue for peace, and cede to them, for a term of years, the isle of *Schonen*, in order to indemnify them for the expence of their equipment. They afterwards fitted out a powerful fleet against *Eric X.* and gave him great disturbance. In 1615 they obliged the duke of *Brunswick* to raise the siege of that town, which he had invested, and next year entered into a general alliance with the States of the United Provinces. In the same manner they often engaged in treaties with other princes and states, and particularly with different kings of *France*, who granted them several advantageous privileges in trade.

AFTER the kings of *France, Spain, Italy, and Denmark*, had forbid their towns to continue members of this society, the *Teutonic Hans* restricted their alliance to *Germany*, or, at least, to the towns depending upon the empire, and distributed them under four metropolitans; namely, *Lubeck, Cologne, Brunswick, and Dantzick.* The first comprehended the towns of *Hamburg, Rostock, Wismar, Stralsund, Lunenburg, Stetin, Anclam, Gelnau, Gneßwald, Colberg, Stargard, Stolpen, and Rugenstald.* Under that of *Cologne*, were *Wesel, Emmeric, Drusburg, Osnabrug, Dortmund, Soest, Herwarden, Padborn, Northausen, Nimmegen, Zutphen, Ruremonde*, and several others of *Westphalia*, and the *Low Countries.* The metropolitan of *Brunswick* included *Bremen, Magdeburg, Hildesheim, Goslar, Minden, Erimbeck*, and others: and in the division of *Dantzick* were all the *Hans* towns situated upon the *Baltick*, from the *Vistula* as far as *Russia*,

Russia, comprehending *Cohn*, *Thorn*, *Elbing*, *Konigsberg*, *Riga*, &c.

LUBECK is the chief of all the *Hans* towns, from a pre-eminence which it enjoys, not only on account of its central situation, but also of its privileges and power. It convokes the general assembly, is the depository of the money contributed to defray the common expence; preserves all the titles, acts, and archives, of the alliance; uses its own seal to the letters, sent in the name of the community to foreign princes and states, as well as to all their resolutions and treaties: from its citizens are generally chosen the ambassadors and deputies appointed by the society, and here the syndic of the alliances commonly resides.

In their assembly, the deputy of *Lubeck*, as president, sits by himself, the rest being seated on two benches, to the right and left, and votes before all others: their affairs are determined by a majority; nevertheless, when there is a great opposition, the question is generally thrown out: their ordinary assemblies are held every three years, about *Whitsuntide*, and the extraordinary as often as the emergency of affairs requires^a.

*The diet
of the em-
pire.*

THE imperial diets are composed of these three colleges, which comprehend all the estates and immediate members of the empire. The diet is convoked by the emperor, after he has agreed with the electors upon the necessity of assembling it, and the place proper for the session. In this assembly, the emperor is seated upon a throne; the electors of *Mentz*, *Bavaria*, and *Brandenburg*, being on his right hand, those of *Cologne*, *Saxony*, and *Palatine*, upon his left, and the elector of *Triers* opposite to his person. The ecclesiastic princes are seated on benches to the right, the secular princes sit upon the left, and the deputies of the imperial towns occupy others that cross from the right to the left. The emperor's proposal being made in the general assembly, the three colleges deliberate apart upon the subject; then, assembling together in one place, communicate their sentiments, and concur in a resolution, which is sent to the emperor; with whose approbation it passes into a law, and is received as an imperial constitution.

*The me-
thods of
admi-
nistring
justice.*

THERE are two methods of administering justice in the empire; one is exercised in general and the other in particular tribunals. All the princes, states, and members of the empire, have a right to administer justice in their own facts:

^a *Hist.*, l. vi. p. 357.

except in particular cases, where an appeal lies to the imperial chamber of *Spire*, or the *Aulic* council. In the particular jurisdictions, they follow the laws of the empire; which are the antient constitutions, the golden bull, the pacification of *Passaw*, the treaties of *Westphalia*, the *Saxon* law established by *Charlemagne*, and the *Roman* law established by the emperor *Justinian*, which is observed in all places, where the other is not received. The general tribunals are those of the imperial chamber of *Spire* and the *Aulic* council of the emperor, which exercise an universal and sovereign jurisdiction over all the subjects of the empire. The first was heretofore ambulatory, and established at *Augsburg* by *Frederick IV.* It was afterwards held successively at *Franckfort*, *Worms*, *Nuremberg*, *Ratisbon*, and *Eislengen*; till *Charles V.* fixed it at *Spire*. In consequence of the treaties of *Westphalia*, it ought to be composed of a catholic judge, and four presidents, named by the emperor, two of each religion, and fifty counsellors, six-and-twenty of which are catholics, and the rest protestants. The judge must be a prince, count, or baron; two of the presidents being of the sword, and two of the gown. The counsellors are named and presented in this manner; two catholics by the emperor; as many by each of the four catholic electors; two protestants by each of the three protestant electors; and the rest by each of the circles of the empire. This is the regulation according to the treaties of *Westphalia*; but the imperial chamber is at present reduced to a much smaller number of officers, being composed of the elector of *Triers*, who is judge as bishop of *Spire*, of one catholic and one protestant president, and eight catholic and seven protestant counsellors.

THE *Aulic* council is composed of one catholic president, one vice-chancellor, presented by the elector of *Mentz*, and nine counsellors of each religion; who, with the president, are nominated by the emperor. They are divided into two benches; one of which is occupied by the nobles, and the other by the lawyers. They hold their assemblies near the person of the emperor, whence it is called *Aulic*, or the council of the imperial court.

ALTHOUGH the sentences of these councils are final, there are nevertheless some cases in which the parties may appeal to the emperor, and demand a revision of the process; particularly in those cases which regard the duchies, principalities, counties, and other immediate fiefs of the empire. In both these tribunals, the emperor presides as sovereign judge, and, when he is present, pronounces sentence; and, in his absence,

absence, he, who represents his person as judge, has a right to wear an imperial sceptre as a badge of his dignity ^b.

Of the nobility.

IN *Germany* are two sorts of nobility: one free and immediate, holding only of the emperor and empire; the other mediate, which, tho' owning the emperor as chief of the empire, is likewise subjected to the jurisdiction of another prince. This last, tho' not in possession of such liberties as those that are peculiar to the first, is nevertheless very considerable in *Germany*; for there is a great number of those gentlemen of the second rank, whose families pretend to be as antient and illustrious as those of the immediate nobles, and who, in marrying, prefer the poorest gentlewoman to the richest plebeian. As for the gentlemen of the first rank, many of them are descended from those heroes who accompanied *Charlemagne* and his successors in all the victories they obtained over the *Saxons* and other nations which they subjected to their empire. Many others, coming from the neighbouring states to settle in *Germany*, were afterwards united with this body of nobility, because they were of noble extraction: while others again, whose fathers had merited that rank by their personal virtue and exploits, were in the sequel immatriculated among the antient nobility by patents obtained from the emperor; but these cannot be admitted into the chapters, from which are chosen the archbishops, electors of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologne*, together with the other bishops and prelates who are princes of *Germany*; because, before a person can be received into this chapter, he must prove his nobility in thirty-two descents both by father and mother.

THE immediate nobility possess fiefs, which they hold only of the emperor and empire, and are intailed on heirs male; because, by an express clause in their charter, they are obliged to serve the emperor in person, upon all occasions, with a certain number of servants, according to the strength and revenue of the fief. Almost all their fiefs are situated in *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and along the *Rhine*, comprehending *Lower Alsace*; a disposition made on purpose, that the nobility, being less dispersed, might be the more ready on all emergencies, and more conveniently defend the frontiers on that side against foreign invasion.

THE emperor has bestowed upon the immediate nobility the same privileges enjoyed by the other immediate states of the empire, with power to raise taxes thro' the whole extent of their respective fiefs, and to exercise a civil and cri-

^b Vide PUFFEND. HEISS. MORER.

minal jurisdiction, the last of which is without appeal ; but, from the civil, there lies an appeal to the *Aulic* council, or imperial chamber of *Spire*.

HERETOFORE this nobility was admitted to the imperial diets, where they even pretended to take the rank of the cities ; but, on account of the extraordinary expences incurred by their sitting, the calling of them was gradually neglected, tho' they are left at liberty to assels themselves in contributing to the public necessities of the empire.

THIS nobility forms a kind of aristocratical republic ; for tho' they are divided into three classes, they never fail, on important occasions, to join their councils and their strength for the preservation of the whole. They have divided the circle of *Suabia* into five departments called quarters ; that of *Franconia* into six ; and that of the *Rhine* into four. All these quarters have their chiefs, which, in *Suabia* and *Lower Alsace*, are called directors ; but in *Franconia*, and the *Upper* and *Lower Rhine*, they are distinguished by the name of captains, being chosen sometimes from one family, and sometimes from another. A chief can regulate nothing without the advice of two or three other gentlemen, who are nominated as his coadjutors, and a lawyer to be consulted in such affairs as depend upon the interpretation of the law. With these counsellors, the director or captain examines the differences that are brought before them, and exerts himself for the preservation of the privileges of the whole body. If it is necessary to repress the injustice or violence of any nobleman, the director or captain convenes the whole circle, or even all the three circles, to support and give sanction to his determination ; and as to public affairs, the quarters usually assemble once a year.

HAVING thus given a succinct idea of the present constitution and government of *Germany*, it will not be amiss to mention the present character of the people, as we find it described by modern authors of credit.

THE *Germans* of these days are said to be laborious, simple, faithful, valiant, and well adapted for war ; but at the same time cruel, mercenary, and addicted to pillage. They are stanch to the religion they embrace, slow in council, and trusty in their friendships ; but withal disguised in their enmity, distrustful, suspicious, and more given to excess in eating and drinking than any other nation in the world. Heretofore they were barbarous, and grossly ignorant ; but they have been civilized and polished by their assiduous application to the study of arts and sciences, in which they have made considerable progress. Yet their improvement is

The character of the Germans.

rather owing to indefatigable toil and industry than to their natural vivacity, genius, and penetration, in which they are counted inferior to almost all their neighbours. Indeed this allegation seems to be justified by their works, which are not at all remarkable for spirit or imagination; but commonly composed of tedious citations, compiled by dint of toil and perseverance; so that they have incurred the imputation of carrying their genius not in the brain but in the back. They have nevertheless acquired some reputation in philosophy and the belles lettres, and made very ingenious improvements in mechanics; but their histories are not much to be depended upon, because of their excessive credulity. This may have likewise contributed to that spirit of alchemy which hath engaged so many of their nation in search of the philosopher's stone. They are extremely fond of hunting, and so ridiculously vain, that every petty prince in the empire thinks his own family better than that of the king of *France*. The language is a dialect of the *Teutonic*; some of them profess the roman catholic, and some the protestant, religion; but all others are tolerated for the convenience of commerce and the advantage of the country^c.

^c Vide BODIN. P. BOUHOURS. SCALIGER.

CONRAD I.

AS the affairs of *Germany* are interwoven with those of *France*, during the reign of *Charlemagne* and his successors, who are therefore naturally comprehended in the modern history of that kingdom, we shall begin with *Conrad*, the first *German* who ruled the empire, when it became a distinct sovereignty, altogether independent of *France*, of which it had been hitherto reckoned an appendage.

SOME, indeed, are of opinion, that the commencement of the *German* empire does not properly take place till the reign of *Otho the Great*, when *Italy* was re-united to the imperial dominions^a; but, in order to maintain the connexion between this and the Ancient History, it was necessary to take notice of *Conrad* and his successor, who, tho' they were not in possession of the kingdom of *Lombardy*, deserve, without all question, to be ranked among the *German* emperors (A).

BESIDES

^a GOE. PERS. ex Meib. p. 246.

(A) At the death of *Lewis* prehended *Francia*, the province of *Bamberg*, *Suz^a*, *Con^a*, *frans*,
IV. the empire of *Germany* com-

BESIDES, the extinction of the *Carlovingian* race, when the empire was wholly detached from *France*, and the imperial dignity became elective, is surely as proper a period for an historian to begin with as the reign of *Otho*, in which the *Italian* dominions were recovered to the empire.

ALTHOUGH the successors of *Charlemagne* had really possessed the empire, by right of hereditary succession devolved from father to son, these princes usually procured the consent of their grantees, as a sanction to their last wills, that no disputes might attend the dispositions they had made. What was at first no more than a political condescension in the emperors, was in time interpreted into a privilege of those nobles; and hence is derived the right of those electors, by whom the emperor is invested with the imperial dignity and power^b.

THUS authorized by custom, the *German* noblemen assembling at *Worms*, upon the death of *Lewis IV.* made a proffer of the imperial crown to *Otho*, duke of *Saxony*; who declined the honour on account of his great age, and, with a generosity almost peculiar to himself, recommended *Conrad*, duke of *Franconia* and *Hesse*, whom (tho' his own enemy) he knew to be a prince of merit and capacity. In consequence of this recommendation, the assembly elected *Conrad*, whom *eleBed* some writers pretend to have been son-in-law to *Lewis IV. emperor*. a circumstance highly improbable, as *Lewis* died very young^c.

BE that as it will, he no sooner received the imperial diadem than he took all the precautions necessary to support his authority, 'in the midst of a great many powerful princes, who envied his promotion. Several noblemen of *Lorrain*, who acknowledged *Charles the Simple* as their sovereign, resolved to put him in possession of the dominions which had belonged to *Lewis* of *Germany*, on this side the *Rhine*; but the count *Des Retz*, being desirous that *Lorrain* should fall into the hands of *Conrad*, engaged those of *Namure* and *Limbourg* in behalf of that prince; who, understanding that his

A.D.

912.

^b HEISS, l. ii. p. 153.^c GOB. PERS. p. 246.

Aans, Basil, Bern, Lausanne, Burgundy, Bezançon, Lorrain, Metz, Liege, Cambray, Arras, Flanders, Holland, Zealand, Utrecht, Cologne, Treves, Mentz, Worms, Spire, Strasbourg, Friesland, Saxony, Hesse, Westphalia, Thuringia, Wetteravia, Misnia, Brandenburg, Pomerania, Rugen, Steirn, Holstein, Austria, Carintbia, Stiria, the Tyrolese, Bavaria, the Grisons, and in general all the countries situated among these provinces and their dependences (1).

(1) *Barre. Hist. d'Allemagne*, t. iii. p. 285.

presence was necessary, marched into *Lorraine*, where, being well received by the lords of his party, he endeavoured to conciliate the affection of the natives, by conferring new titles, and other acts of liberality, in favour of the nobility and clergy ^d.

Henry
duke of
Saxony
revolts.

His stay in *Lorraine* was shortened by the revolt of *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, who was incensed against him because he had refused to give him the investiture of *Thuringia* and *Westphalia*; tho' this refusal was intirely owing to his apprehension, that the duke would become too powerful by such an addition to his dominions. *Henry*, by the assistance of *Burchard* duke of *Suabia*, *Arnold* duke of *Bavaria*, and several other noblemen, saw himself at the head of an army which *Conrad* durst not venture to encounter. He therefore had recourse to other arts, by which he found means to detach *Burchard* from the *Saxon* party; and *Henry's* forces being at the same time weakened by the retreat of *Arnold*, whose country was threatened with an invasion by the *Hungarians*, he agreed to a suspension of arms; in consequence of which *Conrad* returned to *Franconia*.

Arnold
duke of
Bavaria
defeats the
Hungarians.

THE *Hungarians* having advanced with a great body of horse as far as the river *Inn*, demanding tribute of the *Bavarians*, *Arnold* assembled his troops, which were reinforced by those of *Erchanger*, administrator of the treasury, and *Berthold* count *Walric*. Dividing them into two bodies, he placed the most considerable part in ambuscade, and with the other retired before them into a marshy place; where, their horse being unable to act, they were charged with great impetuosity, and utterly overthrown ^e.

Erchan-
ger is exe-
cuted at
Aldein-
gen.

THIS success inflamed the ambition of *Erchanger* and *Berthold*; who, on pretence of being descended from *Charlemagne*, aspired to the highest dignities, and actually turned their arms against *Conrad*; tho', finding themselves unequal to the enterprize they had undertaken, they soon implored his clemency; but he was resolved to inflict an exemplary punishment, and they were, after a fair trial in the assembly of *Altheim*, convicted of treason, and executed at *Aldeingen*.

Arnold is
defeated
by Con-
rad.

THIS rebellion was succeeded by that of *Arnold* duke of *Bavaria*, who took the field, and entered *Suabia* with a strong army; upon which the emperor forthwith marched against him, at the head of such troops as he could raise for the occasion, and overthrew him in a pitched battle, in which *Arnold* was mortally wounded ^f.

A. D.
914.

^d Chron. WORM. ^e Ann. Boicz Gent. part i. l. xiii.
^f GOD. PERS. 2t. vi. c. 45.

GESELBERT duke of Lorrain, and Burchard duke of A. D. 916.
Suabia, having received considerable succours from *Charles the Simple*, were likewise resolved to try their fortune against the emperor; but, engaging him in a disadvantageous place, their army was cut in pieces, and *Eringer* and *Bertold*, the sons of *Geselbert*, being taken prisoners, were beheaded by order of the conqueror.

THE Hungarians too, taking advantage of the troubles of the empire, after having compelled *Berenger*, king of Italy, to sue for peace, in their return made irruptions into *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Lorrain*, and *Alsace*, which they desolated with fire and sword, and obliged the emperor to purchase peace upon the most shameful conditions. 917.

AFTER a reign of about seven years, *Conrad*, perceiving his end approaching, recommended to the princes and states of the empire, even when his own brother *Everard* count of *Franconia* was present, *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, and son of *Otho*, as the most proper person to succeed him on the imperial throne^a; tho' this very *Henry* had been one of his most inveterate enemies (B). The princes having approved of his choice, he, before his death, sent to him, by the hands of his brother *Everard*, the crown, scepter, lance, sword, and other regalia; thus nobly sacrificing his resentment to the advantage of the empire, and treating the son with the same generosity which he himself had experienced from the father.

^a Ann. Hildesh. HERM. CONTRA. ad ann. 916. ^b HEN. BOD. SYNTAG. ex Meib. p. 490. HEISS, p. 155.

(B) He had even attempted to poison *Conrad* by means of a golden bracelet, which *Hatton*, bishop of *Wurtzburg*, was to have presented to him in *Henry's* name in token of reconciliation; but this attempt was discovered by some friends whom *Conrad* had at *Henry's* court; so that their enmity increasing, acts of hostilities were committed on both sides. The emperor undertook the siege of *Mersbourg*; but *Henry* forced his lines, and routed his whole army; of which the carnage was so great, that the Saxons said, by way of derision, they could scarce believe hell was large enough to hold the infinite number of *Franks*, which they sent thither in one day (2).

(2) Remarg. sur Heiss, l. ii. p. 255.

HENRY I. surnamed *the Fowler*.

A. D. 919. Henry, surnamed the Fowler, is elected emperor. **T**HE emperor being dead, the dukes of *Bavaria, Franconia*, and *Suabia*, together with all the other states of *Germany*, assembled the following year at *Fritzlar*; where *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, being present, was elected, and confirmed in the imperial dignity with universal applause: He was distinguished by the epithet of *the Fowler*, because he was much addicted to that amusement, and was actually engaged in it when he received the intimation of his being recommended by *Conrad* as his successor in the empire i.

920. Declines an invitation from the pope. **T**HE pope, disturbed by the factions of several petty princes, who assumed the title in *Rome*, proffered to declare *Henry* emperor of the *Romans*; but this honour he declined, either because he would not give himself the trouble of marching into *Italy* to subdue his competitors, or was resolved to re-establish the tranquillity of his own empire before he would engage in that enterprize. With this view he had, in the be-

Establishes peace among the princes of the empire. ginning of his reign, endeavoured to promote a mutual reconciliation among all the princes, counts, and noblemen, of *Germany*, as the only sure basis of universal prosperity; nor was he disappointed in his aim. Concord and harmony were diffused thro' the whole empire, and the affection of his subjects so happily conciliated, that when the *Hungarians*, according to custom, invaded his territories with a powerful army, they unanimously took up arms in his defence, and drove the enemy out of the empire, with the loss of eighty thousand men left upon the field of battle, which was fought near the city of *Mersbourg*. He afterwards defeated the

Defeats the Hungarians near Mersbourg.

Exterminates the Vandals. Overcomes the Danes. Subdues the Dalmatians, Bohemians, and Abotrites. *Vandals*, who had made an irruption into *Saxony*, and pursued them as far as the city of *Brandenbourg*, which he besieged and took in the middle of winter. The same people again having attempted to invade the empire, *Henry* attacked them upon the coast of the *Baltic*; where they were utterly exterminated, about one hundred and twenty thousand being killed upon the spot. *Gonnon*, king of *Denmark*, met with the same fate. The *Slavonians* and *Dalmatians* were subdued, as well as the *Bohemians*, whose king, *Winceflaus*, he took prisoner; and, after long captivity, released, and generously reinstated in his dominions. In fine, he reduced the *Abotrites*, who had revolted, and was successful against all the enemies of the empire. Among others, he repulsed

¹ HEISS, l. ii. p. 156. GODFREY, p. 746. HUNTER, p. 490. tom. II. & iii.

Charles the Simple from the banks of the *Rhine*, whither he had come to ravage *Lorraine*, and the cities of *Mentz*, *Spire*, and *Worms*.

AT length the two princes, after they had twice conferred with each other at *Bonn*, entered into a treaty called *Pactum Bonnense*, which is a famous epocha in history; and this is the only attempt that ever was made by *Charles*, or his successors, in favour of their pretensions upon the empire^k. A.D. 921. *Surmounts all opposition.*

SOON after this accommodation, he held an assembly at *Coblentz*, composed of several *French* and *German* bishops, where the treaty was confirmed; and, among other regulations, it was decreed, that there should be no marriage between relations within the sixth degree of consanguinity; and that no layman should receive tythes, which were wholly ecclesiastic^l.

ABOUT this time, *Conrad*, at the solicitation of some *French* noblemen, advised *Charles* of *France* to dismiss his favourite *Haganon*, who abused his confidence, and was odious to the whole kingdom; but this advice being rejected, duke *Robert*, to whose son *Hugh Charles* refused the abbey of *Chelles*, assembled a body of forces, took the town of *Laon*, in which he found the treasures of *Haganon*, was crowned at *Rheims* by the archbishop *Hervé*; and, in order to support his new dignity with the friendship of *Henry the Fowler*, demanded an interview with that prince. They accordingly met on the banks of the river *Roer*, that runs by *Juliers*, where they engaged in a league offensive and defensive, and made considerable presents to each other.

CHARLES, alarmed at this alliance, extracted courage from necessity; and, assembling his troops, marched directly to *Attigni*, and attacked the army of his rival. The battle was maintained with great obstinacy on both sides; and, even after *Robert* was slain, his son *Hugh*, taking the command, exerted himself with such valour, that *Charles* was worsted, and obliged to quit the field^m. The malecontents afterwards elected *Raoul* duke of *Burgundy* their king; and *Charles*, seeing himself abandoned by many noblemen who had hitherto been attached to his interest, had recourse to *Henry the Fowler*, in whose favour he promised to cede all his possessions in *Lorraine*. In consequence of this engagement, *Henry* began to levy troops; and the malecontents of *France* being terrified at his preparations, *Herbert count de cause of Vermandois*, one of their chiefs, amused *Charles* with protes- Charles is defeated by Hugh surnamed the Abbot. 923.

^k *Pactum Carol. & Hen. Reg. ap. DUCH. t. ii. Concil. t. ix. p. 570.* ^m *MABIL. t. xiii. A. BENEDICT. p. 374.*

who is
made pri-
soner by
the male-
contents
The em-
peror
passes the
Rhine,

tations of fidelity, and, on pretence of concerting measures for suppressing the rebellion, seduced him to *Peronne*, where he was apprehended, and committed close prisoner to *Chateau-Thierry*.

HENRY, being informed of this event, passed the *Rhine* with his army, and ravaged the country between that river and the *Moselle*; but understanding that *Raoul* was advancing with a superior force, he repassed the *Rhine*, and took possession of an advantageous post, where he remained until he had the pleasure of seeing almost all the noblemen of *Lorraine* forsake the banners of *Raoul*, who began to treat them with insolence and contempt. This defection might have been very advantageous to *Henry*, had not he been prevented from turning it to account, by a severe distemper that reduced him to extremity; during which the *Lorrainers*, despairing of his recovery, reconciled themselves to *Raoul*, by the mediation of *Herbert de Vermandois* and *Hugh the Abbot*.

subdues
Lorraine,

HENRY no sooner recovered his health, than, resolved to punish them for their inconstancy, he marched into *Lorraine*, retook several strong places, pursued duke *Geselbert* from town to town, and in a little time subdued the whole country. With regard to the laymen of *Raoul's* party, he banished some, kept others in confinement, and deposed *Hugh the Abbot* from the bishopric of *Verdun*, which he bestowed on one of his own adherents. The *Lorrainers*, exasperated at this arbitrary method of proceeding, formed a conspiracy against the *Fowler*, and raised an army with such secrecy and dispatch, that he was fain to pacify them by redressing their grievances, and restoring the province to *Geselbert*, who took the oath of allegiance, and did him homage accordingly.

and is re-
conciled to
duke Ge-
selbert.

A. D
926.

THE duke, however, not contented with such a dependent situation, began to form new projects and cabals against *Henry*, who obliged him to appear at the diet of *Worms*; where he was deprived of his duchy, which was given to *Everhard*, a *Saxon* nobleman. *Geselbert*, enraged at this event, had recourse to arms; but, before he could commit any acts of hostility, he was seized and delivered to the emperor: yet so pliant was his disposition, that, even during his captivity, he insinuated himself into the good graces of *Henry*, who not only re-established him in the duchy of *Lorraine*, but also gave him his own daughter in marriage.

He regu-
lars the
police of

To clear his dominions of thieves and banditti, he published a general amnesty in their favour, provided they would insist in his service; and actually formed them into a regi-

ment. He ordered that all his cities should be garrisoned with a ninth part of the peasants who inhabited the boroughs and villages, and that the other eight should cultivate the lands, on condition of contributing towards the subsistence of the rest, and of furnishing yearly the third part of all their grain, for the magazines established in every city, that there might never be any want either of soldiers or provision.

SUCH was the zeal of this prince for the propagation of the Christian faith, that he undertook, and actually effected, the conversion of the king of the *Abotrites* (C), and appointed the first bishop in *Holstein* to preach the gospel among the *Vandals*, whom he had subdued. He created a marquis in the city of *Brandenbourg* to defend his frontiers against the *Abotrites*, as he had done before in *Misnia* and *Lusatia*, for security against the incursions of the *Bohemians*; in imitation of *Charlemagne*, who had taken the same precautions in *Austria* and *Moravia* against the *Sarmatians*, *Poles*, and *Hungarians*. He likewise ordered his towns to be surrounded with walls, bastions, and ditches, for the advantage of commerce, as well as the security of the inhabitants; and that the nobility might be inured to the exercise of arms, even in time of peace, he appointed tournaments, in which they vied with each other in displaying their dexterity and address. But he expressly excluded from these lists of honour, all those who did not profess the true religion, as well as those who had been guilty of perjury, treason, rape, sacrilege, or murder.

AFTER having taken these precautions for the security of his dominions, he marched to the assistance of *Winceflaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, whose dominions were invaded by *Ladislaus*, a *Polish* prince, who was obliged to retire at his approach: and he stayed some time at *Prague*, in order to establish the young duke on his dominions, and protect the Christian religion, which had greatly suffered by the efforts of *Draghomire*, the mother of *Winceflaus*, a bigotted pagan.

HENRY's next expedition was into *Lorraine*, where he besieged the castle of *Durefort*, belonging to count *Bozon*, *Lorraine*

^o Annal. Saxon, ad. an. 927.
FERNROB. ex Meib. tom. ii. p. 417.
p. 58.

^p Annal. GERN. HOP-
^q Hist. Bohem. t. iv.

(C) *Abotrites*, a people bordering upon *Bulgaria*, in that part of *Dacia* contiguous to the *Danube* (1).

(1) *Moscow*.

against brother of king *Raoul*, who had seized by force several ab-
count Bo- bies of *Lorraine*; but he was persuaded to restore the lands,
son. make a submission, and swear allegiance to the emperor.

*The Sla- While Henry was thus employed in appeasing the trou-
ves are bles of Bohemia and Lorraine, the Slaves, who inhabited
defeated. Pomerania, made an irruption into Saxony, ravaged the
A. D. province of Lunenburg, and taking the capital, put the inha-
929. bitants to the sword. Being afterwards joined by the Abo-
trites, Wilfes, and Vandals, they found their army aug-
mented to a very great number; and becoming more and
more formidable, Henry ordered Bernard, duke of Lunen-
burg, and the count Theutmare, to march against them with
a powerful body of forces. These two generals undertook
the siege of Lunden in Scania, and the barbarians marching
to its relief, a battle ensued, in which they were utterly
overthrown; so that of course this town of Lunden fell into
the hands of the conquerors.*

THE truce with the *Hungarians* being expired, *Henry*
assembled the states of the empire, and after having recapit-
ulated the victories he had obtained over the barbarians,
which seemed to preface his future success, expatiated upon
the disgrace that would be entailed upon *Germany*, provided
they should commence tributaries to the *Hungarians*. His
speech had such an effect upon the assembly, that they uni-
mously declared for war: but before he would undertake
any thing against the enemy, he resolved to take cognizance
of some abuses which had crept among the clergy, and which
were accordingly reformed in a council held at *Erfort* in
Thuringia,

931.
*Here reforms
some a- abuses in a
buses in a council
held at
Erfort.*

*The Hun- These measures being taken for the repose of the church
garians and state, he began to make preparations for the war against
invade the Hungarians; who having sent deputies to demand the
empire annual tribute, Henry refused to pay it with marks of dis-
with a dain, and in lieu of it sent a mangy dog with a message, im-
vast army, porting, that if they expected any other tribute, they must
which is come and look for it of themselves. This haughty reply ex-
defeated asperated them to such a degree, that they joined the Slaves,
by the em- and entering Germany with an army of 300,000 men, deso-
perer. lated the country with fire and sword. They separated into
A. D. two distinct bodies; one of which crossed the Rhine in boats,
932. and having pillaged Alsace, fell upon Lorraine, where they
were defeated by the count de *Sunderhausen*, and obliged to
return to their second army in Saxony, which was at that
time employed in besieging *Merzbouurg*. Henry had marched*

against another body that ravaged *Thuringia*, which having surprized and utterly defeated, he resolved to go to the relief of *Mersebourg*, where he found the enemy drawn up in order of battle. Although he was at that time very much indisposed, and infinitely inferior to the *Hungarians* in number, he resolutely attacked them without hesitation, and they being immediately put into disorder, a terrible carnage ensued, insomuch that they left above 40,000 men dead upon the field of battle, and a very considerable booty, by which the soldiers of the emperor were enriched †.

HENRY, having subdued all his enemies, restored peace and concord to his subjects, and subjected the empire to proper regulations, began to taste the fruits of his wisdom and success, when the pope and citizens of *Rome*, tired of the civil wars that had raged so long in *Italy*, implored the assistance of his arms, to deliver them from oppression; and, in order to facilitate his compliance, invited him to come and receive at *Rome* the unction and imperial crown. Far from neglecting an occasion so favourable to his views upon *Italy*, he forthwith set out at the head of his troops; but being seized with an apoplexy by the way, he was obliged to return to *Manleben*; where, believing himself near his end, he convoked the princes of the empire, who, in his presence, complied with his desire, and settled the succession on his son *Otho*. Soon after this nomination he died at *Manleben*, in the 60th year of his age, and 17th of his reign; upon which occasion it was said, that the ablest statesman and the greatest king of *Europe* was dead: and really no prince surpassed him either in the qualities of the heart and head, or in any personal accomplishment. He was extremely munificent to the church, and had the interest of religion very much at heart (D). He married *Mathilda*, daughter of *Theodoric*, count of *Aldenburg*, by whom he had three sons,

He is invited to Italy, whither he begins his march, but being taken ill returns to Manleben.

Appoints his successor.

A. D. 936.

† ENGELHUSIUS, p. 174. Meib. p. 642. t. i.

‡ ANN. WITICHIND, ex

(D) *Henricus Bodo* relates, that *Rudolphus*, king of the *Burgundians*, being possessed of a lance, formerly belonging to *Constantine the Great*, who had fixed upon it a cross made of the nails of that cross on which Christ suffered, the emperor *Henry* obtained it from him, partly by threats and partly by intreaties; and, by virtue of this holy weapon, triumphed over all his enemies: that a vein of superstition ran through his character, may be also gathered from the transports of joy and adoration, with which he received an hand of St. *Dennis*, sent to him in a present by *Charles the Simple*.

Otho,

Otho, Henry, and Bruno, and enjoyed the satisfaction of leaving to the eldest of these, who was already of age, the empire much more powerful, and the authority better established, than he had received them from his predecessor *.

* *BOD. SYNTAG, ex Meib. p. 490.*

C H A P. II.

The Reign of Otho I. including the Transactions of the Western Empire under this Prince and his Descendants.

A. D.
936.

*Otho is
elected and
crowned at
Aix la-
Chapelle.*

THOUGH the princes of *Germany* had not been very well disposed towards *Otho*, the great power he had derived from his hereditary succession, together with his enterprising spirit and personal qualifications, would have obliged them to adhere to the promise which they had already made in his favour (E). He was accordingly elected emperor at *Aix-la-Chapelle*, by the unanimous consent of all the princes then present, among which number were the archbishops of *Mentz, Magdebourg, Triers, and Besançon*; the bishops of *Ratisbon, Trefingen, Augsbourg, Constance, Eichstet, Worms, Spire, Brixen, and Hildesheim*, this last being the emperor's chancellor; the abbots of *Fulde, Herchfelt, and Erbach*, together with the king of *Bohemia*, and the dukes of *Saxony, Bavaria, Austria, Moravia, and Lorrain* *. All these took the oath of allegiance, and did homage to the new emperor, whom they promised to serve and assist against all his enemies. Then they accompanied him to the great church, where he was met by the archbishop of *Mentz* and the diocesan, in their pontificals, assisted by other bishops and all the clergy, who having saluted him with the usual ceremo-

* *WITT. Ann. l. ii.*

(E) He inherited from his father the duchy of *Saxony, Westphalia, Angria, Thuringia, Hesse, Wetteravia*, the countries on the *Weser* in the neighbourhood of *Minden*, and those upon the *Elbe*, towards the confines of *Lunenburg*, compre-

hending the city of *Wittenberg, Misnia, Lusatia*, the country on the east side of *Plesse* and *Esler*, the country of *Nürstheim*, and that whole tract in which the city of *Magdebourg* is situated (1).

(1) *Heist. b. ii.*

nies, he proceeded into the middle of the church, where he stood in sight of the people, to whom the prelate addressed himself in words to this effect: "I here present to you, *Otho*, chosen of God, formerly destined to the empire by his father *Henry*, and now elected into that supreme station by all the princes here assembled. If this election is agreeable to you, hold up your hands in token of your approbation." This address being received with universal applause, and a thousand acclamations, *Otho* was conducted to the great altar on which the regalia were placed, when the archbishop girding on his sword, "Receive (said he) that sword, and use it against the enemies of Jesus Christ, as well as those who unworthily profess his name; and employ the authority and power of the empire, which God hath put into your hands, to confirm and preserve the peace of the church." Then putting on the mantle of state, "Remember (continued he) with what fortitude and fidelity you are obliged to maintain peace and tranquillity to the end of your life." Lastly, presenting him with the scepter and mace, he added, "Warned by these emblems, inflict upon your subjects no other than paternal chastisement: extend your mercy and compassion to the ministers of God, to the widow and the orphan; and let the balm of your pity never cease to flow, that you may acquire a never fading crown both in this life and that which is to come." After this exhortation, he was anointed by the bishops with the sacred oil, and the archbishop set the crown upon his head. Then he ascended the throne, on which he sat during the service; after which he was reconducted to the palace, where he dined in public, and was served by the dukes and other noblemen, while the bishops had the honour of sitting at his own table.

He began his reign with the most upright administration, being an implacable enemy to all cruelty and baseness, and, for a little time, he ruled in tranquillity and peace; but this calm was not of long duration. The Hungarians, according to custom, invaded *Franconia*, and ravaged the provinces of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, where they put a number of people to the sword, without distinction of sex or age. However, their progress was soon checked by *Otho*, who coming up with them in the plain of *Dortmund* in *Westphalia*, attacked and defeated them with great slaughter; then marching into *Lower Saxony*, fortified *Magdebourg*, and passed the *Elbe*, to restrain the *Slaves* and other barbarians

He sends
an army
against
Boleslaus.

of the north, who were meditating a fresh irruption. After this expedition, being informed that *Wincelaus*, who was invested with the dukedom of *Bohemia* by the emperor his father, had been murdered by *Boleslaus* his own brother, who afterwards took possession of the duchy by force, he was so incensed at the inhumanity of the usurper, that he sent an army against him, under the command of *Æsc*, count of *Ascania*, who engaged and at first defeated *Boleslaus*, and believed that, by this victory, he had put an end to the war; but the usurper having, in a few days, rallied and reinforced his troops, and making a sudden assault upon the victors, cut in pieces the whole imperial army².

A. D.
937.

Otho was mortally chagrined at this misfortune, which, however, he endeavoured to repair, by levying a new army with all possible expedition. He accordingly carried on the war for the space of fourteen years with great vigour and perseverance, till at last he gained a complete victory over *Boleslaus*, who was fain to submit and own him for his sovereign. But this was not the only war which at that time engrossed the attention of the emperor.

The sons of
Arnold,
duke of
Bavaria,
refuse to
do homage
so *Otho*,

THE death of *Arnold*, duke of *Bavaria*, produced a general revolution in that province. He left three sons, *Everhard*, *Arnold*, and *Herman*, with a daughter called *Judith*, who was married to *Henry* of *Saxony*, brother of *Otho*. *Everhard*, as eldest, seized the whole duchy, and refused to do homage to the emperor, on pretence that he was not his vassal but ally: and although *Arnold* and *Herman* disputed the duchy with *Everhard*, all three agreed to consider *Bavaria* as altogether independent of *Germany*; a circumstance which incensed *Otho* to such a degree, that he divested them of the duchy, and bestowed the investiture upon *Arnold's* brother *Bertolf*, who willingly did homage for such a present. Each pretender was supported by his own party. Pope *Leo VII.* owned *Everhard* as duke of *Bavaria*, in a letter addressed to the bishops and noblemen of *Germany*; and *Otho*, alarmed at this decision, set on foot a negociation to engage the three brothers to resign their pretensions: but they refusing to comply with his desire, he entered *Bavaria* with a powerful army, and having seized *Everhard*, sent him into exile. *Arnold* and *Herman* were obliged to follow his court, and their uncle *Bertolf* remained in quiet possession of *Bavaria*³. As for the eldest, he was obliged to pass the rest of his days in the allodial territories depending on *Bavaria*, situated in *Voigtland* and *Franconia*: but

who enters
Bavaria
and ban-
ishes the
eldest.

938.

² DUBRARIUS Hist. Bohem.

³ SIGEB. ad. ann. 936.

each of his brothers afterwards obtained a palatinate. *Arnold* was put in possession of the lordship of *Scheyern*, and became count palatine in *Bavaria*, and *Herman* acquired the same dignity in one of the provinces upon the *Rhine*.

EVERHARD, duke of *Franconia*, was likewise invested with the same quality, by which he maintained a jurisdiction over the magistrates and receivers, and bestowed those places, and many others, upon his own friends and adherents. The *Saxons* grew jealous of his credit and power; and *Henry*, duke of *Brunswick*; the emperor's brother, not only refused to submit to his authority, but also inspired the *Saxons* with the same sentiments, which entailed upon them the resentment of *Everhard*, who declared war against *Henry*, and burnt the town of *Elmen* upon the *Wefer*. *Otho* no sooner heard of these proceedings, than he assembled the noblemen of his court; and bringing *Everhard* and his accomplices to a trial, condemned each of them to carry a dog upon his shoulders, from the place of his habitation as far as *Magdeburg*. In this manner did the ancient nations of the north punish the feditious, who had disturbed the public tranquillity. *Everhard*, however, was pardoned at the intercession of his friends; though the enmity still subsisted between him and the duke of *Brunswick*, and in a little time broke forth in preparations of war: then *Otho* summoned both to appear at the diet of *Arensburg* (F), which was at that time convened, but they did not think proper to obey the citation; and *Henry* was afterwards surprized by his antagonist in the town of *Baudewic*, and committed close prisoner to a castle in *Alsace*; from whence, however, he was soon released, after having entered into a league against his brother with *Everhard*, and *Sigebert* duke of *Austrasia*. These, who were themselves pretenders to the throne, took great pains to persuade *Henry*, brother to *Otho*, that he had the best title to the imperial dignity, because he was born after the elevation of his father to the throne; whereas the birth of *Otho* was not attended with such advantage. He listened to these idle insinuations, and accordingly an equal number of combatants being chosen on both sides, they entered the lists; and the champions of the children having obtained the victory, the process was determined in their favour (1).

(F) In this diet it was debated, whether children could inherit the effects of their fathers, while their grandfathers were still alive; and as this point could not be determined any other way, it was agreed that it should be decided by

duel. Accordingly an equal number of combatants being chosen on both sides, they entered the lists; and the champions of the children having obtained the victory, the process was determined in their favour (1).

(1) *Barre Hist. D'Allemagne*, t. iii. p. 352.

of Au-
fra-
sia, and
take the
field a-
gainst the
emperor,
by whose
forces they
are de-
feated.

Henry re-
tires to
France.

A. D.
941.

The empe-
ror makes
himself
master of
Brisac,
Mentz,
and Che-
vremonst.

nuations; and an association being formed, they began to levy troops, and in a little time brought a considerable army into the field, but were intirely routed by the emperor; duke Everhard, who was general, being killed in the battle, which was fought upon the banks of the Rhine, and Sigebert drowned in that river, in attempting to make his escape. Mean while Henry taking refuge in the city of Mersbourg, and finding himself unable to defend it against his brother, was fain to submit by capitulation; in consequence of which he retired to the dominions of Lewis, king of France, who had declared war against the emperor in support of his pretensions. Peace was soon after concluded between that prince and the emperor, who was reconciled to his brother, and bestowed upon him the duchy of Lorrain, which did not long remain in his possession. (G.)

SIGEBERT or Giselbert, duke of Aufrasia or Lorrain, had prevailed upon the noblemen of that province to make a tender of it to Lewis, king of France, who received their homage accordingly; and Otho hearing of this revolt, marched thither with an army and defeated the rebels. After this victory he undertook the siege of Chevremonst, in the diocese of Liege, which, however, he was obliged to quit, in order to oppose the progress of the count palatine and the king of France, who had entered Lorrain and compelled his friends to retire to the other side of the Rhine. But Lewis being

^b ANN. TREVER.

(G) Wittichindus, who dedicates his annals to Otho's daughter, gives an account of a rebellion raised by Everhard and Tancmarus, the emperor's natural brother; who being abandoned by his followers, and taking refuge in a church at Heresbourg, was slain at the altar by some of Otho's soldiers. Everhard seeing their schemes thus miscarry, artfully insinuated himself into the good graces of Henry, Otho's brother, who was at that time his prisoner, and persuaded him to set up for himself, and take arms against the emperor. Accord-

ingly, having in a little time joined their forces, they took the field against Otho, and were routed upon the banks of the Rhine. Henry retreated to Mersbourg, from whence he afterwards retired by capitulation; and having strengthened his party by the accession of Giselbert, they once more gave battle, on the banks of the same river, to Hermannus, the emperor's general, by whom they were intirely defeated; Everhard being slain, and Giselbert drowned, as we have observed above. Otho, commiserating the distresses to which his brother

being informed of a contract which the bishop of *Laon* had made with his enemy *Herbert*, count of *Vermandois*, quitted *Alsace*, to prevent the effect of this treason; and *Otho* invested the city of *Brisac*, during the siege of which he was abandoned by a number of noblemen, and, among the rest, by *Frederick*, archbishop of *Mentz*, and *Ruthard*, bishop of *Straßbourg*; nevertheless, he continued his operations until the place was taken, and then marching into *Lorraine*, made himself master of *Metz*, where he found *Frederick* and *Ruthard*, whom he sent into exile to the abbeys of *Fulda* and *Corbie*.

AFTER this success, he ordered his general *Immot* to reinvest *Cheuremont*, which was defended by *Anfred* and *Arnold* with such valour, that the besiegers were fain to have recourse to flight; and having apprehended these two officers whom he had invited to a conference, he sent them to the emperor, and the town immediately surrendered.

THO' *Conrad*, the son of *Everhard*, inherited from his father the duchy of *Franconia*, with the counties of *Hesse* and *the Palatinate of the Rhine*, he could not succeed him in the dignity of count palatine, because *Otho* had taken it from his father, and conferred it on *Herman*, third son of *Arnold*, duke of *Bavaria*: but as this honour was unattended with any solid advantage, the emperor began to annex to it the lands and castles situated on the *Rhine*, whence he acquired the title of *Count palatine of the Rhine*: and, in process of time, these counts made great acquisitions by marriages, purchases, mortgages, and imperial donations, so as to form a very considerable province.

ABOUT this time the *Slaves*, being joined by *Boleslaus*, made an irruption into *Bohemia*, and surprized the city of *Prague*, from which, however, they were expelled by the

* BARRE, t. iii. p. 362.

† Hist. Palatinat.

ther was exposed, took him into favour again, and it was not long before he engaged in another conspiracy against his life; which being detected, he fled into another kingdom. *Otho* having thus quelled all his enemies at home, subdued the kingdom of *Burgundy*, and became formidable to all the nations around. Then, by the intercession and admonition of

his holy mother, he was prevailed upon to pardon his brother *Henry*, by this time harried with the fatigues and miseries he had undergone, and actually made him duke of *Bavaria*, *Berthold* being then dead; in which capacity he did eminent service against the *Hungarians*, and other enemies of the empire.

tion into
Bohemia
and Bran-
denburg.

valour of the inhabitants: nor did they meet with more success in their attempts upon the margraviate of *Brandenburg*, where they were routed by count *Geron*, who having got their chiefs into his power, put them all to death, without exception *.

Otho
marches
into
France;
A. D.
942.

is recal-
ed to quell
a new
conspiracy
formed by
his brother
Henry.

Lewis, king of *France*, having lost the esteem of his subjects by his pride and indiscretion, sought to prevent the bad consequences of disaffection, by an alliance with the emperor, which he endeavoured to strengthen by marrying his sister *Gerberge*, who was widow of *Giselfert*, duke of *Lorrain*. But his hopes were not of long duration; for *Otho*, persuaded by the insinuations of *Hugh the Great*, and *Herbert*, count de *Vermandois*, entered *France* with a powerful army, obliged *Lewis* to retire from *Champagne* into *Burgundy*, and received the oath of allegiance from *Hugh* and his confederates. Yet their ardour was soon cooled by the death of *Herbert*; and *Otho* was recalled to *Saxony*, to oppose the designs of his brother *Henry*, who, taking advantage of the emperor's absence, quitted *Lorrain*, and by dint of presents and promises, formed a very formidable conspiracy among the *Saxon* officers and soldiers. His cause was espoused by the counts *Bacco*, *Herman*, *Reenward*, *Wirende Werle*, and *Lothaire*; and measures were taken to assassinate the emperor at *Quidlembourg*, where he intended to celebrate the festival of *Easter*: but *Otho* being informed of their design, marched against them without loss of time, and defeated their purpose in a moment. The count de *Werle*, in order to avoid the punishment he deserved, made away with himself; the rest of the conspirators were beheaded, and *Henry* confined to the castle of *Ingelheim*: yet he found means to escape, and repairing to *Frankfort*, where the emperor passed his *Christmas*, prostrated himself at his feet in a mourning habit, and implored his pardon, which was immediately granted †.

Otho having recompensed the services of those who had never forfeited their fidelity, established a tribunal at *Bonn*, to take cognizance of the injustice and oppression which had been committed during the troubles, and made a progress from town to town, in order to determine differences, and regulate the policy of his dominions. He afterwards repaired to *Duesbourg* in the duchy of *Cleves*, where having assembled the noblemen of *Lorrain*, *Franconia*, and *Saxony*, he ordered *Rutbert*, archbishop of *Triers*, and *Richard*, bishop of *Tongres*, to be tried for felony, of which they were accused by *Conrad*, the new duke of *Lorrain*; but they justifi-

* Chron. SCLAVIC.

† Hist. LORRAINE.

fied themselves by oath, and were acquitted. *Rutbert* was afterwards in great favour with the emperor, who erected his see into a principality, by an authentic act, which raises the archbishops of *Triers* to an equality with sovereigns, and invests them with the rights of regality through the whole extent of the diocese.

A. D.

943.

He erects the see of Triers into a principality.

ABOUT this time *Bertholf*, duke of *Bavaria*, dying, *Otho*, at the solicitation of his mother, bestowed that duchy on his brother *Henry*, who thenceforward behaved as a peaceable and loyal subject: and the tranquillity of his reign was not again interrupted, until he marched with a powerful army into *France*, to support *Lewis* against his powerful adversary *Hugh the Great*. He was joined by that king and the count of *Flanders* near *Cambray*, which they resolved to attack; but understanding it was too well fortified to leave them any hope of success, they turned aside to *Rheims*, which surrendered in three days after it was invested. From thence they advanced to *Paris*, and ravaged the duchy of *France*, belonging to *Hugh the Great*; and, instead of besieging the capital, marched to *Rouen*, by the advice of the count of *Flanders*.

Marches into France to the assistance of Lewis and the count of Flanders.

945.

Having passed the river of *Andelle*, *Otho*, at the desire of *Lewis*, sent a detachment of his best troops, under the command of his nephew, to reconnoitre; and this young captain happening to meet a body of *Normans*, attacked them with such fury, that they fled to the very gate of *Rouen*: but this flight was no other than a stratagem, to decoy the *Saxons* into an ambuscade; for the walls and adjacent fields were filled with archers, who immediately appeared, and the *Normans* made a vigorous sally at the same time; so that the troops of *Otho* being charged on all hands, were routed after an obstinate dispute: their commander was killed upon the draw-bridge, and almost all the *Saxons* were either taken or slain. Notwithstanding this misfortune, he resolved to besiege the town, and continued his operations without effect, until his army was greatly diminished by famine and distemper: then he formed the design of betraying the count of *Flanders* to the enemy, because he had been involved in this dangerous situation by his misrepresentations; but the count being informed of his intention, withdrew his whole forces in the night, and the *Imperialists* and *French*, perceiving the commotion, mistook them for an army coming to the relief of *Rouen*. This apprehension filled the camp with disorder: the soldiers immediately betook themselves to flight; and the inhabitants of *Rouen* observing

The allies undertake the siege of Rouen,

which they are obliged to abandon.

their confusion, made a general sally, in which a great number of the Saxons perished. Not contented with this piece of success, part of the garrison, consisting of horse, harrassed them in their retreat as far as *Amiens*, where *Otho* and *Lewis* passed the *Somme* with their army ^h. The emperor returned to *Saxony*, leaving his allies still embarrassed with the war; but at length, through his mediation, they agreed to a truce, during which he received such a dangerous fall in the chace, that his life was dispaired of, and he nominated his son *Ludolphus* as his successor, in the presence of the principal noblemen of his court assembled for that purpose; but when he recovered his health he revoked this designation.

A. D.

947.
Dispute
between
Artaud
and Hugh
about the
arch-
bishopric of
Verdun,
Artaud obeyed the citation; and as Hugh refused to come, was provisionally confirmed in the see: but that his competitor might have no cause to complain, another assembly was convoked for the following year, in the church of *St. Peter* near *Monson*; and *Hugh* still continuing obstinate, was excluded from the communion of the other bishops, and suspended from all acts of jurisdiction, until other measures should be taken by a national synod, to be held next year at *Ingelheim* near *Metz*.

Proceed-
ings of the
assembly at
Ingel-
heim.

948.

OTHO being at *Aix la Chapelle* was visited by *Lewis* of *France*; and in the following autumn they met upon the *Chier*, to concert measures for appeasing the troubles which agitated that kingdom, as well as for terminating the scandalous quarrel subsisting between *Artaud* and *Hugh*, who disputed with each other the archbishopric of *Rheims*. These two prelates being summoned to appear at the council of *Verdun*, *Artaud* obeyed the citation; and as *Hugh* refused to come, was provisionally confirmed in the see: but that his competitor might have no cause to complain, another assembly was convoked for the following year, in the church of *St. Peter* near *Monson*; and *Hugh* still continuing obstinate, was excluded from the communion of the other bishops, and suspended from all acts of jurisdiction, until other measures should be taken by a national synod, to be held next year at *Ingelheim* near *Metz*.
AT this assembly, where the emperor and king of *France* assisted in person, the sentence was confirmed in favour of *Artaud*, who was acknowledged as lawful archbishop of *Rheims*, and his adversary was anathematized. Several canons were made to prevent simony, and the tythes from being received by laymen; and *Lewis*, in a set speech, complained of *Hugh the Great*, who had raised a rebellion against him, and even deprived him of liberty. In consequence of these complaints, *Otho* ordered *Conrad*, duke of *Lorraine*, to assemble some troops, and accompany *Lewis* into the *Lyonnois*; where being joined by *Robert*, archbishop of *Triers*, and *Adalbero*, bishop of *Metz*, after they had expelled *Hugh* from the see of *Rheims*, they besieged and took *Montaignu*, and then marched against *Laon*, which was defended by *Threbaud*, count de *Chartres*, whom they excommuni-

^h Hist. de Normandie.

cated: they likewise summoned *Hugh the Great* to come and give an account of what he had done to the prejudice of *Lewis* his sovereign. As for *Conrad*, without waiting for the issue of that citation, he quitted *Laon*, and returned to *Lorraine*, after having re-united the city of *Monçon* to the dominions of the empire; and *Hugh the Great* was excommunicated by the pope's legate, in a council held at *Triers* *.

THE *Danes* having taken up arms, and murdered the mar- Otho
grave, appointed by *Henry the Fowler*, in the town of *Sleef- makes war
wic*, and put to the sword part of the *Saxon* colony settled with the
in that place, *Otho* marched into *Denmark*, in the absence of Danes.
king *Harold*, who had gone to the assistance of *Sturbcon*, A. D.
king of *Sweden*; and having defeated some troops that at- 949.

tempted to oppose his passage, penetrated into *Jutland*, without farther resistance. *Harold* no sooner heard of this irruption, than he returned to his dominions, and a battle ensued, the particulars of which are variously related: but, certain it is, the campaign ended in an accommodation, by which the king of *Denmark* agreed, that *Otho* should keep a garrison in *Sleefwic*, to defend the frontiers of the empire, and that the Christian religion should be preached in the dominions of *Harold* †.

AFTER this expedition the emperor repaired to *Aix-la- Mediates
Chapelle*, to regulate the affairs of the empire; and there he a peace
was visited by *Lewis*, and his wife *Gerberge*, who intreated between
him to employ his good offices in terminating the troubles of *Lewis and
France*. He accordingly sent *Conrad*, duke of *Lorraine*, with *Hugh*.
some bishops and counts, to *Hugh the Great*, who being like- 950.
wise tired of war, willingly listened to his propositions, and
peace was soon concluded by virtue of his mediation.

In the course of the same year, the emperor's son *Ludol- Reduces
phus* was married to *Idda*, daughter of *Herman*, duke of *Boleslaus*.
Suabia, a prince of great power and rich possessions, which 951.
at his death devolved to his son-in-law. But, in the midst of
these rejoicings, *Otho* resolved to chastise *Boleslaus*, who,
notwithstanding his former defeats, was still engaged in new
enterprizes against *Germany*. *Otho* therefore took the field;
and having invested the town of *Boleslaw*, into which *Bo-
leslaus* had retired, carried it by assault. Yet he granted him
peace, upon condition that he should repair the churches,
recall the exiled Christians, expiate by canonical penance
the crime of parricide, which he had committed upon the
person of his brother *Wincelaus*, and hold his dominions as
fiefs of the empire †.

* *Flodoard*. l. iv. † *Ann Saxon*: † *DITMAR*. l. i. & ii.

A. D.
950.

The em-
peror ef-
poules
Alix.

952.

His son
Ludol-
phus re-
bels.

955.
Is reduced,
pardoned,
and dies.

IN the midst of these successes, his assistance was implored by *Alix*, widow of *Lotharius*, king of *Italy*, who was persecuted and stripped of her dominions by *Beranger* the younger; and her intreaties were reinforced by the solicitations of pope *Agapetus* II. who was afraid of being oppressed by the same power. In consequence of these importunities, the emperor marched into *Italy*, at the head of a powerful army, married *Alix* (*Ethica*, his first queen, who was a princess of *England*, being dead), made himself master of *Pavia*, in which *Alix* had been kept prisoner, and, in fine, compelled *Beranger* to submit; but he was so generous as to give him back a good part of his dominions, and to bestow upon his brothers the marquisate of *Friuli*, *Verona*, and some lands in *Bavaria*, reserving to himself no more than the glory of his conquest. Yet, notwithstanding these favours, *Beranger* abused his confidence, broke his word, and renounced his friendship.

LUDOLPHUS, son of *Otho* by *Ethica*, though he had already been declared successor to the empire, being chagrined at his father's second marriage, engaged in a confederacy against him with *Conrad* duke of *Franconia*, who was his own brother-in-law, and several other *German* noblemen; by whose assistance he took possession of divers cities, and fixed his head-quarters at *Mentz*. The emperor, apprized of this revolt, marched directly against him, beleaguered that city; and, understanding that his son was fled, pursued him to *Ratibon*, the siege of which he undertook^k. After a blockade of six weeks, the inhabitants, being reduced to extremity, began to treat about capitulation; but, before the articles were settled, *Ludolph*, by the intercession of the nobles, was permitted to retire with his followers, and almost the whole city was burned to the ground. Some time after this retreat, *Ludolph* took the opportunity, when his father was hunting, to throw himself bare-headed at his feet, which he bathed with his tears; and, after a pathetic pause, "Have pity," said he, "upon your child, who returns like the prodigal son to his father. If you permit him to live, who hath so often deserved to die, he will be faithful and obedient for the future, and have time to repent of his folly and ingratitude." The father, equally surprised and affected with this moving spectacle, raised him from the ground, while the tears trickled from his eyes, took him into favour, and forgave all his followers.

^k Annal. Germ. ex Meib. WITT. Annal. l. iij.

OTHO, after having put an end to the civil wars of *Germany*, Otho was, in his return to *Saxony*, met by ambassadors from *Hungary*, who came on pretence of congratulating him on his victories; but, in effect, were spies sent to obtain information of the state of the empire. For, in a little time, he was informed by his brother *Henry*, that these barbarians had entered *Bavaria* with such a numerous army as seemed to have left their own country quite unpeopled; and that they had destroyed a great number of churches and other edifices, and slain all the inhabitants of the towns and villages through which they passed. The emperor no sooner received this information than he marched to the relief of that province, while the *Hungarians* were employed in the siege of *Augsburg*; and, notwithstanding the inferiority of his number, attacked their army with such vigour, that, after a very obstinate engagement, which lasted a whole day, the barbarians were defeated, and cut in pieces with incredible slaughter^l.

NEXT year he turned his arms against the *Slaves*, who had made an irruption into the empire, under the command of *Storneffer*, and found them intrenched with their booty on the other side of the river *Ratz*; which having passed upon a bridge of boats, he defeated them in a pitched battle, in which their king lost his life, and next day put to death seventy prisoners, in order to intimidate the barbarians by this example of severity. Nevertheless they revolted again the following year, and, being again defeated, implored the clemency of *Otho*; who pardoned them, on condition that they should enjoy nothing but the effects belonging to their wives.

DURING this war with the barbarians, he received an embassy from *Abderame*, king of the *Arabs* of *Cordova*, to congratulate him upon his victories, and another from *Helen*, queen of the *Russians*, with compliments of the same kind, and a request, that he would send missionaries to instruct her and Russian subjects in the Christian religion^m. In the midst of these felicitations, came deputies from the *Italians* to demand succour against the tyranny of *Beranger*, and *Otho* sent to their assistance an army under the command of his son *Ludolphus*; who, after having defeated the tyrant, made himself master of several places, and in a great measure delivered that country from oppression: but, instead of applause, he met with nothing but ingratitude from the *Italians*, which rose to such a pitch of insolence, that they even reproached him with his

marches
against the
Hungari-
ans,
whom he
cuts in
pieces.

A.D.
956.
He obtains
a victory
over the
Slaves.

Receives
embassies
from the
Arabs
and Rus-
sians.

Sends an
army into
Italy un-
der the
command
of Ludol-
phus, who

^l Ann. Bèicæ gent.

^m ADLÆR. p. 1. l. iv.

dies of
grief.

A. D.

959.

The pope
implores
again the
assistance
of Otho;
960.

past conduct, and in particular with his revolt against his father. These severe sarcasms overwhelmed him with grief and mortification, which soon brought him to his grave. His death, which was bitterly lamented by *Otho*; gave *Beranger* time to breathe, and take the field with *Peter Caudren*, son of the duke of *Venice*, who had been exiled for having embarked in some enterprize against the interest of that republic. These associates began to pillage the country, and even besieged pope *John XIII.* in the city of *Spoletto*; so that the *Italians* implored again the assistance of the emperor; as a recompence for which, *Valpert*, archbishop of *Milan*, would consecrate him king of *Lombardy*, and the pope bestow upon him the imperial crown. *Otho*, flattered by these proposals, promised to march into *Italy*, as soon as he should have regulated the affairs of *Germany*; which in order to discuss, he assembled a diet at *Worms*, where his young son *Otho*, by his second wife, was elected king of *Germany*, and afterwards crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, tho' he had not yet attained the eighth year of his ageⁿ. Then he appointed *Herman Biling* generalissimo of the troops destined to act against the *Danes* and *Slaves* in his absence, and left young *Otho* under the tutorage of the archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologn*°.

HAVING taken these precautions, and made suitable preparations for his march, he set out for *Italy* at the head of a powerful army, accompanied by his wife *Alix* and a great number of prelates; and, taking his route through *Bavaria*, passed the *Alps* without resistance.

963.
who re-
turns to
Italy, is
consecrat-
ed, and
elected em-

On his arrival at *Rome*, he was consecrated by the pope, crowned emperor of the *Romans*, dignified with the appellation of *Augustus*, and received the oath of allegiance from the senate and the people; who swore to obey him as their sovereign lord^p (H). Upon this occasion, he distributed immense largesses in jewels, gold, and silver, restored to the church all the demesnes formerly granted by *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*;

ⁿ SIGON. de Reg. Ital.

• DITMAR. l. ii.

° FR.

HEW. BOD. SYNT. ex Meib. p. 493.

(H) The same author relates the particulars of the expedition into *France*, which the emperor undertook in favor of *Lewis* his brother-in-law, who, had been deposed by *Hugh*, surnamed the Great, father of *Hugh Capet*. *Lewis* was restored by the arms of *Otho*, who besieged *Paris*,

took *Rheims*, and made himself master of *Lyons*. *Mizney* and other *French* historians take notice of this invasion; tho' *Heiss* is wholly silent on the subject, in all probability, thro' fear of disobliging the *French* among whom he lived.

which

which had been wrested from it by the petty tyrants of Italy: peror of at the same time letters patent were expedited and signed by the Romans. himself, the bishops and nobles, importing, among other things, that, according to the agreement formerly made with *Eugenius* and his successor, the Roman clergy and nobility should oblige themselves, by oath, to hold no election canonical, and to consecrate no pope until he should; in the presence of the emperor's son, or ambassador, make the same promise which had been voluntarily made by *Leo III.* on the same subject.

*Is acknowledged
supreme
head of
the church.*

BERANGER and his wife being retired to *Monteleone*, *Otho* marched thither; upon which they surrendered themselves, were tried, and condemned to perpetual imprisonment at *Bamberg*, where they ended their days.

THE emperor had no sooner withdrawn his army from *Rome*, than pope *John*, on pretence that *Otho* intended to dispossess the church of the lands which had been granted it by his predecessors, introduced into the city *Albert*, the son of *Beranger*, who, with his father, had been his most outrageous enemy, and indeed the occasion of his imploring the assistance of *Otho*.

THESE news no sooner reached the ears of the emperor, *calls a* than he returned to *Rome* (the pope and his new patron having fled at his approach), obliged the senate and people to renew the oath and promise they had formerly made, and, in order to be revenged on *John*, convoked a council to try him for the scandalous life he was accused of having led; for it was not his piety that had raised him to the papal chair, into which he was thrust at the age of eighteen, by the intrigues and bribery of his father *Albéric*, whose influence and power were at that time excessive (1). The council being assembled,

*deposes
John XII.
and elects
Leo VIII.
to the
papal
chair.*

(1) The deposition of the witnesses, publicly read in council, contained the following particulars: that, in celebrating the mass, he had not communicated; that he had ordained a deacon in a stable, without minding the canonical hours; that he had told divers bishops, *that he had told divers bishops, that he had told divers bishops*, to a boy not more than ten years of age; that he had violated the widow of *Rainerus*; lain with his own father's concubine, converted

the holy palace into a brothel, and caused *John* the cardinal and subdean to be assassinated: that he was guilty of setting fire to houses; that he had been seen exciting tumults in the streets, with a helmet on his head, and a sword by his side; that, in the course of his debauches, he had drank the health of the devil; and that, in playing at hazard, he had been several times heard invoking the names of *Jupiter* and *Venus* (1).

(1) *Gob. Perf. at. 6. c. 51.*

heavy complaints were preferred against him for the space of three days by the archbishops and bishops of *Italy*, as well as by the people of *Rome*. *Otho*, who assisted in person, ordered him to be summoned to appear and answer to these accusations; and he, refusing to obey, was declared unworthy of the papacy, and deposed: tho' many authors affirm, that, as this council could not be œcumenical, the deposition was of no validity. Be that as it will, *Leo VIII.* was elected by the unanimous suffrages of all present, took the chair in that very assembly, and executed the decree by which *Otho* was recognized as emperor of the *Romans*, sovereign and king of *Italy*, with all the rights and prerogatives for him and his successors, which pope *Adrian I.* had granted to *Charlemagne*, including the right of investiture of bishoprics, and the election and confirmation of popes. This decree was confirmed by the oaths of all the clergy and people; so that, from this date, we may justly stile *Otho* emperor of the *Romans*, as he now acquired the same title by which it had been conferred on *Charlemagne*. Having settled these affairs at *Rome*, he set out to appease some disturbances at *Spoletto* and *Camerina*, which he erected into principalities; but, in his absence, several prelates and noblemen at *Rome*, at the instigation of *Albert*, favoured the return of *John*; who deposed *Leo*, and declared his election void. In a few days after his having thus re-assumed the papal chair, he was found in bed with a woman, and miserably slain by a rival. Nevertheless his adherents still persisted in refusing to own *Leo* for pope, and proceeded to the election of *Benedict V.* who was accordingly promoted to the chair of *St. Peter*.

A. D.
964.

*John re-
sumes the
papacy,
annuls the
election of
Leo, and
is murder-
ed.*

*He is suc-
ceeded by
Benedict;*

*who is de-
posed by
the em-
peror.*

THE emperor, being informed of these transactions, marched back to *Rome*; which having besieged and taken, he cited *Benedict* to appear before another council, which he convened for that purpose; and he, obeying the summons, presented himself in his pontificals, and was questioned for his presumption in usurping the apostolic dignity, during the life of pope *Leo*, contrary to the oath which he had taken. *Benedict* owned his error, implored the compassion of the council, and humbled himself before *Leo*: who, at the desire of *Otho*, pardoned his crime, permitted him to keep the deacon's orders, and sent him into exile at *Hamburg* &c. Then *Otho*, having obliged the *Romans* to promise an oath, that they would never choose a native of any other country than *Germany* for their emperor, and regulated the affairs of *Italy*, he returned to his own country, and held a diet at

Cologne, in which was confirmed the division of *Lorraine* into two provinces; the one, bounded by *Luxemburg* and *Franché Comté*, being given to *Frederick* count de *Bar*, brother of *Adalbero*, bishop of *Mentz*, and *Bruno*, archbishop of *Cologne*, reserving the other, which comprehended the duchies of *Brabant*, *Juliers*, and *Guelderland*, together with the provinces contiguous to the mouths of the *Rhine*, the *Meuse*, and the *Schelde* (K).

POPE *Leo VIII.* dying in the course of this year, the *Romans* sent deputies to know the pleasure of *Otho*, who supplied his place with *John XIII.* who was imprisoned by the *Romans*; but soon released, and re-established by the emperor, who returned to *Rome* for that purpose.

NOT contented with the re-establishment of *John*, he resolved to punish the *Romans* for their inconstancy. The consuls were exiled, the tribunes of the people were hanged, the number of a dozen; the body of *Jesfro*, who had been ring-leader of the revolt, was dug up, dragged through the streets, and thrown into the common sewer; and his successor as prefect was exposed upon an ass, with his head to the tail, and, after having been publicly whipt, confined in a dungeon.

HAVING made these examples, the emperor established a well-regulated policy in *Rome*, visited the cities of *Italy*, and confirmed the donations of *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*. Then he caused his son *Otho* to be crowned at *Rome*, as his associate in the empire; and, this ceremony being performed, he repaired to *Capua*, where he was visited by ambassadors from *Nicephorus Phocas*, emperor of the *Greeks*, who came to renew the alliance that formerly subsisted between the eastern and western empires. This negotiation did not immediately succeed; for *Nicephorus*, who still possessed some towns in *Calabria* and *Apulia*, demanded that *Otho* would relinquish some cities that he occupied in the same country,

* BARRE. t. iii. p. 427.

• SIGON. de Reg. Ital.

(K) While the emperor was in *Italy*, count *Sigefroi* purchased the castle of *Luxembourg* from *Viggo*, abbot of *St. Maximin* of *Triers*, to whom he gave in exchange the fief of *Vicelme*, situated in the country of *Ardennes*. The contract was executed at

Triers, in presence of *Bruno*, archbishop of *Cologne*, and many other noblemen, of the clergy as well as laity. And this is the origin of the fortress, duchy, and illustrious house, of *Luxembourg* (2).

(2) Ann. Trev. l. ix. p. 467.

A.D.
966.
Treachery used by the Greeks.

and assist him in expelling the *Saracens* from others which they had reduced. *Otho*, whose aim was to make himself master of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, in order to unite *Italy* and *Germany* into one empire, did not relish the demand of *Nicephorus*; but nevertheless took that opportunity of sending a favourable answer to the *Greek* emperor, and of signifying his assent to a proposal which *Phocas* had made, of a match between young *Otho* and his daughter *Theophania*. Notwithstanding these advances to friendship and alliance, *Nicephorus* was so much incensed at the refusal of his other demand, and the presumption of *Otho* in assuming the title of emperor, that he formed an execrable plan of revenge, which he was enabled to execute by his craft and dissimulation. Ambassadors were sent to *Constantinople*, to regulate the conditions and ceremony of the nuptials, and a place appointed at which the princess was to be received by the *Germans*; who, repairing to this rendezvous with a magnificent train, were all massacred or carried prisoners to *Constantinople*, except one or two who escaped with the news of this horrible treachery.

968.
Otho sends an army into Calabria;

Otho, incensed at this enormous perfidy, ordered counts *Gonther* and *Sigefrid*, who were brothers, to march with the flower of his army into *Calabria*, where they defeated the *Greeks*, commanded the noses of their prisoners to be cut off, and ravaged the whole country.

972.
and dies at Minleben.

NICEPHORUS being soon after put to death by his subjects, *John Zemiscas*, his successor, not only released the *Germans*, who were prisoners at *Constantinople*, but also sent *Theophania*, with a magnificent train and rich presents, into *Italy*, where her marriage with young *Otho* was happily consummated (L). The emperor, seeing his son married to his wish, and of age and capacity to govern his dominions, enjoyed in peace the prosperous state of his affairs for two years; at the end of which he died apoplectic at the city of *Minleben*, in *Saxony*, after a reign of thirty years, during which he gave extraordinary proofs of uncommon generosity, piety, and courage, and justly acquired the appellation of

* LUITFRAND. WITCHIND. de Corb. Ann. l. iii.

(L) About this time *Magdeburg* was erected into the metropolis of all *Vandalia*. The bishops of this see have since

been primates of *Germany*; but now, that it is in the possession of protestants, it is considered as a secular principality (3).

(3) *Barre. Hist. d'Allemagne*, t. iii. p. 443. *Annal. de l'Emp.* t. i. p. 143.

Great.

Great^u. While his father was alive, he married *Editha* (M), daughter of *Edmund*, king of *England*, who founded the city of *Magdeburg* (N); and afterwards took to wife *Alix*, who, at his death, retired into a convent (O).

O T H O II.

O T H O II. surnamed *the Sanguinary* on account of the great quantities of blood which he spilt, had been elected and crowned during the life of his father, whom he now succeeded in the empire, tho' he was at first opposed by *Henry* duke of *Bavaria*, his own cousin-german; who, being supported by some bishops, ^{succeeds his father, and is opposed by} ~~claimed~~ himself to be proclaimed at *Ratisbon*: however, he was soon reduced, and not only obliged to renounce his title, but also to relinquish his duchy, which was given by the victor to *Otho* duke of *Suabia*. This competitor being quelled, the emperor turned his arms towards the river *Elbe*, to oppose *Harold*, king of *Denmark*, who had espoused the interests of *Henry*, and advanced with a large body of troops to support his cause: but he was so hampered by *Otho*, that he sued for peace, adding considerable presents to his request, and solemnly promising to pay an annual tribute; for which he gave his own son as an hostage^x.

^u Annal. Saxon. p. 324.^x BARRE. t. iii. p. 453.

(M) The continuator of *Bede's* ecclesiastical history says, that *Henry the Fowler* sent to *Athelstan*, king of *England*, for his two sisters, *Adgetta* and *Egitta*, the last of whom he gave in marriage to his son *Otho*, and the other to a certain duke, whose territories lay near the *Alps*. The lady, whom *Otho* espoused, is variously named by various authors, being sometimes called *Adiva*, sometimes *Eadittia*; by *Witchind*, *Editha*; by *Ditmarus*, *Eda*; and by *Matthew of Westminster*, *Eadgewa*.

(N) His body was transported to *Magdeburg*, and buried in the cathedral church; where his tomb is still to be seen, distinguished by this inscription:
Tres lustris causæ sunt, hoc sub marmore clausæ.
Rex, decus ecclesiæ, summus honor patriæ (4).

(O) The annals of this reign are written by the famous *Wit-tichind*, who was a monk of *Corbie*, and lived in this age. His work is intitled *Annales de Gestis Ottonum*, and published in the collection of *Meibomius* (5).

(4) Annal. Sax. ubi. sup.

(5) Sigeb. de Vir. Illust. c. 139.

whom he
defeats,
with the
duke of
Carin-
thia, and
makes
peace with
the king
of Bohe-
mia.

A. D.

977.

THUS satisfied, *Otho* marched against the duke of *Bohemia*, who had been one of the confederates of his competitor; and, having ravaged his country, returned to make head against *Henry* himself and the duke of *Carinthia*, with the bishop of *Frevingen*; whom having defeated and taken, he regained the city of *Passaw*, and concluded an advantageous peace with the duke of *Bohemia*. As for *Henry*, he was tried by an assembly convoked at *Quidlembourg*; and, being convicted of treason, was, together with the bishop of *Auglbourg*, exiled to *Utrecht*, where they were kept as prisoners of state ¹.

HE had scarce disengaged himself from these troubles, when he was involved in a war with *Lotharius*, king of *France*, about the superiority of *Lorraine*, which the *French* monarch revived his pretensions; tho' the immediate cause of the quarrel was the countenance and support which *France* gave to the two sons of *Ranier* count of *Hainault*, who had been stripped of his dominions in the reign of the late emperor. These two noblemen, looking upon the death of *Otho* I. as a favourable conjuncture, assembled some forces, marched towards their hereditary dominions, and, in a pitched battle near *Peronne*, defeated *Garnier* and *Rainaud*, the two noblemen to whom *Hainault* had been given: then they entered *Low Lorraine*, which they ravaged without opposition; and being seconded by *Charles*, brother of *Lotharius*, and *Hugh Capet*, at the head of a good army, they took possession of their father's country, after having expelled counts *Godfrey* and *Arnold*, who had endeavoured to obstruct their progress ².

THE emperor being intimidated by such a powerful association, headed by the king of *France*, who took this opportunity to claim the superiority of those and many other countries, endeavoured to appease that monarch by bestowing, in fief, the duchy of *Lorraine* upon his brother *Charles*. The king of *France*, however, was not satisfied with this concession, which he did not consider as a sufficient atonement for the loss he had sustained by *Otho's* incroaching upon the right he had to certain parts of that duchy. He therefore resolved to do himself justice; and suddenly raising an army, marched directly to *Aix la Chapelle*, in order to seize the emperor by surprize. *Otho* escaped with difficulty, and, inflamed with a desire of revenge, assembled his forces to the number of sixty thousand men, with which he made an irruption

¹ Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 145.

² BARRE. ubi sup.

into the territories of *Lotharius*, ravaged all *Champagne* and the *Isle of France*; and, having granted peace to the *French* on his own terms, evacuated the country, tho' not without sustaining a considerable loss by an inundation of the river *Aisne*, in consequence of which a great part of his army was destroyed ^a (P).

GEOFFROY count of *Anjou*, surnamed *Grisegonelle*, or *Grey Coat*, who commanded the *French* army on this occasion, proposed to decide the quarrel by single combat with *Otho*^b; but this expedient was rejected by the imperialists, who would not suffer their sovereign to expose his life to such unnecessary hazard. Be this as it may, certain it is, he concluded a peace with the king of *France*, and bestowed the whole of *Low Lorrain*, with part of the other, upon *Charles*, brother of *Lotharius*, who did him homage on his knees for that country ^c.

HAVING adjusted the affairs of *Germany*, his next expedition was into *Italy*, in order to chastise the *Romans*, and recover *Calabria* and *Apulia*, of which the *Greeks* had taken Italy, and possession, by the assistance of the *Saracens*, contrary to the treaty made by the two emperor's, by which these two provinces were given to *Otho* as the dowry of *Theophania* his wife. Immediately after the death of *Otho* I. the *Romans* resolved to free themselves from the *German* yoke, while his successor was involved in domestic troubles. They raised one *Cencius* to the consulate^d, elected a new pope called *Boniface* VII. who had gone to *Constantinople* to invite the *Greek* emperors *Basilius* and *Constantine* to come and take possession of *Rome*; and their fleet, being joined by the *Arabians* of *Africa*, had invaded and subdued the coast of *Naples* and *Calabria*.

OTHO, in consequence of these ravages, marched into *Italy*, entered *Rome* without opposition, and from thence going in

^a BARRE. t. iii. p. 459.

^c Chronogr. Sax. ad ann. 979.

^b Annal. del'Emp. t. i. p. 146.

^d BARON. ONUPH.

(P) Some authors affirm, that *Otho* was defeated by the *French*, who pursued his army for three days and three nights as far as the river *Meuse*, and that *Lotharius* afterwards made peace with him against the inclination

of his nobles (6). Others allege the emperor retired without loss, and passed the river in a miraculous manner, following *St. Wolfgang*, who divided the waters, so that they marched over on dry ground (7).

(6) Guil. de Nang. 1^{re} ed. ann. 978. Leon d'Ostia. p. 2. l. iii. p. 158.

(7) Brun. Annal. Boier.

quest of the enemy, hazarded a battle, in which his enemies were at first put in disorder; but the *Roman* troops and those of *Beneventum* giving ground, and the *Saracens* rallying, his army was so totally defeated, that, being divested of all hope, he fled to the sea-side, and finding a vessel, embarked, and committed himself to the mercy of the waves. The ship being taken by corsairs, who did not know his quality, he was carried into *Sicily*, where he ransomed himself for a large sum of money, having deceived his captors by the facility with which he spoke the *Greek* language (Q).

A. D.
980.

It was not long before he levied new forces, and renewed the war; during which the *Saracens* in *Italy* were totally exterminated. Then he not only chastized the cowards who had abandoned him in the first engagement, but, having discovered that the inhabitants of *Beneventum* had favoured his enemies, and even furnished them with provisions, he allowed his army to plunder the town for three whole days, and then ordered it to be set on fire. Nor did the *Romans*, who had likewise deserted him, escape with impunity. Having invited the principal persons of that city to an entertainment, he, in the midst of their festivity, commanded the authors of his overthrow to be selected, and put to death in the presence of the whole company*; a punishment, which, tho' perhaps just in the main, was inflicted in a manner unworthy of a Christian prince, or a sound politician. This, in all probability, was the origin of the epithet *Sanguinary*; tho' he was likewise distinguished by the appellations of *Rufus* and *Terror Sarazinorum*.

Orders the
Saxons
and Thuringians
to make
head a-
gainst the

BEING informed that the *Sclavonians*, taking advantage of his absence, had invaded *Saxony*, and ravaged the bishoprics of *Brandenburg*, *Havelberg*, and *Merzburg*, he ordered the *Saxons* and *Thuringians* to make head against them; and they, in obedience to his command, charged the enemy with such valour and success, in different encounters, that they

* BARRE. t. iii. p. 462.

(Q) *Gobelinus Persona* alleges, that it was a *Grecian* ship in which *Orbo* embarked; and that the master being prevailed upon, by the promise of a great reward, to carry him to the city of *Rossario*, where the emperors

then was, he took the opportunity, while the ship was at anchor in the road, and the master hesitating, to throw himself into the sea, and swim ashore, where he was received by his wife and adherents (8).

(8) *Gob. Pers. Cosmogr. æt. vi. cap. xlix.*

were obliged to retreat with the loss of thirty-seven thousand Slavonians (R).

Soon after this invasion, he died at Rome of a bloody flux[†], A. D. 983. occasioned by a wound which he had received from a poisoned javelin, in the battle with the Greeks; and his death is said to have been hastened by his grief for the behaviour of the empress Theophania, who had in public expressed her joy at the victory of her countrymen, tho' it was obtained over her own husband (S).

O T H O III.

O T H O III. when he succeeded to his father, was no more than twelve years of age (T), for which reason he was surnamed *the Infant*; but that appellation being soon laid aside, he acquired the epithet of *Rufus*, and at length was dignified with the title of *Wonder of the World*. His election produced great disputes among the *Italians* and *German* princes, who had accompanied his father to Rome; some of whom openly declared in favour of *Henry* duke of *Bavaria*, and nephew to *Otho* the first. This prince, who aspired to the empire, claimed the tutelage of young *Otho*, as his nearest relation, and the government of the empire during his minority; on this pretence he assembled a body of troops, with which he entered *Cologne*; and, seizing the person of the emperor, who was in that city, under the care of archbishop *Warin*, conducted him, with a numerous train, to *Corbie*, and from thence to *Magdeburg*, where they were received amidst the acclamations of the people &c. The *Italians*, who wanted to shake off the *German* yoke, and have an emperor of their own country, set up a *Roman* nobleman called *Crescentius*, who was at that time consul, and governor of the city. But the greatest part of the *German* princes espousing the cause of *Otho*, who, tho' young, had already given marks of a fine genius, delivered him from the hand of *Henry*, and conveyed him to *Weissstadt*, where he was proclaimed with the

† Annal. Sax. l. iv.

‡ BARRE. t. iii. p. 474.

(R) About this time *Hamburg* and *Bremen* were erected into an archbishop's see (9).

(S) *Otho* made a law, forbidding his subjects to believe an *Italian* upon his oath; and decreed, that, when a cause could not be determined by evidence,

it should be decided by single combat (10).

(T) According to *Gobelinus Persona*, he was but two years of age when his father died; but I have, with *Heist*, followed the authority of *Ditmar*, *Baronius*, and other historians.

(9) Annal. de l'Emp. t. ii. p. 147.

(10) Meist. Hist. part ii. p. 2. c. 5.

A. D.
984

usual solemnity^h; his title being acknowledged through *Germany, Lombardy*, and all the other dominions of the empire, except the city of *Rome*, which had swerved from its duties in favour of the consul *Crescentius*. As for his education, it was committed to the care of the archbishop of *Mentz* and the bishop of *Hildesheim*.

He van- DURING the first years of his reign, *Lotharius*, king of
quishes the *France*, invaded *High Lorrain*, and made himself master of
Slavoni- *Verdun*ⁱ, which however was, after his death, restored to
nians and *Germany*. The *Slavonians* too, assisted by the *Danes*, fol-
Danes. lowed the example of the *Romans*, and revolted; but *Otho*
987. had scarce attained the age of fourteen, when he began to exercise his courage and capacity against these rebels, whom he vanquished in divers expeditions, and at length wholly subdued.

Contest in
France
between
Charles
duke of
Lorrain
and Hugh
Capet.

LEWIS V. of *France* dying about this period, the contest began between *Charles* duke of *Lorrain*, uncle to the deceased, and *Hugh Capet*, a nobleman of great talents and influence, who found means to render his competitor odious to his countrymen, to obtain a neutrality of the emperor, and, lastly, to ascend the throne of *France*, after having taken prisoner the unhappy *Charles*, who did not long survive his misfortune^k.

988.

OTHO, having now attained the years of discretion, visited the towns upon the *Rhine*, confirmed the privileges of the bishops and abbots, displayed his liberality among the monasteries; from thence made a progress into the northern provinces, and tarried some time at *Wildebusen*, where he made several regulations for the establishment of good order and the reformation of the people, who were still in a state of savage ignorance and barbarity^l.

War with
the Danes.

THE *Danes*, under their king *Sueno*, pillaged *Lower Saxony* without opposition, divided their fleet into two squadrons, one of which entered the *Weser*, with a view to send out detachments, and lay the country under contribution; while the other, anchoring before *Staden*, took the city after a faint resistance, and then defeated the emperor's lieutenant, count *Thierri*, who had assembled the militia in order to stop their career: but *Sigefroi*, who had commanded in *Staden*, and made shift to escape, rallied and reinforced the imperial troops, and attacking the enemy, who by this time were thinned by distempers, and incumbered in their booty, compelled them to retire on board their ships with the utmost precipitation. The other detachment met with a worse

989.

^h Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 151.

ⁱ SPICER. t. xii. p. 265.

^k NANG. ad ann. 990.

^l KRANTZ. l. xiv. Sax. Chron. 23.

fate; for, being bewildered in their excursions, they forced one *Hurbert* to be their guide, and he, having led them into the midst of a number of morasses, gave notice to the *Saxons*, who fell upon them with great fury, and retook the booty they had gained; so that *Sueno* returned to his own country with great discomfiture and disgrace ^m.

IMMEDIATELY after this expedition, war broke out between him and *Eric*, king of *Sweden*, who fitted out a powerful navy; and, giving battle to the *Danish* fleet, obtained a complete victory, in consequence of which he united *Denmark* to his dominions. *Otho*, unwilling to be at variance with such a powerful neighbour, made him tenders of friendship, which were immediately embraced, and they engaged in a treaty, by which it was stipulated that *German* missionaries should be allowed to preach the gospel in the dominions of *Eric*, and that none of the subjects of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, or *Norway*, should, for the future, make incursions into the territories of the empire ⁿ.

WHILE the emperor was employed in these transactions, *Crescentius* neglected nothing to establish his power in *Rome*, where he even imprisoned pope *John XIV.* because he favoured *Otho's* party; who, dying in confinement, was succeeded by *John XV.* This new pope was so persecuted by the same tyrant, that he fled into *Tuscany*, from whence he sent legates to implore the emperor's protection. The *Romans*, remembering what they had suffered under the two former *Othos* for their cruelty to their popes, were so terrified at this appeal, that they immediately deputed some citizens of the first rank to wait upon *John*, and intreat him to return, with the most solemn assurances that they would, for the future, behave to him with all due reverence and respect. Tho' *John*, confiding in these protestations, returned to *Rome*, where he was honourably received, the emperor, who knew the caballing genius of the *Romans*, sent the empress *Theophania*, his mother, into *Italy*, with a body of troops commanded by *Hugh* marquis of *Brandenburg*; and she, being a woman of spirit and discernment, restrained the *Romans* and the rest of the *Italians* within the bounds of their duty, for the space of two years; at the expiration of which she set out for *Germany*, leaving the marquis, whom she had created governor of *Florence*, to observe the motions of that unsteady people. In her journey to *Frankfort* she was taken ill, and died at *Nimeguen*; and, her body being transported to Co-

A.D.
990.

The em-
press
Theo-
phania
goes to
Italy.

^m Annal. Paderb. ad ann. 989.

ⁿ Chron. Magdeburg.

logne, was interred with great funeral pomp, at which *Otho* assisted in person.

A.D. 993. AFTER this ceremony, he marched against the *Slaves*, who had revolted, and taken the city of *Brandenburg*; and, having expelled them from that place, obliged them to sue for peace, which he granted upon reasonable terms; but it was not long before they were spirited up to another revolt by one *Chiezo*, an outlaw, under whose conduct they surprised *Brandenburg*, and made themselves masters of several other places; which, however, were privately betrayed to the emperor by *Chiezo*, on condition that he should be pardoned, and restored to the possession of his effects. The *Slaves*, incensed at his perfidy, continued the war with various success, until, after having suffered divers repulses, they again humbled themselves before the emperor, who granted them peace, in consideration of releasing all their prisoners without ransom, and surrendering the places which they still possessed on the frontiers of the march of *Brandenburg*.

Diet of
Magde-
burg.
995.

OTHO, having thus triumphed over the *Slaves*, repaired to *Halberstadt*, to assist at the dedication of a new church built by bishop *Hildebrand*; from thence he made a circuit thro' the different provinces of the empire, where he enacted new laws, and made regulations for the preservation of order and the public peace; which being established by his care and discretion, he assembled a diet at *Magdeburg*, in order to demand supplies of troops and money for his expedition into *Italy*, where his presence was necessary to punish *Crescentius* for a fresh revolt, and quell the seditions which had risen in the cities of *Milan*, *Capua*, and *Beneventum*. These demands were backed by the remonstrances of the nuncios, whom pope *John* sent thither to invite him to come with a powerful army, in order to punish the rebels, quiet the troubles of *Italy*, and receive the imperial crown; and his departure was, moreover, earnestly solicited by *Lan- dulphus*, archbishop of *Milan*, who had been expelled from his diocese, and come to *Magdeburg* to implore the emperor's protection.

Otho en-
ters Mi-
lan;

OTHO, having raised a considerable army in consequence of the supplies he received from the diet, began his march for *Italy*, and invested *Milan*; which being surrendered in a few days, he entered the city in triumph, and re-established the archbishop, by whom he was crowned king of *Lombardy*. Thence he proceeded to *Pavia*, where he celebrated the festival of *Easter*, and afterwards repaired to *Ravenna*,

where, hearing of the pope's death, he caused *Bruno*, a re- and is
lation of his own, to be elevated to the papal chair; and this crowned
Saxon prelate, who assumed the name of *Gregory V.* soon at Rome
after his elevation crowned his patron emperor of the Ro- with
mans, with the same solemnity and pomp which had at- great so-
tended the coronation of his father and grand-father ^{p.} lemnity.

THIS ceremony being performed, the consul *Crescentius* A.D.
pardoned by the intercession of the new pope, and the trou- 996.
bles appeased at *Capua* and *Beneventum*, *Otho* set out on his He does a
return to *Germany*; and, visiting in his route the principal very sig-
places of *Lombardy*, staid some time at *Modena*, where he did not piece of
a very signal piece of justice upon the person of his empress justice at
Mary, daughter of the king of *Arragon*. That princess, in- Modena.
censed at the repulse she had met from an *Italian* count, of
whom she was enamoured, accused him to the emperor of
having made an attempt upon her honour; in consequence
of which charge, he was tried, condemned, and beheaded:
but, a few days after his execution, the countess found means
to prove his innocence, and undeceive the emperor; who,
being extremely shocked at the discovery of the truth, or-
dered the empress to be burned alive, and fined himself, for
his over hasty judgment against the count, in a large sum for
the benefit of the widow ^a (U).

THE emperor, at his return to *Germany*, found the *Slaves* 997.
in possession of *Bernbourg*; from whence having expelled
them with great slaughter, he repaired to *Magdeburg*, and
deprived the archbishop *Giselarius* of the government of that
country, because he allowed himself to be surprised by the
barbarians. This expedition was scarce finished when he
understood that *Crescentius*, having been again elected consul
in *Rome*, had expelled pope *Gregory*, and elevated another to
the papal chair under the name of *John XVI.* (X). Enraged

^p Chron. Hildesh. t. iii. ^a BARRE. Hist. d'Allemag. t. iii.
p. 506. ^r Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 155.

(U) Several authors, in giving underwent this ordeal to the
a detail of this transaction, astonishment and conviction of
introduce a miracle in favour *Otho*; and it was great pity she
of the deceased count; who, they had not tried the experiment be-
say, laid injunctions on his wife fore the death of her husband.
to go and manifest his inno- This story is supposed to be fa-
cence to the emperor, by hand- bulous (11).
ling a red hot plate of iron in (X) He was bishop of *Pla-*
his presence. She accordingly centia (12):

(11) *Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 155.*

(12) *Ditmar.*

*Besieges
Rome,
and puts
to death
John
XVI. and
Crescen-
tius.*

A. D.
998.

999.

at this insult, the emperor returned with a powerful army to *Rome*; which having besieged and taken, he ordered the antipope to be thrown from the top of the castle of *St. Angelo*, after his eyes had been put out, and his nose cut off. *Crescentius*, being also apprehended, was mounted upon a sorry mule, and conducted through the city with his face towards the tail. Then being put to the torture, together with twelve of his accomplices, they were all hanged in a cluster upon the highest tree that could be found, as an example to the rest, who had supported or connived at their rebellion (Y). The two usurpers being punished in this manner, and *Gregory* restored, the emperor, to prevent such seditions and revolts for the future, published a decree, importing, that the *Germans* should have the sole right and power of electing a *Roman* emperor among their own countrymen, exclusive of all other nations; and that the pope should have no other authority on such occasions, than that of proclaiming the election at *Rome*, and of performing the ceremony of coronation, when the emperor should think proper to go thither. This decree was ratified and confirmed by *Gregory*; and several historians affirm, that *Otho* and this pope, in order to secure the empire to the *German* nation, afterwards reduced the electors to the number of seven^t.

THEN he returned to *Pavia*, where he made several constitutions and regulations for restoring and establishing the peace of *Italy*. The new pope dying in the second year of his papacy, he supplied his place with *Gerbert*, formerly archbishop of *Rheims*, who took the appellation of *Sylvester II.* and prevailed upon *Otho* to renew and confirm the privileges which had been bestowed upon the *Roman* church by *Pepin*, *Charlemagne*, and *Lewis the Debonnaire*.

HAVING settled the affairs of *Italy*, he set out for *Germany* by the way of *Bologna*, halted at *Ratiblon*, entered *Thurin-*

* HEISS Hist. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 190.

^t BARR. ut sup.

(Y) The manner of this con-
ful's death is variously related.
Some authors allege he was kill-
ed by treachery; and others
affirm he fell valiantly fighting
in defence of the castle, after

having sued in vain for the em-
peror's forgiveness; we are like-
wise told, that *Otho* took his
widow for his mistress,* and af-
terwards did penance for his
cruelty to the antipope (13).

(13) *Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 156. Bar. t. iii. p. 510. Glab. v. i.*

gia, and visited some towns in *Upper Saxony*; from thence he proceeded to *Poland*, which he erected into a kingdom at the solicitation of duke *Boleslaus*, who did him homage, and agreed to hold his dominions as a fief of the empire^u (Z). Poland erected into a kingdom. 1000.

SOON after this excursion, being informed that the *Sara-Marches* had taken the advantage of his absence to make an irruption into the *Campania of Rome*, surprize *Capua*, and ravage the neighbouring country, he hastened into *Italy*, assembled his army at *Ravenna*, retook the city of *Capua*, expelled the barbarians, re-established peace, and repaired to *Rome* with a small number of troops. While he resided in the capital, the *Tiburtones*, whom he had formerly chastised for sedition, revolted again; so that he was obliged to go and besiege the place, which surrendered at discretion. At his return, he found the gates of *Rome* shut against him; and altho' he was next day admitted, with a few noblemen and officers, a conspiracy, formed by *Gregorio*, of the house of *Toscanella*, had well nigh deprived him of his life: the *Roman* people openly rebelled against his authority, and it was with great difficulty he made his escape by the assistance of the marquis of *Tuscan*, who had in vain attempted to effect an accommodation*. While he was busied in assembling forces to revenge this indignity, he was poisoned by a pair of gloves, sent him in a present by the widow of *Grescentius*, whom he is said to have debauched under promise of marriage^v. into Italy. A. D. 1001. Is poisoned by a pair of gloves; 1002.

THE empire lost a great prince by the death of *Otho*, who was equally brave, resolute, and just; and, after the example of his father and grandfather, remarkably liberal to the church: inasmuch that two thirds of the ecclesiastical benefices in *Germany* are said to have been granted by these three emperors. He died at *Paterno*, in the 30th year of his age, after a glorious reign of 18 years; his body was carried and dies at Paterno.

* BARON. ann. t. v. p. 962.

* DITMAR, l. iv. p. 44.

v Hist. de l'Eglise, par BENED. Prelat.

(Z) *Otho* is said to have opened the tomb of *Charlemagne* at *Aix la Chapelle*, where he found the body of that emperor seated on a throne of gold, in his imperial robes, with a golden sceptre in his hand, and a crown,

adorned with rich jewels, upon his head (14).

Had *Charlemagne* been interred in this manner, the *Normans*, who destroyed *Aix la Chapelle* before this period, would hardly have left him sitting upon a throne of gold.

(14) *Ditmar*, l. iv. p. 44.

to *Aix la Chapelle*, at his own request, and his bowels interred at *Augsburg* ².

. H E N R Y II.

A. D.
1002.

Henry
duke of
Bavaria
is elected.

Herman
declared
an enemy
of the em-
pire.

OTHO being dead without issue, three competitors started up, supposed equally qualified to wear the imperial crown; *Henry* duke of *Bavaria*, *Herman* duke of *Suabia* and *Alsace*, and *Ekkard* marquis of *Saxony*. The first of these, being grandson to *Otho* II. by his daughter, was, by means of his superior power, elected, confirmed, and consecrated, at *Mentz*, by the archbishop *Wilgisus*, under the name of *Henry* II. and he is said to have been the first who was raised to that dignity by the votes of the seven electors; but this success he did not attain, until his competitor *Ekkard* was assassinated by the counts *de Northien*, who were *Henry's* partisans ².

HE began his reign, by causing *Herman* duke of *Suabia* to be declared an enemy to the empire, in an assembly at *Mentz*; and, in consequence of that declaration, he ravaged his dominions with the forces of *Germany* raised for that purpose: while his rival, resolving to support his pretensions by force of arms, and being furnished with troops by the bishops of *Constance* and *Coire*, advanced into *Alsace*, and took by assault the city of *Stralburg*; which, tho' part of his own dominions, had declared against his interest. He likewise proposed to decide the contest by single combat with *Henry*, who accepted the challenge; but his courage failed him, and he was in a little time obliged to yield to the superior fortune of his adversary ^b.

1003.

THE new emperor, having laid *Suabia* under contribution, marched into *Saxony*; and at *Mersburg* received the oath of fidelity from duke *Bernard*, the archbishops of *Magdeburg* and *Bremen*, the counts palatine, *Boleslaus*, king of *Poland*, and the deputies of the *Slaves*, who inhabited *Pomerania*.

BEING thus acknowledged through all the dominions and fiefs of the empire, he, in compliance with the repeated request of his nobles, married *Cunegunda*, daughter of the first count of *Luxemburg*, and their nuptials were celebrated at *Paderborn* with great magnificence. Then he made a circuit

² GOR. PERS. Cosmod. æt. vi. c. 51. Chron. Magdeb. ex Meib. p. 260. HIN. BOG. p. 487. DITMAR Chron. . ^a Annal. Sax. p. 382. ^b Vita Henrici æt. ADLE.

among the provinces, where he exercised the virtues of equity and benevolence, deciding vexatious processes, restoring the peace of families, and re-establishing union among the nobility, which were divided by feud or faction. After having taken these wise steps for the advantage of his country, he repaired to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned a second time for the satisfaction of several noblemen, and, in particular, of *Herbert* archbishop of *Cologne*, who alleged, that the first coronation had not been performed with due formality. Henry is crowned again at Aix la Chapelle.

MEAN while *Herman*, tho' he made shift to surprize *Herman Brifac*, and gained some other petty advantages, found great difficulty in keeping his partisans together; at length, despairing of being able to cope with the power and authority of *Henry*, he made him a tender of his submission, by the canal of his friends. This being accepted, he came in person to *Bruchsal*, and on his knees asked pardon of the emperor, who received him courteously, and granted him every thing he desired, on condition that he should repair the damage he had done to *Straßburg* ^c.

NOTWITHSTANDING this accommodation, he renewed his intrigues, in conjunction with *Theodoric* duke of *Lorraine*, and publicly committed cruel outrages against some of the emperor's adherents in that duchy; so that *Henry*, in order to put a stop to these disorders, assembled a diet of the *Lorraine* noblemen at *Thionville*; where it was resolved to raze the castle of *Mulberg* on the *Rhine*, and other precautions were taken to interrupt the junction and correspondence of two such powerful opposers.

IN the midst of these deliberations, the emperor was informed of the commotions by which *Italy* was agitated. The people of *Lombardy*, determined to shake off the yoke, had chosen *Harduin* marquis of *Ivrea* king of *Italy*; but this election was declared null and void by *Arnold* archbishop of *Milan*, who intended that no king of *Lombardy* should be chosen without his consent; and, in an assembly of bishops and abbots, decreed the crown to *Henry*, to whom he instantly sent deputies with an account of the transaction, conjuring him to come without delay, and deliver the *Italians* from the tyranny of the usurper. In consequence of these solicitations, *Henry* sent a body of troops, under the command of *Otho* duke of *Carinthia*; but *Harduin*, having secured the passes of the *Alps*, attacked them with 15,000 men, in a confined place, where they could not be extended tions in Italy.

^c GUILLIM, de Epif. Argent. p. 50.

or drawn up in line of battle; and, after a very obstinate engagement, obtained a complete victory^d.

Conquests of the king of Poland. THE emperor, tho' very much mortified at this misfortune, could not quit *Germany*, where he was detained by fresh disturbances. *Boleslaus* duke of *Bohemia* being a weak and

A. D.

1004.

worthless prince, the king of *Poland* resolved to seize this favourable conjuncture of retrieving *Cracovia*, of which his dominions had been dismembred by the father of *Boleslaus*. With this view he besieged and took the town by assault; then pillaged *Silesia*, and penetrated to the heart of *Moravia*, destroying the whole country with fire and sword. He afterwards invaded *Lusatia*, and made himself master of *Meissen*; while *Boleslaus*, instead of taking measures to oppose his progress, wallowed in riot and debauchery, and committed such acts of oppression, that his subjects revolted. They chose in his room *Wladowic*, a prince of the ducal house of *Bohemia*, who actually received the investiture of the duchy from the emperor; but he dying soon after his election, the *Bohemians* supplied his place with *Jaromir*, brother of *Boleslaus*, without the consent or approbation of the *Polish* king, who was so much incensed at their presumption, that he re-established the banished duke by force of arms. This worthless prince, being now again in quiet possession of his dominions, invited his principal noblemen to a banquet, where they were cruelly murdered: his subjects, exasperated at this act of barbarity, complained to the king of *Poland*; who, on pretence of adjusting the difference between him and his people, proposed a conference, in the midst of which all the duke's attendants were assassinated, his own eyes were put out, and he was sent prisoner to the frontiers of *Poland*, while the king repaired to *Prague*, where he was joyfully received by the *Bohemians*, as their deliverer and protector.

An association against Henry.

ALTHO' *Henry* was not a little chagrined at these revolutions, he did not pretend to treat the king of *Poland* as an usurper; but demanded that he would do him homage for *Bohemia*, and the other conquests he had made of the siefs of the empire. To this demand he sent no definitive answer. The emperor being informed that he had entered into a secret association against him, with *Hezelo de Scheweinsfurt* marquis of *Franconia*, *Ernest* duke of *Suabia*, and *Henry's* own brother, *Bruno* bishop of *Augsburg*, he convoked a diet at *Mersbourg*, and in consequence of the deliberations of that assembly, raised an army of *Bavarians*, *Lorrainers*, and *Franks*, with which he entered *Franconia*, took the town

^d SIGON. de Reg. Ital.

of *Martclau*, and other strong places, which were dismantled, compelled *Hezelo* to fly for protection to the *Polish* king, and ordered *Ernest*, who was taken prisoner in the course of the campaign, to be beheaded *.

THESE disturbances being quelled, *Henry* ordered the *Saxon* and *Thuringian* troops to march against the *Slaves* of *Holstein*, who had revolted at the instigation of the king of *Poland*; pillaged the country between the *Oder* and the *Elbe*, and threatened *Saxony* with fire and sword; while their allies, the *Polish* troops, made frequent irruptions into *Bavaria*. The emperor having repelled these barbarians, ravaged *Holstein*, secured the frontiers with proper garrisons, and at his return to *Mersbourg* was reconciled to his brother *Bruno*; at the same he pardoned *Hezelo*, at the intercession of the archbishop of *Mentz* and the duke of *Saxony*: but, in order to prevent the bad consequences of such a turbulent genius, he ordered him to be confined in the citadel of *Givinkenstein*, under the care of the archbishop of *Magdeburg* †.

IN the course of this year, *Stephen*, duke of *Hungary*, who had married the emperor's sister *Gisella*, and converted a great part of his subjects to the Christian religion, received from pope *John XIX.* the title of king and apostle; and his dominions were divided into ten bishoprics, of which *Strigonia* was appointed metropolitan, though, as yet, the idolaters of that country were much more numerous than the Christians.

HENRY being strongly solicited by the archbishop of *Milan* to march against *Hardouin*, set out for *Italy* by the way of *Bavaria*, where he had the satisfaction of seeing *Henry* of *Luxemburg*, his brother-in-law, elected duke by the states or parliament of that province: then leaving his wife *Cunegunda* to the care of the archbishop of *Magdeburg*, he passed the *Alps*, and marched towards *Verona*. *Hardouin* retired at his approach, while he proceeded to *Pavia*, was there crowned king of *Lombardy* by the archbishop of *Milan*; but *Hardouin* having some partizans in the town, they inflamed the populace to such a degree, with artful insinuations, that the whole city was involved in tumult. One multitude ran to the palace, in order to destroy the emperor, whom they loudly reviled as a tyrant and usurper; while another croud secured the gates against the imperial troops, which were encamped without the walls. The *Germans*, who were within the city, assembled for the defence of their sovereign, repulsed the seditious *Pavians* from

Slaves revolt.

A. D. 1005.
Henry passes the Alps, and is crowned at Pavia.

* BARRE, tom. iii. p. 546.

† Annal. Saxo. p. 639.

the palace, while the soldiers in the camp, understanding the nature of the commotion, scaled the walls in great numbers, and committed a terrible slaughter in the streets, until the emperor commanded them to desist, and retired to the fortrefs of *St. Peter*. Thither the principal inhabitants repaired in a body, to implore his clemency, and lay the blame of the sedition on a few partizans of *Hardouin*, who had practised upon the ignorance of the vulgar: and he generously accepted of their apology, observing that mercy was his favourite virtue, and that he would much rather find their obedience the result of affection, than the consequence of fear &c.

*He returns
to Ger-
many;*

HAVING quelled the commotion, and received the submission of the other towns of *Lombardy* by their deputies, he repaired to *Milan*, where he found the inhabitants quiet, and in appearance devoted to his service; and from thence he returned to *Germany*, by the country of the *Grisons*, punishing delinquents, and enacting salutary laws and regulations in the countries through which he passed. In his progress through the provinces, he convened an assembly of bishops and nobility at *Dortmund*, in *Westphalia*, for the reformation of abuses both in church and state; and acquired such a character of generosity, justice, and moderation, that people came from all the neighbouring nations to settle in the empire. As *Boleslaus*, king of *Poland*, still continued in possession of *Bohemia*, and set *Henry* at defiance, the emperor having declared war against that prince, by the advice of an assembly convoked at *Merstourg*, marched against the usurper, whom he expelled from that duchy, and entered *Prague* in triumph, where he established *Jaromir*, brother of their former duke *Boleslaus*; and gave orders for releasing *Hezelo*, marquis of *Franconia*, at the desire of a minister, who solicited his liberty in a pathetic address from the pulpit. Then he assembled his nobles at *Magdeburg*, where it was resolved to prosecute the war, with the utmost vigour, against the king of *Poland*, who continued to make incursions as far as the river *Sala* in *Misnia*; and, in consequence of that resolution, he passed the *Elbe* with an army of *Saxons*.

*pursues the
Poles into
their own
country.*

After a fatiguing march, he found the enemy encamped between the rivers *Tober* and *Oder*, and crossing the first of these in the night, fell upon them with such fury, that they were intirely defeatedⁿ. *Boleslaus* being no longer able to keep the field, sued for peace; which being granted, he returned

ⁿ *Barre*, ubi supra.

ⁿ *Annal. Boic.* p. 375.

to *Saxony*; and severely punished some *Slaves*, who had interrupted the public peace in his absence, A. D. 1006.

It was now that he put in execution the scheme he had formed of erecting *Bamberg* into a bishopric; which was confirmed by the pope, on condition that the bishop should hold it of the holy see, and pay a yearly acknowledgement of an hundred silver marks, and an horse completely caparisoned: but the bishop of *Wurtzburg* opposing the erection, as an expedient that would dismember his diocese, Henry assembled a council at *Frankfort* upon the *Main*, where he prostrated himself before the bishops and prelates, who, to the number of thirty-five, subscribed the confirmation of his holiness¹. Council at Frankfort.

BOLESLAUS, weary of the peace, endeavoured, by false insinuations, to decoy *Stephen*, king of *Hungary*, into an alliance against the emperor; but that project miscarrying, he fell upon the *Prussians*, or *Borussians*, a savage people, who migrating from the source of the *Tanais*, had settled in the deserts between *Poland* and the *Baltic*, where they lived in the utmost barbarity, feeding on horse flesh, and worshipping serpents: yet they must have possessed something worth having, as the *Poles* found their account in plundering the country. 1007. The Poles invade Prussia.

ABOUT this period, *Otho*, duke of the *Low Lorrain*, and last known descendent of *Charlemagne*, being dead, *Henry* bestowed the duchy upon *Godfrey*, count of the *Ardennes*. This donation gave umbrage to *Albert*, count of *Namur*, and *Lambert*, brother of the count of *Mons*, who had married sisters of the late duke, and were now patronized by the king of *France*, who wanted to revive his pretensions upon *Lorrain*. They were likewise supported by *Baldwin*, count of *Flanders*, who began hostilities in their favour, and took *Valenciennes*, and other places upon the *Scheld*, belonging to *Low Lorrain*. *Henry*, incensed at these outrages, assembled an army, and marched into *Flanders*, where he made a fruitless attempt upon *Ghent*; but he ravaged the country, and carried off a number of the nobility; so that *Baldwin* was fain to submit, and was pardoned on condition that he would restore *Valenciennes*, defray the expences of the war, and give hostages for his future fidelity^k. 1008.

AT the same time *High Lorrain* was involved in trouble and confusion, on account of the bishopric of *Metz*, which was usurped by *Theodoric*, brother of the empress *Cunegunda*; *Low and High Lorrain*. Trouble of

¹ Concil. tom. ix. p. 784.
l. ii.

^k Annal. Flandric.

while another brother, called *Adalberon*, ambitious of obtaining the archbishopric of *Triers*, opposed *Megingaude*, who was nominated to that see by the emperor. But these usurpers were furnished with troops by *Frederic*, count de *Luxemburg*, and chiefly supported by their own brother *Henry*, duke of *Bavaria*, who was for his rebellious behaviour put to the ban of the empire.

A.D.
1010.
Commotions
in Sax-
ony.

WHILE the emperor was employed in appeasing the troubles of *Lorrain*, *Saxony* was violently agitated by new commotions, excited by a quarrel between *Herman*, son of *Ekkard*, count of *Thuringia*, and *Guncelin*, marquis of *Misnia*, which last, in an assembly of the *Saxon* noblemen, being convicted of having begun the hostilities, and of having engaged in secret connexions with *Boleslaus*, king of *Poland*, the declared enemy of the empire, *Henry* divested him of his dominions, which were given to his rival, and committed him as a prisoner to the care of *Arnold*, bishop of *Halberstadt*. His brother *Bruno* promised to deliver the town of *Meissen* to *Boleslaus*, who sent his troops thither for that purpose; but they were repulsed by the garrison, whom their commander could not corrupt, and next day *Herman* entered and took possession ¹.

1011.
The imperial troops
ravaged
Silesia.

THE emperor resolving to chastise *Boleslaus* for his clandestine practices, sent an army against him, under the command of *Jaromir*, duke of *Bohemia*, who advanced into *Silesia*, besieged *Glogaw*, and ravaged the open country; while *Henry* fortified *Lebus*, on the frontiers of *Brandenburg* and *Poland*, by which means he was master of the *Oder*, and in a condition to hinder *Boleslaus* from making irruptions into *Lusatia* and *Brandenburg*.

THEN he assembled a diet at *Coblentz*, in order to do justice upon the rebellious bishops of *Metz* and *Triers*, and their brother the duke of *Bavaria*, who some time after came in person to *Aix-la-Chapelle*, where they threw themselves at his feet, implored his clemency, and were taken into favour ^m.

Henry
was at
Aix-la-
Chapelle
by the
1012.

THE emperor, fatigued with these incessant troubles, cloyed with success, sick of human grandeur, and charmed with the tranquillity of a monkish life, entertained thoughts of abdicating the empire, and becoming a canon of *Straßbourg*: but these sentiments were combated by the princes of the empire, who represented the necessity of his continuing upon the throne for the common good of *Germany*, in such

¹ Chron. Sax. p. 416.
ad. an. 1012.

^m Chron. Sax. apud LEIBNITZ,

eager remonstrances, that he suffered himself to be persuaded, and contented himself with founding a rich prebend, the possessor of which was called *King of the Choir*. By this time *Boleslaus* had surprized and destroyed the town of *Lebus*, so that *Henry* was obliged to march against him; but the *Pole* leaving part of his troops with his son *Mecelaus*, whom the emperor defeated, retired with the rest to make himself master of *Bohemia*, from whence *Jaromir* had been expelled by his subjects, on account of his cruelty and oppressive reign. Accordingly the *Pole* pillaged the country, and besieged *Prague*, which surrendered to his arms; while *Jaromir* fled for protection to *Henry*, by whose assistance *Othalric*, the son of *Jaromir*, was put in possession of the duchy, at the desire of the *Bohemians*, who detested the father, whom the emperor sent into exile at *Utrecht*. As for *Boleslaus*, having interested himself in a quarrel between the duke of *Russia* and his son, he resolved to support the latter by force of arms; but being afraid of leaving his kingdom unfurnished, while at variance with the emperor, he solicited *Henry* for peace, which was granted, after he had done homage for his dominions ¹⁰¹³.

DURING these transactions the *Slaves* revolted, and ravaged the northern banks of the *Oder* with fire and sword, under their prince *Mestivoi*, who had been affronted by *Theodorick*, marquis of *Eastern Saxony*; but *Henry* was obliged to leave the care of this war to the diet convened at *Gruningen*, because his own presence was become necessary in *Italy*, in order to repress the insolence of *Hardouin*, who had re-assumed the authority in his absence, and reigned without controul. He therefore assembled an army, repassed the *Alps* of the *Tyrol*, defeated *Hardouin* on the frontiers of the *Veronese*, and proceeding to *Rome*, was crowned with his wife *Cunegunda* by pope *Benedict VIII.* who asked him on the steps of *St. Peter's*, *If he would always preserve his fidelity to him and his successors*; and was answered in the affirmative ¹⁰¹⁴.

IMMEDIATELY after this ceremony he founded a bishopric at *Bobio*, where *St. Columban* died, made some regulations at *Pavia*, and having appeased the troubles of *Lombardy*, he set out on his return to *Germany*. In passing thro' *Burgundy*, he visited the abbey of *Clugni*, where he was received as an associate, and afterwards desired he might be

² BARRE, tom. iii. p. 582.
p. 204.

^o MURATOR. anecd. t. ii.

entered as a monk in the abbey of *St. Vall* at *Verdun*; upon which occasion the abbot received him as a brother, on condition he should obey him in all things, and then very prudently commanded him to continue at the helm of the government.

A. D. 1015. In obedience to this order, he determined to bear the toils of empire. He quelled some disturbances in *Suabia*,

1017. *The king of Poland violates the treaty and again sues for peace.* and afterwards convoked a diet at *Mersburg*, where *Boleslaus*, being accused of having violated the treaty, and favoured the revolt of *Hardeuin*, was summoned to appear before the states of the empire. Instead of obeying this call, the king of *Poland* began to levy troops, and endeavoured to engage the duke of *Bohemia* in his interest; and the emperor passing the *Elbe* with an army, attacked and defeated the son of *Boleslaus*. This war continued for some time with various success; and, at length, was terminated by a treaty of peace, concluded at *Bautzen*, at the earnest supplication of *Boleslaus*, who obliged himself to pay an annual tribute to the emperor for *Poland* and *Moravia*.

1018. *Rodolphus III. king of Transjurane Burgundy, implores the emperor's protection.* AFTER the ratification of this treaty, *Henry* repaired to *Basil*, where he was visited by *Rodolphus III.* king of *Transjurane Burgundy*, who being insulted by his own subjects, on account of his effeminacy, came to implore the emperor's protection, and even ceded to him all his dominions. In consequence of this deed, *Henry* made a progress through the kingdom which he had thus obtained; but the people were so exasperated at the condescension of *Rodolphus*, that he was extremely ill received; and had the mortification to be refused admittance into several towns; so that being provoked at these insults, he permitted his troops to ravage the country, and set the villages on fire. His vengeance was afterwards completed by *Werner*, bishop of *Straßbourg*, who, with a body of imperial troops, advanced as far as *Geneva*, against the noblemen who had revolted, over whom he obtained a complete victory^p. While the bishop was thus employed, *Henry* marched into *Lower Saxony* against duke *Bernard*, who harassed that province with his tyranny and exactions; but finding himself unable to cope with the emperor, he submitted to his power and correction, and gave sureties for his future behaviour. Having quieted *Saxony*, he repaired to *Frankfort* upon the *Main*, in the utmost tribulation for the calumnies which began to be circulated against the empress *Cunegunda*, who, conscious of her inno-

The empress Cunegunda

cence, is said to have demanded the trial, and to have un-^{passes the}dergone the fiery ordeal unhurt ^{fiery or-} (A).

ALTHOUGH the towns of *Lombardy* enjoyed the most perfect tranquillity under the emperor's lieutenants, *Sicily*, *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, were still exposed to the invasions of the *Saracens*, who at length fell upon *Tuscany*, took *Euna*, and expelled the bishop; but by the diligence of the pope, who levied forces by land, and armed barks to cut off their retreat, they were defeated and cut in pieces, and their prince, who was taken prisoner, afterwards beheaded, for insulting his holiness. But the occasional invasions of those pirates were not of such consequence to *Italy* as the troubles occasioned by the domination of the *Greeks*, who still possessed part of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which were governed by an officer called *Catapan*, appointed by the emperors of *Constantinople*. The people, harassed by the exactions of this lieutenant, took to their arms, under the command of *Mello*, prince of *Bari*, with a view to expel the *Greeks*; who having received a strong reinforcement from *Constantinople*, threatened the revoltors with death and destruction. *Mello* finding himself incapable of opposing such a formidable power, had recourse to the assistance of the *Normans*, who now began to appear in this part of the world, and who served him so effectually, that he defeated the *Greeks* in a pitched battle: but these being again reinforced, were victors in their turn; so that *Mello*, and even pope *Benedict*, fled to *Germany*, in order to implore the protection of the emperor, who then resided at *Bamberg*.^{The pope repairs to Bamberg.}

HENRY II. tho' extremely well disposed to succour *Italy*, was for some time detained, by certain feuds which had broke out between the princes of the empire: but, in the mean time, at the desire of his holiness, he, by a fresh edict, confirmed the laws which he had formerly enacted at *Pavia*, and convoked an assembly at *Aix la Chapelle*, to adjust the measures for the expedition (B).

¶ BARRE, tom. iii. p. 613.
p. 169.

¶ Annal. de l'Empire, t. ii.

(A) This year is remarkable for the death of *Ditmar*, bishop of *Merseburg*, the famous historian,* who was a *Saxon* nobleman of the first rank (1).

(B) These laws enacted or confirmed, plainly prove that *Henry* was at this period sovereign of *Rome* and *Italy*, and

that the pope possessed nothing but by grant from the emperor. The sovereignty which the bishops of *Rome* afterwards acquired, was owing to the divisions of the empire, of which they took the advantage, to establish their own authority.

(1) Vit. Ditmar. per Reinartium, p. 120.

Henry ALL the troubles of *Germany* being appeased, and the necessary preparations made for the occasion, he set out for *Italy*, marching along the coast of the *Adriatic*; and sent a detachment of 11,000 men, under the command of *Poppo*, archbishop of *Triers*, who penetrated into the country of the *Marses*, now called *Abruzzo*; while *Pelegri*n of *Cologne* marched directly to *Rome*, to secure the persons of *Pandolphus*, prince of *Capua*, and *Athenulphus*, abbot of *Monte Cassino*, who had joined the *Greeks* in the pope's absence. The abbot hearing of their approach, embarked at *Otranto* for *Constantinople*, and perished by shipwreck; and *Pandolphus* surrendering himself, was brought to the emperor's camp, tried, condemned, and pardoned, at the intercession of *Pelegri*n. *Henry* was then employed in besieging the town of *Troy* in *Apulia*, which surrendered at discretion, after having been reduced to extremity; he afterwards reconquered all the places which the *Greeks* had taken in his absence, subdued the provinces of *Calabria* and *Apulia*, which were obliged to give hostages for their fidelity, bestowed the principality of *Capua* on the count *de Feana*, furnished the nephews of *Mello* with troops, to drive the *Greeks* from *Bari*; gratified his own followers with considerable rewards; appointed a new abbot of *Monte Cassino*, and his army being considerably diminished by sickness, returned to *Germany*, leaving *Italy* to the enjoyment of that peace which he had established.

A. D.
1021.

He reduces
Apulia
and Calabria,
and
returns to
Germany
1023.

ALTHOUGH *Henry's* reign had been generally prosperous, the incessant troubles of *Germany* had kept him in such continual agitation, that, till this period, he never could enjoy that tranquillity which seems to have been the constant object of his wish. But now that he had appeased all the disturbances in his dominions, he resolved to reap the fruits of his labours in quiet; and being desirous of living on an amicable footing with his neighbours, he had an interview with *Robert*, king of *France*, in which these two princes contracted a particular friendship for each other, and concerted measures for reforming the abuses which had crept into their dominions. This conference, at that time called the meeting of the two saints, was the last remarkable transaction of *Henry's* life; for, soon after his return, he died at *Grono* in the month of *July*, after a prosperous reign of

Has an interview
with Robert,
king of France.

* GIABER, l. iii. c. i. Chron. Cassin, c. xlii.

twenty-two years ' (B). He was surnamed *the lame*, *the Holy*, and *the Hungarian Apostle*, having derived the first of these appellations from an impediment in walking, and the other two from his devotion and liberality to the church (C). A.D. 1024.

C H A P. III.

Being a Detail of the German Affairs, continued to the Death of Henry V.

*
C O N R A D II. surnamed *the Salick*.

GREAT disputes ensued upon the death of Henry of Conrad Bavaria, about the nomination of a successor to the empire: at length the princes and states assembling in the open fields between the cities of Mentz and Worms, elected Conrad, duke of Franconia, surnamed *the Salick*, because he was born on the banks of the river Sala (D). The chief care of this new emperor was employed in re-establishing justice, chastising vice, and rewarding virtue. II. surnamed the Salick, chosen emperor.

* BARRE, tom. iii. p. 627. HEN. BOD. SYNTAG. ex Meibom. p. 499. GOR. PERS Cosmod. æt. vi. cap. lii. p. 229. HEISS. l. ii. cha. vi. MACH. Hist. Fir. lib. i.

(B) Finding his end approaching, he sent for the parents of the empress, and, in presence of many bishops and abbots, addressed himself to them in these words. *I restore your daughter a virgin, as I received her from your hands.* A very strange declaration from the mouth of an husband: but, it seems, both had made a vow of chastity, which by the bye was extremely ridiculous (1).

(C) Henry's donations to the church (some of them at least) seem to have been extorted from him, by the power and influence of the clergy: for Meibomius tells us, that when the

bishop of Paderborn pronounced a benediction upon him in public, for his generosity to the church, the emperor turned his head on one side, and in a low voice cursed him for having extorted, by dint of importunity, so many grants to the detriment of his other subjects (2).

(D) At this election, besides a great many ecclesiastic princes, were present Benno, duke of Saxony, Albert, duke of Austria, Hetzel, duke of Bavaria, Ernest, duke of Suabia, Frederic, duke of Lorraine, Gosfilio, duke of Holland and Zealand, Enpo, duke of Franconia, and Ulric, duke of Bohemia (3).

(1) * *Annal. de l'Empire*, t. i. p. 170.
(3) *Heist*, liv. ii. c. vii.

(2) *Meib. Res. Apol. Otton. IV.*

A. D. 1027. THE Lombards revolting in the third year of his reign, he marched into Italy, and having reduced the rebels by force of arms, went to Rome, where on Easter-day he was consecrated, and crowned emperor by pope John XX. with great solemnity, being accompanied by Canute, king of Denmark and England, and Rodolphus III. king of Transjurane Burgundy^u. He had not been many days at Rome, when he

Causes his son Henry to be declared his successor, and crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle. He was obliged to return into Germany, on account of some insurrections; but before he attempted to quell them, he took care that his son Henry, at that time about twelve years of age, should be declared his successor, and solemnly crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle. Then he took the field against the authors of the rebellion, who were Ernest, duke of Suabia, Albert, duke of Carinthia, and his own cousin Conrad, duke of Worms. Having defeated them in several engagements, in one of which Ernest was slain, after having been put to the ban of the empire (E), he made the rest prisoners, and brought them to a trial before a general assembly of all the princes and members of the empire, who, by a solemn decree, deprived them of their dominions.

Marches against Mifco, king of Poland, who surrenders at discretion. THIS war being happily concluded, he turned his arms against Mifco, king of Poland, who had, without his consent, assumed the name and quality of king, and by severe usage compelled his own brother Otho to fly into Germany, and implore the emperor's protection. Henry complied with his request, and put him at the head of an army, which he himself afterwards reinforced in person: then marching against Mifco, they drove him to such extremity, that he was fain to take shelter with Othalric, duke of Bohemia. This prince, in defiance of all the rights of hospitality, offered to deliver up his guest to the emperor, who rejected the proposal with disdain, and conveyed the letter to Mifco, whom he advised to choose another asylum. The unfortunate prince, sensibly touched with this instance of generosity, repaired to the camp of the emperor, laid aside his robes and ensigns of royalty, threw himself at his feet, and surrendered at discretion. Henry accepted of his submission, and restored his dominions, on the same terms on which his fa-

^u BARRE, t. iii. p. 643. SIGON. l. viii. p. 194.

(E) *Ban* originally signified a widow, thy children orphans, banner, afterwards an edict, and send thee, in the name of the devil, to the four corners of the earth, and, lastly, a declaration of outlawry, the form of which was this; *We declare thy wife*

ther

ther *Boleslaus* had possessed them; while *Othalric*, struck A. D. 1030. with his magnanimity, laid down his arms and sued for peace *.

As for *Otho*, he was reconciled to his brother, and ho- Poland is noured with the title of duke; but being afterwards assassi- dismem- nated, the emperor, who suspected *Misico* of the murder, lered. divided *Poland* into three provinces, one of which he left in the king's possession, and the other two were put under the care of *Polish* governors, who were attached to the interests of the empire. This division was the source of new revolutions that happened to *Poland*; for the governors, taking advantage of *Misico*'s weakness and want of popularity, began to act as sovereigns, and at length declared themselves independent; so that *Silesia* was dismembered from the *Polish* dominions, and *Moravia* was retrieved by *Othalric*, duke 1032. of *Bohemia*.

BUT this prince, notwithstanding such an accession to his dominions, had well nigh been ruined by the indiscretion of his son *Brztislaus*, who had carried off and married *Judith*, the daughter of count *Albert Otho*, surnamed *the Sincere*. The father, exasperated at this outrage, complained in a most pathetic manner to the emperor, who forthwith entered *Bohemia* with an army, to take vengeance upon the ravisher; and an obstinate battle would have ensued, had not *Judith*, like one of the *Sabine* women, interposed between the two hosts, and by her charms and intreaties effected a peace, which was concluded in the tent of *Conrad*, at whose feet *Brztislaus* threw himself, and was immediately forgiven †.

THIS treaty being concluded, he marched into *Saxony* *Inursions* against the *Lutizians*, a people inhabiting the duchy of of the *Lu-Mecklenbourg*, who lived in *Pagan* ignorance, and made in- tizians. cursions into the territories of the empire. As they had committed flagrant outrages in *Saxony*, he pursued them to their own country, which he laid waste with fire and sword; put a great number of them to death, in revenge for the sacrilege and barbarities they had been guilty of, and imposed a considerable tribute upon their nation ‡.

THIS war was succeeded by another with *Stephen*, king *His expe-* of *Hungary*, who having demanded the duchy of *Bavaria* dition a- in right of his wife, sister and heiress of *Henry II.* and met gainst *Ste-* with a refusal from *Conrad*, attempted to do himself justice phen, king of Hun- by force of arms. The emperor, without waiting for an gary, and invasion, entered *Hungary* with a powerful army, desolat- Eudes,

* HERSS. l. ii.

† Epitom. rer. Bohem. t. iii. c. i.

‡ HELMOLD. in Chron. Slav. l. i. c. xviii.

count of
Champagne.

A.D.
1034.

ing the country with fire and sword; and *Stephen* finding himself unable to withstand him, made his submission, and subscribed to the terms of peace which *Conrad* was pleased to impose: nor was he less fortunate in the termination of his difference with *Eudes*, count of *Champagne*. *Rodolphus*, king of *Transjurane Burgundy*, had left *Conrad* his heir, in consideration of his having married *Gisela* his younger sister: but *Eudes*, count of *Champagne*, and son of *Bertha*, who was the elder sister of *Rodolphus*, resolved to have his share in the succession; and with that view maintained a bloody war against the emperor, who at length gained a battle near *Barle-duc*, in which the count was slain ^a.

By his death *Conrad* obtained peaceable possession of all *Transjurane Burgundy*, and at *Soleurre* held an assembly of the bishops and noblemen, who took the oath of allegiance, and acknowledged his son *Henry III.* as his successor in that kingdom (F).

Rebellion
in Poland,
which is
invaded by
the duke of
Bohemia.

WHILE the emperor was employed in taking possession of this fair inheritance, *Misco*, king of *Poland*, died, and his son *Casimir* being too young to manage the reins of government, his mother *Ricliza* assumed the regency. She governed with such indiscretion, that the subjects revolted, and she and her son were obliged to fly to *Magdeburg* in *Lower Saxony*, with all the jewels and treasure which had been amassed by the two preceding kings.

BRZTISLAUS, duke of *Bohemia*, profiting by these intestine disturbances, entered *Poland*, ravaged the country, made himself master of *Breslau*, *Pozna*, *Uladislaw*, and even of the capital *Gesna*, from which he carried off an immense booty.

CONRAD, who had received queen *Ricliza* with great hospitality, pretended to dispose of the treasure which his vassal, the duke of *Bohemia*, had got; and his demand being

^a SIGEBERT, ad ann. 1033.

(F) On the death of *Rodolphus* ended the three last kingdoms of *Burgundy*, after having lasted 177 years after the foundation of the first, which was that of *Provence*, formed by the emperor *Lôtharius*, in favour of his third son *Charles*. To this succeeded the kingdom

of *Transjurane Burgundy*, erected in 888 by *Rodolphus I.* and both these were comprehended in that of *Arles*, which began in 930, by virtue of a treaty made between *Hugh*, king of *Italy* and *Provence*, and *Rodolphus II.* (1).

rejected, he advanced into *Bohemia* with a body of troops, at sight of which *Brztislaus* submitted. As for young *Casimir*, he took the habit of a monk at *Cluny*; but the *Poles*, tired of living in anarchy, sent deputies to the pope, who granted a dispensation; in consequence of which he was released of his vows, and ascended the throne of his ancestors ^b.

HAVING thus adjusted his affairs on this side the *Alps*, He is recalled into Italy by a revolt of the bishop of Milan. and seen his son *Henry* married to *Gonilda*, daughter of *Canute*, king of *England*, he was recalled into *Italy*, by a new revolt of several cities and noblemen, headed by *Herbert*, bishop of *Milan*, whom he had loaded with favours. His march was so sudden and unexpected, that *Milan* was in a manner retaken by surprize, and the bishop falling into his hands, was condemned to perpetual imprisonment. But, besides this rebellion, he had another errand into *Italy*, which was to comply with a decree of the electors, importing, that every emperor should go and be crowned at *Milan* and *Modena*, in order to make a distinction between the kingdoms of *Lombardy* and *Italy*. A. D. 1038.

AFTER all these expeditions he repaired to *Rome*, where he received the benediction of pope *Benedict IX.* who had succeeded *John XXI.* Then he returned into *Germany*, where he was seized with the gout in his legs, and died suddenly at *Utrecht*, in the 15th year of his reign, after having approved himself a generous, just, able, and magnanimous prince (G). His body was deposited in the cathedral church of *Spire*, which he himself had built, together with a superb palace for his ordinary residence ^c. Is seized with the gout and dies at Utrecht. 1039.

^b DU GLASS, Hist. Polon. n. 191. ^c GOB. PERS. Cosmod. æt. vi. GLAB. RODULPH. lib. iv. HEN. BOD. Syntag. ex Meib. p. 500.

(G) All those who distinguished themselves in his service, received marks of his generosity: among others, a gentleman who had the misfortune to lose a leg, was gratified with as many pieces of gold as one of his boots would contain, which the emperor told him were given to defray the expence of his cure (1).

(1) *Heist*, liv. ii. c. viii.

HENRY III.

Is succeeded
ed by his
son Henry
ry III

A. D.
1040.

who re-
duces
Brztislaus
and Ovo.
1043.

HENRY III. surnamed *the Black*, son of *Conrad* and *Gisella* of *Suabia*, was elected in consequence of his father's recommendation, and crowned at *Aix-la-Chapelle* by *Philigrino*, archbishop of *Cologn*.

BRZTISLAUS, duke of *Bohemia*, refusing to pay him the tribute which was due, he invaded his dominions, and obliged him to submit. Then he turned his arms against *Ovo*, who had usurped the crown of *Hungary*, and having driven him out of the kingdom, restored it to *Peter*, from whom it had been unjustly taken: but finding him extremely odious to his subjects, who declared, they would rather die than yield obedience to such a cruel tyrant, he bestowed the crown upon a nephew of king *Stephen*, who had retired to the court of *Bohemia*. This young prince was likewise expelled by the people, who were strongly attached to *Ovo*, and who, not contented with his expulsion, entered *Austria* and *Bavaria*, pillaging and destroying the whole country.

THE emperor, incensed at their presumption, marched into *Hungary* with a considerable army; and *Ovo* being unable to withstand his power, sued for peace, which he obtained on the following conditions: that he should pay forty talents of gold to the empire, indemnify *Austria* and *Bavaria*, for the damage they had sustained by the irruption of the *Hungarians*, and release all the prisoners^d. Next year, however, *Henry* received such complaints of *Ovo's* cruelty and rapacity, that he again entered *Hungary*, defeated him in a pitched battle on the river *Raab*, took possession of *Alba Regalis*, where he was acknowledged as sovereign of the kingdom by the states, assembled for that purpose, and afterwards reconciled them to their old prince *Peter*, who being re-established in his kingdom, did homage for it to the emperor. As for *Ovo*, he endeavoured to excite fresh commotions after *Henry's* departure; but being abandoned by his adherents, he retired to *Transylvania*, where he was apprehended and brought to *Peter*, who, by the advice of his noblemen, condemned him to be beheaded.

ROME had been some time distracted by different factions, particularly those of the counts of *Tusculum* and the *Ptolemei*. The first of which had thrust *Benedict IX.* into the papacy, who, having continued some time in the chair, was deposed by the *Ptolemei* and the people, who had substituted in his

^d ADLREITTER, Annal. Boi. gent. p. 411.

place *Silvester* III. but, in three months, this antipope was deposed in his turn by the *Tusculi*, and his rival re-established. *Benedict*, however, finding himself universally hated, voluntarily resigned in favour of *John* archpriest of the Roman church; and soon after, repenting of his resignation, wanted to re-assume his former dignity. These three popes, supported by their several partizans, maintained themselves, each upon a different branch of the revenues belonging to the holy see, one residing at *St. Peter's*, another at *Santa Maria major*, and the third in the palace of the *Lateran*, and all of them living in the most profligate and scandalous manner. During this triumvirate, a certain priest called *Gratian*, partly by artifice, and partly by presents, prevailed upon all three to renounce their pretensions to the papacy; and the Romans out of gratitude to the man, who had delivered the church from such a terrible schism, chose him pope under the name of *Gregory VI* ^e.

THE emperor taking umbrage at this election, in which *Quiets the* he had not been consulted, marched with an army into *Italy*, troubles of which had was crowned at *Milan* by the archbishop; then repaired to Rome, *Placentia*, where he was visited by pope *Gregory VI.* and afterwards convened a council at *Sutri*, in which the resignation of the three popes was confirmed, *Gregory VI.* deposed, and by consent of the Romans as well as Germans, the papal chair was filled with *Heidiger*, bishop of *Bamberg*, who assumed the name of *Clement II.* and afterwards put the imperial crowns on the heads of *Henry*, and *Agnes*, his empress (H). *these pretenders to the papacy.*

A. D.
1046.

THIS ceremony being performed, and the Romans having sworn they would never for the future choose a pope without having sent previous notice to the reigning emperor, *Henry* went to visit the monastery of *Monte Cassino*, which received valuable marks of his favour: from thence he proceeded to *Capua*, where he was visited by the Norman princes, whom he confirmed in the possession of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which they had conquered from the *Greeks*: but when he expressed a desire of seeing *Beneventum*, he was refused admittance; nor could he at that time punish the inhabitants for the insult, as he had already sent the best part of his troops to Germany with the empress. However, he prevailed upon the

OTHON. FRISINGEN. l. ii. c. xxiii.

(H) *Agnes* was daughter of *William*, duke of *Peitou* (1).

(1) *Glab.*

pope, who was along with him, to excommunicate the *Beneventines*, and bestowed the city and its dependences, as fiefs of the empire, upon the *Norman* princes, in case they should subdue them by force of arms *.

SCARCE was he returned to *Germany* from this expedition, when he received the news of *Clement's* death; and soon after was informed, that a certain bishop of *Bavaria*, called *Stephen*, had intruded himself into the chair, under the name of *Damasus II.* who was also dead, in twenty-three days after his elevation. He learned at the same time, that the *Romans*, imagining he would leave to them the care of choosing another pope, had dispatched ambassadors to him for that purpose; but being resolved to preserve his right, he, without waiting for their arrival, nominated one *Bruno*, a *German* bishop, who immediately assumed the vestments of the sovereign pontiff. This new pope, who was a modest man, and did not much relish the dignity that had been conferred on him, was, on his journey to *Rome*, persuaded by one *Hildebrand* (I), a monk, belonging to the abbey of *Cluny*, that he ought not to wear his pontificals until he should be elected at *Rome*, the emperor alone having no right to create a pope. Accordingly *Bruno* went thither as private man, being accompanied by this same *Hildebrand*, who had art and influence enough to raise underhand an opposition against him at first, and afterwards to dispose the *Romans* to favour his election, that he himself might have the sole merit of having raised him to the papal chair. This scheme succeeded to his wish: *Bruno*, who took the name of *Leo IX.* believing himself indebted to *Hildebrand* for his exaltation, favoured him with his confidence and affection; and thus

Nominates
Bruno to
the pope-
dom.

A.D.

1048.

* Hist. de Conquetes des Normans, p. 32.

(I) *Hildebrand* is said to have been a carpenter's son, who in amusing himself with little pieces of wood, formed, by supernatural instinct, these words. *Dominabor a mari usque ad mare*; which being perceived by a priest, he looked upon the child as a chosen vessel, and persuaded his father to bestow learning upon him. He was afterwards employed as a scribe

or secretary by the emperor, before whom he appeared in a dream, having two horns that reached up to heaven, with which he overturned his son *Henry* in the mud. The father, shocked at this apparition, sent *Hildebrand* to prison; from whence he was released by the intercession of the empress, and afterwards became a monk (1).

(1) Gob. Pers. Cosmodi at. vi.

began the intrigues of that famous monk, who managed the *is prevail-*
Romans with such address, that afterwards, upon the death *ed upon by*
of *Leo*, they, at his instigation, chose another pope of their *Hilde-*
own accord, with a view to detach the right of nomination *brand to*
from the emperor. The person he proposed was *Gebehard*, *confirm the*
bishop of *Eichstet*, who took the appellation of *Victor II.* *election of*
and *Hildebrand*, foreseeing that *Henry* would be offended at *Victor II.*
their presumption, went to him in person as their deputy, *whom*
when, by his insinuation and address, he prevailed upon *the Ro-*
him to confirm what they had done ^f. Perhaps he would *mans had*
not have found this task so easy. had not *Henry* been in- *chosen*
volved in a quarrel with the *Hungarians*, who had again *without*
rebelled against *Peter*, and set upon the throne his kinsman *his privacy*
Andrew, after he had defeated the other, put out his eyes, *or consent.*
and sent him to prison, where he died. For these reasons the *A. D.*
emperor sent an army against him; and after having worsted *1054.*
him in several engagements, compelled him to sue for peace.
This treaty, however, was violated by the usurper, who in-
sulted *Henry's* ambassadors, and by a sudden irruption ra-
vaged the whole duchy of *Bavaria*; upon which the empe-
ror took the field again, defeated him in a bloody battle, *Subduces*
deprived him of a great part of his dominions, and obliged *Hungary.*
him to accept of peace, on condition that he should pay
a large yearly tribute in money, and furnish him with a cer-
tain number of fighting men (K).

AT this period, *Bavaria* was agitated by fresh troubles. *The duke*
Conrad, the young duke, governed his subjects with such *of Bava-*
tyranny and violence, that *Gebehard*, bishop of *Ratisbon*, *ria is di-*
made representations to him on the subject of his miscon- *vested of*
duct; and the duke being incensed at the freedom of his *his domi-*
remonstrances, pillaged and set on fire the town of *Pachstein*, *nions.*
which was under the prelate's jurisdiction. *Gebehard* com-
plained of this outrage to the emperor, who summoned
Conrad to appear at *Merzbourg*, and answer to the charge;
and he being found guilty, was divested of his dominions,
which were given to the emperor's son *Henry*, who in an
assembly held at *Tribur*, in the diocese of *Mentz*, was about

^f LEO Ostiens. l. ii. c. ix.

(K) *Heiss*, from I know not
what authority, says *Henry* was
unsuccessful in this war, and
obliged to abandon the crown
of *Hungary* to the usurper *An-*
drew: but we have followed

the *Saxon* chronicles in this par-
ticular, which are not contra-
dicted by any other history of
credit that hath fallen into our
hands.

this time declared king of the *Romans* and future emperor, though no more than three years of age.

CONRAD, expelled from his dominions, took shelter with the king of *Hungary*; and being furnished with some troops, marched into *Carinthia*, where joining some malecontent noblemen, who were disquieted at the emperor's decision, he made himself master of the greatest part of that province; but he was soon reduced by the forces of the emperor, who compelled him to retreat again into *Hungary*.

War of
Flanders,
A. D.
1055.

THE revolt of *Conrad* was succeeded by the war of *Flanders*, kindled by count *Baldwin*, who seized the county of *Hainault*, invaded *Lorrain*, and plundered *Triers*, and other towns, situated upon the *Moselle*. The emperor being impowered by the diet at *Aix la Chapelle* to retort these violences, marched into *Flanders*, and laid the whole country under contribution: in consequence of this diversion *Baldwin* quitted *Lorrain*, to defend his own territories; and being supported by the king of *France*, he protracted the war to the third campaign, when peace was restored to *Flanders* ^b.

The emperor repairs
to Italy.

THE emperor having taken proper measures for the prosecution of this war, followed pope *Victor* into *Italy*, and assisted at a council in *Florence*, where he complained that *Ferdinand*, sovereign of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Galicia*, *Portugal*, and *Gascony*, had assumed the title of emperor, and refused to do him homage for part of his dominions which he held of the empire. In consequence of these complaints, the pope sent ambassadors to *Ferdinand*, who, instead of complying with his desire of laying aside the title of emperor, and doing homage to *Henry*, raised a considerable army, which passed the *Pyrences*, under the command of the celebrated *Rodrigo*, surnamed *the Cid*, and penetrated as far as *Thoulouse*, where the difference was compromised by commissaries, appointed to investigate the pretensions of both. The king of *Castile* resigned the title of emperor, and *Henry* relinquished his right of superiority to the provinces in question ^b.

HENRY's sister, *Beatrice*, widow of *Boniface*, marquis of *Etruria*, married *Godfrey*, a *German* nobleman, and agreed that her daughter *Mathilda*, when marriageable, should espouse her husband's son by a former venter. This match, concluded without the consent or knowledge of the emperor, gave such umbrage to that prince, that he resolved to expel *Godfrey* by force of arms from the dominions of *Tuscany*;

^b SIGEBERT ad an. 1054.

^b ORDERIC VITALIS, l. iv.

and this last, finding himself unable to cope with such an antagonist, fled to *Baldwin*, count of *Flanders*, while his wife, going to justify herself to the emperor, was arrested upon the road, and sent prisoner into *Germany*.

HENRY having made a progress through the different provinces of *Italy*, concluded an alliance with *Contarini*, duke of *Venice*; and repassing the *Alps*, marched into *Bavaria*, reduced a rebellion which had been raised by the noblemen of that country in favour of *Conrad*, who was lately dead, and summoned his own uncle *Gébehard*, bishop of *Ratisbon*, to the diet, where he was convicted of treason, and condemned to perpetual imprisonment; from which, however, he was soon released.

GREAT part of *Europe* being afflicted with a cruel famine, *The Henry* eased the suffering provinces of their taxes, and ordered corn to be imported from other countries for their relief: but hunger was not the only misfortune his people derived from this calamity. The *Slaves* of *Lusatia*, famished in their own country, made an irruption into *Saxony*, where they obtained a complete victory over the imperial general; and having pillaged the whole province without resistance, returned with a considerable booty: a misfortune which, being aggravated by several public calamities, such as earthquakes, famine, and plague, made a very deep impression upon his mind, overwhelming him with chagrin, and, in all probability, abridging the term of his life.

ABOUT this time he convoked a diet at *Goslar*, where pope *His son Victor II* was present, and recommending his son, who was about five years of age, to their good offices, they received him as king of the *Romans*, and his father's successor in the *Romans* empire.¹

IN a few days after this important point was settled to his satisfaction, he fell sick and died at *Burfelt* in *Saxony*, in the 39th year of his age, and 16th of his reign. His body was carried to *Spire*, and magnificently deposited in the cathedral, whither it was attended by a great number of persons of the first quality (L).

H E N-

¹ GLAB. RAD. lib. v. GOB. PERS. æt. vi. BARNARD. COR. BARON. Chron. Magdeburgens. Bremens. Annal. Paderborn, p. 547.

(L) *Henry III.* was first married to *Gonilda*, or *Cunegonda*, daughter of *Canute*, king of *England* and *Denmark*; and after her death to *Agnes*, by whom he had *Henry IV.* *Conrad*, who died in his infancy, *Sophia*, married to *Solomon*, king of

HENRY IV.

Henry IV. succeeds to the imperial crown.

HENRY IV. surnamed *the Great*, succeeded his father when he was no more than five years of age, his education being committed to the care of his mother the empress, who discharged that trust with equal diligence and capacity. He was acknowledged emperor at a diet of the princes convoked at *Cologne*, where, by the mediation of pope *Victor II.* who was present at this assembly, *Baldwin*, count of *Flanders*, and *Godfrey*, marquis of *Etruria*, were reconciled to the empress.

DURING the first years of this reign, *Germany* was harassed by intestine troubles, occasioned by the quarrels and feuds of private noblemen. The duchy of *Suabia* being vacant, by the death of *Otho de Schweinfurt*, the regent bestowed it upon *Rodolphus de Rhinfeld*, although the late emperor had promised to confer it upon count *Berthold*, who loudly complained of this unjust preference, and interested his friends in his resentment against the empress queen mother. The duke of *Bohemia* was attacked by the king of *Poland*, who renounced his dependence on the empire: even the *Hungarians*, who had been so formidable to *Germany*, were obliged to demand succour against the *Poles*, and, notwithstanding a reinforcement of imperialists, were defeated; so that thus king *Andrew*, with his queen, fled for refuge to *Ratisbon*.

State of the empire.

THOSE wars were not the effects of political views, but generally produced from the effects of petty causes of resentment; insomuch that *Thierri*, count of *Holland*, took the field against the bishops of *Cologne* and *Liege*, because he had been personally insulted at *Liege*, for having slain by accident a brother of the archbishop of *Cologne*, in a tournament ^k.

As for the other nations of *Europe*, they had no connection with the affairs of *Germany*; nor was the empire embroiled in any external war; so that those troublesome spirits, which might have been evaporated in defence of the com-

^k *Chronique de Hollande, &c. p. 150.*

of *Hungary*, *Mathilda*, wife to *Leopold IV.* marquis of *Rodolphus*, count of *Rhinfeld*, *Austria* (1).
duke of *Suabia*, and *Itho*, mar-

(1) *Barre, tom. iv. p. 61.*

munity,

munity, were now employed in fomenting divisions at home, and it was not without great difficulty that the regent maintained her authority.

At length the dukes of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, under the emperor, together with the archbishop of *Cologne*, and other princes, carried him off by stratagem from his mother, who was taxed with having sacrificed the welfare of the nation to the will of the bishop of *Augsburg*, her minister and supposed gallant; and she, being thus divested of the regency, fled to *Rome*, where she took the veil¹. As for the emperor, he was put under the tuition of the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Bremen*; and these two prelates were very assiduous in this employment, which, however, each exercised in a very different manner. *Hanno*, the archbishop of *Cologne*, endeavoured to inspire him with the love of learning, and to season his mind with the principles of virtue; but *Albert*, his colleague, in order to acquire an influence over his passions, and render himself necessary to him in his affairs, indulged him in all his pleasures, and gave full scope to the licence of youth; during which he contracted bad habits, which he could not afterwards restrain^m.

A. D.
1102.

WHILE he remained under the tutorage of his mother, *Alexander II.* had been raised to the papal chair, without the privity or consent of the emperor, in consequence of a decree of council, called by the sole authority of *Nicholas* his predecessor, in which it was ordained, that, for the future, the popes should be elected by the curates (now called cardinals) of *Rome*. The queen regent, in order to maintain the right of the imperial crown, convoked a diet, in which *Alexander* was deposed, and another pope elected under the name of *Honorius II.* This schism gave rise to new troubles in *Germany*, as well as in *Italy*, where *Alexander* was supported by *Godfrey* of *Lorraine*, who had married *Matilda*, heiress of *Tuscany*, and by that match became one of the most powerful of the *Italian* princesⁿ.

THE emperor, at the age of twenty-two, began his administration by restraining the thefts, robberies, and extortions, which his subjects of the duchy of *Saxony* exercised upon strangers as well as upon one another, in contempt of his authority, and to the prejudice of the public peace. With a view to facilitate this reformation, he took up his residence among them at *Goslar*, and ordered several castles to be built

1072.

Henry takes the reins of government in his own hands;

¹ Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 185.
Bremenf. ex Meib. p. 283.

^m Chron. Magdeb.

ⁿ OTHON. FRISING. l. vi. c. 44.

and garrisoned, as a check upon the delinquents, and to protect the innocent from insolence and rapine. But as these forts could not be raised without imposing taxes upon the subject, the rich among the clergy, as well as laity, began to murmur, and traverse his design on pretence of defending their liberty; which, they affirmed, he intended to invade. They were besides irritated against him, on account of his debauches, and encouraged to rebellion by pope *Alexander II.* who, at the earnest solicitation of *Hildebrand*, his confident and successor, actually summoned the emperor to appear at *Rome*, to give an account of his loose life, and answer to the charge of having exposed the investiture of benefices to sale °.

is summoned by the pope, and controuled by the states of Saxony;

THE emperor having rejected this citation with disdain, the states of *Saxony* engaged in an association, under the pretext of defending their liberties, and were so bold as to present him with a memorial, containing the following demands: that he should order his new forts and castles in *Saxony* and *Thuringia* to be demolished; that he should restore to the owners the lands and moveables, which he had unjustly and forcibly taken away; that he should re-instate *Otho* duke of *Saxony* in the duchy of *Bavaria*, from which he had been expelled (M); that he should confirm to the *Saxons* their antient laws and immunities; that he should not always reside in one place, but make a progress through different parts of his dominions, to do justice every-where, and provide for the necessities of the church, the widow, and the orphan; that he should dismiss the evil counsellors, and govern by the advice of the states and princes, whose interest was inseparably connected with the prosperity of the empire; and that he should dismiss his concubine, and cohabit with

° *Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 188.*

(M) This *Otho* had been accused of a design against the emperor's life, and, by a decree of the diet, ordered to appear at *Goslar*, to maintain his innocence against the accuser in single combat; but he declined the duel, alleging, that his an-

tagonist was his inferior in birth and quality (1).

The author of the *Chronic. Magdeburgens.* affirms, that *Otho* was dissuaded from the combat, by his friends, upon information that he was doomed to lose his life at *Goslar*, whatever might be the issue of the duel.

(1.) *Heiss, l. xi. c. 9.*

his queen (N). They concluded with assuring him, he should be respected, obeyed, and supported, with their lives and fortunes, provided he would comply with these requests; but, should he persist in his design to oppress them, they were resolved to defend themselves against violence and despotie power P.

To this remonstrance the emperor answered with great coolness, that he would take an opportunity of convoking the diet, which should deliberate and decide upon the subject of their complaints. This reply was so disagreeable to the Saxons, who were not at all disposed to refer themselves to such a tribunal, that they forthwith levied a strong body of forces, with which they invested *Goslar*; from whence Henry retired in the night, in order to assemble the other states and princes of the empire, who readily assisted him with their troops in this emergency (O). Notwithstanding these succours, which were considerable, he sent a deputation to the Saxons, with proposals of peace; which, while the states assembled at *Wurtzburg*, were negotiated at *Gerfingen*, upon certain conditions which he promised to fulfill.

Tho' he was, on this occasion, very much indebted to the good advice and offices of the princes of the empire, he neglected them in points which were no less important, and allowed himself to be swayed by the evil counsels of some particular persons, who had insinuated themselves into his favour. He was a young prince of violent passions, which often hurried him into indiscretions, to the prejudice of his moral character; particularly, his incontinence was so great, that he seldom or never set eyes upon a beautiful young woman without endeavouring to sacrifice her virtue to his appetite. The vigilance of his wife being an obstruction to his amours, he conceived an unjust antipathy to that unfor-

*subo be-
fice Gos-
lar.*
A. D.
1703.

P Chron. Magdeb. ex Meib. p. 296. HEISS, Hist. de l'Emp. l. xi. c. 9.

(N) He married *Bertha*, daughter of *Otho* marquis of *Italy* (2).

(O) The association against Henry consisted of *Werner* archbishop of *Magdebourg*, *Burchard* bishop of *Halberstat*, *Henry* bishop of *Hildesheim*, *Werner* bishop of *Mersebourg*, *Heilberg* bi-

shop of *Minden*, *James* bishop of *Paderborn*, *Frederic* bishop of *Mimnegardesfurt*, *Berno* bishop of *Misnia*, *Otho* duke of *Saxony*, the marquises of *Thuringia*, *Udo*, and *Dedo*, *Frederick* count palatine of *Saxony*, with several counts and other noblemen (3).

(2) Chron. Hildeburg. ex Meib. p. 452.

(3) Heiss, l. vi. c. 9.

tunate princess, and even engaged one of his courtiers to undermine her chastity, that he might have a pretence for obtaining a divorce; but her conduct was so blameless and discreet, that his design miscarried, and he in vain solicited the pope to dissolve the marriage, which he said had never been consummated^a.

Henry is deserted by his friends on account of his misconduct; This misconduct gave such umbrage, that he was abandoned by his best friends and most powerful adherents, even before the dissolution of the assembly which he had convened, and which he dismissed soon after the conclusion of the treaty with the Saxons; betaking himself to *Nuremberg*, where he proposed to reside. Here he understood, that one

sends a challenge to the duke of Suabia; of his domestics, called *Reginger*, had deserted from his service, and informed the dukes of *Suabia* and *Carinthia*, that the emperor had tampered with him to assassinate these two noblemen. This report was of infinite prejudice to the emperor; who, finding himself forsaken by almost all his friends in consequence of this malicious calumny, offered to prove his innocence by single combat upon the body of *Rodolphus* duke of *Suabia*, who thought proper to refuse the challenge, or at least to refer it to the decision of the princes of the empire, (P). Even this condescension was of no effect

retires to Worms. in his justification, and he found himself so persecuted by his enemies, that he fled for refuge to *Worms*, where he was hospitably received by the inhabitants, notwithstanding the ill offices of the bishop, who had used all his influence in persuading them to shut their gates against this unfortunate prince^r.

He finds means to appease the princes, and acknowledges his faults. WHILE he remained in this city, the princes of the empire assembling at *Mentz*, in order to deliberate upon the means of depriving him of his crown, and of choosing another emperor in his place, he found means, by secret negotiations, to prevail upon some of them to favour him with a conference at *Oppenheim*. There he intreated them to excuse the irregularities of his youth, protested that he would for the future behave in a manner suitable to the dignity they had conferred upon him; and, in order to manifest his abhorrence of the crime which was laid to his charge, insisted upon fighting with *Reginger* himself. The proposal was accepted, and a day appointed for the combat; but in the

^a ADZLR. p. 444.

^r HEISS, ubi sup.

(P) At the same time a gallant cavalier, named *Cosheim*, *Reginger*; but *Rodolphus* interposed, and prevented the combat. begged permission to fight with

mean time his antagonist disappeared, the princes were appeased, and Henry enjoyed some repose" (Q)

THE Saxons, however, again revolted, and the emperor, assisted by the princes, raised an army of sixty thousand men, with which he entered Saxony, ravaging the country, and abandoning the towns to the pillage of his troops. Notwithstanding these advantages, he, at the intercession of some princes of the empire, granted a favourable peace to the rebels, disbanded his troops, and even trusted his person to the Saxons, who conducted him in triumph to Goslar, after having obtained in this treaty almost every thing they demanded in their former remonstrance. One of the articles of this peace was the demolition of his castles in Saxony, in the execution of which the peasants not only razed the superb seat of Harleberg to the ground, but also plundered the church belonging to it, destroyed the tombs, and violated the ashes of the dead. The emperor, who was then at Worms, being informed of these abuses, took the opportunity of laying his complaints before several princes, who were assembled at Bamberg for the celebration of Easter, when the archbishop of Mentz, in the name of the ecclesiastics, as well as of Rodolphus duke of Suabia, Berthold duke of Carinthia, and other secular princes, declared, that God being offended, and the empire treated with indignity by the authors of that sedition, they were ready to assist him in raising forces to reduce and chastise the rebels. He accordingly began to levy troops, and sent a formal declaration of war to the states of Saxony assembled at Goslar.

PREPARATIONS were made on both sides for the war, the Saxon army being commanded by Otho duke of Bavaria, who had been proscribed; and the imperial troops by Henry in person, who gave battle to the rebels, and totally defeated them in a bloody engagement; after which he made himself master of all Saxony, and dismissed his troops, on condition that they should re-assemble at Gerstingen at a certain day, in order to put the finishing stroke to the war. Mean while he himself returned to Worms.

DURING this interval, the Saxons endeavoured at an accommodation; which was effected in the next campaign,

• • • LAMB. SCHAF. ad an. 1073. •

(Q) He is said to have been carried off by the devil; a very lucky interposition for Henry, who (as Heiss justly observes) had consulted his courage more than his dignity in this proposal.

while both armies were in the field. The chiefs of the rebellion asked pardon of the emperor in public, and begged to be re-admitted into his favour: their submission was accepted, both armies were disbanded, and Henry returned to the city of Worms¹.

Hildebrand is chosen pope without the knowledge of Henry.

BUT he was not long suffered to enjoy the tranquility which was thus restored, being exposed to another storm from Italy, which was attended with much more dangerous consequences. Cardinal Hildebrand, upon the death of Alexander II. had been elected pope by the name of Gregory VII. without the authority or knowledge of the emperor; who, hearing of this transaction, had convoked a diet at Mentz, and, by the advice of that assembly, sent an ambassador to Rome, to complain of this encroachment upon his right, and to insist upon Hildebrand's being deposed, unless he would solicit the emperor's confirmation. The pope, finding it his interest to temporize, had received the ambassador with great civility, protesting that the papacy had been forced upon him by the people; but that he had no intention to accept of the honour, without the approbation of the emperor and princes of the diet, having delayed the ceremony of his confirmation, until he should have obtained that sanction.

A. D.
1075.

HENRY, satisfied with these excuses, had confirmed his election; so that seeing himself firmly established in the chair, and universally acknowledged as pope, he began his pontificate with a number of excommunications levelled against the German princes, ecclesiastic as well as secular; in particular, against the archbishops of Saltzburg and Bremen, and the bishops of Bamberg, Spire, and Strasbourg; because they were either married or publicly kept concubines². He moreover excommunicated every ecclesiastic, who should receive his investiture from a laic, together with the laic by whom it should be conferred. This, however, was no more than an experiment, to try the thunder of the holy see; which he intended to launch against the emperor himself. For this purpose, he had sent four legates into Germany to hold a council, the convocation of which was opposed and prevented by the bishops, and their representatives had orders to treat the emperor as an excommunicated person until he should clear himself from the charge of simony, of which he had been accused before the preceding pope. Nay, to such a degree of animosity was he incensed against Henry, that he employed emissaries among the Sax-

The pope tampers with the Saxons.

¹ HEISS Hist. del' Emp.

² BARR. t. iv. p. 224.

ens, who, by their insinuations, were prevailed upon to send ambassadors to *Rome*, to complain of the injury they had suffered in the last treaty with the emperor, and to beg that the pope would depose him on account of his immorality and misconduct.

ALTHOUGH *Henry* had dispersed the league that was formed against him, and restored peace to the empire, he dreaded new revolutions from the intrigues and resentment of the court of *Rome*; which, in order to avert, he wrote a very submissive letter to the pope, accusing himself of simony and debauchery, and craving the forgiveness of his holiness; who, after having rebuked him, for his crimes, commended him for his candour, and absolved him in consequence of his penitence and contrition *.

Henry is reconciled to the pope.

HE afterwards proposed a crusade, in order to deliver the holy sepulchre from the hands of the infidels, offering to head the Christians in person, and desiring *Henry* to serve as a volunteer under his command: a project so wild and extravagant, that nothing but the enthusiasm of the times can exempt the memory of the proposer from the imputation of frenzy and delirium.

BUT this harmony subsisting between *Gregory* and the emperor was soon interrupted by the disturbances of *Hungary*, where *Solomon* had been dethroned by his brother *Geyza*, and fled for refuge to *Henry*, by whom he was protected, after having done homage to him for his dominions. *Gregory*, who favoured *Geyza*, exclaimed against this act of submission, and wrote a letter to *Solomon*, giving him to understand, that the kingdom of *Hungary* belonged to the *Roman* church, and demanding that he would acknowledge its dependence on the holy see, and not upon the king of *Germany*.

GREGORY, having thus laid the train, sent new legates to the diet of *Geylar*; which was assembled on account of the *German* princes, who had been taken prisoners in the last battle; and there, being seconded by the nuncio, they complained, that the emperor still continued to bestow (R) in-

* *Aquila Franca*, l. i. p. 176. *Annal. de l'Emp.* t. i. p. 192.

(R) *Henry IV.* enjoyed in common, with almost all other princes, the right of nominating bishops and abbots, and of investing them by the cross and the ring; and tho' he had ab-

used this power, by setting benefices to sale, surely the pope had no right to release his subjects from their oath of allegiance.

The emperor
threatened.

He de-
poses Hil-
debrand,
A. D.
1076.

and is ex-
communi-
cated.

vestitures, without having published the decrees of the last council against these investitures, as well as against simony, and the incontinence of the clergy. Then they demanded that the princes, who were prisoners, should be set at liberty; that the archbishops and bishops, who were excommunicated, should be deprived of their dignity and estates; and that the emperor should appear at *Rome*, on the first *Sunday of Lent*, to answer to the crimes laid to his charge; adding that, if he should fail to yield due obedience to the church, he must expect to be excommunicated and dethroned.

HENRY, incensed at this presumptuous declaration from the pope, whom he considered as his vassal, dismissed the legates with very little ceremony, and called an assembly of all the dignified ecclesiastics at *Worms*; where, after due deliberation, they concluded, that *Gregory*, having usurped the chair of *St. Peter* by indirect means, infected the church of God with a great number of novelties and abuses, and deviated from his duty to his sovereign in several scandalous attempts, the emperor, by his supreme authority, derived from his predecessors, ought to divest the pope of his dignity, and appoint another in his place.

IN consequence of this resolution, *Henry* sent an ambassador to *Rome*, with a formal deprivation of *Gregory*; who, in his turn, convoked a council, at which were present 118 bishops, who unanimously agreed, that the pope had just cause to depose *Henry*, to dissolve the oath of allegiance which the princes and members of the empire had taken in his favour, and to prohibit them from holding any correspondence with him on pain of excommunication; which was immediately fulminated against the emperor and all his adherents.

HE knew that this step would be attended with civil wars: he interested the *German* bishops in his party: the prelates gained over the noblemen: *Henry's* old enemies, the *Saxons*, seized this pretext of declaring against him; and even *Gualfe*, to whom he had given the duchy of *Bavaria*, supported the malecontents with that wealth which he owed to the emperor's bounty: at last, those very princes and bishops, who had joined in deposing *Gregory*, gave up their emperor to be tried by the pope, and his holiness was solicited to come to *Augsburg* for that purpose.

By this severe sentence, which filled a great part of *Christendom* with troubles and divisions, and involved *Germany*,

in long and bloody wars, the emperor was reduced to such extremity, that he set out for *Italy* in the middle of winter, with his wife and son *Conrad*, an infant, in order to humble himself before the pope, who was then at *Canga*, a place belonging to *Godfrey* and *Mathilda* (S), of whom mention hath already been made.

AFTER a journey attended with great fatigue and inconvenience, *Henry* alone was admitted within the outer gate, and given to understand, that he had no favour to expect, until he should have fasted three days, standing from morning to evening bare-footed among the snow, and then asked pardon of the pope for the offences he had committed. This penance was literally performed; and on the fourth day, being the twenty-fifth of *January*, he was forgiven, and received absolution.

THIS extraordinary accommodation gave great disgust to the princes of *Italy*, who never could forgive the insolence of the pope, nor the abject humility of the emperor. *Henry* himself was ashamed of his own meanness, which, however, he excused as well as he could to the *Italian* cities and states, by representing the cruel necessity to which he had been reduced; and, in order to shew how sensible he was of the outrage he had suffered, he soon after declared himself the pope's mortal enemy ².

GREGORY's revenge being thus re-inflamed, he exerted himself in embroiling the affairs of *Germany*, and succeeded so well in his endeavours, that the princes of the empire, under pretext of being discharged from their allegiance to

Henry is
disposed;
A. D.
1077.

² BARR. t. iv. p. 245.

(S) This countess *Mathilda* was the true cause of all the wars, which, since this period, have raged between the emperors and popes. She, in her own right, possessed great part of *Tuscany*, *Mantua*, *Parma*, *Reggio*, *Placentia*, *Ferrara*, *Modena*, *Verona*, and almost all that is now called the *Patrimony of St. Peter*, from *Viterbo* to *Orvieto*, together with part of *Umbria*, *Spoleto*, and the march of *Ancona*. Her mother, who was

sister of *Henry III.* had educated this powerful princess in the most implacable hatred towards the family of *Henry*, by whom she had been maltreated. *Mathilda* paid the most submissive obedience to pope *Gregory*, who was her director in all things, and, according to some authors, her gallant: nay, her attachment to him, and her hatred to the *Germans*, proceeded so far, that she made over all her estates to the pope (4).

(4) *Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 195.*

Rodolphus elected emperor; duke of *Suabia*, whom they solemnly crowned at *Mentz* *.

A. D. 1080. *Henry*, apprised of this deposition, set out from *Italy* with all imaginable dispatch, and, taking the field with what troops he could assemble, attacked *Rodolphus*, whom he defeated in a battle fought near *Wurtzburg*, from which the duke narrowly escaped with his life. Next year, however, he was in a condition to take the field again, and another engagement ensued, in which, after an obstinate dispute, the emperor was a second time victorious, and his adversary intirely overthrown; so that *Henry* reduced the whole duchy of *Suabia*, from which he expelled *Bertbold*, the son-in-law of *Rodolphus*, who had been left for the defence of the country. From this conquest, the emperor proceeded into *Saxony*, where he understood the partizans of his rival were re-assembling forces, and, giving them battle in the month of *January*, obtained a third victory, which was decisive †.

His enemies, finding themselves unable to cope with him in the field, solicited the pope to excommunicate him a second time; and *Gregory*, being very well disposed to grant their request, thundered out another sentence against him, confirming at the same time the election of *Rodolphus*, to whom he sent a crown, on which was engraven these words :

Petra dedit Petro, Petrus diadema Rodolpho * (T).

Henry calls a national council at *Brixen*, by which

HENRY, in order to defend himself from the bad consequences of this second excommunication, called an assembly of the *German* bishops at *Mentz*, and asked their opinions about this pretended right of the pope to dethrone an emperor, and whether or no he might not, with justice, depose *Hildebrand*, and appoint another in his room. Nineteen bishops then present, after having maturely considered the affair, proposed that *Henry* should call in the other bishops to the consultation, to be held at *Brixen*; where they accordingly met in a national council. Here it was the unanimous opinion of all, *Italians* as well as *Germans*, that the pope,

* Hist. Bell. Saxon. p. 135.
t. iv. p. 294.

† HEISS, ut sup. † BARR,

(T) *Schiphowerus*, in his *Chronicon Oldenburgerium Archiepiscopus*, says, the inscription was,

Petra dedit Romam Petro, tibi papa coronam.

instead of having power over the emperor, owed him obedience and allegiance; and that Gregory, having rendered himself unworthy of the papal chair, by his misconduct and rebellion, ought to be deposed from the dignity he so little deserved. On this supposition, those prelates elected, in the room of *Hildebrand*, cardinal *Wiberti*, alias *Guibert* or *Gilbert*, archbishop of *Ravenna*, a person of unquestioned merit, who assumed the name of *Clement III*. The emperor promised to put this new pope in a condition to repair to *Rome* and expel *Gregory*; but, in the mean time, he was obliged to employ his whole forces to frustrate the new efforts of *Rodolphus*, who had already re-assembled some troops in *Saxony*. *Henry*, therefore, advanced against him with great expedition, and the two armies, engaging near *Mersberg*, fought with great fury; the fortune of the day inclining towards *Rodolphus*, until his hand being cut off by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, duke of *Lorraine*, who was in the service of the emperor, the rebels were discouraged by the misfortune of their chief, and gave up the advantage they had gained. That nobleman, perceiving his end approaching, ordered the hand he had lost to be brought to him, and addressing himself to the officers then present, "Behold," said he, "the hand with which I took the oath of allegiance to *Henry*, which I have violated at the instigation of the court of *Rome*, in perfidiously aspiring to an honour, which was not my due." Having pronounced these words with marks of sincere penitence, he expired, and was pompously interred at *Mersburg* in *Saxony*; his tomb being adorned with the figures of a crown, and other ensigns of royalty. The *Saxons* being afterwards afraid, that *Henry* would take umbrage at these honours paid to his rival, would have removed the ornaments; but were prevented by the emperor, who said he should be glad to see all his enemies as magnificently interred.

Thus delivered from such a formidable antagonist, he soon dissipated the rest of his party; and after having, in some measure, composed the disturbances in *Germany*, he set out for *Italy*, in order to settle *Clement* in the papal chair; but, finding the gates of *Rome* shut against him, he was obliged to attack the city in form, and the siege continued upwards of two years and a half; at the end of which it was taken by assault, and with difficulty prevented from being plundered, in consideration of a sum of money.

^a Chron. Oldenburg. Archicom. ex Meib. p. 135. Chron. Magdeb.

^{*} KRANTZ. l. v.

and ex-
pels Gre-
gory ;

offered by the inhabitants, with which *Henry* obliged his fol-
diers to be satisfied.

GREGORY, dreading no fate so much as that of falling
into the hands of *Henry*, escaped into the castle of *Saint
Angelo*, which was extremely well fortified ; and while he
defended himself in that retreat, the emperor published the
reasons which had induced him to depose *Gregory* and sub-
stitute *Clement* in his place (U). The *Romans* acquiesced in his
motives, and the new pope, being consecrated with all the
usual ceremonies in the church of *St. Peter*, expressed his
gratitude by crowning the emperor on *Easter-day*, in pre-
sence, and with the applause, of the *Roman* senate and peo-
ple ; who took the oath of allegiance, as usual on such occa-
sions ;

who re-
sires to
Salerno.

MEAN while the attacks were still carried on against the
castle of *St. Angelo* ; but the emperor being called into *Lom-
bardy* upon some particular affairs, *Guithard* duke of *Apulia*
went to *Rome* in his absence ; and having found means to
release *Gregory* from his confinement, conducted him to
Salerno, where he died the following year 8.

A. D.
1085.
Count
Herman
boson king
of the Ro-
mans.

GERMANY being re-involved in new troubles, the emperor
did not long enjoy the success of this *Italian* expedition.
The *Saxons*, who were his inveterate enemies, began to re-
imbroil the empire ; and, several other princes joining in the
conspiracy, they, at the solicitation of *Gregory*, elected
count *Herman* of *Luxemburg* king of the *Romans*, and
marching into *Franconia*, made war upon those who had ad-
hered to the emperor. *Henry*, alarmed at these transactions,
returned with all possible speed to *Germany*, where under-
standing that, in some particular assemblies of the ecclesiastics,
several decrees had been made contrary to his interest, in
consequence of the excommunications under which he la-
boured, he called a general assembly at *Mentz* ; where, by
the unanimous consent of all the bishops there present, whe-
ther *Italian*, *French*, or *German*, the decrees made by *Gre-*

* Chron. Verd. p. 287.

† Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 200.

(U) The *Romans* having pro-
mised to *Henry* they would ob-
lige *Gregory* to crown him, that
pope, in order to acquit them of
their promise, offered to lower

down the crown upon the em-
peror's head from the castle of
St. Angelo ; but *Henry* did not
relish this pleasant expedient
(5).

gory against Henry were annulled, and those of the emperor against the pope approved and confirmed. The prelates, who espoused the cause of the rebels, were deprived of their benefices, as well as count Herman of the title of king of the Romans, which he had unjustly obtained ^b.

SOME days after this assembly broke up, Henry was informed, that pope Gregory was dead at Salernoⁱ, as we have already observed, and that the Romans, without paying the least regard to Clement III. had resolved to promote to the chair cardinal Didier, abbot of Monte Cassino, who happened to be at Rome, and fled to his abbey from this elevation; upon which his election was delayed till the feast of Pentecost of the following year.

MEAN while the emperor, understanding that count Herman, although deposed, was making strong efforts to support his pretensions, he pursued him from place to place, compelled him to abandon his enterprize, and to fly into Saxony for refuge. The rebels, thus deprived of their king, elected in his room Ecbert marquis of Thuringia, who, like his predecessor, sunk under the victorious arms of the emperor, and both came to an untimely end, Herman being killed by a stone, which was dropt upon his head from a high place, and Ecbert being slain in a mill, to which he had escaped after the loss of a battle against the emperor ^k.

WHILE Henry was employed in reducing these two competitors, his enemies were busy in imbroiling his affairs in Italy. Victor III. who had succeeded Gregory, enjoyed his promotion but about ten months; but his successor, Urban II. knowing that his election must give umbrage to the emperor, who had not been consulted in the affair, and being moreover instigated against him, not only by the countess Matilda of Tuscany, who, after the death of her first husband, had married duke Welfon of Bavaria (Y), but also by the Normans, he exerted himself so successfully, in conjunction with these confederates, that a great part of Italy was seduced from its allegiance. Henry, apprised of these trans-

^b BARR. t. iv. p. 303.
c. 55.

ⁱ GOS. PERS. Cosmod. æt. vi.

^k BARR. t. iv. p. 324.

(Y) This duke, otherwise called Guelph, gave his name to the faction of the popes, which was afterwards distinguished by the name of Guelphs, while the

word Ghiblin was in the sequel applied to the emperor's party, because Henry, son of Conrad III. was born at Ghibling (7).

missions, passed the *Alps* with a good army, retook all the towns on this side the *Po*, and, among the rest, made himself master of *Mantua*, after a siege of twelve months. He then reduced almost all the rest of *Lombardy*, notwithstanding the vigorous opposition of *Mathilda*, who put herself at the head of her troops, and personally faced him in the field (Z). The *Romans* seeing the progress, and degrading the resentment of *Henry*, in order to appease his wrath, took the opportunity of *Urban's* absence to recall *Clement* to *Rome*; upon which the other renewed his excommunications against the emperor and the antipope ¹.

Conrad
revolts.

MEAN while *Conrad*, the emperor's eldest son, disobliged at some hasty expressions of his father, lent an ear to the insinuations of *Mathilda* and the *Normans*, and revolted against him; he was joined in this rebellion by his mother-in-law, the empress *Adelaide*, daughter of *Udo* marquis of *Brandenburg*, whom the emperor had lately married (A). *Milan* and several other cities of *Lombardy* joined with this young prince, who assumed the title of king of *Italy*, and was actually crowned by *Anselmo*, archbishop of *Milan*, with the consent of pope *Urban*, *Welfphon*, *Mathilda*, and several dukes and noblemen. Some time after this election, he married the daughter of *Roger* king of *Sicily*, and succeeded so well in his usurpation, that the greatest part of the cities and noblemen were alienated from their obedience to the emperor, who was reduced to the necessity of cantoning his army in some places of strength, till his affairs should take a more favourable turn ^m.

All the
provinces
of Italy
declare a-
gainst the
emperor.

A. D.

1093.

1095.

A crusade
resolved
upon.

URBAN was at this time in *France*, holding the famous council of *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, in which two very important subjects were discussed; namely, the excommunication of

¹ *Annal. de l'Emp.* t. i. p. 203. * *Heiss Hist.* l. xi. c. 9. OTH. DE FRISINGH. in *Chron.* Sigebert.

(Z) This lady, who was the emperor's cousin, and had been very much indebted to his generosity, is suspected of having carried on an intrigue with pope *Gregory*, who persuaded her to bequeath her lands to the holy see (8).

(A) *Henry*, who was of a very capricious disposition, had maltreated and even confined the empress; who, escaping from her prison, fled to *Rome*, and joined *Conrad* (9).

(8) *Lamber. Schafnab. ad ann.* 1077. *W'altram. Leo Ofen.* t. iv. p. 331.

(9) *Barr.*

Philip I. of France, and the resolution to promote a crusade; for the relief of the Christians in the *Levant*, and the recovery of the *Holy Land* *. *Henry* considered the pope's absence as a favourable opportunity of retrieving his affairs in *Italy* by the intrigues of *Clement* at *Rome*; but he found his son *Conrad* so well established in his throne, and so powerfully reinforced by the alliance of the king of *Sicily*, that he despaired of reducing him to obedience, and returned to his *German* dominions. He was no sooner arrived at *Cologne*, A. D. than he assembled the princes, who put *Conrad* to the ban of 1099, the empire, and declared his son *Henry* king of the *Romans*; *Henry*, upon which he was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, after having the emperor's promised, upon oath, never to meddle in the affairs of the empire without the consent of his father † (B). Mean-while second son, the city of *Ratisbon* was assigned as the place of his residence, is chosen king of the Romans, and the emperor entertained hopes of enjoying that tranquillity which hitherto he had never known; for the chiefs of the rebels were by this time dead, and an accommodation was made with the *Saxons* and *Bavarians*. But the very measures he took to re-establish justice and good order, which had been banished by the licence of war, produced fresh disturbances and disquiets, which incessantly harassed him in the latter part of his life.

THE archbishop of *Mentz*, conscious to himself of having been concerned in some considerable disorders, of which the emperor intended to take cognizance, fled into *Thuringia*, and declared in favour of the other faction, which now began to revive, and bestir itself, at the instigation of *Gebhard*, bishop of *Constance*; for *Pascal II.* who succeeded *Urban* in the papacy, had sent a commission to this prelate, to support the pretensions of *Henry*, whom he resolved to set up in opposition to his father. Nothing chagrined the emperor so much as the presumption of the *Roman* church, in electing popes in contempt of his authority; and his resentment of this conduct, which he looked upon as downright

* De his, vide Ant. Hist. vol. xvii. p. 146, & seq. † Chron. Magdeb. Osenburg. Archicom. Gob. Pers. ex Meib.

(B) *Gobelinus Persona* says, *fition*, and virtuous life, and to that *Conrad* consented to this have ended his days at *Florence*, election. He is said to have A. D. 1101 (10).
been a prince of a mild dispo-

(10) *Joh. Avent. l. v. Ann. Boic. Krantz. l. 3. Sax. c. xy. p. 477.*

A. D.
1105.
He is per-
suaded to
take arms
against his
father ;

rebellion, was the rock upon which he split ; for, after the death of *Clement*, he appointed successively three antipopes, *Albert*, *Theodoric*, and *Maniulphus* ; two of whom were shut up in cloisters, and the third overtaken by sudden death. These measures, which he took in order to preserve the rights of the empire, served to foment the enmity of the *Romans*, so that *Pascal II.* finding himself in peaceable possession of the chair, called a council at *Rome*, where the emperor was summoned to appear ; and, as he did not obey the citation, excommunicated anew, for having introduced those schisms into the church. At the same time they confirmed all that *Urban* and *Gregory* had done to his prejudice^o. But it was by the arts and industry of his adversaries in *Germany*, that his own son *Henry* was engaged in a rebellion against him. The pretext, however, of this young prince, whose ambition had been flattered, was necessity and zeal for religion. He alleged, that the subjects, being discharged from their allegiance to his father, he was obliged to take the reins of government into his own hands ; and that, the laws of the church being preferable to those of nature, he could not acknowledge *Henry* for his father, until he should be absolved from the excommunication of the pope^p. In vain did the emperor use paternal remonstrances to dissuade his son from proceeding to extremities. The breach became wider and wider, and at last they openly took the field against each other, and the armies met at *Ratibon*, when the father, finding himself too weak to hazard a battle, retreated towards *Bohemia* ; while the son, marching to *Spire*, made himself master of that city, and seized upon the treasures of the emperor, which were there deposited.

ELATED with this success, he fixed a day for the princes to assemble at *Mentz* ; and, understanding that the emperor was resolved to be present with a very powerful army, he, in order to frustrate this intention, which might be fatal to his cause, had recourse to an expedient, which was equally perfidious and effectual. Knowing the tenderness of his father's disposition, he repaired to *Coblentz* ; and throwing himself at the emperor's feet, begged pardon for his undutiful behaviour, which he imputed to the advice of evil counsellors. Being, in consequence of this submission, immediately taken into favour, he persuaded him to disband his army, for fear of giving umbrage to the princes. Then they set out together for *Bingenheim*, where the son insinuating

• BARON. ad ann. 1102.

† SPICILEG. t. xii. p. 446.

that

that his father might run some risque of being detained by the archbishop of *Mentz*, should he enter that city, and undertaking to go thither and negotiate a reconciliation between him and the princes of the diet, the emperor agreed to remain where he was, in expectation of that happy event; but he was next day confined to his chamber by this ungracious son, who forthwith repaired to the diet; at which the pope's legates having repeated the sentence of excommunication, *Henry IV.* was divested of the imperial dignity, and his son proclaimed emperor with the unanimous consent of the whole assembly ⁹ (C).

A. D.

1106.

who is solemnly deposed;

THIS ceremony being performed, the archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, together with the bishop of *Worms*, were sent as deputies to the father to intimate his deposition, and demand the crown and other regalia. *Henry* received this deputation with equal surprize and concern; and desiring to know for what reason he was so cruelly dealt with by his own subjects, the archbishop of *Mentz* replied, that on account of the schisms he had introduced in the church, and the scandalous manner in which he had set bishoprics to sale, he had been deemed unworthy of partaking the holy communion, and consequently of wearing the imperial crown. The emperor, extremely mortified at this insolent declaration, "If (said he) we have prostituted the benefices of the church for hire, you yourselves are the most proper persons to convict us of that simony. Say then; I adjure you, in the name of the eternal God, what have we exacted, or what have we received, for having promoted you to the dignities you now enjoy?" When they acknowledged he was

⁹ Ibid. KRANTZ. l. v. Saxon. c. 18, & 20. BARR. t. iv. p. 375.

(C) We find in the *Constitutions of Goldastus* a letter from the emperor to his son, couched in these terms: "Allow me to remain at *Liege*, if not as an emperor, at least as a refugee. Let it not be said to my shame, or rather to your's, that I am forced to beg a new asylum in *Easter* time. If you grant me this request,

I shall think myself greatly obliged to you for the favour; if you refuse me, I will rather live as a cottager in some foreign country, than stroll about in this manner from one disgrace to another, through an empire which was⁹ once my own (11)." •

(11) *Annal. de l'Emp.* t. i. p. 209.

*stript of
his royal
ornaments ;*

innocent as far as regarded their preferment : “ and yet (continued he) the archbishoprics of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, being two of the best in our disposal, we might have filled our coffers by exposing them to sale : nevertheless we bestowed them upon you out of our free grace and favour ; and a worthy return you now make for our benevolence. Do not, we beseech you, become partizans of those who have lifted up their hands against their lord and master, in defiance of faith, gratitude, and allegiance. Alas ! we already begin to sink under the burden of years and sorrow, and but a little of our mortal pilgrimage is left unperformed. Suffer that little to be concluded in peace, and seek not to terminate our glory with misery and shame.” The deputies, unmoved by this pathetic address, and insisting upon his complying with the purport of their errand, he retired into his chamber, where he put on his royal ornaments ; then returning to the apartment which he had left, and seating himself in a chair of state, renewed his remonstrance to this effect. “ Here are the marks of that royalty, with which we were invested by God, and the princes of the empire ; if you disregard the wrath of heaven, and the eternal reproach of mankind, so much as to lay violent hands on your sovereign, you may strip us of them by force ; we are not in a condition to defend ourselves from the insult.” This expostulation had no more effect than the former upon the bishops, who forthwith snatched the crown from his head, and dragging him from his chair, pulled off his royal robes by force. While they were thus employed, “ Great God ! (cried he, the tears trickling down his cheeks), thou art the God of vengeance, and wilt avenge this outrage. I have sinned, I own, and merited this shame by the follies of my youth ; but thou wilt not fail to punish these traitors for their perjury, insolence, and ingratitude.”

HENRY the son, having thus got possession of the throne, was desirous of acquitting himself in some shape of the violence which had been exercised upon his father, who justly complained, that he had been condemned unheard. With this view he convened, at *Ingelheim*, those of the princes who were intirely devoted to his interest, in order to oblige the old emperor, to make a voluntary resignation in his favour. There, this unfortunate prince, looking upon himself as a dying man, is said to have implored forgiveness of

* Ibid. HEISS Hist. l. xi. c. 9.

all those whom he had offended, and to have thrown himself at the feet of the pope's legate, who was present; beseeching that prelate to absolve him from the sentence of excommunication; but his request was refused, on pretence that he could receive absolution from no other than the pope himself.

A. D. 1106.
and afterwards makes a voluntary resignation of his crown.

To such a degree of wretchedness was this unhappy prince reduced, by the barbarity of his son, that, being destitute of the common necessities of life, he intreated *Gertrad*, whom he had created bishop of *Spire*, to bestow upon him a canonicate for his subsistence, in that very cathedral which had been founded, built, and endowed, by his ancestors and himself. Here again he met with a repulse from the bishop, who told him, that he durst not grant his request without permission from the pope; upon which the emperor shed a flood of tears, and turning to those who were present, said, with a deep sigh, "My dear friends, at least have pity on my condition, for I am touched by the hand of the Lord." Thus was *Henry IV.* reduced from the highest pinnacle of greatness, to the lowest abyss of indigence and mortification, being divested of his honours, deprived of support, abandoned by his own son, his relations, and even those whom his bounty had enriched; and, to crown his misfortunes, he was kept in close confinement, by order of the new emperor.

His extreme wretchedness.

IN the midst of these distresses, when every body thought his courage was utterly extinguished, and his soul overwhelmed with despondence, he found means to escape from his keepers and reach *Cologne*, where he was received and recognized as lawful emperor. From thence he repaired to the *Low Countries*, where he found friends, who raised a considerable body of troops to facilitate his restoration, and sent circular letters to all the princes in Christendom, in order to interest them in his misfortune. He even wrote to the pope, giving him to understand he was inclined to an accommodation, provided it could be made without prejudice to his crown; but before any thing material could be executed in his favour, he died at *Liege*, in the 56th year of his age, and the 49th of his reign. His body was magnificently interred in the cathedral of that city; but, his son afterwards ordered it to be dug up, and deposited in the chapel of *St. Afron*, where it remained five years unburied, on account of his excommunication.

He makes an effort to retrieve his affairs, but dies at *Liege*. 1106.

SUCH was the end of *Henry IV.* a prince of great courage and excellent endowments, who, had not he alienated the

the affections of his subjects by the excesses of his youth (C), and attracted the enmity and opposition of the *Roman* church, in obstinately adhering to the rights of his prerogative, would have eclipsed the glory of all his ancestors, and finished his reign with honour and universal applause. There was an air of dignity in his appearance, that bespoke the greatness of his soul: he possessed a natural fund of eloquence and vivacity, was of a mild and merciful temper, extremely charitable (D), and an admirable pattern of fortitude and resignation. From the twelfth year of his age he had been continually engaged in war, commanded personally in threescore pitched battles, in which he was generally victorious, and survived a great many secret attempts that were made upon his life * (E).

* HEISS, l. ii. c. ix. GOB. PERS. æt. vi. Chron. Magdeburg, Bremens, Oldenburg. Archecomit. ex Meibom. tom. ii. BARON, tom. xiii. p. 43. LEO Ostiens. MACH. Istor di Firenz.

(C) He is charged with having maltreated his wife, and even to have hired a person to seduce her from her conjugal faith, that he might have a pretence for obtaining a divorce. He is also accused of having entered into engagements with the *Danes*, by which he obliged himself to yield to them all the provinces that were contiguous to their kingdom, in consideration of their assisting him against all his enemies, particularly the *Saxons*. There are many more circumstances of his profligacy and wickedness related; but as the authors of these stories are either monks or *Saxons*, they ought to be read with caution.

(D) He is said to have entertained the blind, the lame, and the sick, at his own table, and

even to have lodged them in his own apartment, that he might be at hand to minister to their necessities.

(E) While he was at *Rome*, after the deposition of pope *Gregory VII.* a person had placed himself upon a beam in the church, with a great stone, which he intended to have let fall upon *Henry's* head, while he should be employed at his devotion: but before he could execute his purpose, he fell down and dashed his brains out, in sight of the emperor. Some other people were taken in the very fact of endeavouring to thrust a spear up through his body, while he was in the house of office; who being brought before him, he dismissed them with impunity (1).

(1) Heiss, liv. ii. c. ix.

HENRY V.

HENRY V. surnamed *the Young*, having (as above related) obtained possession of the throne (F), was, in the beginning of his reign, so favourable to the clergy, in every particular, that he seemed to neglect intirely those rights of the imperial authority, which his father had defended at the hazard of his honour, his fortune, and his life. Nevertheless, he soon changed his conduct; whether he thought himself sufficiently established upon the throne, to pull off the mask which he had hitherto wore through policy, or that he found himself deceived in the intentions of the *Roman* church. The first mortification he received was from *Paschal II.* who, about two months after the death of the late emperor, held a council at *Guaftala* upon the *Po*, by which all the decrees of his predecessors against investitures were renewed ^t.

HENRY, though extremely piqued at these proceedings, Henry V. dissembled his resentment, because he did not as yet find himself in a condition to oppose the court of *Rome*, and invited the pope into *Germany*, where their difference might be brought to an amicable termination: but *Paschal*, who was well acquainted with *Henry's* haughty and implacable disposition, instead of complying with his request, thought proper to take a different route, and put himself under the protection of *Philip*, king of *France* ^{invites the pope to a conference.}.

THO' the emperor was very much disturbed at the honourable reception which the pope had met with from that monarch, he did not chuse to embrate himself with such a powerful neighbour; but, on the contrary, solicited his friendship, and desired that he would mediate an accommodation between him and his holiness. A conference was accordingly held at *Chalons* in *Champaigne*, where nothing was agreed upon, because the pope would not consent to the article of investiture, which *Henry's* ambassadors would by no means give up ^x.

^t Conc. Gener. t. x. c. ix.

^x SUGER. vit. Ludovici, Abb. S. Dion. de vit. Lud. Grof. DUCHESNE, tom. iv. p. 291.

(F) While he was at *Goslar*, the point of his sword, and holding the diet, he was struck shattered his buckler in pieces with a ball of fire that wounded (1). him in the right leg, broke off

(1) Geb. Perf. Cosmed. et. vi.

A. D.

1107.

AFTER this unsuccessful meeting, *Paschal* held a council at *Troyes*, and the emperor convoked a diet at *Mentz*. The *German* bishops declared for the emperor's right of investiture, and the fathers of the council adhered to the decrees of the preceding popes, unless *Henry* should, within a year, repair to *Rome*, and leave his cause to the determination of a general council.

IN the midst of these disputes the emperor would not neglect his other affairs. *Borziwoi*, duke of *Bohemia*, being expelled his dominions by his nephew *Suantopelkon*, had recourse to the assistance of the emperor, who summoned the usurper to his court, where he was put in irons, and furnished *Borziwoi* with some troops, to re-conduct him to his own dominions: but *Suantopelkon's* brother, *Otho*, being at the head of a good army, opposed his re-establishment; and the usurper finding means to detach *Henry* from his interest with a very large sum of money, *Borziwoi* was obliged to take shelter with *Boleslaus*, king of *Poland*, who received him with great hospitality.

He in-
vades

Hungary

THE emperor, thus furnished with the sinews of war, resolved, with the approbation of a diet convened at *Frankfort*, to punish *Coloman*, king of *Hungary*, for having been concerned in the massacre of the *German* crusards, during the preceding reign, and marching into his kingdom, penetrated to *Presburg*, which he invested in vain; for his army being greatly diminished by sickness, he raised the siege, and laid waste the country. Mean while *Coloman* engaged in a league, offensive and defensive, with *Boleslaus*, who not only sent him a reinforcement of troops to oppose the progress of the emperor, but also, under pretence of assisting his guest *Borziwoi*, advanced into *Bohemia*, and laid the country under contribution; so that *Suantopelkon*, who had joined the emperor, was obliged to quit *Hungary*, in order to defend his own dominions.

Goes to
war with
the Poles,
and is
oversted.

1109.

HENRY, thus weakened, retired into *Bavaria*, in order to recruit his forces; and being inflamed with resentment against *Boleslaus*, for having frustrated his revenge against *Coloman*, he resolved upon the conquest of *Silesia*, which, though at that time belonging to the *Poles*, had formerly been part of the empire. With this view he advanced as far as *Glogau*, which he invested; but the inhabitants making a gallant defence, he was obliged to raise the siege and retire. He then attacked *Breslau*, when *Boleslaus*, duke of *Poland*, who had assumed the name of king, coming to its

relief, a general battle ensued, in which the *Poles* were vanquished, and obliged to send an ambassador to *Henry* to sue for peace² (G). *Boleslaus*, however, not relishing the terms which the emperor wanted to impose, resolved to try once more his fortune in the field, and the two armies engaging near *Breslaw*, the *Germans* were defeated after a very obstinate dispute³. The loss of this battle induced *Henry* to desist from his enterprize upon *Silesia*, and return to the discussion of his affairs with the pope. With this view he assembled a diet at *Ratisbon*, which, after mature deliberation, granted him the necessary succours to maintain the rights of his crown in *Italy*. Thus re-inforced, he crossed the *Alps* with an army of 86,000 men, being also accompanied by a great part of the quality; and a number of persons who understood the rights and constitution of the empire; that he might be in a condition to do himself justice, either by negotiation or force of arms: but before his departure, he married *Mathilda*, daughter of *Henry I.* king of *England*, with whom he received an immense sum of money by way of dower, levied by a tax upon every hide of land in that kingdom. In his march through *Tuscany*, he took some cities that attempted to dispute his passage, and kept his *Christmas* at *Florence*. From thence he sent a splendid embassy to *Paschal*, with solemn professions of veneration for the holy see, and the pope did not fail to return the civility. Then a convention was held at *Sutri*, and a treaty of peace concluded to the intire satisfaction of the emperor, who obtained all, and even more than he demanded. But all these concessions were made merely with a view to amuse him, until the pope could take more effectual measures for his own interest.

A. D.
1110.
Marches
into Italy,
and makes
peace with
the pope.

² GOB. PERS. ubi supra.

³ HEISS, l. ii. c. x.

(G) The name of this ambassador was *Scrobias*, to whom the emperor talked in very high terms, telling him, the *Poles* had no peace to expect, unless they would become tributary to the empire: and, in order to convince him that they were not able to support a war against him, he ordered his people to shew his treasures to the

ambassador, who taking off his ring threw it into the heap, saying with a smile, "Here is something to augment the store." Upon which *Henry* replied in the *German* language. *Habdank*, which signifies I thank you; and the family of *Scrobias* was distinguished by that name (1).

(1) Heiss, liv. ii. c. x.

Makes his
entry into
Rome,
A. D.
1111.

where his
troops
make
dreadful
havock.

The pope is
prevailed
upon to re-
new the
treaty;

ON the very day of the emperor's entry into *Rome*, which was also fixed for his coronation, several persons belonging to his train were insulted, and even imprisoned by the populace. When the treaty of peace was read, in presence of the princes of the empire and *Italian* prelates, it was formally opposed by these last, who were by the pope privately tutored for the purpose, and the debates which their objections occasioned continued till night. The emperor finding himself duped, gave orders to seize the person of the pope, who had equivocated in such a scandalous manner; and the soldiers, employed in the execution of this order, rushing tumultuously into the churches, maltreated the cardinals and bishops without distinction. The consul put the citizens in arms, and next day a battle ensued, in which *Henry* fought in person with great courage. In a word, the *Romans* were defeated, and the carnage was so great, that the waters of the *Tiber* were stained with blood ^b. The pope was taken prisoner, together with several cardinals, bishops, and principal citizens of *Rome*; and the emperor having ordered the walls to be razed in several places, encamped in the open field, where he detained his prisoners during the whole time of *Lent*, and the *Easter* holidays. The pope was earnestly intreated by his fellow prisoners to renounce the right of investiture to the emperor, and crown him according to his desire, that they might obtain their liberty; but he resisted all their importunities, until *Henry* gave orders to behead his friends in his presence: upon which he thought proper to comply with the emperor's demands, and the former accommodation was renewed and ratified ^c (H).

^b Chron. Oldenb. Arch. ex MEIB. p. 139. DUCHESNE ubi supra. ^c *Iidem* ibid.

(H) This accommodation contained these articles: that the emperor should use the cross and ring, in investing those who were canonically elected with his consent; and that they should afterwards be consecrated according to the forms of the church, but never before they should have received the investiture; that the archbishops and bishops might without scruple

consecrate those who should be in this manner invested by the emperor; and, finally, that the pope should never excommunicate the emperor; nor, upon any pretext whatsoever, infringe any condition of this treaty. To these articles, the pope and sixteen cardinals solemnly swore upon the holy evangelists (1).

(1) Dodeshir. in. Append. ad Marian. Scot.

THIS treaty being concluded, the pope and the other prisoners were released, and *Henry* was crowned on the first Sunday after *Easter*, when the pope dividing the host, gave one half to the emperor, and took the other to himself, in token of perfect reconciliation (I). A new bull was published to confirm the treaty, lest the pope should afterwards pretend the former was extorted from him, during his confinement. Then the emperor, having confirmed the privileges of the *Romans*, and distributed largesses among the clergy, set out on his return to *Germany*, the pope, with several cardinals and prelates, accompanying him as far as the *Alps*. The first thing he did, when he arrived in his own dominions, was to bestow a magnificent funeral upon the body of his father, which had remained so long unburied, merely because that prince had maintained the right of investiture, now solemnly confirmed by the pope himself. Indeed it soon appeared, that the court of *Rome* was not at all sincere in the concessions which it had made; for though *Paschal* himself still preserved the exteriors of friendship and good faith, his legates, and among the rest the archbishop of *Vienne* in *Dauphiny*, did not fail to excommunicate the emperor in national councils. Nay, even the ecclesiastic princes of the empire refused to recognize or receive the bull touching the investiture of benefices: and *Albert*, or *Adelbert*, whom the emperor had raised to the archbishopric of *Mentz*, intrigued so successfully in favour of the pope, that the subsequent diet declared, his holiness had a right to revoke that bull in council. It was accordingly annulled by a council of the *Lateran*, which ordered the bull to be burnt, and the emperor to be excommunicated, though the pope refused his assent to the decree, on account of the oath he had taken. The archbishops, bishops, and chapters, finding themselves thus authorized by the court of *Rome*, resolved to maintain their power of filling their vacant sees without the interposition of the emperor, and the whole empire was re-involved in trouble and dissension.

A REBELLION breaking out in *Saxony*, *Henry* marched thither, secured the person of the archbishop, who had fo-

and the emperor returns to Germany.

Is excommunicated by the archbishop of Vienne in Dauphiny.

A.D. 1112.

The council of Lateran annul his treaty with the pope.

Troubles of Germany.

GOBEL. PERS. ET. VI. C. 57.

(I) In dividing the host, he pronounced an anathema to this effect. "As I divide the body of the Lord, so may he be divided from Christ and his kingdom, who shall attempt to violate this accommodation (1)."

(1) *Chronie. Belg.*

A. D. mented the disturbance, and laid waste the whole country ;
 1114. but in his return he was encountered, in a place called *Welfesbold*, by *Lotharius*, duke of *Saxony*, *Frederic* count *Arnefberg*, and *Reynerus*, bishop of *Halberstadt*, who had assembled a body of troops to oppose him ; and after a very obstinate battle, he was obliged to retreat with great loss. After this battle *Lotharius* entered *Goslar* in triumph, where an assembly of bishops and noblemen being convened, *Henry* and his adherents were excommunicated. Indeed, by this time he was almost quite abandoned by his subjects, and must have fallen a victim to rebellion and the intrigues of *Rome*, had not his cause been supported by the valour and success of his nephew *Frederic*, duke of *Suabia* and *Alsace*, surnamed *Monoculus*, whom he promoted to the supreme command of his army *.

Henry MATHILDA dying about this time, *Henry*, as her nearest
marches to relation, claimed the succession, notwithstanding the steps
Italy. she had taken in favour of the holy see, alleging, that it
 1115. was not in her power to alienate her estates, which immediately depended upon the empire. He therefore set out for *Lombardy*, and sent ambassadors to *Rome*, beseeching the pope to revoke the sentence of excommunication which had been fulminated against him, expressly contrary to their last agreement. *Paschal* would not even favour his deputies with an audience ; but, that same year, convoked a council at *Rome*, where his treaty with the emperor was condemned, and all the steps which had been taken by the national councils were confirmed.

1117. HENRY, shocked and incensed at these proceedings, advanced towards *Rome*, in order to dissipate the pernicious projects which were daily formed to his prejudice ; and the pope, who was well acquainted with his disposition, thought proper to retire into *Apulia*. In this march he secured several towns and castles, and gained over divers noblemen to his interest, particularly *Ptolemy*, count of *Tusculum*, the chief of the adverse party, who prevailed upon the *Roman* people to decree a triumph to the emperor. He was accordingly received at *Rome* with extraordinary magnificence ; and doubting the validity of his former coronation, which had been performed by a person who had retracted all he had done upon that occasion, he resolved that the ceremony should be repeated, and was actually crowned a second time in the church of *St. Peter*, by the hands of *Maurius Burdi-*

Is again crowned at Rome.

* ORTHON. *Frising de Gestis Frederic I.* c. 10.

nus, archbishop of *Prague*, who had attended him in this expedition ^f.

HENRY having retired into *Tuscany*, on account of the Paschal heats, *Paschal* privately returned to *Rome*, where he died *dies, and* in two days; and on the third after his decease, cardinal *Ca-* *is succeed-*
jetan was elected in his room, under the name of *Gelasus II.* *ed by Ge-*
 without the privity of the emperor, who, enraged at their *lasus II.*
 presumption, made long marches, in order to surprize this *whom the*
 new pope, who made his escape to *Gaeta* with great difficulty. *emperor*
Henry, however, declared his election void, and in his place *expels, and*
 appointed *Burdinus*, who assumed the name of *Gregory VIII.* *appoints*
Burdinus revoked the sentence of excommunication against the empe- *in his*
 ror, and confirmed his right of investiture. But all these *room.*
 measures served no other purpose than that of giving a han-
 dle to *Gelasus* for excommunicating *Henry*, together with
 the antipope he had set up ^g.

THIS was all the fruit he reaped from his expedition into *Henry*
Italy; for seeing the true pope protected by all the princes *sets out*
 of *Apulia*, against whom he had not a sufficient number of *for Ger-*
 troops to make head, he returned to his *German* dominions, *many.*
 leaving a guard with *Gregory* at *Rome*, where *Gelasus*, hav-
 ing made an effectual attempt to establish himself, was fain
 to desist, after his life had been in imminent danger. He
 then retired into *France*, and died at the abbey of *Cluny*,
 when the cardinals then present elected the cardinal archbi- *Calixtus*
 shop of *Vienne*, legate of the holy see in *France*, who, as we *is chosen*
 have already said, had excommunicated the emperor in *pope,*
 the national councils. The noblemen of *Saxony* and *West-* *A. D.*
phalia entered into an association, to defend themselves *1119.*
 against the resentment of the emperor; and having levied
 troops, under the command of duke *Lotharius*, *Frederic*
 count *Palatine*, and the marquis *Rodolphus*, they sent de-
 puties to *Henry*, demanding that he would acknowledge
Calixtus for pope, and restore to the right owners the fiefs
 and estates he had seized by violence and injustice. *Henry*
 refusing to give them audience, they took the field with a
 considerable army; and the emperor assembling troops to
 chastise them for their presumption, hostilities immediately
 ensued. The operations of the campaign were carried on
 with various success, until the ardour on both sides began to
 abate, and steps were taken towards an accommodation ^h.

^f HEISS, l. ii. c. 10. DUCHESNE, tom. iv. p. 310. PETR.
 DIAC. l. iv. c. 6. ^g BARON, ad ann. 1118, p. 122.
^h BARRE, tom. iv. p. 500.

between
whom and
the emper-
gocation
is set on
foot;

but mis-
carries.

A. D.
1120.
Calixtus
repairs to
Rome,
and shuts
up the an-
tipope in a
convent.

MEAN while the new pope called an assembly at *Rheims*; and the states of the empire meeting that same year at *Tribur*, between *Mentz* and *Worms*, gave the emperor to understand, that they were quite tired with this long quarrel, which had been so troublesome to the empire. In consequence of this remonstrance, a negotiation was set on foot: the emperor abated somewhat in his pretensions, with regard to the form of investitures, the pope promised to take off the sentences of excommunication, writings were exchanged, and a day fixed for an interview at *Monzon*. Towards this place the emperor advanced with an army of 30,000 men; and the pope taking umbrage at such a train, halted by the way in a strong castle, from whence he sent his legates to *Henry*, desiring to know if he still persisted in the sentiments he had lately professed: but when he understood that the emperor had changed his mind, denied his own hand writing, and become inexorable on the article of investiture, he set out on his return to *Rheims* without delay; nor could the repeated intreaties of the emperor prevail upon him to stay one single day, until the princes could be consulted. He had conceived such a terrible idea of the treatment his predecessor had met with at *Rome*, that he pursued his journey with incredible expedition, detained the council a few days longer, until a decree was passed, prohibiting ecclesiastics from receiving the investiture of bishoprics and abbeys from the hands of laics; and the emperor, with the antipope and all their adherents, were again excommunicated¹.

NEXT year *Calixtus* arrived at *Rome*, where he was honourably received. Upon which *Gregory VIII.* retired to *Sutri*, a strong town, garrisoned by the emperor's troops, who were not, however, able to protect him from the enmity of his rival; for the princes of *Apulia* sent an army to besiege the place of his retreat: and he at length fell into the hands of his competitor, who ordered him to be mounted on a camel, with his face towards the tail, and conducted through the public streets of *Rome*, amidst the scoffs and insults of the populace; after which procession, he was shut up in a convent for life (K).

¹ Act. Concil, p. 478.

(K) In this procession, the antipope was clothed with raw and bloody goats skins: and afterwards a picture was hung up in the palace, representing him trampled upon by the true pope (1).

(1) *Sag. Abb. de Vit. Lud. Gros. ou Du Chefne, tom. iv. p. 312*

IN the mean time the archbishop of *Mentz*, instigated by *Foment*: a the intrigues and authorized by the decrees of *Rome*, formed a powerful league against the emperor and his partizans, who were branded with the name of schismatics: armies were raised on both sides, and a great deal of blood must have been spilt, had not the wisest and most considerable of each party interposed and effected an accommodation. The emperor was unanimously supplicated to give peace to the empire. That prince referred himself intirely to the decision of the states; and a diet being assembled at *Wurtzburg*, it was decreed, that an embassy should be immediately sent to the pope, desiring he would convoke a general council at *Rome*, by which all contests might be determined ^k.

IN compliance with this request, *Calixtus* called the famous council, which was opened during *Lent*, and at which were present 300 bishops, and about 700 abbots. The ambassadors being heard before this grand assembly, the affair of investitures was at length regulated with their consent, in the following articles: that the emperor should leave the chapters and communities at liberty to fill up their own vacancies, without his bestowing investitures with the cross and ring; that he should restore all that had been unjustly taken from the church; that all elections should be made in a canonical manner, in presence of the emperor or his commissaries; and whatever disputes might happen, should be referred to the decision of the emperor, assisted by the metropolitan and his suffragans; that the person elected should receive from the emperor the investiture of the fiefs and secular rights, not with the cross, but with the sceptre, and that he should pay allegiance to him for these rights only; lastly, that for this ceremony six months should be allowed to those who lived at a distance from the empire ^l.

THIS treaty being read and ratified by the diet at *Worms*, the cardinal of *Osia*, the pope's first legate, who had accompanied the ambassadors in their return, gave absolution to the emperor, and all his schismatic adherents ^m; then said mass in his pontificals, and administered the sacrament to *Henry*, as the last mark of a perfect reconciliation.

THUS ended that tedious contest which had raised so many disturbances, and cost such a world of blood and treasure. But as, in this accommodation, no mention had been made of the emperor's right to create or intermeddle in the election of popes, *Calixtus* was no sooner dead, than the cardi-

^k BARRÉ, t. iv. p. 518.
Wilhelm. Hedam, p. 154.

^l ARN. BUCH. in Notis ad
^m GOS. PERS. ubi supra.
nals,

Honorius
II. is e-
lected pope,
A. D.
1124.

nals, clergy, and people of *Rome*, without the participation of *Henry*, proceeded to a new election, which was carried on with such disorder, that two persons were chosen at the same time, namely, *Theobald*, who was called *Celestin*, and *Lambert*, cardinal bishop of *Ostia*. He assumed the appellation of *Honorius* II. and was confirmed in the papacy, upon the voluntary resignation of his competitor.

Henry is
engaged in
a civil
war,

AFTER his accommodation with *Rome*, the emperor was engaged in a civil war, by the revolt of *Holland* (L), which he reduced by force of arms, as well as the city of *Worms*, which had also rebelled. Nevertheless, the spirit of sedition still continued to spread from town to town; so that he himself was obliged to fly from *Ruffac*, at the hazard of his life, in consequence of a sudden insurrection of the people.

and dies at
Utrecht.
1125.

IN a little time after this misfortune, which made a deep impression on his spirits, he died at *Utrecht*, aged forty-four, after a reign of eighteen years, and his body was interred at *Spire*, among his ancestorsⁿ. He married *Maud*, daughter of *Henry* I. king of *England*, by whom he had no issue; so that his heirs were *Conrad*, duke of *Franconia*, and *Frederic*, duke of *Suabia*, who were his own sister's sons, and he certainly intended that one of them should be his successor in the empire. *Henry* is said to have been haughty, cruel, and avaricious^o; but he was certainly a wise, politic, and resolute prince; and, exclusive of his unnatural behaviour to his father, of which he sincerely repented in the sequel, he may be justly ranked among those emperors who did not disgrace the diadem they wore.

ⁿ Chron. Magd. ex Mx; B. p. 325.

^o Idem. p. 326.

(L) A little before the death of *Calixtus*, *Henry* made a sudden irruption into *France*, at the instigation of his father-in-law *Henry*, king of *England*, but was forced to retreat without having obtained any advantage. Though all the German authors (*Krantz* excepted)

are silent with respect to this expedition, it is particularly mentioned by the French writers, and an exact detail of the preparations made by *Lewis le Gros*, to oppose this invasion, is given by *Sugerius*, abbot of *St. Denis*, who was an eye-witness of the whole (1).

(1) *Sug. de Vit. Lud. Grosi. ex Du Chesne, t. iv. p. 332, et sequent.*

C H A P IV.

Deducing the same Subject to the Succession of Henry VI.

L O T H A R I U S II.

AFTER the death of this emperor, it was believed that the states would confer the empire upon one of the sons of his sister, they being princes of great courage, generosity, and power, and very much esteemed by the principal members of the empire. But *Albert*, archbishop of *Mentz*, who bore an implacable enmity to the memory of the late emperor and all his adherents, having obtained the regalia from *Henry's* widow, by cajoling her with a promise of preserving them for one or other of her nephews, found means to influence the princes of the empire to give their suffrages in favour of *Lotharius*, duke of *Saxe-Supplem-* Lotharius
is chosen
emperor.
bourg ^P, who had befriended and supported him in all his contests with the late emperor. He was accordingly crowned at *Aix-la-Chapelle*, in presence of the pope's nuncio, while his two competitors neglected nothing in their power to support their pretensions to the throne. *Frederic*, duke of *Sua-*
bia, being actually elected king of the *Romans*, by some princes, noblemen, and cities of the empire, and the other solemnly crowned at *Milan* by the archbishop of that city ^Q. The first expedition of the new emperor was against the *Bo-*
hemians, whom he hated, because they had assisted the late emperor against him, while he was in rebellion. But his pretence for marching into *Bohemia* at this juncture, was a quarrel between *Otho* and *Sobieslaus*, brothers of the deceased duke, who had left the guardianship of his children to *Sobieslaus*, although *Otho* was his elder brother. This preference, given contrary to the custom of nations, was resented by *Otho*, whom, however, *Sobieslaus* expelled by dint of arms. Thus injured he repaired to the diet at *Ratisbon*, in order to solicit redress. The emperor interesting himself in his cause, marched into *Bohemia*, where, though he sustained some damage and disgrace, he compelled *Sobieslaus* to sue for peace, which was granted, on condition that he should restore *Moravia* to *Wincelaus*, the son of *Otho*, release the prisoners he had made, and do homage to the emperor

^P Gest. Ludov. vii. ex DUCHESNE. ^Q AVENTIN. Ann. Boi. l. vi. p. 492. ^r Hist. Bohem. l. ii.

*Surmounts
all opposi-
tion.*

for Bohemia ¹. In a word, after a short opposition, which, however, was obstinate and bloody, the two princes dropped their pretensions, and were reconciled to *Lotharius*, who honoured them with his friendship, particularly *Conrad*, whom he loaded with extraordinary proofs of esteem and benevolence ².

A. D.
1130.
*Espouses
the cause
of Inno-
cent II.*

HONORIUS II. dying on the 24th of February, *Innocent* II. succeeded him that same day in the papacy, by virtue of a canonical election; notwithstanding which, cardinal *Petrus Leonis*, who had a powerful faction at Rome, was proclaimed pope by the name of *Anacletus*: the other finding himself too weak to oppose this rival, retired into France, where his interest was openly espoused by *St. Bernard*, who persuaded *Lotharius* to declare in his favour. He likewise proposed and effected an interview between the emperor and his holiness at *Liege* ³; where, after some disputes upon the article of investiture ⁴, *Lotharius* acquiesced in the pope's refusal to part with that prerogative, and even undertook to re-establish *Innocent* in Rome (M).

and hav-
ing re-
established
him in the
papal
chair, is
crowned
at Rome.

THIS expedition being concerted, the pope set out for Italy, taking France in his way, where he received a considerable sum for the expence of his journey: then proceeding to *Placentia* he waited for the emperor, who in a few days joined him with his army, and conducting him to Rome re-established him in the chair, in spite of all the efforts and opposition of the antipope. It was, perhaps, with a view to give more weight to this re-establishment, and to excite other people, by example, to honour the true pope, that the emperor at his coronation ⁵, which was soon after performed, kneeled before *Innocent*, who was seated upon a throne; and having promised obedience to the holy see, received the crown in that posture. After this solemnity the emperor returned to Germany, where, by the advice of one *Werner Ursperg*, alias *Ernerius*, he ordered that justice should

1133.

¹ Annal. de l'Empire, t. i. p. 215. ² SUG. Abb. vit. LUD. GROS. ex DU CHEſNE, p. 318. ³ CONR. URSPERG. ex MEIB. de jure Investit. Espic. ⁴ Ann. Boior. JOAN AVENT. lib. vi. p. 495.

(M) The emperor hearing of the pope's approach, mounted his steed and rode forth to receive him: at meeting *Lotharius* alighted, and running to *Innocent*, lifted him in his arms from his horse, and accompanied him to the place where he was to lodge (1).

be administered in the empire according to the digesta or code of *Justinian* *, the use of which had been laid aside five or six hundred years. These laws were introduced in *Italy, Germany*, and afterwards in *France and Spain*, in lieu of peculiar statutes and particular customs (N).

THE emperor had no sooner quitted *Italy*, than *Roger* *Refforts* duke of *Apulia*, who had lately erected his dominions into a *Innocent*, royalty, under the name of the kingdom of *Sicily*, raised *who had* an army in favour of *Anacletus*, and made himself master of *been ex-* almost all the places belonging to the holy see; upon which *pelled by* pope *Innocent* retired to *Pisa*, and again implored the assistance of *the duke of* *Lôtharius*, who did not forsake him in his adversity. *Apulia.* On the contrary, he levied a powerful army, and, dividing it *A. D.* into two parts, gave the command of one to his son-in-law *1137.* the duke of *Bavaria*, and put himself at the head of the other. All the places of *St. Peter's Patrimony* were soon retaken, and the true pope re-conducted in triumph to *Rome*, a circumstance which is said to have hastened the death of *Anacletus*, who died of grief at the success of his competitor.

THE emperor afterwards drove *Roger* from city to city, *Makes a* and at length obliged him to retire into *Sicily*; then sub- *conquest of* duing the provinces of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, and all *Roger's* *his domi-* *Italian* possessions, he formed them into a principality, and *nions in* *Italy, and* bestowed it, with the title of duke, upon *Renaud*, a *German* prince, and one of his own relations.

ON his return to *Germany*, after this glorious expedition, *dies at* he was seized with a dangerous distemper at *Verona*, not- *Trent.* withstanding which he proceeded on his journey, in hopes *1138.* of being recovered by his native air; but death overtook him among the *Alps*, near *Trent*, in the twelfth year of his reign. This prince is celebrated on account of his passionate regard for public peace, and the administration of justice; tho' from the great number of commentaries that were made upon the *Pandects*, he is taxed with having introduced chicanry instead of facilitating the investigation of truth.

* De hoc, vide Ant. Hist. vol. xvi. p. 548, & seq.

(N) In the summer of the year 1135, the heats were so excessive in *Germany*, that the corn and fruits of the earth withered in the field, and the most considerable rivers, even the *Rhine* itself, became dry, so that almost all the cattle perished for want of water (1).

(1) *Notes upon Heiss, l. xi. p. 290.*

CONRAD III.

Conrad
III. elect-
ed.

A. D.
1139.

Henry
duke of
Bavaria
refuses to
deliver the
regalia,
and is di-
vested of
his domi-
nions.

Guelph,
with the
assistance
of Roger,
king of
Sicily,
takes the
field a-
gainst
Conrad.

THE princes of the empire assembling at *Coblentz*, in order to choose a new emperor, unanimously elected *Conrad* duke of *Franconia*, nephew of *Henry V.* and conducted him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by cardinal *Thiery*; the pope's legate, he officiating for the archbishop of *Cologne*, who was not at that time in priest's orders¹;

HENRY duke of *Bavaria*, surnamed *the Haughty*, who had married the only daughter of *Lotharius*, and received the duchy of *Saxony* as her dower, was not present at this election, which he considered as a violation of his right, because *Lotharius*, who died without issue male, had put the regalia into his hands, and even designed him for his successor in the empire. In consequence of this designation, he refused to surrender the royal ornaments to *Conrad* after he had been lawfully elected: upon which the princes, assembled at the diet of *Goslar*, publicly divested him of his duchies of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; the first of which they gave to *Albert* marquis of *Brandenburg*², and the other to *Leopold* marquis of *Austria*; an alienation which made such a deep impression on the mind of *Henry*, that he died that same year of grief and mortification (O).

ABOUT this time, *Roger* king of *Sicily* had made himself master of the dominions which belonged to the empire in *Apulia*. That he might be able to maintain his conquest, he excited *Welf* or *Guelph*, brother of *Henry the Haughty*, to make war with the emperor for the recovery of the two duchies which had been confiscated, and furnished him with a considerable sum of money for the expence of his army. After several engagements that were not decisive, *Guelph* was besieged by the emperor in the castle of *Weinsberg*, and, re-

¹ GEB. PERF. COSMOD. æt. vi. cap. 59. KRANT. Sax. l. vi. cap. 8. ² Ann. Boior. JOAN. AVENT. lib. vi. pag. 459.

(O) The emperor gave his widow in marriage to his own brother, together with the duchy of *Austria*, the princes of which (tho' it is the youngest duchy of the empire) assume the title of archduke (2).

In the second year of this emperor's reign, died *Johannes de Temporibus*, who is said to have been armour-bearer to *Charlemagne*, and to have lived 361 years (3).

(2) Krantz, l. vi. Sax. c. 8.

(3) Geb. Perf. Cosmod. æt. vi. c. 59.

solving to make a sally, gave for the word *Hievvels*. *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, brother to the emperor, and general of his troops, having discovered this word, gave to his own army that of *Hiegibelin*, the name of a village in *Suabia*, in which he himself had been educated. This was the origin of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins*, which afterwards grew into such *Guelphs* vogue in *Italy*, where the pope's party was distinguished by the name of the first, and that of the emperor by the other (P). *Guelph*, however, sustained great loss in this sally, and, having defended himself to the last extremity, was obliged to surrender at discretion. The emperor, however, instead of using his good fortune with severity and rigour, gave the duke liberty to retire unmolested; but the duchess, suspecting this excess of generosity in *Conrad*, who had been known to entertain a particular enmity against her husband, sent a gentleman to the emperor, intreating him to grant a safe conduct for her, and the other women belonging to the castle, that they might come out with as much as each could carry, and be conducted to a place of safety. The emperor complied with her request, and this evacuation was made in the sight of the whole army, who expected to see them come forth with jewels, gold, and silver; but they were not a little surprized when they saw the duchess, and other ladies of quality, flagging under the load of their husbands, who had offended the emperor. *Conrad* was so much moved with this spectacle, which was an undoubted proof of their tenderness and courage, that the tears ran down his cheeks; he applauded their conjugal fidelity, entertained them at dinner, and came to an accommodation with *Guelph*, and his other enemies, notwithstanding the efforts of his own generals, who opposed his generosity on this occasion ^a.

A. D.
1141.

MEAN while this civil war furnished several towns of *Italy* with an opportunity of withdrawing themselves from the dominion of the empire, and setting up for independent republics. Even the *Romans* formed a design of re-establishing the antient commonwealth, and of retrieving the sovereignty of the city, together with the patrimony of the church. They had already renewed the order of senators, and the rank of patrician, to which they had promoted one *Jordanus*, in-

^a HEISS, l. ii. c. 12.

(P) This is the most probable of several accounts given of the origin of these names (4).

(4) See *Blond*, 2. dec. 7. *Sigon*. l. xi. *Kraep*; *Sax*. l. viii. c. 3.

Jordanus
beats a se-
dition at
Rome.

A. D.

1144.

Pope Lu-
cius II. is
killed by a
stone.

vesting him with the same authority which *Charlemagne* had possessed in that station. This new patrician, accompanied by the senators and the people, went to pope *Lucius II.* and representing that the popes originally applied themselves to ecclesiastic affairs, contented with the tythes they received for their subsistence, they desired him to desist from intermeddling in politics, and leave the care of the administration to those, to whom it properly belonged. Nay, they went so far as to take possession of the revenues of the city, and turn out the pope's officers, who had been appointed to collect them. *Lucius*, with his cardinals and clergy, vehemently opposed this innovation, and, after obstinate disputes, it was agreed, that recourse should be had to *Conrad*, who was at the diet at *Spire* when the ambassadors arrived. But before his decision could be obtained, the pope put himself at the head of some troops he had levied, and besieged the senators in the capitol, from which he received such a wound with a stone, as in a few days put an end to his life; so that the ambassadors returned without an answer. *Lucius* was succeeded by *Eugenius III.* who, tho' disturbed by those seditious people in the beginning of his papacy, found means to reduce the rebels to reason, and re-establish the authority of St. *Peter's* chair. Quiet being thus restored to the city, the pope applied himself vigorously to the famous crusade, which was at that time set on foot against the *Saracens* for the defence of the *Holy Land*; an enterprize in which the emperor *Conrad* was engaged by the admonitions of St. *Bernard*, from whose hands he actually received the cross.

At a general diet convened at *Frankfort*, the preparations for the crusade were adjusted, the emperor's son *Henry* was elected king of the *Romans*, and an imperial council established at *Rotweil* (Q), to govern the empire under his

(Q) This council, which is still in force at *Rotweil*, tho' deprived of its former authority, must be composed of twelve gentlemen, or, in default of gentlemen, the members must be chosen from among the citizens of *Rotweil*, and the president must be the count *de Schantz*, to whose family that honour belongs in fief. Its jurisdiction extends over the provinces of *Swabia*, *Franconia*,

Austria, and the *Rhine*. Nevertheless, the archbishops of *Trier* and *Cologne*, the archdukes of *Austria*, the knights of the *Teutonic* order and of the order of *Malta*, the subjects of the duke of *Deuxponts*, and of the duke of *Wurtemberg*, the abbot of *St. Blaise*, the counts of *Hanan*, and some others, have a right to decline pleading before this tribunal (5).

authority. In this assembly, *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony*, demanded the duchy of *Bavaria*, which had been taken from his father, and bestowed on *Henry of Austria*; and even threatened to retake it by force, in case his remonstrances should not avail. *Conrad* replied, with great moderation, that the affair should be discussed and equitably decided at his return from the *Holy Land*; and in the mean time he desired *Wiebold*, abbot of *Corbie*, who had a great share of his confidence, to keep a vigilant eye over the *Saxons* in his absence, and to persuade the duke to undertake a crusade against the pagans of the north.

THE winter being consumed in making preparations for *Conrad* the eastern expedition, *Conrad*, accompanied by his nephew *Frederic Barbarossa*, duke *Guelf*, and many other noblemen, set out for *Palestine*, at the head of sixty thousand horse, in excellent order; but the undertaking was not crowned with success, one half of his troops having perished by the treachery of *Comnenus*, the *Greek* emperor, who ordered lime to be mixed with the meal which he furnished for their subsistence^b, and the remainder having been intirely defeated by the *Turks*; he made shift, however, with the wreck of his army, to make head against the *Saracens* for some time, and then returned to his own dominions (R).

THE bad success of this undertaking filled the empire with grief, consternation, and clamour, and intailed the reproaches and curses of the people upon *St. Bernard*, who had not only preached up the crusade, but, by virtue of a pretended commission from heaven, promised victory, honour, and wealth, to all those who should embark in the expedition. They reviled him with the appellations of false prophet, impostor, and incendiary; and accused him of having drained their country of all the riches and men, who could have defended it against the insults and encroachments of their enemies.

YET, notwithstanding these complaints, which were extremely just, such was the epidemic madness of the times, that another crusade was formed against the *Moors*, who

engages in
a crusade;
A. D.
1147.
which is
unsuccessful.

^b KRANT. Sax. l. vi. c. 14. GOB. PERS. Cosm. æt. vi. c. 59.

(R) *Conrad* having joined his forces with those of *Lewis the Young*, they undertook the siege of *Damascus*, and sustained a furious sally; in which the emperor, with his own hand, cleft a *Turk* through the middle, to the astonishment and terror of the *Mohammedans*, who, at sight of this atchievment, fled with great precipitation (6).

(6) *Gesta Ludov. VII. ex du Cbesne*, p. 406.

against the Moors; from the neighbourhood of the *Rhine* and the *Weser*, took the cross; and, embarking in a fleet of two hundred *English* and *Flemish* vessels, set sail for *Spain*, to the assistance of king *Alphonfus Henriquez*. After having been dispersed by a violent storm, they entered the *Tagus*; and, joining the *Spanish* forces, invested the city of *Lisbon*, which, after a siege of five months, was taken by assault^c.

and a third against the pagans of the north. ABOUT the same time, the *Saxons* engaged in a third crusade against the pagans of the north, and raised two armies, amounting to one hundred thousand men, under the command of *Conrad* the *Saxon*, and *Henry* duke of *Saxony*; who, penetrating into *Sclavonia*, destroyed the country, and converted the natives, with fire and sword, to the Christian religion.

A.D.
1148.

AT *Conrad's* return from *Palestine*, *Henry the Lion* renewed his demands touching *Bavaria*, and, as he did not receive a definitive answer, had recourse to arms; but the emperor took such measures as defeated his design against *Bavaria*, and he was fain to desist, for the present, from his pretensions.

DURING the remaining part of *Conrad's* reign, nothing extraordinary happened, except the revolt of *Guelph*; who, in his return from the *Holy Land*, was instigated and bribed by *Roger* king of *Sicily*, to rebel against the emperor: but he was afterwards reconciled to him through the mediation of *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, who was nephew to both^d.

He settles
the success-
ion,

SOON after this accommodation, he was very much afflicted with the death of *Henry* his eldest son, who had been elected king of the *Romans* before he set out on his expedition against the *Saracens* (S). This event made the deeper impression, as *Frédéric*, the only surviving son, was yet in his nonage. He therefore convoked a diet at *Bamberg*, where, on account of his ill state of health, he recommended his nephew *Frederic* duke of *Suabia* to succeed him in the empire, a prince of great courage and capacity, and in every respect worthy of the throne: the recommendation was therefore approved by all the princes, and the regalia deposited in his hands. Soon after this settlement of the succession, *Conrad* died at *Bam-*

and dies.
1152.

^c MARIAN. Hist. HEISS, l. x.

^d AVENT. l. vi.

(S) We have here followed *Heiss*, in opposition to *Krantz*, who says *Henry* survived his fa-

ther, and was poisoned in the reign of *Frédéric*.

berg, after having reigned about thirteen years, with virtue and reputation * (T).

F R E D E R I C I. surnamed *Barbarossa*.

AFTER the death of *Conrad*, the princes of the empire, *FredERIC* assembling at *Frankfort*, elected, according to his re-Barbarossa commendation, his nephew *Frederic*, who was crowned at *rossa is Aix la Chapelle*, at the age of twenty-nine. He was the first elected emperor of that name, and honoured with the appellation of *peror*; *Father of his Country*, on account of his invariable affection and attachment to the glory of the empire, tho' he was likewise distinguished by the name of *Barbarossa*, or *red beard*. He was no sooner elected, than almost all the princes of *Europe* sent ambassadors to *Merfbourg*, to congratulate him on his elevation. The king of *Denmark* went thither in person receives for the investiture of his dominions, which was granted by *homage Frederic*, who crowned him with his own hand, and received from the oath of allegiance from him, as vassal of the empire. king of The emperor's next step was to send the archbishop of *Triers* Denmark; and bishop of *Bamberg* ambassadors to *Rome*, to receive the crown in his name, as he could not go thither in person, before he should have pacified and determined the differences which subsisted among the princes of the empire. Of these the most considerable was the quarrel between *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, and *Henry the Lion*, who took the title of duke of *Bavaria*. This young *Henry* demanded the duchy as his inheritance; the other refused to resign it; and almost all the princes of *Germany* took arms in favour of one or other of these competitors †.

IN order to compose all these disturbances, the emperor *adjusts a* called a diet at *Spire*, where, by the advice of the princes there *difference* assembled, he decreed, that *Henry* duke of *Saxony* should be re- *between*

* OTHON. FRISING. de Gest. Fred. l. ii. BARR. t. iv. p. 708.

† Ann. Boior. JOAN. AVENT. ubi sup. Hist. de Hen. Leon. ex MEIB. t. i. p. 431.

(T) *Conrad* married *Gertrude*, daughter of *Berenger*, prince of *Saltzbaich*, by whom he had two sons and one daughter. *Henry* the eldest, who had been elected king of the *Romans* at *Franckfort*, died in the year 1150.

The second, called *Frederic*, was duke of *Franconia* and *Rottembourg*, and lived till the year 1166, when he died of the plague. The daughter, whose name was *Judith*, married *Lewis* landgrave of *Thuringia* (7).

(7) *Barr.* t. iv. p. 708.

Henry duke of Saxony, and Henry of Austria; established in the duchy of *Bavaria*, and, in order to satisfy the other, he erected *Austria* into a duchy, releasing him from the homage and oath of fidelity to the duchy of *Bavaria*, of which it formerly held s. At the same time the duke of *Austria*, in consideration of this independency, yielded to Henry duke of *Saxony* the duchies of *Tuscany* and *Spoletto*, together with the island of *Sardinia*.

compells
Sueno to
do homage
for the
kingdom of
Den-
mark;
A. D.
1153.

THIS affair being compromised, he acted as umpire in the difference between *Sueno* and *Canute*, who had, by force of arms, for some time disputed the crown of *Denmark*. *Canute*, after repeated efforts, being vanquished by his competitor, repaired to the diet which was then sitting at *Merzbouurg*, and solicited the protection of the emperor, promising to do homage for the kingdom, provided he would declare in his favour. *Frederic*, allured by this promise, interested himself in the cause of *Canute*, and sent ambassadors to *Sueno*, desiring that prince would come to *Merzbouurg*, where he wanted to confer with him on matters of the last importance. *Sueno*, who had formerly served as a volunteer with *Frederic* in the army of *Conrad*, complied with his request; and arriving at *Merzbouurg*, with a splendid retinue, was nobly received by the emperor, who nevertheless compelled him to subscribe to such articles as he proposed: and peace was concluded between the two princes, on condition that *Sueno* should retain the kingdom of *Denmark* as a fief of the empire, and gratify *Canute* with certain territories in *Jutland*, *Zeeland*, and *Scania*.

THE next step which *Frederic* took was to hold a diet at *Wirtzbouurg*, where he listened to the complaints of the noblemen of *Apulia*, whom *Roger* king of *Sicily* had stripped of their estates, and expelled from their country; and he resolved, with the concurrence of the assembly, to march into *Italy*, with all convenient speed, in order to chastise that tyrant for having injured the vassals of the empire, as well as to receive the imperial crown.

quarrels
with the
pope;

IT was not long before the emperor, in imitation of his predecessors, quarrelled with the pope. He had raised the bishop of *Zeitz* to the archbishopric of *Magdeburg*, because the votes were equally divided between other two competitors. *Eugenius* III. at that time pope, disapproved of his depriving one see of a bishop, in order to put him in another, when there was no necessity for such a translation; but *Frederic*, who was perfectly well acquainted with the agreements which had been made between his predecessors

and former popes, supported his creation; and when *Eugenius* sent legates into *Germany* to depose the archbishop ^b, they were obliged to make a very expeditious retreat.

THE pope dying, *Anastasius*, who succeeded him in the chair, resolved to tread in the footsteps of his predecessor, and sent cardinal *Gerardus* into *Germany* to determine that affair. But the legate having spoken disrespectfully in presence of his imperial majesty, who was as jealous of his honour as expert in the management of his affairs, he was disgracefully chased out of *Germany*, and died of chagrin on his return to *Rome*.

MEAN while *Frederic*, reflecting upon the mischievous consequences of a breach with the pope, sent the new archbishop of *Magdeburg* to *Rome*, where he pleaded his own cause so effectually, that the pope was satisfied, and invested him with the *Pallium* ⁱ.

A. D.

1154.
but is afterwards
reconciled
to the holy
see.

THE emperor, in order to manifest his independence of the pope, repudiated, by his own authority, his wife *Adelaide*, on account of the consanguinity subsisting between him and her, which not only did violence to his conscience, but seemed to threaten future doubts and disputes touching the legitimacy of his children.

IT was about this time, that several cities of *Italy* revolted from the emperor, in imitation of some others which had already taken the same step, and the *Romans* themselves renewed their attempts upon the pope's sovereignty at *Rome*. Their sedition proceeded to such a length, that a cardinal was actually murdered; upon which *Adrian IV.* who had by this time succeeded *Anastasius*, put the city under an interdiction. The people at length submitted; the interdiction was taken off; but, the difference being afterwards rekindled, the pope was fain to take refuge at *Viterbo*, where he waited for the emperor, whom he had invoked to his assistance ^k.

A new je-
dition at
Rome.
1155.

FREDERIC, stimulated by these considerations, put himself at the head of a gallant army, accompanied by *Henry the Lion*, his uncle *Welfon*, and a great number of the nobility, and marched into *Italy* by the way of *Tyrol*. After having held an assembly in the plain of *Roncalie*, composed of the noblemen of the empire, together with the grandees and consuls of almost all the *Italian* cities, who went thither to make their submission, and solicit redress of grievances, he reduced some towns of *Lombardy* which had revolted, chastised

^b OTHON. FRISING. de Gest. Fred. l. ii. c. 9.
t. v. p. 15.

^k Id. ibid.

ⁱ BARRE,

A dangerous feud in Germany.

others which had tyrannized over their neighbours, and proceeded to *Pavia*, where he was crowned king of *Italy*¹. But while he proceeded on his conquests, he was not a little chagrined to learn, that *Germany* was re-involved in troubles, by a quarrel between the archbishop of *Mentz* and duke *Herzman* count palatine of the *Rhine*, who had taken arms against each other, and resolved to drive things to the utmost extremity (U).

An interview between the pope and the emperor;

FREDERIC, alarmed at these disturbances, made haste to conclude his expedition; and as his chief business was to re-establish the pope in *Rome*, pressed him to an interview at *Sutri*, whither his holiness repaired upon a mule, in expectation that the emperor would hold his stirrup, and help him to dismount; but this humiliation *Frederic* would not undergo, until he was convinced that it was no more than a compliment, which his predecessors had paid to the pope, whom they looked upon as the representative of Christ^m (X).

He re-establishes his holiness in Rome, where he is crowned.

THE emperor re-conducted the pope to *Rome*, where he received the imperial crown from the hands of his holiness, and the *Romans* gave no interruption to the ceremony; but soon as *Frederic* had retired to his camp, the sedition was renewed; and taking up arms, they besieged the pope in the palace of the *Vatican*; but the emperor, on the first notice of this insurrection, hastened to his succour, cut in pieces all that opposed his way, dispersed the multitude, and quieted the commotionⁿ.

FREDERIC, having punished the *Romans* for their rebellion, passed the *Tyber*, and encamped at *Ponte Lucano*, to which place he was accompanied by the pope, who did not

¹ OTHON. FRISING. de Gestis Fred. l. ii. c. 21. ^m KRANT. Sax. lib. vi. c. 16. HEISS, l. ii. c. 13. ⁿ BARRE, ut sup.

(U) The count *Palatine*, assisted by the counts of *Leiningen*, *Sparnheim*, *Kalslenbogen*, *Kirchberg*, *Diedesheim*, and others, plundered, sacked, and burned the city of *Mentz*, after having ravaged the whole country around it (8).

(X) The emperor went to hold the stirrup on the left side, when the pope expressing his surprize, *Frederic*, with an air of

pleasantry, said he was not well acquainted with the office, and therefore hoped his holiness would excuse him. The pope, however, was not satisfied with this apology, and went away without bestowing upon him the kiss of peace; but, returning next day, the emperor performed his part to a miracle, and every thing was set to rights (9).

think himself safe in *Rome*. Here he was presented by the *Tiburtines* with the keys of their city, which he delivered to his holiness, in consequence of being told that the town belonged to the holy see. From hence he marched to *Spoletto*, which he took, plundered, and burned, because the inhabitants refused to release count *Guido*, whom they had apprehended in his return from *Apulia*, where he had been transacting business for the emperor. While *Frederic* stayed a few days at *Ancona*, in order to refresh his troops, deputies arrived in his camp from the patriarch of *Jerusalem*, with complaints against the knights hospitallers; but he left that affair to the cognizance of the pope. At the same time came ambassadors with presents from the *Greek* emperor, who proposed a treaty of alliance, and desired *Frederic* to march into *Apulia* against *William* king of *Sicily*, who had succeeded *Roger*, and was their common enemy. *Barbarossa* immediately called a council, in which it was resolved to send *Guibald*, abbot of *Corbie*, as plenipotentiary to *Constantinople*: and in the mean time the exiled noblemen of *Apulia* returned to their own country, under the protection and countenance of the emperor, whom their enemies durst not venture to incense.

THE affairs of *Italy* being thus settled, the emperor returned to his *German* dominions, and ordered the princes, who had taken up arms against each other, to be summoned to the diet at *Worms*; where, having taken their trial, they were condemned to the punishment allotted for the perturbators of the public peace (Y). In a little time after this event, a breach happened between *Adrian* IV. and the emperor. The bishop of *Lunden*, having been robbed and taken prisoner in the imperial dominions, had complained of the outrage, without being redressed; and the pope, espousing his cause, sent legates to demand justice of the emperor, whom they found at *Besançon*, where he had convoked a diet. There they took an opportunity of reading aloud the letter of his holiness, which, among other things, imported, that he had, out of his free grace and favour, conferred upon *Frederic* the sovereign authority of *Rome*, and the kingdom

Returns to Germany, and punishes the perturbators of the public peace.
A. D. 1156.
Another breach between Frederic and the pope, on account of

(Y) Each count was constrained to carry a dog on his back, from one county to another; each gentleman to bear a joint-stool; and the common

people to shoulder cart-wheels. The archbishop of *Mentz* was excused on account of his old age (10).

of *Italy*. Every body from these words concluded, that the pope had actually bestowed upon him the empire as a fief of the holy see, and what confirmed this conjecture was the behaviour of one of the legates, who, hearing this donation questioned, exclaimed, "If not of his holiness, of whom then doth he hold it?" This saucy interrogation had like to have proved fatal to him and his followers (Z), who were forthwith turned out of the assembly, and ordered to take the speediest and shortest way back to *Rome* °. The emperor, in his own vindication, wrote circular letters, by way of manifesto, in which he publicly gave the lie to all those

• GOB. PERS. Cosm. æt. vi. c. 60.

(Z) The legate had no sooner pronounced these words, than *Otho* count palatine of *Bavaria* unsheathed the sword which he wore as marshal of the empire, and, advancing towards him, would, in all probability, have had no regard to his function, had not he been restrained by the emperor (1).

But, that the reader may have an idea of the provocation, we shall literally translate the pope's letter from the *Annals of John Aventinus*: "The Roman empire was translated from the *Greeks* to the *Germans*; but the king of the *Teutones* was not called emperor before he was crowned by the apostolic power. Before his consecration he was king, after it he became emperor. Of whom then but us doth he hold the empire? From the election of his own princes he enjoys the name of king; from our consecration he derives the appellations of emperor, *Augustus*, and *Cæsar*; therefore throw us he governs. Recollect what hath happened of old.

"*Zacharias* promoted *Charles* to the imperial dignity, and gave him the name of *Great*, and decreed that the king of the *Germans* should thenceforward for ever be emperor, and champion of the apostolic chair; that he might reduce *Apulia* to the dominion of the bishop of *Rome*, to whom (as well as the city itself) it formerly belonged. *Rome* is the seat of our empire; whereas the emperor's is at *Aix*, in the forest of *Ardenne*. Whatever he hath as emperor, he hath from us; for, as *Zacharias* transferred the empire from the *Greeks* to the *Germans*, so can we transfer it from the *Germans* to the *Greeks*. It is in our power to bestow it upon whom we will. Besides, we are appointed by God to rule over kingdoms and nations, that we may destroy, pluck up, build, plant, &c." Then he brands the *Germans* for their want of valour; observing; that they could not drive *Roger* out of *Italy*, nor subdue the *Frislanders* and *Danes* (2).

(1) *Heisi, ubi sup.*

(2) *Joban, Avent. Ann. Boior. p. 506.*

who should presume to say, that he held his crown of any other than God himself ^p; while the pope employed the *German* bishops to represent to the emperor the injury he had sustained in the persons of his legates. To these representations *Frederic* replied with warmth, that he held his crown of God and the princes of *Germany*, and that he would rather resign it altogether than suffer it to be debased in his possession. The ^{which is} bishops, finding him obstinately determined to support his ^{compro-} dignity, advised his holiness to pacific measures; and he, ^{misid.} wisely following their advice, sent another deputation of legates, with a respectful letter, in which he explained away the meaning of his former expressions. *Frederic*, who was a prince of great penetration, plainly perceived, that, notwithstanding this gloss, the court of *Rome* waited for nothing but a favourable opportunity of declaring itself in another stile; and therefore, that he might be the better prepared for such a declaration, he resolved with all speed to discuss the affairs which might thwart him in his own dominions. With this ^{The em-} view he attacked *Boleslaus* duke of *Poland*, who had revolted; ^{peror re-} him he reduced to obedience, and obliged to pay the arrears ^{duces Bo-} of tribute which he owed. In the next place he engaged *leslaus*, ^{duke of} *Uladislaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, more firmly in his interest, by ^{Poland;} erecting anew that duchy into a kingdom^q. *Henry IV.* had ^{erects Bo-} conferred the title of king upon a former *Uladislaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, but the duchy itself had never till now been ac- ^{hemia into} knowledged as a kingdom. Then he made progress through a kingdom; the towns of the *Lower Rhine*, in order to establish proper regulations touching the administration of justice, and built the tower of *Anweiler* upon the *Queich*, at the distance of two leagues from *Landau*. He likewise took measures for se- ^{secures the} curing the fidelity of the king of *Hungary*; and having thus ^{king of} established peace through all *Germany*, as well as the neigh- ^{Hungary} bouring countries, he resolved to repass the *Alps* with a ^{in his in-} powerful army, in order to finish the reduction of the revolted ^{terests;} towns. In the mean time he sent *Reinald*, his chancellor, ^{marches} and *Otho* count palatine of *Bavaria*, as his commissaries into ^{into Italy;} *Italy*, with orders to exact the oath of allegiance from the ^{A. D.} towns of *Lombardy*, and they executed their commission with ^{1158.} equal ability and success. While they were thus employed in *Italy*, *Frederic* lay encamped at *Augsburg*, where he was attended by the ambassadors of *Waldemar I.* king of *Denmark*, who desired he might be confirmed in his kingdom, which he promised to hold as a fief of the empire; and the emperor

^p Ann. Boior. JOAN. AVENT. l. vi. p. 507.
t v. p. 61.

^q BARRE,

complied with his request, on condition that he should come, at an appointed time, and receive the investiture in person.

FREDERIC at this juncture surpassed all his predecessors, since the reign of *Otho the Great*, in power and glory. He had, by force of arms, compelled *Boleslaus*, duke of *Poland*, to do him homage, and pay tribute to the emperor. He had received assurances of submission and fidelity from *Geisa* king of *Hungary*, and *Henry II.* of *England* had sent him magnificent presents: he had honoured *Uladislaus* of *Bohemia* with the title of king, confirmed the sovereignty of *Waldemar*, and established peace and content through all the provinces of *Germany*.

His army consisting of warlike troops, well armed and disciplined, being assembled at *Augsburg*, he divided it into several columns, for the conveniency of marching by as many different routes; and, having happily passed the *Alps*, reduced the town of *Brescia*, which had the presumption to oppose his passage. While he remained in the territory of this town, he was joined by the knights of several towns and castles in *Italy*, with their military contingents, and made several wholesome regulations for the preservation of good order and military discipline. These previous steps being taken, he proceeded to action. *Milan* was besieged, and surrendered at discretion; he was crowned king of *Lombardy* at *Mouza*; built the town of *Lodi*, on the river *Adda*; and having made himself master of all the other cities of *Lombardy*, which had rebelled, he, in an assembly held on the plain of *Roncalie*, ordered a minute inquiry to be set on foot concerning the rights of the empire, and exacted homage of all those who held of it, even without excepting the bishops. Grievances were redressed, magistracies reformed, the rights of regality discussed and ascertained, new laws enacted for the maintenance of public tranquillity, and the encouragement of learning, which now began to revive in the school or university of *Bologna*; and, above all things, sub-vassals were not only prohibited from alienating their lands, but also compelled, in their oath to their lords paramount, to except the emperor nominally, when they swore to serve and assist them against all their enemies.

gives um-
brage to
the pope;

THE pope, taking umbrage at this behaviour towards ecclesiastics, sent a grand embassy of legates to complain of his disrespect; where *Frederic* justified what he had done, by saying it was but reasonable they should do homage for the fiefs they possessed; and observing that Jesus Christ himself, tho' lord of all the sovereigns upon earth, had deigned to pay
for

for himself and St. Peter the tribute which was due to *Cæsar*.

FREDERIC having sent commissaries to superintend the election of new magistrates at *Milan*, the inhabitants were so incensed at this infringement of their old privileges, that they insulted the imperialists, revolted, and refused to appear before the emperor's tribunal; so that he resolved to chastise them severely, and sent to *Germany* for a reinforcement of troops, which soon after arrived with the empress. Mean while he ravaged *Liguria*, declared the *Milinese* rebels to the empire, invested *Crema*, which was in alliance with *Milan*; and having taken that town, after an obstinate siege, commanded it to be plundered and burnt.

IN the midst of these transactions *Adrian* died, and a schism arose in the election of a successor. The greatest part of five-and-twenty cardinals, who were on the spot at his death, elected *Roland*, chancellor of the church, who assumed the name of *Alexander III.* and the rest chose *Ottavien*, of *St. Cecilia*; who, seeing the papal robe delivered to his competitor, flew upon him and tore it away by force; then, causing himself to be adored under the name of *Victor IV.* was at once approved and proclaimed by the people. *Alexander*, and the cardinals who had elected him, took possession of the castle of *St. Angelo*, the governor of which was their friend: there they were invested, and for nine days detained as prisoners, until the people, being undeceived, set them at liberty, with loud acclamations of "Long live pope *Alexander*;" who was consecrated in a village near *Rome*.

THE emperor, however, notwithstanding the majority of voices by which *Alexander* had been elected, did not fail to declare in favour of *Victor*, who had been formerly attached to his interest; whereas the other was an adherent of *William* king of *Sicily*, whom *Frederic* had long considered as his mortal enemy: but, that he might not want a specious pretext for supporting *Victor*, he convoked a council at *Pavia*, to decide upon the merits of both elections; the two competitors were summoned to appear, and the emperor, having opened it in person, immediately withdrew, that his presence might not restrain the liberty of opinion.

ALEXANDER, looking upon himself as a true pope, would not acknowledge a council convoked without his participation; so that they confirmed the election of *Victor*, who was adored by the emperor, and owned as pope with all the usual solemnities.

A. D.
1160.

who re-
tires into
France.

lemnities. On the other hand *Alexander*, who was at that time at *Anagni*, having, without effect, had recourse to admonitions, excommunicated the emperor with all his adherents, and sent ambassadors to the kings of *France* and *England* to justify his conduct, and engage them in his interest *. These two kings, having inquired into the merits of his cause, took him into protection; the *Milanese*, and all the rest of *Lombardy*, declared in his favour: but, notwithstanding this success, he did not think himself safe either in *Rome*, or any other part of the dominions belonging to the church, because the emperor's party was very powerful. He therefore retired into *France*†, where he was honourably received by *Lewis the Young*, and some time after his arrival he called a council at *Clermont*, in *Auvergne*, where he again thundered out his bulls against *Victor* and his patron (A).

Milan is
taken and
demolished.
1163.

MEAN while the emperor, taking the field against the inhabitants of *Milan* and the other rebels, obtained over them several advantages, but at length received a very mortifying check; for, having cut off their communication with the town, he reduced them to the necessity of either fighting or surrendering at discretion; and this situation driving them to despair, they attacked his troops with such fury, that he was obliged to retire with great loss. Incensed by this disgrace, he ravaged the country, and, resolving to make himself master of the city at any rate, committed the siege of it to the care of one of his generals; while he himself repaired to other places, where his presence was more necessary. Tired, however, with the obstinacy of their resistance, he returned to the siege, redoubled his efforts, and, the greatest part of the inhabitants being already dead of famine, the city surrendered at discretion. He granted life and liberty to the people; but he abandoned the town to pillage, and, sparing nothing but churches, ordered it to be intirely razed to the ground, which was plowed and sown with salt, in memory of its rebellion. *Placentia* was dismantled in this expedi-

* KRANT. SAX. l. vi. c. 18.
t. i. p. 378.

† MEZER. Abreg. Chron.

(A) Pope *Alexander* was met at *Torcy*, on the river *Loire*, by the two kings *Lewis* and *Henry*, who received him with great submission. They alighted from their horses, and, each taking a rein in his hand, conducted his mule to the place where he was to lodge (12).

tion, and the other rebellious towns reduced to the obedience of the victor.

THE *Genoese* having declared themselves independent of the empire, *Barbarossa* threatened to turn his arms against their city; but they thought proper to deprecate his wrath, by means of seasonable submissions, and promising to equip a fleet for his use in the conquest of *Sicily*, *Apulia*, and *Capua*, which he had projected. In recompence for this service and condescension he gave them as a fief the *Riviera*, from *Monaco* to *Portovenere*, invested them with the power of electing consuls, and gratified them with several other privileges, which they had not before enjoyed.

HE then appointed well-affected governors for almost all the cities of *Lombardy*, dismantled the town of *Bologna*, which in other respects he favoured as a seminary of the sciences, and received the submission of *Imola*, *Faenza*, and all the places in *Ancona*, *Tuscany*, and *Romania*.

WHILE *Frederic* in this manner surmounted all opposition in *Italy*, *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, and *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony*, declared war against the *Wandales*; who, after being twice defeated, sued for peace, and *Henry* was gratified with a cession of *Mecklenbourg*, which he peopled with colonies from *Germany*, *Flanders*, and *Brabant*.

THE emperor, hearing that pope *Alexander* had taken refuge in *France*, signified to *Lewis* a desire of seeing the schism terminated by a council, which was accordingly convoked at *St. Jean de Laune*; and in the mean time he wrote to the kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, and to the archbishops and princes of the empire, to give their appearance at this assembly, which he and the king of *France* proposed to grace with their own presence. With this view, after his glorious campaign in *Italy*, he returned into *Germany*, at that time distracted with particular feuds, which he appeased with his usual address. Then he set out for *Besançon* on his way to the council, and the king of *France* began his journey to *St. Jean de Laune*; but *Alexander* refused to go thither, and retired to the abbey of *Bourgdren*, in *Berry*, contenting himself with sending deputies to defend his cause in the assembly. As for the two sovereigns, they seemed cautiously to avoid a personal interview: when the king of *France* appeared in the council, the emperor was not present, and when the *Germans* gave *Lewis* to understand that *Frederic* was coming, he mounted his horse, and fled with great precipitation, in the fear of being surprized by the emperor, who was attended by a considerable body of troops.

THIS

The king
of Den-
mark ar-
rives at
Mentz

THIS assembly having proved ineffectual, *Frederic* repaired to *Mentz*, where he was visited by *Waldemar* king of *Denmark*, of whom he wanted to exact an oath of fidelity; but that prince asserted the independency of his crown, with such resolution and perseverance, that the emperor was contented with his doing homage for *Wandalia* only, on condition, however, that neither he nor his successors should be obliged to assist at the diets of the empire, or furnish any contingent in time of war, or, lastly, receive the investiture of that province from the emperor.

THIS affair being discussed, *Barbarossa* chastised the citizens of *Mentz*, who had murdered their archbishop; he expelled the abbot of *St. James*, and his monks, who had been accomplices in the crime, razed the city walls, and appointed a successor to the defunct: he afterwards enlarged, adorned, and fortified, the town of *Haguenau*, in which he established the treasury of the empire, and a college of justice, which greatly increased its wealth and importance.

A. D.
1164.
The towns
of Italy
again re-
volt; and
the anti-
pope Victor
dies at
Lucca,
and is suc-
ceeded by
Paschal
III.

THE remembrance of the rigour with which *Frederic* punished the city of *Milan*, was a spur that excited the rest of the *Italian* towns against him; and this being reinforced by the under-hand machinations of pope *Alexander*, they once more shook off the imperial yoke, and obliged *Victor* to take refuge with *Frederic*; who, upon the news of this general revolt, resolved upon another *Italian* expedition. But, judging it expedient that *Victor* should go thither before him, the antipope complied with his direction, and died that same year at *Lucca* ^a, where the cardinals of his faction immediately elected ^{*} *Paschal* III. who was acknowledged as pope in a diet, which the emperor some time after convoked at *Wurtzburg* for that purpose (B).

THE emperor, having passed the *Alps* with his wife *Beatrice*, was joined at the ancient *Lodi* by the *Italian* noblemen and their troops, and proceeded to *Pavia*, where he

^a GOR. PERS Cosm. ubi sup. MACH. Hist. di Fir. ^{*} Hist. Lud. VII. DUCHES. t. iv. p. 417.

(B) At this council it was decreed, that no person should be deemed pope, unless created with the consent of the emperor, and contenting himself with the office of Christ's apostle, and *St. Peter's* successor, without

pretending to rival the imperial power. Every member engaged himself, by oath, to own or allow no person for pope, except upon these terms, even after the emperor's death (13).

issued orders for demolishing the town of *Tortona*, because the inhabitants had rebuilt their walls, which he had formerly levelled to the ground; and here he understood, that the *Venetians* and *Romans* had formed a league against him, in conjunction with the inhabitants of *Vicenza*, *Verona*, *Padua*, and other towns, who complained of being oppressed by the governors and officers of the emperor.

FREDERIC, finding himself too weak in *Italy* to cope with such a powerful association, endeavoured to weaken it by policy, and, by means of private emissaries, tampered with some particular states, which, however, he could not detach from the general confederacy. Failing in this attempt, he resolved to strengthen the attachment of his own adherents, by granting favours, privileges, and immunities, to the noblemen and cities that continued stanch to his interest. In particular, he created *Barafon*, king of *Oristagno*, one of the four bailiwicks of *Sardinia*, for which he did him homage, exempted *Mantua* from some taxations and military service, and invested *Pavia* with the right of electing its own magistracy. At the same time he sent receivers to all the towns of *Lombardy*, who exacted the taxes that were due, and raised contributions among the people, with such oppressive cruelty as rendered his government detestable, and prepared the *Italians* for a general revolt.

AT his return to *Germany*, he convoked a diet at *Wurtzburg*, in order to concert measures for healing the schism that divided the church; and there he and all the princes and bishops, together with the ambassadors of *Henry* king of *England*, solemnly swore they would never acknowledge *Alexander* as the legal successor of *St. Peter*. Injunctions were laid upon all the monks, clerks, and lay subjects of the empire, to take the same oath, on pain of forfeiting their dignities and benefices, and of being declared enemies to their country.

ABOUT this time pope *Alexander*, at the earnest solicitations of his friends, set out for *Italy* by sea, and, arriving at *Messina*, was, by the ships of *William* king of *Sicily*, conducted to *Ostia*; from whence he journeyed to *Rome*, where he lived a whole year in tranquility. *Frederic* having ordered *Charlemagne* to be canonized, and confirmed the privileges of *Aix la Chapelle*, marched into *Italy*, with a considerable army, after the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, whom he had previously detached with a strong body of troops to reduce the disaffected towns of *Lombardy*.

ON his arrival at *Lodi*, he held a grand council, in order to deliberate upon the operations of the campaign; and here
he

he determined a difference which had long subsisted between the republics of *Genoa* and *Pisa*. When the council broke up he proceeded to *Bologna*, which he laid under contribution, together with *Imola*, *Faenza*, and *Forli*; but *Ancona* would not submit to his exactions, until after it was besieged and reduced to extremity. While he was employed in the siege of this place, the towns of *Lombardy*, reduced to despair by the violence and rapaciousness of him and his commissaries, entered into an association for their mutual defence, and even compelled *Lodi*, by force of arms, to engage in the same league: the inhabitants of *Milan* rebuilt their walls, and, taking the field, invested the castle of *Trea*, in which the emperor had deposited all the treasure he had amassed. The place, tho' strong and well defended, fell into the hands of the besiegers, who carried off the money and the garrison prisoners to *Milan*, and razed the fortifications to the ground.

THIS success encouraged the *Romans* to take arms against the two archbishops, who were encamped near *Tusculum*; but the event did not answer their expectation: for tho' they advanced in good order against the imperialists, with an amazing odds in point of number, they were defeated, in a pitched battle, by *Rainald*, archbishop of *Cologne*, who carried the standard in his own hand, and sung a *German* hymn, in which he was joined by the whole army.

THIS victory was succeeded by a considerable advantage, which *Frederic* gained over *William II.* king of *Sicily*, who had invested a castle belonging to his imperial majesty. *Barbarossa*, who was still before *Ancona*, put himself at the head of his cavalry, and beat up *William's* quarters; so that he was compelled to raise the siege, and return to *Sicily* with great precipitation.

ANCONA was no sooner reduced than the emperor marched towards *Rome*, into which he was obliged to effect his entrance by force: *Alexander*, after having made several fruitless efforts to oppose him, stole away to *Beneventum*, in the habit of a pilgrim, and *Frederic*, with his empress, was crowned by *Paschal* the antipope, who had waited for the emperor's arrival at *Viterbo*.

HITHERTO every thing smiled upon *Frederic*; but the plague, being introduced among his troops, made such havoc, that he was obliged to make a hasty retreat into *Tuscany*, and from thence into his *German* dominions², where

¹ Ann. Boior. JOM. AVENT. l. vi. p. 573.
VII. ubi supra.

² Hist. Lud.

his presence was also required on account of a commotion in *Saxony*. But it was not without the utmost danger and difficulty, that he effected his retreat. At *Pavia* he put all the rebellious towns of *Lombardy* to the ban of the empire, and, tho' his army was very much reduced by the distemper, he, with the assistance of his *Italian* friends, made incursions into the country possessed by his enemies, and ravaged the territory of *Milan*.

THESE petty expeditions, which consumed the remains of his troops, served no other purpose than that of exasperating the confederates and their patron pope *Alexander*, who was by this time rendered more formidable by succours, which he received from *Manuel* emperor of the *Greeks*. In a word, the towns of *Lombardy*, thus supported, pulled off the mask, and not only appeared in open rebellion, but also insisted upon seizing the person of *Barbarossa*, whose army was by this time quite exhausted with malady and fatigue.

IN this extremity he began a negotiation with the friends of pope *Alexander*, and must have submitted to that pontif, because all the passes were secured by his enemies, had not the count de *Morienne* granted him a passage at the earnest solicitations of his relation *William* marquis de *Montferrat*. Nevertheless, the *Milanese* pursued him to the mountains, and pressed him so closely, that he caused some of their hostages, who were in his power, to be hanged : and these executions put a stop to their progress. He afterwards narrowly escaped from *Surza*, where a conspiracy was formed against his life, and at last arrived in *Allice* with the wreck of his army.

His back was no sooner turned, than the *Italian* cities again withdrew themselves from their allegiance, and entered into an association for the defence of their liberty ; and the inhabitants of *Milan*, taking the advantage of *Frederic's* being employed in the empire, began to rebuild their town, which was in a little time brought to perfection.

THE confederates likewise built a new town between *Assi* and *Tortona*, in order to block up the emperor's road, should he again attempt to pass the *Alps*, and to overawe the marquis of *Montferrat*, and the inhabitants of *Pavia*, who still continued staunch to his interest. This they called *Alexandria*, in honour of the pope, to whom the property of it was presented at *Beneventum*, and it became tributary to the holy see.

FREDERIC having appeased the troubles of *Saxony*, where the nobles had taken arms against their duke, convened a diet at *Wirtzburg*, in order to reform some abuses which had crept into the church, and dispose the princes and noblemen in fa-

vour of his eldest son *Henry*, who was elected king of the *Romans*, and in the sequel acquired the crown of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by his marriage with *Constance*, daughter of *Roger* and *Beatrice de Rethel*, a relation of *Philip Augustus*, king of *France*.

Calistus
III. suc-
ceeds Pas-
chal.

A. D.
1169.

PASCHAL dying in the midst of these transactions, *Calistus III.* was elected by the cardinals of his party; but the emperor understanding that all *Italy* was tired with the length of this schism, which was disagreeable to his friends as well as his enemies, began to be afraid of a general revolt, and to prepare for another expedition. The confederacy of the *Lombard* towns grew every day stronger and stronger; the *Greek* emperor had sent a second embassy, with magnificent presents, to the pope, promising to unite the *Greek* and *Roman* churches under his auspices, provided he would gratify *Manuel* with the imperial crown; and *Frederic*, dreading his compliance, resolved to send deputies with proposals of peace to his holiness. Accordingly the bishop of *Bamberg*, being intrusted with this commission, set out for *Italy*, and was received by *Alexander* in a full consistory; but as the emperor neither acknowledged the pope, nor submitted to the holy see, his proposals were rejected.

MEAN while *Frederic*, the emperor's young son, was elected king of *Germany*, with the unanimous consent of the diet assembled at *Bamberg*, and conveyed to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by *Philip*, archbishop of *Cologne*: and about the same time *Henry* duke of *Saxony* departed, at the head of a crusade, for *Palestine*, to assist the Christians of the east, who were cooped up between two very formidable enemies; namely *Noradin*, of *Aleppo*, and *Saladin*, sultan of *Egypt*. He embarked upon the *Danube* at *Vienna*, crossed the province of *Servia*, was hospitably received at *Constantinople*, from whence he sailed to *Ptolemais*, where he understood that the death of *Noradin* had restored peace to the Christians of the east. The design of his crusade being thus answered, he visited *Jerusalem*, was regaled by the sultan of *Egypt*, who loaded him with presents, then returned by the way of *Constantinople*, where he received ample proofs of *Manuel's* friendship and generosity, and at length safely arrived in his own dominions.

As for the emperor, he assembled a diet at *Worms*, in which he complained of the pope's conduct, and the rebellious towns of *Lombardy*; and it was resolved, that he should be furnished with the necessary supplies for another expedition into *Italy*. In the mean time *Christian*, archbishop of *Mentz*, as chancellor of the empire, was sent thither with a
body

body of troops to protect *Como*, *Pavia*, *Crema*, and other places, which still held for the emperor, as well as to over-awe and confirm those which wavered in their allegiance.

THIS prelate held a council at *Vienna*, in order to decide the difference between the republics of *Genoa* and *Pisa*, touching the property of the island of *Sardinia*; and the *Pisans*, refusing to stand to his award, were put to the ban of the empire. The *Florentines*, who were their allies, underwent the same fate, and a sharp war broke out between the republics of *Pisa* and *Florence* on one side, and those of *Genoa* and *Lucca* on the other.

CHRISTIAN hearing that *Manuel*, emperor of *Constantinople*, maintained a correspondence with the inhabitants of *Ancona*, marched thither and invested the place, while the *Venetians*, who wanted to break with the *Greek* emperor, blocked up the town by sea with a powerful fleet; but, notwithstanding all their vigilance, the *Greek* deputies found means to introduce a reinforcement, and the besiegers were fain to relinquish their enterprize.

BAFFLED in this attempt, *Christian* marched into the duchy of *Spoletto*, and took the town of *Ferri*, which belonged to the *Roman* church; but, while he was thus employed, the confederate towns convoked an assembly at *Modena*, in order to concert measures for supporting the war: thither the pope sent legates, to encourage them in their design of shaking off the imperial yoke; the chiefs bound themselves, by oath, to maintain the league to the last extremity; they wrote circular letters to all the towns of *Lombardy*, exhorting them to join for the defence of the *Italian* liberty; and their remonstrances had such effect, that several neutral towns declared for the confederacy, and others abandoned the interest of the emperor.

FREDERIC, alarmed at the news of this defection, would have passed the *Alps* immediately, had not he been detained by the troubles of *Bohemia*, excited by the weakness of king *Ladislaus*, and the tyranny of his favourite *Vegeflaus*, who had rendered himself odious to the whole nation. The emperor, in consequence of the complaints he received from the *Bohemian* noblemen, summoned their king to appear at the diet of *Nuremberg*, to give an account of his conduct; and he refusing to obey this order, marched at the head of an army to *Prague*, where he divested *Ladislaus* of the administration, and bestowed the regency upon his kinsman *Sobieflaus*, who had formerly been minister, and disgraced by the intrigues of the queen. This affair being settled, and peace established through the whole empire, he appointed

the rendezvous of his army at *Ratisbon*, where a diet was assembled at the same time : there he explained the motives of his expedition into *Italy*, and, having received the necessary supplies, began his march by the way of *Mount Cenis*. He took and destroyed *Suza* ; the towns of *Asti*, *Tortona*, *Cremona*, and *Como*, submitted without resistance ; then he invested *Alexandria*, which was defended with great vigour by the inhabitants, who, at length, in a general sally, put the imperialists to flight, so that *Frederic* was obliged to pass the *Po*, and take refuge in the *Pavesan*. Here his presence was the more necessary, as the city of *Pavia* was by this time closely besieged by the confederate army, and even almost reduced to extremity. Notwithstanding the succours he found means to throw in, the calamities of the inhabitants daily increased, and, to put the finishing stroke to his disgrace, *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony*, retired with his troops, in spite of all the remonstrances of *Frederic*, who had recourse to the most abject submissions, in attempting to alter his purpose. His pretence was the terror of excommunication ; but, in effect, he had been cajoled by the pope, who flattered him with the hope of ascending the imperial throne.

THE departure of this duke compelled the emperor to treat with the confederates, and a congress was opened by the mediation of the consuls of *Cremona* : to this assembly, which was held between the two camps, the pope sent three deputies ; but, both sides being extremely irritated and inflexible, the meeting, after much altercation, broke up, and all hope of a pacification vanished. The siege of *Pavia* was raised ; the emperor detached parties, from time to time, to ravage the territory of *Alexandria*, and the *Lombard* troops marched thither to support that place, in case it should be re-invested.

MEAN while *Christian*, archbishop of *Mentz*, carried on his operations with great success. He took and ruined a great number of castles in the march of *Ancona*, and reduced the city and whole duchy of *Spoletto* ; then he repaired, by the emperor's order, to the court of *William* king of *Sicily*, to establish a peace, and offer *Frederic's* daughter in marriage to that prince, who declined the match, lest he should give offence to his holiness.

DURING these transactions, the emperor received a reinforcement of troops from *Germany*, under the command of *Philip* count de *Heimberg*, archbishop of *Cologne* ; and advancing against the confederates, who were posted at *Signano*, an obstinate battle ensued, in which *Frederic* was totally defeated, and narrowly escaped with his life : his camp
and

and baggage were taken, a great number of his soldiers killed, taken, and drowned in the *Po*, and the wreck of his army fled for protection to the walls of *Pavia*.

THIS defeat, which must have been very mortifying to a prince like him, accustomed to victory, was still aggravated by the alienation of his own subjects, many of whom about Italy, this time abandoned his interest, and by the loss of a battle fought at sea against the *Venetians*, in which his eldest son prince *Henry*, who commanded his fleet, was taken prisoner (C). Tho' he was, in consequence of these misfortunes, very well disposed to an accommodation with the pope, his pride would not yet allow him to make the first proposal. He therefore rallied his troops, and exerted himself with such vigour in repairing his loss, that he was next year in a condition to hazard another battle, in which his enemies were defeated. Being an excellent politician, as well as a great general, he seized this favourable opportunity of signifying his desire of peace to pope *Alexander*, who received his ambassadors with great joy, and an accommodation was concluded; in consequence of which there was an interview between them at *Venice* (D).

THE

^b GOB. PERS. *ibid.* MACH. Hist. di Fir.

(C) The pope, in honour of this victory, sailed out into the open sea, accompanied by the whole senate; and, after having pronounced a thousand benedictions on that element, threw into it a ring, as a mark of his gratitude and affection. This is the origin of that ceremony, which is annually performed by the *Venetians*, under the notion of espousing the *Adriatic* sea (14).

(D) As the particulars of this accommodation are very differently related by different historians, it will not be amiss to gratify the reader with a detail of them from *Romuald*, bishop of *Salerno*, who was eye-witness of every incident. "*Frederic*," says he, "having gained a second victory over the *Lom-*

bards, was very much importuned by the princes of the empire to make peace with pope *Alexander*, for the repose of the church as well as of his own dominions. Thus solicited, he sent an embassy consisting of the archbishops of *Mentz* and *Magdeburg*, the bishop of *Worms*, and the *Sieur Pafy*, his own secretary, with full power to conclude an accommodation. They found the pope at *Anagni*, who received their proposals with great joy, as he himself had been for a long time desirous of peace; and the articles were soon agreed upon: Nevertheless the emperor, disapproving of some particulars concerning the *Lombards*, the pope agreed to hold

(14) Note sur l'Hist. de Heiss, l. xi. c. 13.

A. D.
1177.

THE emperor's arrival at that city being notified, he was waited upon by the doge, the patriarch, the bishop, the clergy, and the senate, who conducted him in their barge to *St. Mark's*, where the pope and cardinals waited his coming. *Frederic*, when he approached his holiness, who was seated, bowed down with profound reverence, and kissed his feet; a condescension which brought tears into the eyes of the pope, who clasped him in his arms, and gave him the kiss of peace; then, the emperor taking him by the hand, they entered the church together, where, mass being celebrated by the pope himself, *Frederic* re-conducted him to the door, still walking on his left hand, and held the stirrup while he mounted his mule. Some time after these first civilities, the pope, the emperor, and all the princes, assembled in the palace of the patriarch, where *Alexander* harangued in *Latin* upon the peace which had been concluded; then *Frederic* made a speech on the same subject in the *German* tongue, which was interpreted by the archbishop of *Mentz*; not that the emperor was ignorant of the *Latin*, but because he was resolved to maintain the dignity of the *German* empire. The deputies of both solemnly swore to the observation of the treaty, which included the king of *Sicily*, and the ratifica-

* Chron. GAUF. VOSIENS. t. ii. Biblioth. Labb.

“ another congress at *Ferrara*,
“ in order to remove all ob-
“ jection; but in the mean
“ time *Frederic*, being persuad-
“ ed by some evil-minded per-
“ sons, that his ambassadors
“ had betrayed him in the
“ treaty, he was greatly in-
“ censured, disowned them and
“ all they had done, and de-
“ clared for *Calistus*: his ple-
“ nipotentiaries, finding them-
“ selves in this predicament,
“ endeavoured to justify their
“ conduct by a fair representa-
“ tion of all their transaction;
“ but the emperor, obstinately
“ refusing to ratify the peace,
“ they plainly told him, that as
“ *Alexander's* behaviour on this
“ occasion had been honest and

“ sincere, and what he propos-
“ ed fair and equitable, they had
“ concluded a peace with him,
“ in consequence of the com-
“ mission with which they were
“ invested; and that if his im-
“ perial majesty should persist
“ in refusing to ratify it, they
“ should be obliged, for the
“ sake of their consciences, to
“ acknowledge *Alexander* for the
“ true head of the church, and
“ to look upon *Calistus* as an
“ impostor. This declaration
“ had such an effect upon *Fre-
“ deric*, that he resolved to ra-
“ tify the peace, and for that
“ purpose immediately dis-
“ patched them to *Venice*, whi-
“ ther he in a little time fol-
“ lowed them in person (15).

tions were exchanged with all imaginable expressions of joy, which lasted during the whole time of their stay at *Venice*, from the beginning of *August* till the thirteenth of *September*, on which the emperor set out for *Ravenna* ^(E).

THIS reconciliation was attended with the submission of *An accom-* all the rebellious towns in *Italy*, which had entered into an *modation* association for their mutual defence. By an agreement at *Constance*, the emperor granted a general pardon, and left *with the* them at liberty to use their own laws and forms of govern- *revolted* *cities.* ment; while they took the oath of allegiance to him, as their lord and sovereign.

CALISTUS the antipope, finding himself forsaken, in con- Calistus sequence of the peace between the pope and the emperor, made his submission to *Alexander*, who received him with great humanity; but in order to prevent, for the future, those schisms, which so often attended the election of popes, *humbles himself, and is pardoned by Alexander.* he called a general council, in which it was decreed, that no pope should be deemed duly elected, without having two thirds of the votes in his favour.

WHILE these things were in agitation in *Italy*, *Henry* Henry the duke of *Saxony* raised fresh troubles in the empire. He was *Lion* a proud, haughty, and turbulent prince, who not only op- *raises dis-* pressed his own subjects, but also committed outrages against *turbances* all his neighbours. He was at open war with *Ulric*, bishop of *Halberstadt*, whom he had expelled from his see, and with *Philip*, archbishop of *Cologne*, who headed a faction against him in *Westphalia*, in consequence of his finding his dominions ravaged by the duke at his return from *Italy*. *Frederic*, on his arrival in *Germany*, was not sorry to hear of these violences, because he longed for an opportunity of being revenged upon *Henry*, for his having abandoned him so cruelly in his *Italian* expedition. He forthwith convoked a diet at *Worms*, where the duke, who did not think proper to appear in person, was accused of having violated the rights of the bishops and noblemen; of having oppressed and robbed his

^a SIGON. l. iv. de Regno Ital.

(E) Some historians allege, would have suffered such an insult to pass unpunished; especially as it does not appear, that he was reduced to the necessity of making such abject submissions. that a prince of *Frederic's* spirit

is put to
the ban

vassals ; of having expelled lawful bishops, and supplied their places with his own creatures ; of having seized the hereditary fiefs belonging to the count *de Winzebourg*, and his relation, *Otho d'Alsai* ; and of having furnished the count *de Lipstadt* with troops to ravage *Westphalia*. Tho' the duke was not present to answer to these articles of impeachment, and might have been legally condemned in his absence, the emperor deferred the trial till the next diet to be held at *Magdeburg*, where he was charged by *Thierri*, marquis of *Alsace*, with having sent the *Slaves* to pillage his dominions, and defied to single combat by that nobleman ; but he would not deign to give his personal appearance, and rejected the challenge because it was sent by an inferior. Nevertheless he desired to have an interview with the emperor, and excused himself so effectually to *Frederic*, that he promised the duke should be acquitted, on condition he would pay five thousand marks of silver to the imperial treasury. This proposal he declined, and was summoned for the third time to the diet of *Goslar*, where he was put to the ban of the empire, and *Philip*, archbishop of *Cologne*, ordered to put the sentence in execution. That prelate, being joined with the troops of *Godfrey* duke of *Brabant*, *Philip* count of *Flanders*, *Otho* count of *Guelderland*, and many other noblemen, entered *Westphalia*, and laid waste the country with fire and sword ; while the bishop of *Halberstadt* laid the churches under interdiction, and launched an anathema against the duke.

MEAN while *Henry* was not idle ; he assembled his forces and fell upon *Thuringia*, of which he made himself master, after having defeated the landgrave of *Hesse*, duke *Bernard*, *Herman* count palatine, and *Widekinde* count *de Waldeck* : his troops afterwards obtained a victory over those of the archbishop at *Huresfeld*, by the valour of his general *Bernard* count *de Lipstadt*, who retook all the towns in *Westphalia*, which the duke and his adherents had lost ; and made the bishop of *Halberstadt* prisoner, after having burned the town to ashes.

deposed
of his do-
minions ;

THE emperor, alarmed at these successes, convened a diet at *Wirtzburg*, where he was solicited in behalf of the duke of *Saxony*, by the ambassadors of the pope and the king of *England*, who was father-in-law to *Henry the Lion*. In consequence of their intreaties, he delayed proceeding against him, and summoned a general assembly of the empire at *Gelnhausen*, in *Weteravia*, where *Henry*, still refusing to appear, was formally condemned, and stripped of all his dominions, which were bestowed on different noblemen.

Frederic, in conjunction with those among whom the fiefs of *Henry* were distributed, assembled an army to execute the sentence of the diet; and, marching into *Saxony*, reduced that whole province; while the duke, abandoned by his friends, was obliged to take refuge in *Holstein*. *Bernard de Anhalt* being established in the possession of this dukedom, the emperor entered *Bavaria*, where he met with no opposition, and at *Ratisbon* solemnly confirmed the investiture of that duchy, which *Otho de Wittelsbach* had already received at *Gelnhausen*. While *Frederic* was thus employed in *Bavaria*, *Philip*, archbishop of *Cologne*, besieged and made himself master of *Brunswick*. The town of *Lunenbourg* was invested, and the emperor, having detached *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, from the interests of *Henry the Lion*, by proposing a double match between his two sons and two daughters of his *Danish* majesty, that prince equipped a fleet, with which he blocked up the mouth of the *Trave*, while *Frederic* besieged the city of *Lubec* by land. This town being taken, and a treaty of alliance concluded with *Waldemar*, the emperor conquered all the *Lower Saxony*, together with *Holstein*, from whence *Henry* had been compelled to retire, and then marched to the neighbourhood of *Lunenbourg*, where he was visited by the unfortunate duke, who threw himself at his feet, and begged, with great humility, that some of his dominions might be restored. *Frederic*, touched with his condition, referred him to the diet of *Quedlemburg*, where a very dangerous dispute arising between him and duke *Bernard*, the emperor was fain to dissolve the assembly, and delay the examination of his case,*till the meeting of another diet at *Erfurt*. There duke *Henry* endeavoured to acquit himself of the crimes which had been laid to his charge; but, as it was impracticable to withdraw his fiefs, which were already disposed of to different noblemen, *Frederic* advised him to reside in *England*, until he should be able to persuade the princes to relinquish his dominions which they had shared; and in the mean time he promised, that no attempts should be made upon the territories of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, which he would protect in behalf of his children. *Henry*, in compliance with this advice, retired to *England*, where he was hospitably entertained by his father-in-law *Henry II.* and there his wife bore him a fourth son called *William*, from whom the present house of *Brunswick* is descended.

* Ann. Boior. AVENT. l. yi. p. 515. BARRE, t. v. p. 301.

Pope Alexander dies, and is succeeded by Lucius III.

A. D.
1181.

POPE Alexander III. dying at this period, the cardinals, without the participation of the rest of the clergy, elected *Ubaldo*, bishop of *Ostia*, a native of *Lucca*, who assumed the name of *Lucius III.* and was soon after his elevation expelled by the *Romans*, because he would not swear to the observance of some customs, to which his predecessors had always adhered^f. They were so much exasperated at his refusal, that they pillaged his lands, and chased him from place to place; so that he was obliged to solicit the assistance of *Christian*, archbishop of *Mentz*, whom the emperor had left to maintain the peace of *Italy*.

THAT prelate accordingly came to his succour with a body of *German* troops, which in a little time would have reduced the *Romans*, had not his success been anticipated by death, which overtook him at *Tusculum*. Thus deprived of his protector, the pope sent nuncios to the emperor, and other sovereigns, from whom he received considerable sums of money, with which he purchased peace, and re-entered *Rome*. But he was obliged to quit that city a second time. The inhabitants took arms again, they burned and plundered all his lands, and their rebellion raged to such a pitch of fury, that they put out the eyes of a number of the clergy, and sent them with mitres on their heads, in derision, to *Lucius*, who denounced an anathema against the authors of such barbarity, and retired to *Verona*^f.

Diet at
Mentz.

MEAN while the emperor had convoked a diet at *Mentz*, in order to concert measures for prolonging the truce of *Italy*; and to this assembly the king of *England* sent ambassadors, to demand the re-establishment of *Henry the Lion* in some part of his hereditary dominions: but this affair, being duly considered, was found intangled with such difficulties, that *Henry* was exhorted to exert his patience for some time, until the restitution of his territories could be gradually effected by means of argument and persuasion.

OTHO DE WITTELSPACH, who had taken possession of *Bavaria* and its dependencies, began his administration with such prudence, and took such measures for the advantage of his people, that commerce in a little time flourished through the whole province; the subjects became wealthy, and his court was distinguished for magnificence; so that the emperor, growing jealous of his power, declared *Ratisbon* a free town, independent of his dominion, erected *Stiria* into a duchy, holding of the empire only, and dismembred his

^f PAGI in Brev. Rom. Pontif. in Lucio III. t. viii.

territories of the duchy of *Meranca* and principality of *Tyrol* &c.

AFTER these transactions he convoked a diet at *Constance*, where the deliberations turned upon the affairs of *Lombardy*; and as *Henry* king of the *Romans* assured his father, that the *Italian* cities would accept of peace upon reasonable conditions, the emperor sent three ministers to treat with the deputies of the *Lombard* towns at *Placentia*; where a congress being opened, the treaty was in a very little time concluded and ratified, to the satisfaction of all parties. Among other articles it was agreed, that the emperor might exact the oath of allegiance from his *Italian* vassals; who should be obliged to march to his assistance, in case of his being attacked in his journey to *Rome*, which is called the *Roman* expedition: that the said vassals, and the towns, should be exempted from all other imposition, but that of supplying him with provision and forage in his march: that they should enjoy the privilege of raising troops and fortifications for their own defence, and decide all causes, without appeal, in their own courts of justice, unless the sum in litigation should exceed fifty marks of silver: and lastly, that in those towns, where the bishop had the title of count, he should preserve the right of creating consuls; but, where the bishop was not in possession of that title, the right should be reserved to the emperor ^h.

As the inhabitants of *Alexandria della Paglia* were not comprehended in this pacification, which the *Italians* for a long time considered as the basis of their public liberty, they were obliged to send deputies to deprecate his imperial majesty's wrath at *Nuremberg*, where they were pardoned, and taken into protection, on condition of changing the name of their city into *Casarea*, and holding their privileges of his good will and pleasure.

SOON after this transaction, *Frederic* assembled a diet at *Mentz*, and, in presence of a great number of princes and noblemen, again solemnly declared his son *Henry* king of the *Romans*, and afterwards knighted him and his brother prince *Frederic*, according to the rules and ceremonies of chivalry. The affairs of *Germany* being regulated at this meeting, the emperor repaired to *Italy*, in order to accommodate some differences with the pope, touching the see of *Triers*, which was disputed by two competitors, and the

* ADLBR. Ann. Boic. Gent. ad an. 1182.
Hist. de Regno Ital. l. xiv. ad an. 1183.

^h SIGON.

succession of the countess *Mathilda*, which was an eternal bone of contention between the empire and the church; and he was moreover actuated with the desire of seeing his son *Henry* receive the imperial crown.

Frederic
repairs to
Verona.

INDUCED by these motives, he visited his holiness at *Verona*, where a council was convoked to rectify the errors and abuses which had crept into the church. Being here solicited in favour of *Henry the Lion*, by *Lucius*, and another embassy from *England*, he consented to the return of that nobleman to *Germany*, and promised to put him in possession of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, which had been preserved for his use: but as the pope would neither terminate the schism at *Triers*, according to his inclination, nor compromise the affair of *Mathilda's* dominions, nor even compliment his son *Henry* with the imperial crown, he took his departure for *Milan*, where that young prince was crowned king of *Lombardy* with the usual solemnities; and, in a little time after his coronation, set out for *Germany* to appease some troubles excited by the tyranny and avarice of *Philip*, archbishop of *Cologne*, whom he accordingly reduced to order.

Henry is
crowned
at Milan.

MEAN while *Frederic* returned to the council of *Verona*, at which appeared *Heracius*, patriarch of *Jerusalem*, imploring succour for his king *Baldwin*, who was by this time old and infirm, and in danger of losing all his dominions, by intestine divisions, and the victorious arms of *Saladin*, sultan of *Egypt*. His remonstrances, however, had little effect upon the princes of the west, who were too much embroiled with their own affairs to undertake an expedition into *Palestine*; and the emperor in particular, instead of engaging in a crusade, in consequence of the exhortations of the pope, who took umbrage at his staying so long in *Italy*, resolved to assert the rights of the empire to the long disputed succession called the *Patrimony of St. Peter*. With this view he sent *Henry* king of *Sardinia* with an army into *Tuscany*; and that prince having seized *Aquapendente*, *Chieffi*, *Bolsena*, *Bagnarca*, and some other towns, invested *Orvieto*, the siege of which lasted two whole years. Mean while *Frederic*, in person, made a circuit round the towns of *Lombardy*, and took an exact account of their privileges, which, in general, he confirmed: then he marched into *Romania*, besieged and took *Faenza* where he met with opposition, and compelled the greatest part of *Tuscany* to submit to the empire: so that the succession of the countess *Mathilda* was almost wholly reduced under his dominion, when pope *Lucius* died at *Verona*, and was succeeded by *Lambert Grivelli*, archbishop of

The emperor supports his right of sovereignty in the towns of St Peter's Patrimony.

A. D.
1185.

of *Milan*, who assumed the name of *Urban III.* and kept his archbishopric even after his elevation to the papal chairⁱ.

MEAN while a match was concluded between the emperor's son *Henry*, and *Constance*, sister and heiress of *William* king of *Sicily*; and the nuptials were actually celebrated with extraordinary magnificence in that very city of *Milan*, which *Frederic* had but a few years before utterly destroyed^k.

THIS match was by no means agreeable to pope *Urban III.* who foresaw that it would certainly one day furnish the king of the *Romans* with pretensions upon *Sicily*; and his resentment hurried him so far, that he even suspended from their functions the bishops who had assisted at the celebration of the nuptials; which were no sooner consummated than *Frederic*, understanding that the inhabitants of *Cremona* had raised an army to hinder *Crema* from being rebuilt, assembled a body of forces, marched to *Cremona*, and, having dismantled the town, carried off a great number of prisoners; so that they were obliged to implore his clemency, and they were forgiven at the intercession of their bishop. As for *Milan*, the emperor's residence in that city was of great advantage to the inhabitants; he extended its jurisdiction over all the castles situated between the *Adda* and the *Ogliis*, and ordered that all law-suits, which might happen in its territory, should be judged, without appeal, by the consuls of *Milan*^l (G).

FREDERIC, having thus established his authority in *Lombardy*, left the government of that kingdom to his son *Henry*, and returned to his dominions in *Germany*; where he seized all the revenues of the bishopric of *Mentz*, because *Bertrand*, the bishop, favoured *Folmar*, pretender to the archbishopric

ⁱ BARRE, t. v. p. 345.

^k BARON. t. xii. ad an. 1186.

^l SIGON. de Reg. Ital. l. xv. ad an. 1185.

(G) In the course of this year (1186) *Bertrand*, bishop of *Metz*, introduced into *Germany* the custom of keeping archives, in which were registred the acts and deeds upon which private fortunes depend. Before this period, all causes relating to property were judged by living witnesses, and the decision of

the most part was left to the issue of single combat. These combats were fought in the bishop's court-yard, or before the town-house, in the presence of the bishop's officers, who adjudged the victory, and punished the vanquished either with mulct or mutilation (17).

of *Triers*, against *Rodolphus*, who was countenanced by the emperor.

*Frederic
fomented a
war be-
tween
Bugellaus
duke of
Pomerania,
and
Canut,
king of
Den-
mark;*

THIS transaction was followed by a difference with *Canut* king of *Denmark*, who refused to do homage for *Wandalia*, which had been conquered by his father *Waldemar*. *Frederic*, incensed at this refusal, instigated *Bugellaus*; on whom he had bestowed the investiture of *Pomerania*, to make war upon his *Danish* majesty; but *Bugellaus*, knowing himself unable to cope with such an antagonist, contented himself with committing hostilities again *Farimar*, sovereign of the isle of *Rugen*, and uncle to *Canut*; who having recourse to the assistance of the *Danes*, he was supplied with a fleet of ships, and obtained a complete naval victory over the *Pomeranians*. *Abfalom*, archbishop of *Lunden*, and minister of *Canut*, who commanded the victorious fleet, sailed to the mouth of the river *Pena*, made an attempt upon *Demmin*, and ravaged the country. Next year his *Danish* majesty embarked in person, entered the river *Zwina*, then plundered part of *Pomerania* and *Wandalia*, and at last, surprising *Bugellaus* in his own dominions, compelled that prince to sue for peace, which he could obtain on no other condition than that of doing homage to *Canut*, and holding *Pomerania* as a fief of *Denmark* ^m.

*whom the
emperor
endea-
vours in
vain to
entrap.*

A. D.
1187.

THE emperor, whose situation would not allow him to reinforce *Bugellaus* with troops, was not a little mortified at the issue of this war, by which the sovereignty of *Pomerania* was lost to the empire; and he resolved to retrieve, by stratagem, that which he could not regain by force of arms. With this view he sent an embassy to *Denmark*, inviting *Canut* to be present at the nuptials of his sister *Christina*, who was betrothed to the emperor's son *Frederic*, and had resided for some years in *Germany* for her education. Had *Canut* visited the imperial court upon this occasion, *Frederic* would have compelled him to relinquish the sovereignty of *Pomerania*, and do homage not only for *Wandalia*, but also for the kingdom of *Denmark*. But the *Dane*, remembering the emperor's behaviour to his father *Waldemar*, refused to quit his own kingdom, or even to pay the remainder of his sister's dowry, until the ceremony should be performed: a refusal which exasperated *Frederic* to such a degree, that he sent back the princess with the most mortifying marks of scorn and contempt ⁿ, and *Canut*, in revenge for this insult, made incursions into the northern parts of *Germany*.

^m HUITFEL. Hist. Dan. t. i. ad an. 1187.

ⁿ Id. ibid.

EMERIC, having quarrelled with his brother *Bela*, king of *Hungary*, fled for refuge to count *Sobieslaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, who, instead of granting him protection, or referring the affair to the cognizance of the emperor, sent him back to his brother under a strong escorte: a step which gave such umbrage to *Frederic*, who hated *Bela*, that he summoned *Sobieslaus* to the diet, to give an account of his conduct in this affair. The duke, declining to appear before this tribunal, was condemned as contumacious, and deprived of his dominions, the investiture of which was given to *Frederic*, son of *Uladislaus*, whom he had succeeded in the dukedom.

THE new duke, being furnished with some troops by the archbishop of *Saltzburg*, marched into *Bohemia* before *Sobieslaus* could put himself into a posture of defence; and, while that prince retired into *Lusatia*, he made his entrance into *Prague*, and was received with loud acclamations by the people, who were disgusted at the administration of his rival. In a little time after his accession, he was summoned to attend the emperor at a diet in *Ratisbon*, and afterwards in a circuit round the towns of *Suabia*; and *Sobieslaus*, taking the advantage of his absence, assembled an army, by dint of the friends he still had in *Bohemia*, and, marching to the forest of *Hercinia*, secured the passes in order to prevent *Frederic's* return. Notwithstanding this precaution, his rival entered the country by the way of *Ratisbon*, with a considerable body of *German* troops, and, a battle ensuing, *Sobieslaus* obtained the victory. *Frederic* however, having rallied his forces, and being joined by *Conrad*, marquis de *Znain*, in *Moravia*, retrieved his honour, and, in a pitched battle, vanquished *Sobieslaus* in his turn.

HAVING thus effectually quelled his rival, who never appeared in the sequel, he possessed his dominions in quiet, until he gave umbrage to the *Bohemians* by raising strangers to the magistracy of *Prague*, and other unpopular measures, which created a spirit of discontent and disaffection; in consequence of which the nobility deposed him, while he assisted at the diet in *Ratisbon*, and made a proffer of the crown to his old friend *Conrad*, marquis de *Znain*, who was accordingly chosen sovereign of *Bohemia*.

BUT this dignity he did not long enjoy; for the emperor, whom he being apprised of these proceedings, interested the princes in the affair, and the *Bohemians* were put to the ban of the empire. The execution of this sentence, however, was suspended; because *Conrad*, foreseeing the tempest that was brewing against him, relinquished his acquisition, and the *Bohemians*

Bohemians sent deputies, to deprecate the wrath of the emperor, who commanded them to take the oath of allegiance anew to *Frederic*, as their lawful sovereign, and he was accordingly reinstated in his dominions.

A difference
between the
emperor
and the
pope.

MAN, while every thing tended to a rupture between the emperor and the pope. The last being disgusted at the marriage of *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, with *Constance* of *Sicily*, as well as at *Frederic's* seizing the dominions of the countess *Matilda*, endeavoured, not only to detach the towns of *Lombardy* from the emperor's interest, but also to foment a difference between him and the *German* prelates, who had some cause of dissatisfaction, in his taking the spoils of defunct bishops, and exercising some other acts of severity against the members of the church. The emperor perceiving his drift, and dreading the consequence of a quarrel with the clergy, assembled a diet at *Gelnhausen*, where he found means to remove the discontents of the ecclesiastical princes, and engage them in his interest against the pope, to whom they wrote a very sharp remonstrance, containing a detail of the ill offices his holiness had done the emperor and empire, in protesting the *Cremonese*, his declared enemies, in stirring up the other towns of *Lombardy* against his authority, in protracting the schism in the church of *Triers*, and in levying heavy exactions from the churches of *Germany*. They, therefore, intreated him to alter his conduct, redress these grievances, and be heartily reconciled to the emperor, whose designs he had hitherto sought to traverse and oppose.

Philip,
archbishop
of Cologne,
creates
disturbances
in
the empire.

URBAN, far from complying with this advice, was so incensed at their having abandoned his cause, that he resolved to excommunicate the emperor; but he died before the sentence could be fulminated, and was succeeded by *Albert*, cardinal and chancellor of the *Roman* church, who took the name of *Gregory VIII.* and lived but two months after his elevation. This pontiff left his quality of apostolical legate to *Philip*, archbishop of *Cologne*, who exerted all his endeavours to detach the *German* churches from the emperor's party, and fortified the city of *Cologne*, to defend himself against the effects of his indignation: but his ambition was humbled by *Frederic*, who, in an assembly at *Worms*, represented the evil consequences of his conduct in such a light, that a decree was made, prohibiting the importation of provision and necessaries into *Cologne*; *Fohmar* and his adherents, who had taken refuge with the archbishop, were put to the ban of the empire, and *Philip* given to under-

stand, that troops would be sent into his territory, in case he should continue to protect the refugees.

THIS disturbance was succeeded by a war with *Humbert*, count of *Savoy*, who had always espoused the cause of the pope against the emperor, and for that reason intailed upon himself the resentment of *Barbarossa*. The sees of *Turin* and *Geneva* were detached from the county by *Frederic*, who erected them into fiefs of the empire, so that the bishops would no longer hold of *Humbert*, until they were reduced by force of arms : and this compulsion, enforced against the imperial decree, excited the indignation of *Frederic*, who, in his last passage to *Italy*, took, pillaged, and burnt, the castle of *Susa*, together with all the archives it contained. *Henry* king of the *Romans*, being joined by the *Milanese*, who hated the house of *Savoy*, entered *Piedmont*, took the castle of *Veillani*, and reduced great part of the country ; but the progress of the war was checked by the death of *Humbert*, whose son *Thomas I.* was left a minor, under the tutorage of *Boniface*, marquis of *Montferrat*, who obtained of *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, the revocation of the imperial decree, by which the bishopric of *Turin* was erected into a fief of the empire ¹. In consequence of this revocation, the bishop ceded the jurisdiction and rights of signory in that city to the count of *Savoy*, on condition that this last should do homage to the emperor ; which homage was afterwards renewed at *Basil* to the emperor *Philip*, who bestowed upon *Thomas* the investiture of all the countries, lands, and signories, which he had inherited from his ancestors (H).

Frederic makes war against Humbert, count of Savoy.

FRE-

¹ SIGON. de Reg. Ital. l. xv.

(H) The quarrels between the bishops and counts of *Geneva* and *Savoy* were not so easily terminated : on the contrary, they became every day more and more embroiled, as is generally the case with all those disputes which turn upon rights acquired by intrigue, insinuation, or force of arms. The bishops and counts enjoyed, by turns, the favour of the popes and emperors, who issued contradictory bulls and decrees oc-

casionaly in behalf of their favourites (1).

The bishops and counts of *Geneva*, like the other noblemen of *Burgundy*, took advantage of the wars between the emperors and holy see, to render themselves independent. The counts made the government hereditary in their families, and acted as sovereign princes : the citizens, by way of balancing this power, intrusted the bishops, by commission,

(1) *Hist. General de Savoy*, t. i. p. 246.

FREDERIC was employed in making regulations for the establishment of peace and good order in *Germany*, when the news arrived of *Jerusalem's* being taken by sultan *Saladin*: a circumstance which filled all *Europe* with grief and consternation; so much was the spirit of the times influenced by that religious knight-errantry, which sought to wrest the *Holy Land* out of the hands of the infidels.

A. D.
1188.
The emperor takes
the cross.

CLEMENT III. who succeeded *Gregory VIII.* in the papal chair, no sooner received these melancholy tidings, than he ordered a crusade to be preached up through all the different countries of Christendom. The emperor assembling a diet at *Mentz*, in order to deliberate with the states of the empire on this unhappy event, took the cross, and his example was followed by his son *Frederic*, duke of *Suabia*, with sixty-eight of the first noblemen in *Germany*, ecclesiastics as well as laymen. In consequence of this engagement, the pope was reconciled with the emperor. The time was fixed for the departure of the crusaders; the rendezvous appointed at *Ratisbon*; and, in order to prevent the inconvenience of too great a multitude, *Frederic* decreed, that no person should enlist himself, who could not afford to expend three marks of silver. Notwithstanding this prohibition, such was the zeal of the *Germans*, that the adventurers assembled to the number of one hundred and fifty thousand fighting men, well accoutred, and provided with necessaries for the expedition.

THE emperor, in order to raise money for this occasion, alienated several fiefs belonging to his own family, and imposed a general tax upon the lands, effects, and moveables, of those who did not take the cross; but this exaction,

with the administration of justice, the police, and defence of their privileges; but they were soon obliged to oppose the enterprizes of these defenders. The bishops, as they grew powerful, erected themselves into temporal lords of the city, by virtue of commissions obtained of the emperors, and left nothing to the counts but the jurisdiction of the country that depended upon the town; so that they were restricted to the sovereignty of the territory which

is now called the *Genevois*, and hence are indifferently denominated counts of *Geneva*, or of the *Genevois*. It was at length agreed, that the bishops should possess the jurisdiction and signories of the town, with the power of coining money; that the count should not build any fortress without the bishop's consent; that he should do homage to the bishop, and appoint a lieutenant at *Geneva* to judge civil causes (2).

(2) *Spon. t. i. p. 57.*

known by the name of the *Saladine Tythe*, not answering his purpose, he obtained permission of the pope to dispense, for a certain sum, with the attendance of those who had enlisted themselves in a hurry, and afterwards repented of the engagement. Mean while he dispatched *Henry* count *de Dier* to summon *Saladin* to restore the *Holy Land*, and the wood of the true cross, which he had taken from the Christians of the east; or to declare war against him, should he refuse to comply with these demands. At the same time he sent ambassadors to the sultan of *Iconium* and the emperor of *Constantinople*, requiring a free passage through their dominions. Dreading the commotions that might be raised in his absence by *Henry the Lion* and his adherents, he revoked the proscription of that nobleman, effected a reconciliation between him and his enemy duke *Bernard*, and solemnly promised that he should be restored to the possession of all his dominions, provided he would return to *England*, and reside in that kingdom until the crusade should be finished. *Henry* assented to the proposal, and retired to the court of his father-in-law, after having bound himself by oath to desist from all attempts to interrupt the peace of *Germany*, during the emperor's absence^r.

THEN he made a progress through the principal cities of *Germany*, accompanied by his son *Henry*, to whom he intended to leave the government of his dominions; and, that he might neglect no step tending to the preservation and peace of the empire, he regulated his succession in such a manner, as that none of his children should have cause to complain, or a pretext to disturb the peace of his country.

HE in person marched at the head of thirty thousand men, by the way of *Vienna*, to *Presburg*, where he was joined by the rest of his army. Thence he proceeded, through *Hungary*, into the dominions of the *Greek* emperor, who, notwithstanding his professions of friendship, had been detached from the interests of *Frederic* by *Saladin's* promises and insinuations, and took all opportunities of harrassing the crusards in their march. The emperor, incensed at his perfidious dealing, laid the country under contribution, took and plundered *Philippopolis*, defeated a body of *Greek* troops who attacked him in his march, and compelled *Isaacus Angelus*, emperor of *Constantinople*, to sue for peace. He wintered at *Adrianople*, crossed the *Hellepont* in the spring, refreshed his troops for a few days at *Laodicea*, defeated the *Turks* in several battles, took and pillaged the city of *Iconium*, and crossed

^r BARRE, tom. v. p. 392:

Is drown-
ed.

A. D.

1190.

Mount Taurus ; so that all *Asia Minor* was filled with the terror of his name, and the Christians of that country were elevated with the most flattering hope of relief and advantage from his assistance : but they were disappointed in their expectation. This great prince, who was an expert swimmer, in order to refresh himself from the sultry heat of summer, plunged into the river *Cydnus*, where, unable to cope with the current, he was unfortunately drowned ; but his body was retrieved, and buried in the city of *Tyre* ^s.

HE was succeeded in command by his son *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, who, having performed the last offices to his father at *Tyre*, proceeded on his march, and joined the army of the eastern Christians, at that time engaged in the siege of *Ptolemais* : but, before that city was taken, he died of an infectious distemper, which proved fatal to the greatest part of his army, the wreck of which returned to *Germany*, with the landgrave of *Thuringia*, the duke of *Guelderland*, and the count of *Holstein*, except a few that remained with *Leopold* duke of *Austria*.

THUS perished *Frederic* I. in the sixty-ninth year of his age, and thirty-eight of his reign, a prince of an enterprising spirit and great capacity, who had the peace of his country always at heart, and who supported the dignity of the empire with equal courage and reputation (1).

* OTHO a Sancto Blasio. GODEF. Monach. Tagen. Descript. Expedit. Asiat.

(1) He had no children by his first wife *Alix*, daughter of the marquis of *Ursbourg*, from whom he had obtained a divorce ; but he had five sons and two daughters by the empress *Beatrice*, daughter of *Renaud* count of *Burgundy*. *Henry* the eldest was already elected king of the *Romans*, and appointed his successor in the empire : he bestowed upon *Frederic* the second son the duchy of *Suabia*, together with that part of *Bavaria* which he had inherited

of his brother *Welf*, together with the county of *Pfullendorf* : to his third son *Conrad* he gave the duchy of *Rottemberg*, and to *Otho* that of *Burgundy*, which was the patrimony of the empress ; and, lastly, on *Philip* the youngest son he settled all the estates and countries which he had recovered and disengaged from the hands of the ecclesiastics. One of his daughters was married to *Conrad* marquis of *Misnia*, and the other to *Matthieu* first duke of *Lorrain* (1).

(1) *Heiss. Hist. c. 13.*

C H A P. V.

. *Deducing the History of Germany to the Election of Rodolphus, Founder of the Austrian Greatness.*

H E N R Y VI.

HENRY VI. surnamed *the Severe*, received almost at Henry VI. at the same time the news of his father's death, and of *succeeds as* that of his uncle-in-law *William* king of *Sicily*. After his *emperor*, father's departure for *Palestine*, this young prince had found *and by* it very difficult to maintain his authority in the empire. *right of* *Henry the Lion* duke of *Saxony*, without paying the least *his wife* regard to the oath he had taken, returned to *Germany*, which *inherits* was now unfurnished of her best troops, and entered into an *the kingdom of* association with some discontented noblemen, who engaged *Sicily* to assist him in recovering his dominions. The chief of these *Henry the* associates was *Hartwick* archbishop of *Bremen*, who expected *Lion a-* the assistance of *Henry* in his turn, to reduce the *Dillmarfes*, *gain dis-* a people who had withdrawn themselves from the dominion *turbs the* of the see of *Bremen*, and claimed the protection of *Waldemar* *peace of* bishop of *Sleswic*. Accordingly *Henry*, as a mark of grati- *the empire* tude to *Hartwick*, entered *Holstein* with a body of troops, furnished by the archbishop and other noblemen, took *Bar-* *dowic* by assault, plundered and burnt the town, and carried off the principal inhabitants into captivity. *Lubec*, *Hamb-* *burgh*, and other places, intimidated by this example, opened their gates to the conqueror, and the whole country was filled with consternation. The king of the *Romans* taking the field, in order to stop the progress of *the Lion*, made an unsuccessful attempt upon *Brunswic*, then marching into the territory of *Bremen*, with a view to chastise *Hartwick*, the author of the war, he ravaged the country, and attacked the *Is defeated* army of *the Lion*, who was defeated near *Ferden* ^t. In con- *by the king* sequence of this battle, the archbishop fled to *England*, and *of the Ro-* *Henry*, humbled by his bad success, had recourse to the in- *mans* ; tercession of the archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne* with the king of the *Romans*, who, in an assembly at *Fulde*, granted *and obtains* him peace, on condition that *Brunswic* should be dismantled, *peace*. the citadel of *Lawenberg* razed to the ground, and *Lubec* equally divided between *Henry* and *Adolphus* count of *Hol-* *stein* ; that *the Lion* should give his son *Lotharius* as an host-

age, and that *Henry* his heir, attended by fifty knights, should accompany the king of the *Romans* in his march to *Italy*.

AFTER this reconciliation with *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, who pledged his own son as hostage of his faith, the emperor levied an army, and marched into *Italy*, with his wife *Constance*, in order to be crowned by the pope, and afterwards to go and recover the succession of *William*, who had died without legitimate issue.

BUT *Tancred* count of *Leccio*, and natural brother of the empress, had been declared king of *Sicily* by the great chancellor, at the head of a party, who dreaded the prospect of being under the dominion of the emperor. *Henry*, foreseeing the difficulties that would attend his endeavours to recover the succession, resolved to conciliate the affection of the *Lombard* towns, which would be a bulwark against the power and interest of his rival. With this view he confirmed to the inhabitants of *Cremona*, *Bergamo*, and *Bologna*, the privilege of coining money, with certain restrictions. He settled in perpetuity to the churches of *Reggio* and *Padua* the fiefs of which they were possessed; then crossing the *Appennines*, he engaged in a treaty with the *Pisans* against *Tancred*, and confirmed and augmented all the privileges of *Genoa* by an authentic deed, in consideration of which, the *Genoese* promised to equip a fleet for his service, to be used in the reduction of *Sicily*.

The emperor and empress are crowned at Rome.

A. D.
1191.

SOON after his arrival in *Italy*, pope *Clement* died, and was succeeded by *Celestin* III. in the eighty-sixth year of his age, who being consecrated at *Easter*, next day crowned the emperor and his wife. A very remarkable circumstance happened in the ceremony; for the pope had no sooner placed the crown upon *Henry's* head, than he kicked it off again, as a testimony of the power inherent in popes, to give and take away the imperial dignity according to the emergency of affairs.

He invests Naples, but is obliged to raise the siege.

HENRY, after the coronation of himself and his empress, put the pope in possession of the town of *Tusculum*, according to a promise he had made before he received the imperial crown, and this place being delivered to the *Romans*, in consequence of a treaty subsisting between them and *Clement* III. they razed it to the foundation, and expelled the inhabitants; but, sometime after its destruction, the town of *Frescati* was raised from its ruins. The emperor, having thus

^u Caffari. ann. gen. l. iii. ap. MURAT. t. vi.
HOVED. an. Angl. p. 689.

performed his promise, pursued his enterprize against the bastard *Tancred*, notwithstanding the remonstrances and prohibition of the pope, who, though he considered *Tancred* as an usurper, and wanted to see him deprived of the crown of *Sicily*, which he claimed as a fief of the holy see, was, nevertheless, much more averse to the emperor's possessing that kingdom, because such an accession would have rendered him too powerful in *Italy* for the interests of the church. *Henry*, however, without paying the least regard to his threats and representations, took almost all the towns of *Campania*, *Apu- lia*, and *Calabria*, invested the city of *Naples*, and sent for the *Genoese* fleet to come and form the blockade by sea; but before their arrival, he was obliged to raise the siege, in consequence of a dreadful mortality among his troops, which, among others, swept off *Philip* archbishop of *Cologne*, *Otho* duke of *Bohemia*, and the greatest part of the nobility who served in this expedition: as for *Henry* son of *the Lion*, he had, before this period, escaped by stealth in a ship from *Ostia*. The emperor himself was seized with the distemper, of which he recovered with difficulty. In the mean time, the towns which had submitted to his power, seeing his army greatly diminished, and himself incapable of action, took this opportunity to shake off his dominion, and make their peace with *Tancred*, whose resentment they dreaded. In particular the inhabitants of *Salerno*, where the empress resided, delivered that princess to *Tancred*, who afterwards restored her to the emperor, in consequence of the pope's interposition.

HENRY, being no longer in a condition to maintain the war against his rival, repaired to *Genoa*, where he entered into new engagements with the inhabitants, concerning the equip- ment of another fleet for the conquest of *Naples*; then he visited *Placentia*, *Cremona*, and *Brescia*, on which he bestowed particular marks of favour. Having secured the fidelity of the *Lombard* towns, he passed the *Alps*, knighted *Lewis* IV. of *Bavaria* at *Worms*, declared his brother *Conrad* duke of *Suabia*, gave *Tuscany* to his second brother *Philip*, with the territories of *Spoletto*, and the *Ecrainer*, which he wrested from the house of *Guelph*, and built an house at *Coblentz* for the knights of the *Teutonic* order ² (K). Now

A. D.
1192.

¹ SIGON. l. xv.
1. l. xiii. ad. ann. 1192.

² ADLREITT. ann. Boic. Gent. p.

(K) About this time was knighthood, the occasion of established the *Teutonic* order of which we shall explain for the reader's

Now that his wealth and dominions were so considerably augmented, and his authority established beyond the reach of

reader's satisfaction. *Frederic Barbarossa*, in his expedition to the *Holy Land*, had been accompanied by a great number of *German* gentlemen volunteers, who wanted to signalize themselves in the cause of their religion. These, upon the death of *Frederic*, elected his second son *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, and *Henry* duke of *Brabant*, captain generals of their nation; and under these chiefs performed such gallant exploits at the taking of *Acra*, *Jerusalem*, and other cities, that *Henry* king of *Jerusalem*, in consideration of their great services, erected them into an order of knighthood, under the title of *St. George*, because all of them fought on horseback: however they afterwards assumed the name, and put themselves under the protection, of the *Holy Virgin*, who was already patroness of an hospital erected upon *Mount Zion*, for the benefit of *German* pilgrims. Their statutes were formed on the plan of those belonging to the knights *Templars*, and the knights of *St. John*, so as to be adapted for an order that was designed to be partly military, partly charitable, that, after having employed one part of their lives in defence of the *Holy Land*, they might devote the remainder to the exercise of hospitality, in favour of the poor pilgrims of their nation. Those statutes, among other articles, ordained, That the knights should be descended of noble families; that they should be called brother

knights of the Blessed Virgin; that they should take an oath to defend the Christian church in general, and the *Holy Land* in particular; that they should protect the clergy, the widow, the orphan, and the poor, in distress; that they should serve and assist all those who were qualified for being admitted into their hospital, and, in general conform themselves to all the rules of the order. The emperor *Henry* not only granted his protection to this order, but also employed his good offices with the pope to confirm the institution; accordingly *Celestin* perused and improved the statutes. He ordained that their habit should be white with a black cross sewed upon it; that they should bear the same cross upon a white banner, and wear it on their achievements and armour; and live according to the rule of *St. Augustine*. He likewise confirmed to them the gift of that *German* hospital upon *Mount Zion*, from whence they derived their title and foundation, and granted to them the same privileges which were enjoyed by the knights of *St. John*. In consequence of the bull which he published on this subject the king of *Jerusalem*, and *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, being empowered by his imperial majesty, created the first knights of this order to the number of forty, of whom *Henry de Walpot* was chosen grand master. The emperor bestowed upon them the right of possessing in perpetuity all the

of all opposition and controul, he resolved to render the empire hereditary in his house, and secure the crown to his son *Frederic*. With this view he assembled the princes at *Gelnhausen* in *Weteravia*, where he explained his intention, which was fulfilled by an irrevocable law, importing, That, in order to avoid those disturbances which had always attended the election of emperors, the crown should become hereditary, and devolve to heirs male or female.

AT his return to *Germany*, he took all the necessary precautions for settling the peace of the empire, so as that it should not be disturbed in his absence. He applied himself particularly to the administration of justice, and in person sat to hear and determine the complaints of his subjects, with such patience and perseverance, as attracted universal admiration. One of his favourites having taken the freedom to tell him that he fatigued himself too much with giving audience, which often interfered with his necessary meals, he replied, That a private man was at liberty to eat when he would; but that a prince ought never to sit down till after he had discussed the affairs of the public ^a (L).

NOTWITHSTANDING this indefatigable care and apparent integrity, he found it a difficult task to acquit himself of the suspicion of being concerned in the murder of *Albert* bishop of *Liege*. That prelate had been regularly elected by the canons, and confirmed by the pope, in opposition to *Lotharius*, who had received the investiture of the bishopric from the emperor: but he did not long survive his consecration; for he was murdered at *Rheims*, by two *German* knights, who had insinuated themselves into his confidence, and who were said to have been employed on this occasion by his competitor, with the consent and privacy of the emperor. The arch-

^a HEISS. liv. ii. c. 14.

the lands and provinces they should conquer from the Infidels; and *Philip* king of *France* was their great benefactor, and allowed them to bear a flower de luce at the four extremities of the cross (2). These knights, after having been expelled from the *rich Land*, subdued *Prussia*, *Pamelia*, and a part of *Pomera-*

nia, which they lost again, after *Albert* of *Brandenburg* their grand master had changed his religion (3).

(L.) He had a natural fund of eloquence; his person was elegant, his port majestic, his conversation gay and lively, and his manner obliging (4).

(2) H. J. Hist. liv. xi. c. 14. *ibid.*

(3) Not upon Heiss. ubi sup.

(4) Heiss.

bishop of *Mentz*, together with the noblemen of the *Rhine* and the *Meuse*, exasperated at this barbarous assassination, entered the territories of the count of *Horstade*, brother of *Lotharius*, and destroyed the country with fire and sword. The emperor, in order to appease their indignation, and justify himself at the same time, called an assembly at *Coblentz*, where he declared himself innocent of the crime, soothed the malecontents with fair promises, took measures for punishing the assassins who escaped into *France*, ratified the pope's decision against *Lotharius*, whom he divested of his bishopric; and thus the see of *Liege* becoming vacant, was filled with *Albert de Cuck*, to the satisfaction of all parties ^b.

War between
Henry the
Lion and
Rodolphus
count of
Holstein;

SCARCE was this affair terminated, when a war broke out between *Adolphus* duke of *Holstein* and *Henry the Lion*, who seized and refused to restore *Holstein* to the right owner, according to the treaty concluded at *Fulde*. He alleged that the agreement was the effect of compulsion, therefore not obligatory. *Adolphus*, having no reason to expect any succours from the emperor at this conjuncture, when his whole endeavours were employed in raising an army for the conquest of *Sicily*; despairing, I say, of obtaining assistance from that quarter, he had recourse to *Bernard* duke of *Saxony*, and *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburgh*, whose interest it was to bridle the power of *Henry the Lion*; and being reinforced with a considerable body of troops by those noblemen, and his own nephew the count of *Nassau*, he marched into *Holstein*, where he repulsed the forces of *Henry*, and soon reduced the whole country to his obedience: then he made himself master of *Staden* and *Lubec*, and received from the emperor the investiture of them and some other places which he conquered from his adversary.

who afterwards
acts against
Bernard
duke of
Saxony;

THESE acquisitions excited the jealousy of *Bernard* duke of *Saxony*, who pretending that he had the best right to those dominions which had formerly belonged to *the Lion*, broke with *Adolphus*, seized *Holdeslo* and some other places in that neighbourhood, and even threatened to besiege *Lubec*, tho' it was an imperial town. In return for these acts of hostility *Adolphus* having formed a league with *Bernard de Ratzeburg*, and *Guecelen* count of *Swerin*, invested *Lawenburg*, belonging to *Bernard*, which being reduced to extremity, the inhabitants despairing of succour from their own duke; applied to *Canut* king of *Denmark*, offering to put the city under his protection: but, before the *Danish* troops arrived, they were compelled by necessity to surrender. *Adolphus*

^b BARRE, tom. v. p. 440.

afterwards, in conjunction with the bishops of *Norway*, the nobility of *Pomerania*, and several princes of *Lower Saxony*, espoused the cause of *Waldemar* bishop of *Sleswic*, who pre- and espoused the crown of *Denmark*, and actually supplied him ^{est the cause of a pre-} with a fleet and army, which enabled him to pass into that ^{tender to the crown of Den-} country, and assume the title of king; but, by the prudent ^{mark.} conduct of *Canut*, who kept himself on the defensive, and pressed out the confederates with delays and procrastination, the league was dissipated, the pretender taken prisoner, and *Adolphus* pursued from *Sleswic* into his own country, where he was obliged to sue for peace, which he obtained of *Canut* on very hard conditions.

IT was at this period of time that *Richard* king of *England*, ^{Richard king of England} on his return from *Palestine*, where he had acquired great reputation against *Saladin*, was shipwrecked on the coast of ^{is arrested by the duke of Austria;} the *Adriatic*, and assumed the habit of a pilgrim, that he might securely travel through the dominions of *Leopold* duke of *Austria*. But that prince, whom he had affronted at the siege of *Ptolemais*, having discovered him in spite of his disguise, caused the unfortunate monarch to be apprehended, loaded with chains, and treated with the utmost indignity. The emperor was no sooner informed of the capture than he demanded the prisoner, whom *Leopold* delivered, upon promise of receiving a good share of his ransom. Notwithstanding a solemn embassy from *England* to demand the liberty of her prince, who was detained without any plausible pretence, in opposition to the dictates of honour, humanity, and the law of nations, he, at the diet of *Haguenau*, preferred six articles of accusation against *Richard*, importing, ^{and accused before the diet of} That he had engaged in a league with *Tancred*, in order to maintain that usurper in the possession of the kingdom of *Sicily*; that by quarrelling with the king of *France* he had ^{Haguenau.} prevented the conquest of *Jerusalem*; that he had invaded the kingdom of *Cyprus*, and employed the arms of the crusaders in pillaging a Christian prince; that he had insulted the duke of *Austria* during the siege of *Ptolemais*; that he had been accessory to the death of the marquis of *Montferat*, who had been assassinated in *Palestine*; and that he had concluded a truce with *Saladin*, contrary to the interests of *Christianism*.

THE king of *England* observed, that, although he was accountable to no person for his actions, and did not consider the members of that assembly as his judges, yet as his honour was concerned, he would waive his royal prerogative, and

vindicate his character from these base and cruel aspersions. He affirmed that he had not raised *Tancred* to the throne of *Sicily*, but treated with him as with a king in actual possession of the crown; that the jealousy of the *French* king was the sole cause that obstructed the success of the crusards in *Palestine*, and that he ought to bear the blame, as he had retired the first from the scene of action; that he had taken the kingdom of *Cyprus* from an usurper and tyrant, who had provoked his resentment; but surely he could not be justly taxed with having been actuated by ambition and avarice on that occasion, inasmuch as he had voluntarily ceded that island in favour of *Gui de Lusignan*, to indemnify him for the loss of *Jerusalem*: that the duke of *Austria*, in loading him with shackles, had effectually revenged a supposed affront; for which he might have demanded satisfaction in a more honourable manner; that his conduct and character ought to have screened him from the imputation of being accessory to the murder of the marquis of *Montferrat*, who had, in the very article of death, acquitted him of all suspicion of that kind, by desiring his wife to deliver the city of *Tyre* into his hands, a legacy which he surely would not leave to a person whom he had suspected as the author or accomplice of his own murder; and, lastly, with respect to the intelligence he was supposed to have maintained with *Saladin*, he modestly reminded them of the share he had in the victory obtained over that Infidel prince. He accused the duke of *Burgundy* of having abandoned him from a motive of jealousy, when he was on the eve of besieging *Jerusalem*; and added, that the truce he had made could not be the effect of any sordid self-interested view, seeing that of all the booty he had taken from the caravan of *Babylon*, he had reserved nothing to himself but the ring upon his finger.

A.D. 1193. **THIS** defence appeared so satisfactory to the *German* princes, who were moreover affected with the misfortune of so great a king, that they unanimously intreated the emperor to set him at liberty; and *Henry* promised to comply with their request: but this favourable disposition was destroyed by the intrigues of *Philip* king of *France*, who had fomented disturbances in *England*, by encouraging *John* to usurp his brother's crown, and now dreaded the release of *Richard*, as an effectual obstacle to his conquest of *Normandy*, which he invaded during the captivity of its sovereign. He therefore sent the bishop of *Beauvais* as ambassador into *Germany*, in order to represent to the emperor the great advantages that might be derived from the captivity of *Richard*; and the insinuations of that prelate quadrated so exactly with the suggestions

The emperor promised to set Richard at liberty, but afterwards insists upon his paying an exorbitant ransom.

gestions of his own avarice, that he refused to enlarge his prisoner without a most exorbitant ransom, amounting to an hundred and fifty thousand marks of silver, of which one third should be given to *Leopold* duke of *Austria*. He moreover insisted upon *Richard's* transporting the money at his own risque, upon setting at liberty the king of *Cyprus* and his daughter, and upon bestowing his niece *Eleanor* of *Bretagne* in marriage upon the eldest son of the duke of *Austria*. Hard as these conditions may seem, they were embraced by *Richard*, who thought he could not pay too dear for that liberty by which alone his crown could be secured : for by this time his brother *John* had set up for himself, and embroiled the whole kingdom of *England*. He for that reason wrote to his mother queen *Elinor*, desiring she would take measures for raising the ransom without delay, while the king of *France* offered a very considerable sum to the emperor, provided he would protract *Richard's* captivity for another year. *Henry* suffered himself to be swayed by this sordid consideration, and, sacrificing his honour to his interest, refused to release his prisoner, even when queen *Elinor* arrived at *Worms*, with one hundred thousand marks of silver, and hostages for the rest of the ransom. He renounced the agreement he had made, and referred the matter to the diet at *Spire*, where he still equivocated and sought to delay the deliverance of the king of *England* to the diet, which was summoned to meet at *Mentz* the following year : but the *German* princes, ashamed of his proceedings, freely explained their sentiments on that subject, and, as their honour was concerned, insisted upon his performing the articles of the treaty which they had guarantied. *Henry*, either persuaded by their reasons, or apprehensive of their resentment, received the ransom, and released his prisoner, who set out immediately for the *Low Countries*, at which he arrived without having halted by the road : nor was this expedition unnecessary ; inasmuch as *Henry*, repenting of what he had done, sent a body of light horse in pursuit of *Richard*, whom they in vain endeavoured to apprehend c.

LEOPOLD duke of *Austria*, whose proportion of the ransom was still unpaid, threatened to wreak his vengeance upon the hostages. *Richard*, knowing the brutality of his disposition, remitted the money, which was not raised without great difficulty, as *England* had been impoverished by the crusade ; and with this last payment he sent his niece *Elinor*, according to the agreement which had been made.

But, before she arrived at *Vienna*, *Leopold* died of a fall from his horse, and in his last moments ordered the hostages to be released, conscious of the injustice he had done, in detaining *Richard*, in opposition to all the dictates of equity and honour. His son and successor *Frederic* scrupled at first to obey these directions; but the lay lords and bishops of his dominions interposing, and giving him to understand that the corpse of his father should not be buried until the will should be performed, and the pope threatening to excommunicate him should he persist in his obstinacy, he dismissed the hostages, and sent back the princess *Eleanor*, who had not been so lucky as to captivate his inclinations ^d.

THE emperor, who meditated another expedition into *Italy*, and foresaw future quarrels with the pope, resolved, if possible, to fortify himself with the friendship of the king of *England*, to whom he forthwith dispatched an ambassador to ask pardon for the injuries he had done that monarch, and promise restitution of the sum he had exacted for his ransom.

The bishop
of Prague
elected
duke of
Bohemia.

THE crown of *Bohemia* becoming vacant by the death of *Conrad de Znaim*, who had succeeded *Frederic*, a competition arose between *Winceflaus* and *Primislaus*, which last compelled his rival to fly for protection to the emperor, who espoused his cause, and put *Primislaus* to the ban of the empire: but, the other dying before he could be established in his dominions, the states of *Bohemia* elected *Henry* bishop of *Prague*, who was confirmed by the emperor in the possession of the ducal crown ^e.

Henry the
Lion en-
deavours
to excite
fresh trou-
bles.

THOUGH the troubles of *Bohemia* were thus appeased, *Saxony* still continued in agitation. *Henry the Lion* exerted all his endeavours to recover the possession of his dominions on the other side of the *Elbe*. He formed schemes, proposed alliances, and tried to interest *Canut* king of *Denmark* in his cause; but, failing in all his projects, he sought to regain the good graces of the emperor; and for this purpose effected a match between his son the duke of *Brunswic* and *Agnes* daughter of *Conrad* count *Palatine*, the emperor's uncle, a marriage which, instead of appeasing, gave such offence to *Henry*, that he would have summoned *Conrad* to the first diet to give an account of his conduct, had not some noblemen interposed in his behalf, and promised in his name, that the count should appear at the imperial court. There he acquitted himself in such a manner, that the emperor ap-

^d BARRE, t. v. p. 461.

^e HEISS. Polon. l. vi. ad. ann.

proved of the step he had taken, and received into his favour the duke of *Brunswic*, with whose conduct he had hitherto no great reason to be satisfied. The *Palatine*, finding him so well disposed, persuaded *Henry the Lion* to solicit his forgiveness; and the emperor, having promised to favour him with an interview at *Solfeden*, the old duke set out for that place, but was obliged to halt by the way, in consequence of a dangerous fall from his horse. The emperor was no sooner informed of the accident than he went to visit him without ceremony, embraced him tenderly at meeting, conferred with him several times in private, and having no longer cause to doubt his sincerity, gratified his son with the honours of the *Palatinate*, on condition that he should attend the emperor in his expedition into *Sicily* ^f (M). *Is reconciled to the emperor.*

HENRY having made all the necessary preparations, returned to *Italy*; but first detached a considerable part of his army towards *Naples*, under the command of his lieutenant *Berthold*, in order to make the first attempt, in which he obtained some advantages. *Venafro*, in the territory of *Labour*, was taken and pillaged: *Rocca* and *Sexti* met with the same fate; and several other places submitted without opposition. *Tancred*, in order to oppose the progress of the imperial general, passed over from *Sicily* with a numerous army; but, being afraid to hazard a battle, he returned to *Palermo*, in consequence of the death of his son *Roger*, which made such an impression upon his spirits, that, in a few days, he himself died of grief, and his other son *William*, though an infant, was declared king of *Sicily*. *The emperor returns to Italy, and takes possession of the Two Sicilies.*
A. D. 1194.

THIS success, together with the news of *Tancred's* death, induced him to follow in person, with a strong body of troops, after having sent a deputy to inform the *Pisans* and *Genoese* of his intention, that they might have their fleets in readiness at his arrival. Matters being thus disposed, he passed the *Alps* and repaired to *Genoa*, where he communicated his instructions to the consul *Albert d'Olivaro*, who commanded the conjoined fleets, with which he sailed towards the

^f BARRE, t. v. p. 465.

(M) *Henry the Lion* did not long survive this reconciliation: for he died at the age of 70, in the month of *August* that same year, leaving three sons, namely, *Henry*, who succeeded him in the duchy of *Brunswic*; *Otho*, who remained some time as an hostage with the emperor; and *William*, who lived in the same quality with the duke of *Austria* (5).

(5) *Ann. Paderborn, ad. ann. 1193.*

coast

coast of *Naples*, while the emperor marched thither by land. In his route he joined *Muscanwellus*, to whom the command of his first army had devolved at the death of count *Berthold*, who was killed at the siege of *Monte-Rodona*, and thus reinforced, he soon made himself master of *Naples*, *Apulia*; and *Calabria*, after having taken by storm the city of *Palermo*, where he cruelly revenged upon the citizens the insult offered to the person of his empress, whom they had detained prisoner in his first expedition. His severity on this occasion, and the cruelty he exercised in other towns, which had presumed to oppose him, frightened the rest into submission; *Naples* submitted, and, in a very short time, he found himself in peaceable possession of the *Two Sicilies* ^e.

TANCRED'S widow with her infant son and two daughters, had retired into *Sicily*; but the emperor pursued them so closely, that they were obliged to surrender themselves upon certain terms of accommodation, which he himself proposed. Yet they were no sooner in his power, than, without any regard to his promise, he stripped them of all their effects, ordered the infant to be castrated, and his eyes to be put out, and confined the mother, with her two daughters, in a monastery ^h.

A. D.
1195.
The em-
press is de-
livered of
a son;

IN the midst of these transactions the empress, though near the age of fifty, became pregnant; and, in order to avoid all suspicion of imposture, was delivered in the open field near *Palermo*, in presence of a multitude of people, when she brought forth a prince, who was called *Frederic*, and in the sequel mounted the imperial throne. *Henry* having totally subdued the *Two Sicilies*, and seized the immense treasures which had been amassed by *Tancred* and his predecessors, appointed regents of his own nation, and settled the affairs of his new kingdom; then returned to *Germany*, and carried along with him the principal lords and prelates of the *Two Sicilies*, as pledges of the fidelity of their fellow subjects; but this precaution did not avail, for the *Sicilians*, unable to bear his tyranny and imposition, raised a rebellion, which incensed him to such a degree, that he ordered all the hostages to be deprived of their eyesight.

BUT, before he set out for his *German* dominions, he was informed of the death of his brother *Conrad*, duke of *Suabia* and *Alsace*, which affected him nearly; and he bestowed the provincial prefecture of *Suabia*, together with the duchy of *Tuscany*, and the fiefs of the countess *Muthilda*, which duke

^e KRANTZ Sax. l. vii. c. 6.
c. 40.

^h Otho a Sancto Blasio,

Guelph had bequeathed to the emperor, upon his surviving brother *Philip*, who married *Irene*, daughter of the *Greek* emperor. On his return to *Germany*, he sent an embassy to *Richard* king of *England*, to propose an alliance against *France*, in consideration of which he would give him an acquittance for the whole ransom, part of which was still unpaid; and the king of *England*, in consequence of this intimation, refused to conclude a treaty with the *French* king, although it was at that time pretty far advanced.

Soon after this transaction the emperor bestowed upon *Henry* duke of *Brunswic* the investiture of the *Palatinate*, vacant by the death of *Conrad*, whose daughter *Henry* had married.

His next care was to create his son *Frederic* king of the *Romans*, though he was at that time in his cradle¹; and the princes of the empire proceeded to the election rather thro' ^{who is elected king of the Romans.} fear than affection².

POPE *Celestine*, disturbed by the power and disposition of *Henry*, who kept him in eternal disquiet, importuned him in the most pressing manner to succour the Christians in the *Holy Land* with a good number of troops, and put himself at their head, in imitation of the emperor *Frederic* his father. In consequence of these solicitations he sent thither an army ^{He sends} under the conduct of the archbishop of *Mentz*, and the princes ^{troops to} of *Austria*, *Brabant* and *Thuringia*³, while he himself, with ^{the Holy} the empress, and his son the king of the *Romans*, repassed in- ^{Land;} to *Sicily*, that he might extinguish the remains of the rebellion, and more conveniently provide for the necessities of the holy war.

He had in an assembly at *Strasburgh* listened to the harangue of the pope's legate with great attention, and publicly protested that he would employ his whole power, and even expose his own life for the accomplishment of such an holy enterprize. With these sentiments he convoked a general diet at *Worms*, where he solemnly declared his resolution, and expatiated upon the subject with such energy of eloquence, that almost all the assembly complied with his exhortations in taking the cross: nay, to such a degree of enthusiasm did this spirit of knight-errantry prevail, that *Margaret* queen-dowager of *Hungary* enlisted herself in the crusade, and actually ended her days in *Palestine*⁴.

¹ Ann. Boior. Jo. AVENTIN. l. vii. p. 525.
Arch. Imp. part gen. Cont. ii. p. 144.
ibid. ² ROGER ad. ann. 1196.

³ LUNIG
⁴ Ann. Boior.

SUCH a multitude of soldiers from all the provinces of the empire engaged in this expedition, that the emperor divided them into three large armies, one of which, under the command of *Conrad* archbishop of *Mentz*, took its route through *Hungary*, where it was joined by queen *Margaret*; the second, which was assembled in *Lower Saxony*, embarked in a fleet furnished by the inhabitants of *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Hoftein*, and *Friezland*: and the emperor conducted the third into *Italy* in order to punish the *Norman* noblemen, who had rebelled against his regency.

THE revolt began among the people of *Palermo*, who called *Richard* count *d'Acerra* to their assistance; but all his endeavours miscarrying, he left them exposed to the severities of the regents, and retired to *Campania*, where he was apprehended and imprisoned by count *Diapold*, one of the emperor's deputies. The bishop of *Worms* had been sent to dismantle *Naples* and *Capua*, and this demolition incensed the inhabitants to such a degree, that they could not conceal their resentment, but began to concert measures for shaking off the *German* yoke, which they found insupportable. Things were in this ticklish situation when the emperor arriving at *Naples* divested all the *Neapolitans*, *Calabrians*, and *Sicilians*, of the offices they enjoyed, together with the fiefs they held of the crown, and distributed them among his own adherents. He likewise extended his severity to the clergy, by disannulling their exemptions from military service, and, in a word, rendered himself so odious to his *Italian* subjects, that they formed a conspiracy against him, and took up arms at *Palermo*, under the conduct of *Roger* count *de Moliffa*, who found means to engage almost all the towns of *Sicily* in the rebellion.

chastises
the ri-
volters of
Sicily and
Naples ;

HENRY, alarmed at this general defection, was fain to enter into a negotiation with the malecontents, and propose a conference at *Capua*, where he promised to redress all their grievances, and reinstate them in the possession of their estates and privileges: but they had no sooner dismissed their troops in consequence of this accommodation, than he disregarded all his promises and protestations, transported part of his army into *Sicily*, apprehended a great number of those who had appeared in arms against him, some of whom he punished with death, while the rest were either transported to *Germany* or detained in prison.

THESE cruelties, while they intimidated great part of the *Sicilians*, inspired a number of enterprising men with a kind of desperate resentment; in consequence of which they fortified

sied themselves in the island of *Lipari*, under the command of count *Jordani*, a *Sicilian* nobleman, said to have been privately encouraged by the empress *Constance*, who could not without horror and indignation behold her countrymen so unworthily treated, and was moreover piqued at the indifference of the emperor.

JORDANI himself aspired at the crown, and had taken his measures so well, that he might have defied the whole power of *Henry*, had he not been betrayed by one of his own people, who, in consideration of an extraordinary bribe, introduced the *German* troops into the island. *Jordani* was taken, after having made a gallant resistance, and put to death with the most cruel tortures; all his adherents were also executed, and *Henry*, having thus extinguished the embers of rebellion, permitted his army to embark for *Palestine*, under the conduct of *Conrad* bishop of *Wurtzburg*.

THE empress thinking this was a favourable conjuncture for recovering the liberties of *Sicily*, and prosecuting her designs against *Henry*, who was now almost wholly unfurnished with troops, instigated *Renaldo* and *Landulphus*, counts of *Aquini*, to promote a general insurrection. *Landulphus* accordingly harangued the people of the neighbouring towns, assembled at *Sora*, who, being inflamed by his discourse, resolved at once to shake off the emperor's yoke, and unanimously chose the count for their general. He forthwith abolished all the taxes which had been imposed by the emperor, and, his army increasing every day, he applied the ordinary revenue to the subsistence of his troops. Mean while ^{is besieged by the empress} *Constance*; the malecontents of *Sicily* levied a small army, and being joined by the inhabitants of *Palermo*, with the empress at their head, went and besieged the emperor in a strong castle, to which he had retired on receiving the news of this sudden revolt. During this siege they sent circular letters to all the towns, inviting them to join for the advantage of the commonweal; and *Henry*, finding himself abandoned by the whole kingdom, was obliged to sue for peace, which was granted, upon conditions not at all favourable to his interest.

WHETHER the empress, doubting his sincerity upon this occasion, administered a dose of poison to this vindictive prince, or he really heated himself into a fever by violent exercise in hunting, certain it is, he died, soon after the treaty, at *Messina*, in the seventh year of his reign. ^{and dies at Messina. A. D. 1197.}

* RICARD. et Germ. Chron. ad. ann. 1196. ap. MURAT. t. vii. RELIUS de Reg. Napol. & Sicil. fol. NUCT. Hist. Alex. Comm. l. ii. BARRE, l. v. p. 499.

HENRY was a prince possessed of many good qualities : he was prudent, penetrating, eloquent, active, and brave, but at the same time cruel and perfidious. His warlike exploits spread the terror of his name even into the court of *Alexis* emperor of the *Greeks*, to whom he had actually sent ambassadors to demand tribute, or, in case of meeting with a refusal, to denounce war ; for he intended to subdue that empire, and extend his own into *Asia*, from which all the troops he had sent thither, together with a great number of gentlemen, who had taken arms in the same cause, returned into *Europe*, upon the news of his death, leaving the *Saracens* in possession of the *Holy Land*.

THIS emperor had made repeated efforts to perpetuate the succession in his own family, and for that purpose actually obtained a decree of the princes, partly by giving up his right of succession to the effects of the clergy, in favour of their chapters and churches, and partly by releasing the nobles from their feudal dependence. These last too he is said to have bribed with the ransom which he extorted from *Richard I.* of *England*, whom he detained in captivity, on his return from *Palestine*, in opposition to hospitality and good faith.

PHILIP and OTHO.

Philip
duke of
Suabia
takes upon
himself the
admini-
stration of
affairs.

PHILIP duke of *Suabia* was on the road to *Sicily*, when he was informed of the death of his brother the emperor. In a few days after he was met by a messenger, who, by the direction of the late emperor, was dispatched to him with his regalia and last will, in which he had committed to his tuition his son *Frederic* king of the *Romans*, together with the administration during the minority of that young prince. At the same time he was informed that the inhabitants of *Sicily* and *Apulia* had mutinied, and massacred the greatest part of the *German* troops ; but, judging that his presence would be more necessary in *Germany*, and that he had no time to lose, he marched thither with his troops, in order to preserve the empire to his nephew.

Pope In-
nocent
declares
himself
Philip's
enemy.

IN the mean time pope *Innocent*, who had succeeded *Celestin*, and was a sworn enemy to the house of *Suabia*, thinking this a favourable opportunity for divesting it of the imperial crown, wrote letters to the archbishops of *Triers* and *Cologne*, exhorting them to proceed to the election of a king of the *Romans*, of some other family ; and omitted nothing which he thought could divide the princes of *Germany*. He even absolved them from the oath of fidelity they had taken

to

to the late emperor in favour of his son; and such was his animosity against the uncle, that he was heard to say, "*Philip* should either lose the empire, or he himself forfeit the papacy." In compliance with the pope's repeated instances, the archbishops of *Triers* and *Cologne*, assisted by the bishops of *Paderborn* and *Minden*, together with *Henry* count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, *Herman* landgrave of *Thuringia*, the dukes of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the count of *Dachbourg*, and other noblemen, met at *Cologne*, and elected *Berthold* duke of *Zerिंगia* king of the *Romans*: but he, for certain reasons, refusing that dignity, they substituted in his room *Otho* duke of *Saxony*, who was at that time in *Poitou* with his uncle the king of *England*, and sent the counts of *Dachbourg* and *Leiningen*, to intimate his election, and request him to return to *Germany* without delay ^{P.}

OTHO was no sooner informed of his election, than he set out with all expedition; and having assembled the chiefs of his party, together with a good number of troops, which were reinforced by those of his brother *Henry* count *Palatine*, made himself master of *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by the archbishop of *Cologne*. On the other hand, the archbishops of *Mentz*, *Magdeburg*, *Besançon*, the bishops of *Munster*, *Ratisbon*, *Freisingen*, *Augsburg*, *Constance*, *Eichstet*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Brixen*, and *Hildesheim*, the abbots of *Fulde*, *Hirschfeldt*, and *Kempton*, the king of *Bohemia*, the dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*, the marquis of *Rothembourg*, and several other princes, assembled at *Arnsberg*, where they confirmed the election of *Frederic*, at that time but three years of age, and chose his uncle *Philip* king of the *Romans*, that he might exercise the office of guardian with more authority ^{Q.}

THESE two elections divided the empire into two powerful factions, and involved all *Germany* in ruin and desolation. The pope threw himself into the scale of *Otho*, sent a legate to *Cologne* to confirm his election, and excommunicated *Philip* and all his adherents. *Otho*, exclusive of his friends in *Germany*, was strongly supported by his uncle *Richard* king of *England*, for which reason *Philip* of *France*, the inveterate enemy of that monarch, declared for *Philip*, tho' not before he had made a fruitless attempt for himself, by the means of *Marguariti*, the blind admiral of *Sicily*, who promised to dispose the *Italians* in his favour, but was assassinated before he could bring his project to bear.

^P MEIB. Apol. pro Otton. IV. tom. iii. p. 116. KRANTZ. l. viii. c. 15. ^Q Ursperg. Gest. Philip.

PHILIP, assembling a body of troops, marched into *Alsace*, destroyed the harvest, burned *Molsheim*, razed the castle of *Haldenburg*, and pillaged all the lands belonging to the bishop of *Straßbourg* and the count of *Dachbourg*, while *Otho* extended the limits of his dominions along the *Rhine* and the *Moselle*, until his army being weakened by desertion, he was obliged to retire. Then *Philip* repaired to *Mentz*, where he was crowned by the archbishop of *Tarentum*, who officiated for the archbishop of *Mentz*, at that time in *Palestine*, and the archbishop of *Triers*, who, by this time had quitted the party of *Otho*, assisted at the ceremony ^r.

Philip is
crowned at
Mentz.

AFTER his coronation, he burned the towns of *Bonn*, *Andernach*, and *Coblentz*, ravaged the whole country, and entering *Lower Saxony*, undertook the siege of *Brunswic*, which, however, he was obliged to raise; for *Henry* count *Palatine* no sooner understood that his capital was in danger, than he marched thither with a considerable army, and compelled *Philip* to retreat to *Goslar*, where he spent part of the winter. He marched into *Alsace* a second time, where he made himself master of several places, and at last accommodated matters with the bishop, who admitted him into *Straßburg*, where he received the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants. About the same time he brought over to his party the king of *Primislaus* king of *Bohemia*, who had formerly engaged in the interests of *Otho* with remarkable (N) ardour, and joined *Herman* landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, though first cousin to *Philip*, had taken the field among his enemies. *Herman's* lands were pillaged, and *Primislaus* detached from the interests of *Otho*, by a match that was agreed upon between *Philip's* daughter, still in the cradle, and the infant son of the *Bohemian* king.

Ravages
Alsace.

A. D.

1199.

Wins over

Bohemia;

HENRY count *Palatine*, to whose young son this princess had been promised in marriage, incensed at the projected alliance, now, for the first time, declared for his brother, and assembled a strong body of troops, with which *Otho* made an irruption into *Francania*, and invested the city of *Wirtzburg*, which held for *Philip*. This prince hastened to the succour

^r Ann. Trev. tom ii. p. 96.

(N) Such was the eagerness with which *Primislaus* engaged in the interests of *Otho*, that he was thence denominated *Ottocarus*, a surname which descended to many of his successors (6). *

of the town, and a decisive battle must have ensued, had not the noblemen of both armies interposed, and effected an accommodation between *Philip* and *Henry*, who abandoned *Henry* the cause of his brother, in consideration of receiving the in-
count Pa-vestiture of *Brunswic*, which he had in vain solicited of
Otho^s. A. D. 1200.

BESIDES the defection of *Henry*, he forfeited the friendship of his uncle *John* king of *England*, who, having succeeded his brother *Richard* on the throne, not only refused to pay the legacy which that prince bequeathed to *Otho*, but also concluded a treaty with the *French* king, by which he expressly restricted himself from assisting his nephew, directly or indirectly; and this article he religiously observed, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the pope, who wrote to him in favour of *Otho*¹. *Otho is abandoned by the king of England.*

WHILE *Germany* groaned under all the miseries of a civil war, the empress *Constance* resided in *Sicily*, as regent and guardian to her infant son, who had been crowned with the consent of pope *Celestin*, which was not, however, obtained, but by means of a large sum of money; and that pontif dying, there was a necessity for sending deputies to solicit the investiture anew from his successor, *Innocent* III. who taking the advantage of this favourable conjuncture for aggrandizing the see of *Rome*, insisted upon her relinquishing some rights which, he pretended, were prejudicial to the church; namely, that of filling up vacant benefices, the legation (O) granted to the kings of *Sicily*, and the right of appeal, to the exclusion of the *Roman* tribunal. But, before these concessions could be made, *Constance* died, leaving the regency of the kingdom, during the minority of her son, to pope *Innocent*; so that he was enabled to act according to his own inclination². *The empress Constance dies in Sicily.*

HAVING thus executed his designs upon *Sicily*, in favour of the holy see, he declared for *Otho* in three different bulls issued on the subject of the schism of the empire, wrote to the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, as well as to the different provinces of *Germany*, explaining the motives that induced him to exclude *Philip* and *Frederic* from the imperial throne; and, in a letter to *Otho*, expressed himself in these terms. "By the authority of almighty God, devolved to *Philip* 1201. Pope Innocent III. declares for Otho, and excommunicates Philip

¹ BARRE, tom. v. p. 514.
802.

² ROGER HOVED. p. 799,
Gest. Innocent, n. 21, 22. l. i. p. 410, & seq.

(O) For an account of this famous legation, see the Modern History of *Italy*.

and all
his adhe-
rents.

" us in the person of St. Peter, we receive you as king of
" the Romans, and ordain that you shall henceforth be re-
" spected and obeyed accordingly; and, after the usual pre-
" liminaries, we will solemnly bestow upon you the imperial
" crown *."

NOTWITHSTANDING this intimation, which was com-
municated to all the princes of Germany, and the arrival of
the pope's legates, who, in an assembly at Cologne, declared
him king of the Romans, and excommunicated Philip with
all his adherents; I say, notwithstanding these endeavours,
Otho's party sensibly diminished, while that of his rival daily
acquired new strength and authority. The noblemen of
Philip's party complained of the pope's conduct in a letter to
his holiness, representing, that he had intermeddled in the
election of a king of the Romans, contrary to the rights of
the German princes, and the duty of his own pontificate,
which originally depended upon the imperial crown; and
the king of France expostulated with him to the same pur-
pose, earnestly intreating him to renounce the interests of
Otho, who had always been an inveterate foe to the French
nation. But the house of Suabia was so much dreaded and
detested by the popes, whom it had always hampered in
Italy, that Innocent, far from paying the least regard to
these suggestions and intreaties, redoubled his efforts to de-
tach the princes and prelates from the cause of Philip; and,
in his answer to the French king's letter, declared, that
either Philip should lose the empire, or he himself forfeit the
papacy^y.

A. D.
1202.

A new
crusade is
set on foot.

ALL these dissensions and disturbances in Europe did
not prevent the formation of a new crusade, which the pope
ordained to be preached up for the recovery of the Holy
Land. Those who took the cross were mostly Germans
and French, and the first exploit they performed was the re-
duction of Zara, in Hungary, which they besieged at the
instigation of Dandolo, doge of Venice, from whose domi-
nion that town had withdrawn itself. While they were em-
ployed in this siege, they received an embassy from king
Philip, exhorting them to restore his father-in-law Isaacus
Angelus, emperor of Constantinople, who had been dethroned
and deprived of his eye-sight by his own brother Alexis,
surnamed Comnenus. They undertook this enterprize, in
consideration of some advantages stipulated with young
Alexis, the son of the dethroned emperor, who had made
his escape into Germany, and was then in their army; and,

* Coll. Decret. t. ii. ep. 18.

^y De Negot. Imp. ep. lxiii:
taking

taking *Constantinople* by assault, expelled the usurper, re-
leased old blind *Iaac*, and, at his desire, set his son *Alexis* upon the imperial throne ². Constantinople taken.

DURING these transactions in the east, the northern parts of *Germany* and *Denmark* were re-involved in troubles by the restless ambition of *Adolphus*, count of *Holstein*, who still persevered in his design of reducing *Dithmarsie* to his obedience, notwithstanding the bad success of his first attempt. With this view he invaded that province, which he laid waste with fire and sword, until *Canute*, king of *Denmark*, sent thither a body of forces, under the command of his brother *Waldemar*, who defeated *Adolphus*, and compelled him to return to *Hamburg*. And although his affairs assumed a better aspect, in consequence of the assistance of *Otho*, margrave of *Brandenburg*, who obtained a victory over the *Danish* general, this smile of fortune was not of long duration: the *Danes* reduced the cities of *Lubec* and *Hamburg*, made *Adolphus* prisoner, conquered all the country that depended upon the empire on the north side of the *Elbe*, and annexed *Holstein* to the crown of *Denmark* ³. A.D. 1203. Troubles in the northern parts of Germany.

GERMANY was at that time in no condition to oppose the *Danish* conquests: *Philip* and *Otho*, the two competitors for the empire, were wholly ingrossed in maintaining the attachment of their friends, who nevertheless abandoned and espoused their interests by turns, according to the dictates of caprice, ambition, or resentment. *John*, archbishop of *Triers*, changed sides twice in the course of one year: *Prin-* 1204. The inconsistency of the German Princes.
mislaus, or *Ottocarus*, king of *Bohemia*, forsook the cause of *Philip*, which, on the other hand, was reinforced by the accession of *Henry*, duke of *Low Lorrain* and *Brabant*, whom he loaded with favours.

THE whole empire was by this time become a scene of blood, confusion, and anarchy. Every nobleman was at variance with his neighbour. The nearest relations, renouncing the ties of consanguinity, burned the houses, pillaged the vassals, and destroyed the families of one another. The people were oppressed by their lords; the soldiers were guilty of the most flagrant outrages; and as neither of the pretenders could pay his troops regularly, both were obliged to connive at these disorders.

PHILIP, resolving to humble the landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, tho' his relation, had exerted himself with remarkable ardour in the cause of *Otho*, marched into his country, which Philip ravages Thuringia.

² Chron. Sanct. Mart. An. 1203.
Danor. t. ii.

³ MEURS. Hist.

gia, and
reduces
Bohemia
into a
province.

he laid under contribution; besieged and took the town of *Wizenfee*, and, defeating the *Bohemians* who came to his assistance, entered that kingdom, the greatest part of which he subdued: *Bohemia* was reduced into a province, and *Primislaus* forbid to assume the title of king: tho' pope *Innocent* afterwards, at the recommendation of *Otho*, granted him the royal dignity, and took his kingdom under the protection of the holy see.

Otho is
forsaken
by his best
friends.

THIS chain of success intirely changed the face of affairs, so that by force, or otherwise, the principal princes of the opposite party were obliged to sue for peace; and *Philip* being a prince of a mild disposition, they found their account in having recourse to his clemency. The landgrave himself was the first who solicited an accommodation, and was so favourably dealt with, that he actually espoused the interest of *Philip*. This was a very sensible mortification to *Otho*, who was already deserted by his own brother *Henry* count palatine. Even the archbishop of *Cologne*, who had presided at *Otho's* election, and crowned him at *Aix la Chapelle*, now abandoned his cause, without any regard to his own oath of allegiance, or the excommunication of the pope.

Philip's
second co-
ronation.

PHILIP, elated with such a powerful accession to his party, resolved, after the example of his rival, to confirm his election by a second coronation; which was solemnly performed at *Aix la Chapelle* by the hands of the archbishop of *Cologne*, who had set the crown on *Otho's* head, and who, on account of having thus changed his side, was excommunicated by the pope.

His holiness, however, besides the gratification of his enmity against the house of *Suabia*, found other advantages in fomenting these troubles in the empire, during which he conquered, and confirmed to the church of *Rome*, the greatest part of the patrimony which it at present possesses, and found means to be acknowledged sovereign lord of those provinces which formerly held of the empire (P).

MEAN

* ARN. LUB. l. vii. c. 1. GOD. MON.

(P) In the course of this year was instituted a new military order of German knights, to defend the Christians of *Livonia* against the infidels. The patent was obtained from *Otho* of *Saxony*, and pope *Innocent* confirmed the institution: the habit of the order was a white

mantle; their arms two swords, *gules*, saltire, with a mullet of the same colour. They obliged themselves to assist frequently at mass, to lead a single, chaste, and sober life, to fight against the infidels, and defend the interests of the holy see. In recompence for their services, the popes

MEAN while *Philip*, without minding his efforts and fulminations, redoubled his attention to the main point; and, reinforcing his army, compelled his antagonist to quit the field, and shut himself up in the city of *Cologne*; which being invested, and very hard pressed by the besiegers, *Otho*, seeing no safety but in despair, resolved to make a sally with the flower of his troops, in order either to raise the siege or accomplish his escape. He accordingly attacked the besiegers with great fury; but all his followers were either killed or taken prisoners, the new archbishop of *Cologne* being among the last; and *Otho* himself escaped into *Saxony*^c, from whence he fled into *England*.

Otho flies into England.

A. D.
1205.

PHILIP, being now undisputed master, continued the siege of *Cologne*, which surrendered to him by capitulation. There he established the archbishop *Adolphus*, whose competitor he kept in close confinement; and having no other powerful enemies to deal with, he now employed himself in securing the friends, and strengthening the alliances he had made. He bestowed one daughter in marriage upon *Winceflaus*, king of *Bohemia*, and matched another with the duke of *Brabant's* eldest son; distributed large presents in money and effects; and, being naturally of an affable and engaging temper, behaved in such a manner as gained the hearts of all his subjects. He even sent ambassadors to the pope to propose an accommodation^d; which was the more acceptable to his holiness, as *Philip* yielded to him several countries which belonged to the empire (Q).

Philip proposes an accommodation to the pope.

^c KRANT. l. vii. c. 26.

^d Abb. Ursp. ex M^{ss}. Apol. &c.

popes granted them the full enjoyment of all they should conquer from the pagans; and they were distinguished by the appellation of *Emfferi*, on account of their long swords (1)

(Q) *Innocent*, not contented with the emperor's yielding the duchy of *Spoleto* and the marquisate of *Ancona* to the holy see, demanded one of *Philip's* daughters in marriage for his own nephew: and this is the origin of nepotism, an establish-

ment to which hitherto the popes had not attempted to aspire (2).

Heis alleges, that *Philip* gave his daughter *Beatrice* in marriage to *Otho*, in consequence of an accommodation with that prince; but, as no such accommodation is mentioned by any historian of credit, we, with *Krantz*, *Otto de Sancto Blasia*, the abbot of *Ursberg*, and others, postpone the marriage till after *Philip's* death.

(1) *Barre Hist. d'Allemagne*, tom. v. p. 554.
in *Hist. Phil. Suevi, Hildric, Mut.* in *Mss. Apol. pro Ottone IV.*

(2) *Abb. Ursp. Cuspinian.*

WHILE this reconciliation was upon the carpet, and each of them seemed bent upon outwitting the other, *Philip* understanding that the king of *Denmark* had marched with an army to the confines of *Saxony*, in order to assist *Otho**, assembled a great body of troops, and repaired in person to *Bamberg*, where, while he waited for their junction, he was taken with a slight indisposition, by which he was confined to his chamber. There being engaged in a conversation with *Conrad*, bishop of *Spire*, who was his chancellor, and *Henry Cruchs*, count of *Walburg*, he heard the voice of the count palatine *Otho* of *Wittlefbach* at the door, and ordered him to be admitted into his apartment. That nobleman, after some discourse with the emperor, went out, and taking the sword of his gentleman who stood waiting for him at the door, unsheathed it, and re-entered the chamber, where he began to push as if for his own amusement. *Philip* reprimanded him for the freedom of his behaviour, saying that was no place for such a diversion; to which the palatine abruptly replied, 'This is the only place,' and with these words ran him through the neck. The chancellor was so frightened with this assault, that he hid himself; but the count of *Walburg* immediately attacked the assassin, who wounded him in the cheek, and escaped into the bishop's palace; and while they were engaged, the emperor died by loss of blood†.

is murder-
edly Otho
of Wittlef-
bach.

A. D.

1208.

THE palatine was instigated by revenge to this detestable action. The emperor had promised to give him one of his daughters in marriage, and afterwards refused to keep that promise, because he was declared infamous in full diet by the princes and states of the empire, on account of a murder which he had basely committed at the court of *Bavaria* (R). This untimely fate of *Philip* was regretted by all that knew him; for he was a prince endowed with a great many amiable qualities. His countenance was comely, his person elegant, he was prudent, affable, mild, eloquent, liberal, pious, and intrepid. His body was deposited in the church of *Bamberg*,

* ARN. LUB. l. vii. c. 14. KRANTZ Sax. l. vii. c. 28.
† Ibid. ibid.

(R) This account of the assassin's motives we take from *Krantz* and *Arnoldus Lubicensis*; but in the *Chronica Augustensis*, published by *Freberus*, we are told, that *Philip*, before he as-

cended the throne, had promised to marry the daughter of *Otho*, count *Wittlefbach*, whom he afterwards rejected; and that the father was prompted to revenge by this affront.

where

where it remained a long time, until he was removed and interred at *Spire*, by order of his nephew the emperor *Frederic II.*

O T H O IV.

O T H O, being certified of *Philip's* death, called a diet at *Halberstadt*, in order to treat about the affairs of the empire, and there his former election was renewed by the princes of *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, and *Misnia*, and afterwards confirmed by those of *Suabia*, *Bavaria*, and *France*, at another assembly held at *Frankfort*. It was here that *Philip's* daughter, *Beatrice*, appeared in person, to demand justice upon the murderer of her father, where her tears and supplications had such an effect upon the whole assembly, that they confiscated the dominions, and set a price upon the head of the assassin, who was soon after slain on the banks of the *Danube*, by *Henry de Calat*, who cut off his head and threw it into the river &c. As for *Beatrice*, she was taken into protection, and afterwards to wife, by *Otho*, with the unanimous consent of all the princes, after the impediment of consanguinity had been removed by a dispensation obtained from the pope ^h.

*He mar-
ries Bea-
trice,
daughter
of Philip;*

THIS emperor, in order to acquire the good graces of his holiness and the clergy, which he knew would greatly contribute to his establishment on the throne, not only promised to gratify the pope in all his demands, but also to abolish the custom of seizing, for the emperor's use, the effects and lands of the deceased clergy; but as these promises were made solely with a view to cajole the pope and the bishops, he afterwards refused to perform them, and in the sequel suffered severely for breaking his word.

THE new election of *Otho* to the empire no sooner reached the ears of *Innocent III.* who looked upon him as his friend, and a prince intirely devoted to the holy see, than he sent legates with letters of congratulation, in which he offered to crown him if he would come to *Italy*. Tempted by this proposal, the emperor convoked a diet at *Haguenau*, in which his journey being resolved upon, he appointed *Rodolphus*, count of *Hapsburg*, prefect, vicar of the empire, and principal avoyer of all *Upper Germany* (S), with power to maintain the

A. D.
1209.

^g MEIB. Apol. &c. p. 127.

^h KRANTZ, l. vii. c. 31.

(S) An avoyer was originally and in times of confusion the advocate of a monastery, avoyers became captains and pro-

the imperial rights, inspect the finances, levy subsidies, tributes, tolls, and taxes, and, in a word, to represent the person of the emperor in his absence. Having thus provided for the tranquility of the empire, he repaired to *Augsburg*, where he had ordered his troops to assemble; and from hence dispatched the patriarch of *Aquileia* before him, to examine the rights and privileges of the *Italian* towns, to prepossess the people in his favour, and to remove all difficulties that might retard him in his journey. Next year he set out for *Lombardy*, where he was received as sovereign of the kingdom¹. From thence he went to hold a diet at *Bologna*, where he exacted large subsidies of men and money; and, having formed a powerful army, he repaired to *Rome*, where the pope received him with all the demonstrations of the most perfect friendship. There he was crowned by his holiness, after he had yielded to the church the *Patrimony of St. Peter*, that is, the lands of the countess *Mathilda*, and taken an oath of obedience to the pope².

is crowned
at Rome;

THESE condescensions were owing to the same motives which had induced him to make the promise we have already mentioned to the *German* bishops; for, in a little time, it plainly appeared he had only amused them for his own ends; and fortune soon favoured him with an opportunity of declaring himself. A number of his soldiers, who were encamped under the walls of *Rome*, having entered the city one day for their amusement, a quarrel happened between them and the inhabitants, which rose to such a degree, that the citizens, taking arms, killed upwards of a thousand imperialists upon the spot.

THE emperor complained to the pope of this outrage, for which he did not receive the satisfaction he expected; and tho' he did not think proper to shew his resentment at that time, he afterwards manifested his displeasure, as well for that insult, as for the injustice of the pope, in taking advantage of the troubles of *Germany* to seize *Apulia*, together with the marquisate of *Ancona* and the county of *Spoleto*, after having expelled the officers of the emperor. Mean while he

¹ MUT. Chron. l. xix. OTT. Sanc. ex METZ. Apol. CAR. SIG. l. xvi. * HULD. MUT. l. xix.

protectors of convents, to whom the said convents gave lands in consideration of their protection; but, when these monasteries erected themselves into principalities, the avoyers became noblemen (4).

(4) *Annales de l'Emp. t. l. p. 113.*

departed

departed from *Rome*, apparently in friendship with the pope ; and, arriving in *Lombardy*, made *Milan* his head-quarters, ^{winters in Lombardy ;} and cantoned his troops in the neighbourhood, where they passed the winter. In the spring he took the field again, resolved to re-establish, by force, his right and authority in those countries, of which the empire had been deprived. After some victories, he retrieved all that had been withdrawn from his possession, and made hostile incursions into *Apulia*, ravaging the dominions of *Frederic* king of the *Two Sicilies*, who was under the protection of the holy see ^{A.D. 1210.} ¹.

FROM these conquests, however, the emperor's ruin may ^{is excom-} be dated ; for *Innocent III.* enraged at his proceedings, thun- ^{municated,} dered out an excommunication against him, which he order- ^{and de-} ed *Sigefrid*, archbishop of *Mentz*, to publish through the ^{throned in} whole empire. This prelate being likewise incensed against ^{favour of} *Frederic*, *Otho*, for having broken the promise he had made touching ^{son of} the estates of deceased ecclesiastics, not only proclaimed him ^{Henry VI.} through all *Germany* as a person excommunicated and pro- ^{A.D. 1211.} scribed, releasing and discharging all the princes, states, and cities, from their oath of allegiance, but also convoked a diet, in order to proceed to a new election. At this assembly, which was held at *Bamberg*, were present the king of *Bohemia*, the dukes of *Bavaria* and *Austria*, *Herman* landgrave of *Thuringia*, and other princes, ecclesiastic as well as secular : they elected *Frederic* duke of *Suabia* and king of *Sicily*, at that time about seventeen years of age, who, in his infancy, had been proclaimed king of the *Romans*, at the desire of *Henry VI.* his father ^{m.} They at the same time intimated this election to the pope, and sent ambassadors into *Sicily* to acquaint *Frederic* with his elevation.

OTHO, alarmed at this revolution, returned to *Germany* ^{returns to} without delay, and called a diet at *Nuremberg*, where, among ^{Germa-} others, duke *Henry* count palatine of the *Rhine*, his own bro- ^{ny, and} ther, with the dukes of *Brabant* and *Lorrain*, were present. ^{makes war} The members of this assembly, after mature deliberation up- ^{upon the} on the reasons that *Otho* gave for recovering the estates and ^{revolters ;} countries of *Italy*, which the pope had unjustly possessed himself of, to the prejudice of the empire, approved of what he had done, and exhorted him to denounce war against those princes, who, out of complaisance to the pope, had, contrary to all reason, proceeded to a new election.

THE emperor, by the assistance of these princes, finding himself in a condition to make head against the rebels, began with depriving the king of *Bohemia* of his realm, which he

¹ MEIB. Apol. &c. p. 141.^m HEISS, l. ii. c. 16.

bestowed

bestowed upon his son, who had complained to the diet, that the king his father had disowned him as well as his mother, who was born marchioness of *Misula*; and that he had married the king of *Hungary*'s daughter. The emperor at the same time declared war against *Herman*, marquis of *Thuringia*, after having put him under the ban of the empire, while he ordered *Henry* count palatine, *Henry* duke of *Brabant*, and some other princes, to attack and destroy the archbishopric of *Mentz*; so that the archbishop was obliged to fly for refuge into another country ^a.

joins the
king of
England
against
France,
and is de-
feated.

A. D.

1213.

AFTER this success the emperor never doubted but he should be able to re-establish himself on the throne; but, that he might the sooner accomplish his purpose, he thought it was necessary to weaken the support of which the pope and his partizans in the empire availed themselves. This was *Philip Augustus*, king of *France*, against whom he entertained another grudge on account of a wager which he had formerly made with that prince, who refused to stand to his agreement (T). This he looked upon to be a favourable

^a GODEF. Monach. ad ann. 1211.

(T) When *Otho* was first elected king of the *Romans*, his uncle, *Richard* of *England*, presented him with a very considerable sum of money, and advised him to apply to the king of *France*, in his return to *Germany*. In consequence of this advice, he waited upon *Philip Augustus* at *Poitiers*, in order to solicit his assistance; but that prince, who secretly favoured *Philip*, excused himself, and would even have dissuaded him from his enterprize, by magnifying the risque he would run from the power of his competitor. "If (said he) you will now give me the choice of one of your sumpter-horses with its load, I will engage to give you *Paris*, *Orleans*, or *Etampes*, when-ever you shall be raised to the imperial

"throne." *Otho* took him at his word, and *Philip* actually chose the best of fifty horses, which were loaded with one hundred and fifty thousand marks of gold he had received from his uncle. After the death of *Philip* the emperor, *Otho* succeeded to the throne, by the unanimous consent of the princes: he sent an embassy to the king of *France*, to notify his election and remind him of the wager which he had lost. *Philip* refused to pay the forfeit, on pretence that *Otho* had not won the crown from his competitor, which was the condition of the wager; and, being affronted at the demand, gave him to understand, that, if he was disposed to contest the matter, he should find him ready for the dispute (5).

(5) *Heist.* liv. ii. c. xvi.

opportunity, because *Philip* was at war with his uncle, the king of *England*. These two princes, therefore, joined their forces, which were augmented by all the allies they could engage in the expedition; so that the confederate army amounted to one hundred and fifty thousand men. They were met by the *French* near the village of *Bouvines*, and a bloody battle ensued, in which *Otho* and his allies were totally defeated, and he himself with difficulty escaped (U): He attempted to retreat into *Germany*, but was prevented by young *Frederic*, who, with a powerful army, had marched into the empire, and been every-where received with open arms.

He neglected no opportunity to conciliate the affection of the *Germans*, as well as to reward those who had espoused his cause from the beginning of the contest. To some he gave pecuniary gratifications, and others were rewarded with honourable and lucrative privileges. He instituted an order of knighthood, called the *Bear*, in the abbey of *St. Gall*, in honour of the abbot and nobility of that country, who had been the first to receive, and furnish him with troops against *Otho*. He remunerated the zeal and services of *William V.* A.D. 1214. prince of *Orange*, with the kingdom of *Arles*, which he bestowed upon him, on condition that he and his successors should do homage for it to the emperor; and he conferred upon the bishop of *Strasbourg* the whole temporal jurisdiction of that city. *Colmar*, *Schelestadt*, and other towns of *Alsace*, were, by his direction, augmented, embellished, and *Neubourg* on the *Rhine* declared a free city. Frederic conciliates the affections of the Germans.

HAVING established his authority in *Upper Germany*, he passed the *Moselle*, in order to reduce the towns by which he was not as yet acknowledged; but he met with no opposition in his march. *Triers*, and other cities which had been at-

• KRANTZ Sax l. vii. c. 35.

(U) *Heiss* gives an account of two battles, but he must be mistaken; for the *French* authors mention but one, and surely they would not let slip any opportunity of magnifying the glory of their king besides, the *German* writers describe no other than that which was fought at *Bouvines*, near *Tour-*

nay, where *Philip*, bishop of *Beauvais*, used a large club instead of a sword, that he might kill without shedding blood; where the king of *France* was dismounted, trampled upon by horses, and wounded in the throat; and where *Otho's* chariot was shattered in pieces, and the imperial standard taken (6).

(6) *Mezzer. Abreg Chron. t. i. p. 411.*

Concludes
a treaty of
peace with
Waldemar king
of Denmark.

tached to *Otho*, submitted, and took the oath of allegiance to *Frederic*; and the dukes of *Brabant* and *Lombardy* not only sued for peace, which they obtained, but also undertook that the whole country of *Juliers* and *Westphalia* should acknowledge his title ^p. Even *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, sent ambassadors to congratulate him upon his election, and solicit his friendship; in consideration of which, however, he stipulated that the towns of *Lubec* and *Hamburg*, together with *Holstein*, and the other conquests he had made upon the empire, should be united to the crown.

AN alliance with a powerful monarch was of such importance to *Frederic*, in his present precarious situation, that he complied with the demands of the *Danish* king, in a solemn treaty, which was generally blamed as injurious to the honour and interest of the empire. *Otho*, his brother the count palatine, *Albert* margrave of *Brandenburg*, and *Waldemar* bishop of *Bremen*, not only exclaimed against the articles of this alliance, but, seizing the first pretence of a rupture with *Denmark*, assembled a body of troops, with which they marched directly to *Hamburg*, and took possession of the town without opposition. Nevertheless they did not long enjoy this conquest; for this city was soon wrested from them by *Frederic*, and afterwards re-taken by *Waldemar* king of *Denmark*, who ravaged the lands of the *Palatine*, and in the sequel concluded a treaty of peace with the confederates, in which the emperor was not included ^q.

Otho retires to Brunswick, where he dies.

ОТНО, seeing himself thus abandoned by all the princes of *Germany*, and altogether without resource, retired to *Brunswick*, where he lived four years as a private man, dedicating his time to the duties of religion, and then died, after a reign fruitful of trouble and misfortune.

F R E D E R I C II.

HE was succeeded by *Frederic* II. who, being but nine months old at his father's death, had, by his mother *Constance*, been carefully educated and instructed in the knowledge of every thing that could contribute to make him a great and virtuous prince. He had learned the *Greek*, *Latin*, *German*, *French*, and *Turkish* languages, and studied, above all things, to follow the footsteps of his grandfather *Frederic* I. whose name he bore, and whose conduct he pro-

^p Archiv. de Sæbern. l. x. Troph. du Brabant.
Hist. Dan. t. ii.

^q HUITF.

posed as a model for his own. Like him, he laid it down for a maxim, that nothing ought to be deferred till to-morrow, which can be executed to-day; imagining, that nothing was done in an affair, while any part of it remained undone. He was, by birth, a prince of great power; for, besides the vast dominions he inherited from his father and mother, he, by the death of his uncle *Philip*, succeeded to the duchies of *Suabia* and *Rottenburg*, together with other dominions, which that prince had acquired. He was confirmed in the imperial dignity by the princes assembled at *Mentz*; from whom he received the oath of allegiance, as well as from the imperial cities of the *Rhine*, and was afterwards crowned at *Aix la Chapelle* with great magnificence; when, as an acknowledgement of the favours which God had hitherto bestowed upon him, he added to the other solemnities of his coronation, a vow to go in person to the *Holy Land*. Frederic is crowned at Aix la Chapelle. A. D. 1215.

AFTER the ceremony of his coronation, *Henry* count palatine of the *Rhine* was, with the unanimous consent of the whole assembly, put to the ban of the empire, and his dignity bestowed upon *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria*: a decree which was strengthened by a match projected and executed between *Henry's* daughter and the duke of *Bavaria's* eldest son. When the assembly broke up, *Frederic* repaired to *Cologne*, where he was received amidst the acclamations of the people, and made divers salutary laws touching the regulation of the police, and the reformation of abuses which had crept into the management of taxes and public money.

WHILE he was thus employed in establishing the tranquility of the empire, pope *Innocent* died, and was succeeded by *Honorius III.* who expressed great eagerness in forwarding the crusade, which he ordered to be preached up through all the provinces of *Germany*, *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Bohemia*, and *Hungary*, and his endeavours were crowned with extraordinary success; for although the emperor excused himself from the performance of his vow, until he should have regulated the affairs of *Italy*, and received the imperial crown from the hands of his holiness; and almost all the other monarchs of *Europe* were detained at home by domestic disturbances; nevertheless an infinite number of private noblemen and their vassals took the cross, under, the dukes of *Austria*, *Bavaria*, the archbishop of *Mentz*, and the bishops of *Munster* and *Utrecht*, and *Andrew II.* king of *Hungary*, was, by the pope, declared generalissimo of the crusade. While these crusaders of *Upper Germany* marched towards A. D. 1216. Another crusade.

Italy, in order to embark at *Venice*, *Genoa*, and *Messina*, a fleet of three hundred sail was equipt in the ports of *Lower Saxony*, for the transportation of the adventurers of *Westphalia*, *Saxony*, and the territory of *Cologne*; and these joining the Squadron of the *Frieslanders*, *Flemings*, and subjects of *Brabant*, commanded by *William* count of *Holland*, *George* count of *Weerden*, and *Adolphus* count de *Berg*, set sail for the *Straits of Gibraltar*, in their voyage to *Ptolemais*. But being driven by a tempest into the road of *Lisbon*, they were prevailed upon to assist *Alphonso* king of *Portugal* against the *Moors*, whom they defeated, and afterwards retook the city of *Alcazar*, which was in possession of the infidels. In the mean time *Andrew*, with his army, having joined the king of *Cyprus*, landed at *Acra*, where he was joyfully received by *John de Brienne*, king of *Jerusalem*, and the knights of the temple, hospital, and *Teutonic* order. Their forces being refreshed and reviewed, they marched against the *Saracens*, into the great valley of *Jesrael*, with the wood of the true cross carried before them: but *Coradin*, son of *Saphadin*, sultan of *Egypt* and *Babylon*, who commanded the enemy, finding himself unable to cope with the crusards, retired, and they undertook the siege of *Thabor*, in which they miscarried. Then they separated into four bodies for the conveniency of subsisting: *Lusignan* king of *Cyprus* died at *Tripoli* in the flower of his age: and *Andrew* king of *Hungary* returned to his own dominions, in order to appease some troubles which had been excited in his absence. Yet he was not suffered to depart, until he had solemnly sworn, that he would not invade the dominions of *Austria* while the duke remained in *Palestine*, and agreed to leave one half of his troops for the prosecution of the war against the infidels.

Progress of the crusards in the east.
A. D.
1218.

IMMEDIATELY after his departure, the fleet from the coasts of *Spain* arriving at *Ptolemais*, it was resolved in a council of war to besiege *Damietta* in *Egypt*, which was accordingly invested by sea and land, and taken after a siege of eighteen months; during which *Saphadin* died, his son *Meladin*, who came to the relief of the besieged, was defeated, the duke of *Austria*, with a great number of the crusards, returned to *Germany*, and a new reinforcement arrived, under the conduct of the cardinal *D'Albano*, legate of the holy see^t.

* Ann. Paderborn. ad an. 1217.

^t JAC. DE VITRI.

DURING these transactions in the east, *Frederic* continued still unsettled on the imperial throne; for tho' he was by this time acknowledged by almost all the princes and states of *Germany*, and had purchased the friendship of the pope, by promising, in a solemn obligation, to emancipate his son *Henry*, and bestow upon him the kingdom of *Sicily*, to be held as a fief of the church of *Rome*, as soon as he himself should be crowned emperor; notwithstanding these precautions, the cause of *Otho* was still maintained in *Italy*, especially by the inhabitants of *Milan* and *Placentia*, who declared war, and committed hostilities, against the adherents of *Frederic*, in spite of the menaces and excommunication which were threatened against them by the pope; until the cause of their dissension was removed by the death of *Otho*, who expired in the tenth year of his reign, after having, in his last moments, been absolved of the censures of the church *.

FREDERIC having reduced to his obedience the provinces of *Lower Saxony* and the towns upon the *Elbe*, and exerted his best endeavours for repairing the damage which a long civil war had done to the empire, convoked a diet at *Goslar*, where he received the imperial ornaments from *Henry* count palatine, to whom they had been delivered by his brother *Otho*; and that prince, having taken the oath of allegiance, was allowed to enjoy his brother's inheritance, gratified with a sum of money, and admitted to the emperor's friendship. During *Frederic's* residence at *Goslar*, which he favoured with divers immunities, *Thibaut* duke of *Lorraine* made himself master of the citadel of *Rosheim*, belonging to the emperor, and ravaged the country of *Alsace*: but he did not commit these hostilities with impunity; for *Frederic*, marching against him with great expedition, cooped him up in the town of *Amance*, where he was taken prisoner, and afterwards released by the intercession of the bishop of *Metz* *.

THIS disturbance being quelled, he summoned a diet at *Frankfort*, where, after having settled the most urgent affairs of the empire, he signified his intention of going to be crowned at *Rome*, and desired that the princes and states would, according to ancient custom, make suitable provision for his equipage.

THE pope pressed him to set out immediately upon this expedition, that he might no longer have a pretext for delaying the performance of his vow touching the *Holy Land*;

* Apolog. Otho. IV. apud MEIB. t. iii.
l. xxiii.

* Hist. de Lorr.

but before his own departure, he sent his chancellor *Conrad*, bishop of *Spire*, with circular letters, addressed to all the towns in *Italy*, commanding them to receive and obey that prelate as the minister and representative of his imperial majesty, and to take the oath of allegiance in his presence. Then *Frederic* committed the education of his son *Henry* to *Wernerus*, count de *Boland*, and appointed a council to manage the affairs of the empire in his absence. Finally, as a mark of his regard for the *German* prelates, he issued an imperial decree, importing, that the effects of deceased bishops should devolve to their successors; that, for the future, no emperor should make any alteration in the taxes and coin; that no place of the empire should afford an asylum to fugitive serfs belonging to churches or bishops; that no person should possess the fief of an archbishop after his death, without the consent of his successor; that no man should pretend to oppose the effects of excommunication by force of arms; that no person, not even the lord avoyer, should build towns, castles, fortresses, or other edifices, upon ground belonging to the church, without the consent of the titular bishop; that no officer of the emperor should try causes, impose taxes, or levy duties, upon an episcopal town, except during eight days preceding and succeeding a diet convoked in that place; and, lastly, that in case the emperor should stop or reside incognito in any of the episcopal towns, he should not there perform any act of jurisdiction.

He in the same assembly granted and confirmed some privileges to several secular princes, in particular to the duke of *Brabant*, who, by letters patent, was declared tutor of all the minors who held fiefs of the empire; and he effected an accommodation between the archbishop of *Cologne* and the count of *Luxemburg*, who had quarrelled and taken arms about the succession of *Adolphus*, count de *Bergue*, who died at the siege of *Damietta* in *Egypt*.

THE troubles of *Germany* being appeased, and the necessary preparations made for his journey, *Frederic* crossed the *Alps* with a good army, halted at *Verona*, was refused admittance into *Milan*, an insult which he resolved to revenge in due season: then he repaired to *Modena*, visited *Bologna*, advanced to the frontiers of *Sicily*, where he was joined by the troops that were under the command of his viceroy *Thomas d'Aquini*. At length, accompanied by the deputies of almost all the *Italian* states, he arrived at *Rome*, where he was crowned by pope *Honorius III.* and upon that occasion he gave away

A. D.
1220.
Frederic
crowned at
Rome by
Honorius
III.

large sums of money, which, though bestowed through pure liberality, the popes have since endeavoured to convert into an obligation, by way of acknowledgement for receiving the crown ^a (X). After his coronation, he received the oath of fidelity and homage from the states and cities of *Italy*; then declared *Henry* his son king of the *Romans*, having already at *Frankfort* obtained the consent of the princes of the empire, appointed his tutors, and betrothed to him *Margaret*, daughter of *Leopold of Austria*^a; afterwards, having every where established peace and tranquillity, by means of the princes of the empire who accompanied him, he retired to his kingdom of *Naples*. There he found that *Thomas* and *Richard*, the two brothers of the late pope *Innocent*, with their adherents, had excited an insurrection, and made themselves masters of one part of that realm; however, he soon took vengeance on the authors of the sedition. *Richard* was apprehended, condemned, and sent into exile in the kingdom of *Sicily*; count *Thomas*, and some other rebels, retired to *Rome*, where pope *Honorius* received them into his protection.

FREDERIC, however, at the solicitation of the pope, sent a powerful army, both by sea and land, to the crusards in the east, who were divided by a dispute between *John de Brienne*, king of *Jerusalem*, and cardinal *Albano*, legate of the holy see, which last insisted upon having the command of the army. This reinforcement happily arrived at *Damietta*, under the conduct of the duke of *Bavaria*, and was followed by a fleet of gallies, who fell in with a fleet of twelve *Saracens*, and took or destroyed the whole number. At the same time the emperor marched with a body of troops into *Sicily*, against the *Saracens* of that kingdom, who had excited disorders and ravaged the country. At his approach they retired to inaccessible mountains, where they were besieged in such a manner, that they could receive no supplies of provisions, consequently surrendered at discretion, and

^a BARRE, t. v. p. 650.

^a Ann. Boior. lib. vii. p.

530:

(X) *Frederic* at his coronation, which was performed in the church of *St. Peter*, took an oath to defend all the rights and possessions of the *Roman* see, including the fiefs of the countess

Mathilda, and the county of *Fonds*. He likewise promised, upon oath, to pass into *Africa* with an army, at any time the pope should appoint (1).

(1) *Sigon. de Reg. Ital. l. xvi.*

and were either expelled from the kingdom, or transported to other settlements in *Apulia* ^b.

A. D. 1223. THE troubles of *Italy* being appeased, the emperor, by letter, directed the archbishop of *Cologne* to crown his son *Henry* at *Aix la Chapelle*; and the ceremony was performed in presence of a great number of noblemen, ecclesiastic and secular, who afterwards held a diet, in which divers laws and regulations were made, touching fiefs and the administration of justice in feudal courts.

FROM *Aix la Chapelle* *Henry* repaired to *Augsburg*, where he confirmed the privileges of the town of *Straßburg*: then he visited *Haguenau*, where he regulated the polity of *Alsace*, and bridled the oppressive power which the nobility exerted over their vassals. He afterwards, by his father's direction, sent commissaries to *Vaucouleurs*, to renew the treaty of alliance with *Lewis VIII.* the new *French* king, who had succeeded his father *Philip Augustus*, lately deceased. A treaty by which the emperor promised never to engage in any confederacy with the king of *England*, to the prejudice of *France* (Y).

Waldemar II. king of Denmark is made prisoner by the count de Schwerin; ABOUT this period, *Waldemar II.* king of *Denmark*, and his eldest son, were surprised by *Henry*, count de *Schwerin*, who, on pretence of some injury he had received from his *Danish* majesty, apprehended him and the prince, while engaged in the diversion of hunting, and committed them prisoners to the fortrefs of *Daneberg*.

THE *Danish* senators were no sooner informed of the king's captivity, than they addressed themselves to the emperor and the pope, whom they solicited to procure the release of their sovereign. In consequence of this application, a diet was convened at *Northausen*, and the princes agreed that *Waldemar* should be set at liberty, provided that he would do homage to the emperor for his kingdom: on the other hand, the pope pretended that *Denmark* was a fief of the holy see, and insisted

^b Hist. de Reb. Gest. Fred. apud MURATOR.

(Y) In the course of this year the inhabitants of *Metz*, taking the advantage of the duke of *Lorraine's* death, and the absence of their bishop, erected themselves into a republic, and became a free town, after the ex-

ample of many other cities which had taken the like opportunities of infranchising themselves, and afterwards received charters, confirming their liberty from different emperors (1).

(1) *Lithman*, l. iv. c. 884.

upon

upon *Waldemar's* owning this dependence, before he would take any steps in his favour.

THE captive prince rejected, with disdain, such terms of enlargement; and, in the mean time, the count *de Schwerin* being furnished with troops by the princes of *Saxony*, *Adolphus*, count *de Schwembourg*, and the archbishop of *Bremen*, invaded *Nordalbingia*, took the *Danish* general prisoner by surprize, and reduced *Holstein*, with the adjacent country on the north of the *Elbe*, and the city of *Hamburg*. The knights of the *Teutonic* order, and the bishop of *Riga*, took this opportunity of seizing *Revel*. At the same time the *Wandalians*, western *Slaves*, and the count *de Werle*, shook off the *Danish* yoke. *Berem* and *Watislaus*, princes of *Pomerania*, wrested the town of *Demnica* from the count *de Rugen*, and *Swenteploe* made himself master of *Dantzick*, which had been about seventeen years in possession of the *Danes*. At length, by the mediation of the pope, *Albert*, duke of *Saxony*, and some other princes, the king of *Denmark* and his son were set at liberty, in consideration of 45,000 marks of silver, paid by way of ransom ^{and released on paying a ransom.}

WHILE this negotiation was on the carpet, a violent dispute arose among several noblemen, who pretended to the succession of the countess *de Dastourg*, who died without issue, and whose lands were seized by the bishop of *Metz*, as reversionary fiefs belonging to his see. The competitors were the bishop of *Liege*, count *de Linangen*, whose brother had married the countess, the duke of *Brabant*, and the marquis of *Baden*, which last had made over his right to *Berthold*, bishop of *Straßbourg*. Each pretender made alliances and preparations for doing himself justice by force of arms; hostilities were again commenced, and after much mischief and bloodshed, the affair was accommodated to the satisfaction of all parties, partly by the authority of the emperor, and partly by the admonitions of *Engelbert*, archbishop of *Cologne*, who did not long survive the pacification; for he was basely assassinated in *Weßphalia* by the accomplices of *Frederic*, count *de Isembert*, whom he had threatened to chastise for his excesses. ^{Engelbert archbishop of Cologne is assassinated.}

ENGELBERT had acquired such reputation in the empire for his prudence and sage administration, that the murderer was, by the diet of *Nuremberg*, put to the ban of the empire, a price set upon his head, and he afterwards underwent the sentence of excommunication. *Though he made shift to escape from *Germany* at that juncture, he was in

the sequel apprehended in disguise near Liège, and brake alive upon the wheel in the city of *Cologne*. The vacant see was filled up by *Henry de Mallemara*, and *Engelbert's* office of tutor to the young king of the *Romans*, conferred upon *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*^d.

THIS prince was just returned from the east, where the crusaders had been obliged to surrender *Damietta* to *Meledin*, sultan of *Egypt*, after having been reduced to the greatest extremity. The king of *Jerusalem*, and the grand master of the *Teutonic* order, came to *Europe* at the same time, in order to solicit succours from the princes of Christendom. The pope, incensed at the loss of *Damietta*, wrote a very severe letter to the emperor, taxing him with having sacrificed the interests of the crusaders, by delaying so long to perform his vow, and threatening to excommunicate him immediately, if he would not forthwith depart at the head of an army for their relief. *Frederic*, exasperated at these reproaches, renounced all correspondence with his holiness, renewed the authority of the legation in *Sicily*, filled up the vacant sees and benefices, and expelled some bishops that were creatures of the pope, on pretence of their being concerned in practices against the state.

The emperor reduces the rebels of Naples, and quarrels with the pope, who threatens to excommunicate him. HONORIUS having received the complaints of the exiles, exhorted the emperor, by letters and ambassadors, to re-establish them in their dignities and offices, reproaching him for his rashness in presuming to lift his hand against the sanctuary, in erecting himself as a judge over the ecclesiastical state, and usurping the authority of the holy see; for he observed, that if those prelates and officers had given him offence, he ought to have addressed himself to the pope, who, as head of the ecclesiastical order, would have taken cognizance of the matter, and decided according to the merits of the cause. To this remonstrance the emperor answered, that since the reign of *Charlemagne*, the emperors had always an authority and sovereign jurisdiction over the ecclesiastical state; that as they had promoted the bishops and abbots to their dignities and benefices, they had likewise occasionally deprived them in case of misconduct or malversation; that his grandfather *Frederic I.* and his father *Henry VI.* had maintained this jurisdiction in full force; and that he being elevated to the same station, pretended to the same authority, of which he neither could nor would divest himself, to the prejudice of the empire and his successors. With regard to his hereditary dominions, his mother *Constance* and

^d BARRE, t. v. p. 669.

her predecessors, who were always great benefactors to the church of *Rome*, had ever enjoyed the same prerogative over the clergy of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and therefore the pope could not justly demand that he would part with the rights of his sovereignty, or allow his holiness to sit in judgment upon the ecclesiastics of his kingdoms. Not content with sending this private remonstrance to the pope, he published a manifesto for the justification of his conduct, and ordered his troops to march to the frontiers of the ecclesiastical state.

IT was not long, however, before *Honorius* became sensible of his own impolitic conduct, in thus incurring the resentment of such a powerful prince, and thought proper to deprecate his anger by some submissive apologies and gentle exhortations; in consequence of which they were reconciled, and conferred together at *Veroli*, after the emperor had, as a proof of his sincerity and attachment to the church, published some very severe edicts against heresy, which seem to have authorized the tribunal of the inquisition^e. A solemn assembly was afterwards held at *Ferentino*, where both were present, together with *John of Brienne*, king of *Jerusalem*, who was come to *Rome* to demand succours against the sultan of *Egypt*. This prince had an only daughter, named *Tolanda*, whom he proposed as a wife to the emperor, together with the kingdom of *Jerusalem* after his own decease, on condition that *Frederic* would perform the vow he had made to go to the *Holy Land*. The pope, who passionately desired to see all the princes of Christendom engaged for the recovery of these sacred places, and particularly longed to be rid of the emperor, that he himself might remain sole master of *Italy*, readily agreed to the proposal. *Frederic* was invited to *Rome*, where he made peace with the pope, and signed the marriage articles between himself and *Tolanda*, who was heiress in right of her mother *Isabel*, only daughter of *Amaury*, king of *Jerusalem*^f; and by these articles he bound himself to set out with an army in two years, for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. In consequence of this accommodation, ambassadors were dispatched into *Syria* for the princess, who was then at *Ptolemais*; but almost two years elapsed before she arrived at *Rome*, and *Frederic* began in earnest to prepare for his expedition. The pope sent the cardinal *Conrad* into *Germany*, with letters to all the metropolitans and their suffragans, exhorting them to assist the emperor in such a laudable enterprize: the concurrence of

A. D.
1225.

Frederic engages to marry the king of Jerusalem's daughter.

^e PETR. DE VINCIS, l. i. ep. 25, &c.
de Fir. lib. i.

^f MACR. Hist.

Lewis VIII. king of *France*, was also solicited; the grand master of the *Teutonic* order carried letters from *Frederic* to the king of the *Romans*, desiring that prince to convoke a diet at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon measures for sending succours to the *Holy Land*; and the duke of *Austria*, and the landgrave of *Thuringia*, signalized their zeal at that assembly; so that the preparations were carried on with extraordinary vigour, when *Frederic* was informed of a secret league, in which the towns of *Lombardy* had engaged, with a view to renounce his authority.

Confederacy of the Lombard towns against the emperor.
A. D. 1226. HE forthwith sent an account of this confederacy to the pope, representing, that he could not possibly accomplish his vow, without running the risque of a general revolt in *Italy* against the empire; and *Honorius*, persuaded of the justice of this remonstrance, consented to his delaying his expedition two years longer, after he had sworn at *San Germano*, that he would certainly depart at the expiration of that term, on pain of excommunication &c.

Frederic convokes an assembly at Cremona. *FREDERIC* having obtained this reprieve, issued orders for convening a general assembly at *Cremona*, to which he invited all the towns of *Italy*, and the noblemen of the empire, by circular letters, directed to each in particular. He likewise ordered his son *Henry* to meet him at that place with a strong body of forces. The associated towns now pulled off the mask, justified their confederation by the authority of a treaty, which had been made at *Constance*, between *Frederic Barbarossa* and the cities of *Lombardy*, empowering them to make and renew alliances one with another. As the reigning emperor had refused to confirm this article, they assembled at *Bozolo* in the territory of *Mantua*, where they renewed their association upon oath, and resolved to levy troops to guard the passes of the *Alps* against the king of the *Romans* (Z). Accordingly, when that prince advanced as far as *Trent*, in his way to *Cremona*, he found the passage blocked up by the troops of *Verona*, and was obliged to return without seeing his father; while the confederates intimated to the *German* princes, that they had not taken arms with a view to separate themselves from the empire, but

. 8 RAINALD. ad an. 1225.

(Z) The associated towns *Alexandria*, *Vicenza*, and several others, reinforced by *Bonifazio*, marquis of *Montferrat*, and *Vercelli*, *Lodi*, *Bergamo*, *Turin*, *Godfrey*, count of *Romagna* (1).

(1) *Barre*, t. v. p. 676.

solely in order to maintain their rights and liberty against the encroachments of the emperor ^h.

WHILE *Frederic* was employed in taking measures for *quarrels* dispersing this dangerous cloud that seemed to gather around him, another difference arose between him and *Honorius*, with the touching the nomination of bishops to the vacant sees of *Sicily*: *pope*. this breach was widened by the emperor's refusing to comply with the demands of *Conrad* the legate, who had proposed to the princes of *Germany*, that, in order to relieve the pressing necessities of the *Roman* church, they should grant to the pope two prebendaries in every cathedral, and two cells in each monastery. *Frederic*, being informed of this extravagant proposal, gave the pope to understand, that, as the affair concerned all Christendom, the empire should conform to the resolutions of other Christian states, who were solicited on the same subject.

HONORIUS, piqued at this repulse, as well as at the inflexibility of *Frederic* on other occasions, resolved to prevent the assembly at *Cremona*, and actually forbade the deputies at *Spoletto* to go thither, notwithstanding the repeated commands and threats of the emperor: a contest which gave birth to a literary correspondence, replete with rancour and reproach. He taxed the pope with envy, malice, and upbraided him in particular with having granted an asylum to his rebellious subjects. *Honorius*, on the other hand, accused him of ingratitude, obstinacy, pride, and cruelty towards his father-in-law, the king of *Jerusalem*; for by this time *Frederic's* marriage with *Tolanda* had been solemnized with great magnificence at *Rome*; and in a little time after the ceremony, which was performed by the pope, he had extorted from *John de Brienne* a cession of his right and title to the kingdom of *Jerusalem* ⁱ.

NOTWITHSTANDING all the engines the pope could set *Holds an* at work to traverse the designs of *Frederic*, that prince repaired to *Cremona* at the appointed time, where he was met *assembly* by the deputies from the well affected towns, and divers *na*. subjects of importance were discussed at the assembly, tho' nothing of consequence was decided. From thence he marched towards *Milan*, and summoned the citizens to admit him, that he might be crowned king of *Lombardy*: but he sustained a repulse, and finding himself incapable at that time of revenging the insult, he resolved to punish them in the interests of their allies, and actually deprived *Bologna* of

^h Antiq. Goss. ad an. 1226.

ⁱ Ap RAIN. ad an. 1226.

g. 2. SANUT. l. iii. part 2. c. 10.

Peace concluded with the Lombard towns.

A. D.
1227.

The pope dies, and is succeeded by Gregory IX.

its university, which he translated to *Naples*, and favoured with extraordinary privileges; though it was afterwards restored to *Bologna* at the peace, which was effected by the mediation of the pope, whom the emperor visited at *Reati*, and reconciled to his interest ^k (A).

THE peace was no sooner concluded, than his holiness reminded the emperor of his vow, observed, that the time for executing his promise approached, and pressed him to take measures for his speedy departure; but he died before he could see the execution of this great design, which he had so much at heart, and was succeeded in his office, as well as his maxims, by *Gregory IX.* a kinsman of these two counts, whom, as we have already observed, *Frederic* had proscribed and banished from the kingdom of *Naples*.

DURING these transactions a diet was held at *Aix la Chapelle*, for the coronation of *Agnes*, wife of *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, where that prince decided a difference between the town of *Verdun* and its bishop *Rodolphus*, subjecting the inhabitants to the prelate's jurisdiction; and this sentence produced an insurrection and open war between the parties, which was, however, soon terminated by accommodation.

A. D.
1227.

HENRY, count palatine of the *Rhine*, and brother of the emperor *Otho IV.* dying at this conjuncture without male issue, *Henry*, marquis of *Baden*, who had married his eldest daughter, sold his pretensions upon *Brunswic* to the emperor; and the king of the *Romans* attempted to take possession, but was prevented by *Otho* of *Saxony*, son of *William*, duke of *Lunenburg*, sole male heir of *Henry the Lion*, who secured the place with a strong garrison, confiding in an alliance, offensive and defensive, which he had made with the king of *Denmark*. It was in consequence of this treaty that *Otho*

^k Ric. a Sanct. Germ. 1226.

(A) The pope, being chosen arbitrator, decreed, that the emperor should suppress all his resentment, revoke all the sentences he had passed, and the constitutions he had enacted, against the confederacy, which on its part should furnish the emperor with 400 knights for two years, in his expedition against the *Saracens* of the east;

that it should make peace with all the towns, places, and person, attached to the emperor, and annul all contrary proceedings; that it should observe all the constitutions and laws published by the *Roman* church, or the emperors, against heresy, and revoke those which had been enacted to the prejudice of the ecclesiastical liberty (1).

furnished his *Danish* majesty with troops, to reduce the inhabitants of *Lubec*, who had revolted, after having privately secured the countenance and protection of the emperor.

FREDERIC, who repined to see that town dismembered, *Lubec expelled the duke of Saxony, the counts of Schwerin, Mecklenbourg, and Oldenbourg, to give all possible assistance to the citizens of Lubec, in case they should be attacked by the king of Denmark, whose garrison they had expelled. Accordingly, when Waldemar took the field in order to revenge this insult, those princes assembled an army to oppose him, after his irruption into Holstein, and an obstinate battle ensued, in which he lost one eye and was defeated, and his nephew Otho of Lunenburg taken prisoner. This disgrace served only to animate his courage; he raised another army with incredible expedition, destroyed the country of Dithmarsie with fire and sword, and having ravaged the northern part of Holstein, returned to Denmark to recruit his army. Mean while the Lawem-confederates, under the conduct of the duke of Saxony, took Mollen, Ratzeburg, and some other places in Lower Saxony, other which the Danes had possessed for some time: then they invested Lawemburg, which was a place of such consequence, that Waldemar marched to its relief, and was employed in cutting off the convoys of the besiegers, when being alarmed with a false report that the king of the Romans was on his march to join the allies, he retreated with great precipitation to his own dominions, and the town was obliged to surrender.*

GREGORY was no sooner raised to the chair of *St. Peter*, than he sent a legate *a latere* to press *Frederic* to the execution of the promise he had so solemnly made, or in case of refusal, to threaten him with a sentence of excommunication, which he had voluntarily incurred. *Frederic* finding he could no longer defer his departure, especially as several princes, a great number of noblemen, and others, had arrived from all the kingdoms in Christendom, in order to accompany him in the crusade, ordered his fleet to be equipped with all expedition, and actually set sail from *Brundisi* with a most magnificent equipage, and very powerful armament. But being taken ill about three days after he put to sea, he returned with his household to the port from whence he had set out, and gave orders for his army to proceed to the *Levant*. The pope, incensed at this quick return, declared, with the consent of all the cardinals, that he had incurred

the penalty of excommunication, and rendered himself incapable of the imperial dignity^m; and in letters written to all the kings, princes, and prelates of Christendom, he explained the reasons that influenced his conduct in this affair, giving them to understand, that the emperor had voluntarily submitted to the sentence, in case he should not perform his vow, and threatening to proceed against him in a rigorous manner.

On the other hand, *Frederic* published letters and manifestoes, vindicating his own conduct, promising to accomplish his vow as soon as his health should permit, and enumerating the ill offices which had been done him by the present pope and his predecessors; but whatever effect this justification had with other sovereigns in his favour, the confederated towns of *Lombardy* made this breach between him and the pope a pretence for revolting, and endeavouring by promises and threats to engage in their association those cities which were affected to the emperor.

FREDERIC, incensed at the insolence and malice of the pope, who had excited all these commotions to the prejudice of his interest and reputation, resolved to be revenged upon the see of *Rome*, and began by confiscating the effects and expelling the persons of all those ecclesiastics within his dominions, who had treated him as an excommunicated prince. He ordered all the pope's couriers to be apprehended, ravaged the lands of *St. Peter's* patrimony in *Apulia*, and pillaged the houses of the templars, whom he considered as his inveterate enemies.

Frederic
is excom-
municated.
A. D.
1228.

GREGORY was no sooner informed of these proceedings, than he called a council, in which the sentence of excommunication was repeated against the emperor, and all priests forbid to perform divine service in his presence, on pain of privation.

THE emperor thinking the cause of his return was more than sufficient to exempt him from the trouble of proceeding on the voyage, left no stone unturned to mortify the pope, in return for the sentence which he had twice pronounced against him; and succeeded so well in his endeavours, by the address and power of *Frangipani*, and other rich noblemen of *Rome*, who were attached to his interest, that his holiness was obliged to quit that city and take refuge at *Perugia*ⁿ. It was upon this occasion that in *Rome*, as well as in other parts of *Italy*, the animosity between the *Guelphs* and

^m Ann. Boior. JOH. AVENTIN. l. vii. p. 531.
ⁿ Greg. Alb. Stad. SIGON. l. xvii.

^a USPERG.

Gibelines revived, after it had lain dormant since *Conrad III.* The animosity of under whom it first appeared. Mean while *Frederic*, in order to remove the cause of all those excommunications, was pressed by his friends to perform his vow: besides, the interest of his young son *Conrad*, whom he had by *Yolanda*, who was lately dead, prompted him to go and take possession of the kingdom of *Jerusalem*.

162
Guelphs
and Gibelines
revived.

A. D.
1228.

Thus determined, he assembled at *Barletta* all the grandees of *Sicily*, together with the *German* noblemen who had accompanied him to *Italy*, declared his design of departing immediately for the *Holy Land*, and his last will being read, exacted of all present an oath, by which they bound themselves to see it executed in case he should die in the expedition. The pope, informed of his intention, sent him a formal message, forbidding him to proceed before he should be absolved of the censures of the church. Notwithstanding this prohibition, he embarked and sailed to *Cyprus*, where he staid some time, then proceeded for the port of *Ptolemais*. Nevertheless, before he went on board, he sent a letter to the pope, giving him to understand, that he had left all power with his lieutenant *Renaldo*, duke of *Spoletto*, to negotiate and conclude an accommodation. But *Gregory* refusing to treat with that nobleman, whom he considered as a persecutor of the church, *Renaldo* entered *St. Peter's* patrimony with an army, composed of *Germans* and *Sicilian Saracens*, and laid waste the whole country. The pope, in revenge for these outrages, excommunicated the lieutenant, raised an army to oppose him, the command of which was given to *John de Brienne*, king of *Jerusalem*, excited a new revolt against the emperor among the *Lombard* towns, and all *Italy* was involved in the horrors of a civil war.

MEAN while *Frederic* met with a very cold reception in his kingdom of *Jerusalem*; for the patriarch, and the knights of the hospital, temple, and *Teutonic* order, had been prepossessed against him by the letters of *Gregory*, who represented him as a perjured and excommunicated sinner. Nay, the grand masters absolutely refused to march against the enemy while he commanded in chief; so that he was fain to consent that all orders should be given in the name of the duke of *Limbourg*, who was second in command. This was not the only mortification he endured. *Meladin*, sultan of *Egypt*, had two very numerous armies in the field: the crusard troops, including the knights, did not exceed 15,000 men; and he received dispatches from the count d'*Acerra*, governor of *Sicily*, by which he learned that his *Sicilian* dominions were in great danger from the army of *John de*

1229;

Brienne, who aspired at the imperial throne, and had even laid snares, and contrived stratagems, for apprehending the person of *Frederic*, in his return from *Palestine* :

Frederic concludes a truce with the Saracens; THESE considerations extinguished all his hopes of making conquests in the east, and induced him to grant a truce of ten years to *Meledin*, on condition that the Christians should retain *Jerusalem*: having therefore been crowned in that city, and left a strong garrison in the place, as well as in some other towns, he returned with an empty title, which from that time hath been preserved by the kings of *Sicily* ^P (B). On his arrival at *Naples* from the *Holy Land*, he found the pope had been very active against him in his absence, and disavowed the treaty which he had concluded with the sultan, as a reproach upon the Christian name; for which reason he refused to absolve him from the sentence of excommunication.

FREDERIC, perceiving he had nothing to hope from the favour of his holiness, put his troops in motion, and retook several strong places, of which the pope had deprived him in his absence, employing in this conquest the very forces he had raised for the *Syrian* expedition.

GREGORY published bulls, sent ambassadors to demand succours from all the princes of *Europe*, though his remonstrances had no effect, except among the confederates of *Lombardy*, who exerted themselves in his behalf; and, lastly, as the severest mark of his resentment, repeated the sentence of excommunication, with an additional clause, absolving all the subjects of *Frederic* from their oath of allegiance.

* *MATH. PARIS.* an. 1229.
l. vii. p. 531.

^P *Ann. Boior. Jo. AVENT.*

(B) If we consider the articles of this peace, against which the pope so bitterly exclaimed, and reflect upon the situation of the Christians in the *Holy Land*, we can have no reason to think the truce was disgraceful to the emperor, or disadvantageous to the cause of Christianity. The *Saracens* released all the prisoners, and yielded up *Jerusalem*, with the whole country, as far as *Joppa*, that the Christians might pass and repass unmolested be-

tween the city and the sea: they likewise restored to *Frederic*, *Bethlem*, *Nazareth*, and all the country between *Jerusalem* and *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, together with *Tyre*, *Sidon*, and the neighbouring territories; and it was stipulated, that the emperor should be allowed to repair all the fortifications in *Syria* and *Palestine*; whereas the *Saracens* were excluded from that privilege (1).

(1) *Avent. an Boior. lib. vii. p. 531.*

At the same time he again excommunicated the duke of *Spoleto*, his brother *Bertholdus*, and *Theodore Comnenus*, prince of *Epirus*, who had solicited the friendship of the emperor, and even assisted him with troops ⁹.

FREDERIC, after having expelled all the pope's garrisons, pillaged the towns and villages belonging to the holy see, and ravaged the country to the very gates of *Rome*, he was advised by *St. Lewis*, king of *France*, to listen to an accommodation. He accordingly sent as ambassadors to *Rome*, *Berthold*, patriarch of *Aquileia*, *Everhard*, bishop of *Saltzburg*, *Seisfried*, bishop of *Ratisfen*, *Sivohl*, bishop of *Augsburg*, and *Leopold*, of *Austria*; but the pope received them so coldly, and kept his pretensions so high, that they returned without having come to any conclusion.

THIS indifference proceeded from his confidence in the talents of *Otho*, whom he had sent as his legate to excite troubles in *Germany*. That agent tampered in secret with the duke of *Brunswic*, whom he knew to be disaffected to *Frederic*, expatiated upon the wrongs and disgraces which his family had suffered from the emperors since the reign of *Barbaressa*, and promised, in the name of the pope, that he should be elevated to the imperial throne, provided he would exert himself in forming a party against *Frederic*. The duke, notwithstanding the suggestions of his ambition and revenge, refused to engage in such a dangerous enterprize, which he had neither troops nor money to achieve. The legate, repulsed in this quarter, convoked, in the name of his holiness, an assembly of the princes at *Wirtzburg*, where, after having previously sounded every individual in private, he uttered a long harangue, exhorting them to elect a new emperor in the room of *Frederic*, who was excommunicated and deposed.

His speech was received with indignation, both by the ecclesiastic and secular princes, who broke up the assembly in such a tumultuous manner, that the legate thought of nothing but consulting the safety of his own person; and *Gregory* being made acquainted with the bad success of his endeavours, became more tractable, and better disposed towards a pacification. He even intimated these sentiments to the emperor, who next year sent back *Leopold* with the grand master of the *Teutonic* order, and then concluded a treaty of peace, promising, in the emperor's name to pay 20,000 pieces of gold, to repair the damage he had done in pillaging the towns belonging to the holy see. The ratifications

comes to an
accommodation
with
the pope.
A. D.
1230.

⁹ Epist. apud RAIN. n. 37. .

of this treaty being exchanged, *Frederic* waited upon the pope at *Anagni*, where he was absolved from the sentence of the church, and magnificently entertained by his holiness, in token of a perfect reconciliation ^r.

NOTWITHSTANDING this agreement, the cities of *Lombardy*, which had withdrawn themselves from the emperor's dominion during his quarrel with the pope, refused to return to their duty, or listen to any terms of accommodation; so that *Frederic*, in a diet held at *Aquileia*, resolved to reduce *Is employed* them by force. In this undertaking he consumed five years without great success, because his operations were often interrupted by the affairs of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and at last he was obliged to abandon the enterprize, in order to quell the disturbances which had happened in *Germany* during his long absence. He accordingly set out for the empire, using the more expedition in his journey, because he understood his son *Henry* was employed in forming a conspiracy against him.

in the reduction of Lombardy.

THIS prince had engaged in his interest the cities of *Milan* and *Bologna*, the inhabitants of which hoped to render themselves independent, by fomenting a quarrel between the father and the son; the bishop of *Straßbourg*, and almost all the towns upon the *Rhine*, from *Basil* to *Cologne*, declared for *Henry*, whose party was likewise espoused by *Frederic*, duke of *Austria*. Thus supported he convoked a diet at *Boppard*, where he explained the pretended motives of his defection, by complaining of the frequent quarrels between his father and the pope, which could not fail to be prejudicial to the empire, and of the little authority which was vested in himself, who, as king of the *Romans*, ought to govern the empire in the absence of the emperor. These reasons, though approved by great part of the assembly, were not satisfactory to the duke of *Bavaria*, and *Herman*, marquis of *Baden*, who adhering to their duty, sent an account of this rebellion to *Frederic*, and exhorted him to come in person and dispel the storm.

HE no sooner received this intimation than he began his journey, and on his arrival in *Germany* held a diet at *Mentz*, where he employed his whole care and attention in repairing those disorders. He, in concert with the princes and states of the empire, enacted several laws and constitutions for the administration of justice, and the re-establishment of discipline and policy, both with regard to seculars and ecclesiastics; and, in a word, omitted nothing which could contribute

^r STRUV. period. 7. sect. 6. KRANTZ, lib. viii. c. 5.

to the public tranquillity. His son *Henry* having been convicted of rebellion, and of having entered into a confederacy against the emperor, instead of being punished according to his demand was sent to *Sicily*, that he might be removed at a good distance from the dangerous connections he had made.

His son Henry is convicted of rebellion.

AMONG other regulations made at this convention, the difference was terminated between the emperor and *Otho* of *Lunenburg*, who had seized by force of arms the castles and towns of *Brunswic* and *Lunenburg*, on pretence of being heir to his grandfather *Henry the Lion*. *Frederic* erected these into duchies, of which he bestowed the investiture upon *Otho*, together with an authentic patent or charter, by which the mediate nobility, the citizens of *Brunswic*, the inhabitants of its territory, and of *Staden*, were commanded to receive *Otho* as their duke, to take the oath of allegiance to him, and obey him as their lord, according to the laws and customs of the empire.

A. D.
1235.

MEAN while he carried on levies for raising a strong army, that he might once more return to *Lombardy*, and subdue the cities which were associated against him. About this time too he married the princess *Isabella*, daughter of *John*, king of *England*. The pope being apprehensive of the emperor's return into *Italy*, sent a nuncio to dissuade him from that expedition, and even proffered, if he would leave the affair of the revolted towns to his holiness, he would engage they should return to their duty and dependence upon the empire. *Frederic*, however, looking upon this promise as a snare laid for him, refused to accept the mediation proposed, and continued unshaken in his resolution. He therefore set out upon this expedition, and when he entered *Lombardy* some states submitted of their own accord, and others were reduced by force; but the principal cities still held out against him, confiding in the succours which they had received from the *Venetians*, and in the support which they and their confederates expected from *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, who had engaged in their cause at the instigation of the court of *Rome*. Nay, that prince, besides this rebellious engagement, had continued his secret practices with several princes of *Germany*, who had promised to assist him on any emergency, and among others with the duke of *Austria*, upon whom the emperor had conferred the title of king.

1236.

Frederic returns to Italy.

FREDERIC, being apprized of this new conspiracy, conceived such indignation against his son as intirely swallowed

* Erect. Ducal. Brunsw. apud MEBOM, t. ii.

up the grudge he bore the pope, to whom he now made such advances, as prevailed upon his holiness to declare against *Henry*, and to prohibit the princes and states of the empire, under pain of excommunication, to yield him succour or obedience. This spiritual authority effectually retained the subjects in their duty; and the emperor, having ordered his son to be narrowly watched, at length found means to apprehend and confine him in a castle of *Apulia*, where he afterwards died¹.

THAT the remains of this conspiracy might be extinguished, he ordered the dukes of *Bohemia* and *Bavaria* to take arms against *Frederic* duke of *Austria*, prince *Henry's* accomplice, until he himself should be able to come and chastise him in person. It was not long before he enjoyed that opportunity; for having in some measure settled the affairs of *Italy*, and left the pope in terms of peace, he returned to *Germany*, ravaged the *Austrian* dominions with fire and sword, and at last made himself master of the city of *Vienna*, where he founded the university that now subsists^u.

Conrad,
his second
son, is
elected king
of the Ro-
mans.

After this expedition he assembled the states of the empire, that they might elect his son *Conrad* king of the *Romans*; and that young prince was accordingly confirmed the same year, at another assembly held in the city of *Spire*^x. The affairs of *Germany*, and the succession, being settled in this manner, he forthwith resolved to repair again into *Italy*, having still at heart the reduction of those cities of *Lombardy*, which still remained in arms, on pretence of defending those privileges which were granted to them by *Frederic Barbarossa*. The army, which he now led into *Italy*, being very numerous and formidable, the city of *Padua* immediately surrendered; some other places, that made resistance, he sacked, in order to intimidate the rest; and all of a sudden turned his whole forces against *Milan*, which was the centre of the league, and where all their troops were joined; so that, seeing their army equal in number to that of the emperor, they resolved to wait him in the field. Accordingly a furious battle en-

The emperor obtains
a victory
over the
league.

A. D.
1237.

sued, the event of which was long doubtful; but after it had raged for several hours with great carnage, the victory declared for the emperor^y. Their general, *Petro Tiepolo*, son of the doge of *Venice*, together with their other chiefs, being taken prisoners, *Frederic* ordered them all to be put to death by the hand of the common hangman; and pursuing his advantage, attacked several places, some of which he pil-

¹ HEISS Hist. l. xi. c. 16. ^u SAZIUS, l. iii. c. 5. ^x Chron. Aust. p. 323. ^y SIGON. l. i. c. 8.

laged and burnt, reserving *Milan* for the last monument of his resentment. This battle would have been decisive, and the *Lombard* cities intirely subdued, had *Frederic* made a proper use of his victory, and proceeded with his warlike operations; but, instead of exerting himself in this manner, he continued inactive at *Cremona*, and allowed his enemies to respire. In the spring he marched into *Piedmont*, and exacted the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants of *Verceil*, *Turin*, and other towns in that province. He afterwards convoked an assembly at *Pavia*, in which he confirmed the privileges and revived the antient laws of the *Lombard* towns which were attached to his interest. The citizens of *Milan* sued for peace by the intercession of the pope; but, as *Frederic* insisted upon their surrendering at discretion, they resolved to perish rather than submit to his mercy, and made all the necessary preparations for continuing the war.²

POPE *Gregory*, sensibly touched with the success of *Frederic*'s arms, and particularly piqued at an edict which he had published to reform the abuse of ecclesiastic tribunals; incensed, moreover, at his seizing the revenues of vacant bishoprics in *Sicily*, and bestowing upon his natural son *Entius* the kingdom of *Sardinia* as feudatory of the empire, whereas he (*Gregory*) pretended it was a fief of the *Roman* church; the pope, I say, inspired by these concurring motives, associated himself with the *Venetians* and the cities of *Lombardy*, and was reconciled with *Rome*, from whence he had long ago been obliged to retire. On his return to that city, he sent a nuncio to the emperor, exhorting him to desist from those violences, in consideration of the favours he had received from the holy see; but *Frederic*, who had been informed of his secret connections with the league, dismissed the nuncio without an answer; upon which his holiness sent back three cardinals upon the same errand, who being treated with the same disregard, he had recourse to those weapons which he had formerly used against him. A new excommunication² *Is again* was fulminated, and a bull sent into *Germany* to sow divi- *excommu-* sion between the emperor and the princes and states of the *nicated by* empire, who were subjected to the same sentence, provided *the pope.* they should persist in their allegiance and attachment to *Frederic* (C). He likewise endeavoured to engage *Saint Louis* in

² PETR. DE VINEIS, Ep. 7.

² BARRE, l. v. p. 745.

(C) In order to give the reader a just notion of the charity and Christian forbearance of the popes, we shall translate part of

Gregory's bull against *Frederic*, which he sent to the archbishop of *Mentz*.

“A beast of blasphemy, re-
O 4 “plete

his interest, and sent a legate to prejudice him against the person and religion of the emperor, as well as to make a proffer of the imperial crown to his brother prince *Robert*, count of *Artois* ^b. But *Louis* would have no hand in such violent proceedings; and plainly gave him to understand, that, granting he was disposed to embrace the proposal, the pope had no power or authority, either to dethrone the emperor, or give away the empire.

FREDERIC, who was at *Padua* when he received the news of this excommunication, ordered *Peter de Vineis*, his chancellor, to read an answer to it before the whole army, in which he refuted the calumnies which were invented and propagated to his prejudice ^c; and this answer he sent into *Germany*, for the vindication of his honour and integrity.

^b MEZ. Abr. Chr. t. i. p. 443.
HEISS, l. xi. c. 16.

^c KRANTZ, l. viii. c. 7.

“plete with names, is risen from
“the sea, with the feet of a
“bear, the face of a lion, and
“members of other different animals; which, like the pard,
“hath opened its mouth in
“blasphemy against the holy
“name; not even fearing to
“throw the arrows of calumny
“against the tabernacle of God,
“and the saints that dwell in
“heaven. This beast, desirous
“of breaking every thing in
“pieces with its iron teeth and
“nails, and of trampling all
“things under its feet, hath al-
“ready prepared private bat-
“tering rams against the wall
“of the Catholic faith; and now
“raites open machines, in erect-
“ing soul-destroying schools of
“*Ishmaelites*; rising, according
“to report, in opposition to
“Christ the Redeemer of man-
“kind, the tables of whose
“covenant he attempts to abo-
“lish with the pen of wicked
“heresy:—be not therefore sur-
“prized at the malice of this

“blasphemous beast, if we, who
“are the servant of the Al-
“mighty, should be exposed to
“the arrows of his destruction.”

This king of plagues was even heard to say, “That the whole
“world had been deceived by
“three mountebanks; namely
“Jesus Christ, *Moses*, and *Ma-
“bomet*,” and openly affirmed,
“That two of them supported
“their glory to the last; but
“the third was disgracefully
“crucified.”

Nor does *Frederic* seem to have been deficient in epithets of the same nature; for, in his apology to the princes of *Germany*, he calls the pope, “That
“wild beast of which it is writ-
“ten;” and, “Another red
“horse arose from the sea, and
“he that sat upon him took
“peace from the earth:—this
“great dragon, which seduced
“the whole earth, is antichrist,
“whose forerunner he affirmed
“us to be (1).”

(1) *Gob. Perf. Cosmod.* &c. vi. c. 64.

There

There it produced all the effect he could desire in the minds of the princes, and kept all the members of the empire firmly united to their chief. *Frederic*, finding he had nothing to fear from that quarter, resolved to be amply revenged upon the *Romans*, and suspended all his other operations in order to march to *Rome*, where he thought his party was strong enough to procure his admission; but the pope, seconded by his clergy, bestirred themselves so artfully among the people, that this his favourite design proved abortive. It was upon this occasion that they engaged in a crusade against him as an enemy of the Christian faith; a step by which he was incensed to such a degree, that he ordered all the prisoners who wore the cross to be exposed to the most cruel tortures^d.

Makes an attempt upon Rome, and miscarries.
A. D. 1239.

THE emperor, baffled in his favourite scheme, ravaged the march of *Trevisano*, and entered the *Milanese*, in order to besiege the capital; but the inhabitants, having assembled all their own troops and those of their allies, engaged him in the open field, where, after a very obstinate and bloody dispute, his army was intirely routed; though, by favour of the night, he made shift to retreat into the territory of *Placentia*. There he ordered the bridge to be broken down, to prevent the pursuit of the enemy; and, in consequence of this expedient, he had time to reach *Tuscany*, where his troops enjoyed some repose.

MEAN while all *Italy* became a prey to the two factions of the *Guelphs* and the *Gibelines*, which involved cities, relations, and even private families, in troubles, divisions, and civil butchery, where no quarter was given on either side. *Frederic* was looked upon by the *Guelphs* as a *Mahometan*, and an enemy to the Christian name; and he, on the other hand, treated the *Guelphs* with the utmost cruelty and contempt. After the miscarriage of his attempt upon *Rome*, he took the road to *Naples*, and took vengeance upon all the *Guelphs* that fell in his way, giving quarter to none who were found in arms, but expelling, exiling, or imprisoning, the ecclesiastics, and even the cardinals; some of whom happened to fall into his hands. The pope having called a general council in *Rome*, many prelates from *France* and other countries assembled at *Genoa*, where five-and-twenty gallies being armed for their defence, and joined with those belonging to the pope, they set sail for *Rome* under that convoy; but being met by the gallies of the *Sicilians* and *Pisans*, who were in the emperor's service, a battle was fought, in which three of the

Takes vengeance on the Guelphs.

^d KRANTZ, ubi supra.

Innocent
IV. is
elected
pope ;

A. D.
1243.

flies into
France ;

convokes a
council at
Lyons ;

Genoese galleys were sunk, and the rest taken, with three cardinals, and a great number of archbishops, bishops, and other ecclesiastics ^c. In a word, this animosity raged with incredible obstinacy and rancour on both sides till the pope's death ; and he being succeeded by *Celestin* IV. who enjoyed the papacy but eighteen days, the holy see remained vacant for twenty months, during which *Frederic* frequently solicited the cardinals to a new election, though he still refused to release those he had taken prisoners ; but they as absolutely insisting upon the enlargement of their brethren before they would fill up the vacancy, he was at length prevailed upon to set them at liberty ; and the whole college repairing to *Anagni*, elected *Innocent* IV. the cardinal who of all others had expressed the greatest regard for the emperor and his interest. Accordingly that prince was congratulated upon his promotion ; but *Frederic*, who had more penetration, replied, that he had no reason to rejoice at an event which deprived him of the friendship of a cardinal, and intailed upon him the hatred of a pope ^d. Nor was he deceived in his prognostic.

THE chief care of the new pope and his cardinals was to procure peace for *Italy*, which the emperor would not grant, but on condition of keeping what he possessed ; whereas his holiness demanded restitution of the towns which had been taken from the church, as the only basis of a sincere and solid accommodation ; and insisted upon his doing homage for the kingdom of *Naples*. Though the emperor refused to comply with these demands, he offered to refer the dispute to the decision of the kings of *France* and *England* ; but *Innocent* would not submit to this arbitration. At length they agreed to an interview in the city of *Castello*, in order to discuss these points, and compromise the affair ; but whether the pope had been really apprized of the emperor's intention to seize upon his person, as he affected to give out, or only spread that report as a specious pretext for declining the interview, certain it is he would not keep the appointment ; and understanding that *Frederic* was incensed against him for that reason, he resolved to elude his resentment by flying for refuge into *France*. With this design he privately sent for the *Genoese* galleys, in which he embarked for *Civita Vecchia*, and was convoyed to *Genoa* ; from whence, passing through *Savoy*, he arrived in safety at *Lyons*, where he immediately took measures for convoking a general council ; sending his bulls to the archbishops, bishops, and prelates of *Germany*,

^c MEZERAI Abrege Chronolog. t. i. p 442.
l. viii. c. 9.

^d KRANTZ,
France,

France, Italy, and other kingdoms, that they might assemble at Lyons on the twenty-fourth of June, to deliberate on the measures which should be taken for the security and advantage of the church. In consequence of this call a great many prelates repaired to Lyons, where the emperor was summoned to appear, in order to purge himself of what was laid to his charge, and threatened with the thunder of the church, in case he should fail in his obedience. Though this citation appeared very strange to the emperor, who observed that the pope had erected himself into a sovereign judge, whereas all the councils of old had been convoked by the emperors, where the popes and prelates did homage, and obeyed them as their natural lords, he did not fail, however, to send ambassadors to Lyons, who fairly refuted all the accusations of the pope, and justified him with such success, that several members of the assembly declared in his favour. Nevertheless, he was excommunicated * (D): but he was very little concerned at this sentence; which, when he heard, "I was, said he, before this excommunication, obedient to the pope and the laws of the church; but now, that he has dispensed with my duty in that particular, I neither owe him obedience nor respect, and continue emperor notwithstanding." The pope was very much chagrined at this contempt, and repented of having carried

and ex-communicates the emperor.
A. D. 1245.

* GOB. PERS. Cosm. ætat. vii. cap. 64. KRANTZ, Sax. l. viii. cap. 12.

(D) The pope declared *Frederic* attainted and convicted of sacrilege and heresy, excommunicated, and dethroned; commanded the electors to proceed to the election of another emperor, and reserved to himself the disposal of *Sicily*. This sentence being pronounced, the pope sung *Te Deum*; and all the prelates anathematized *Frederic*, extinguishing their tapers by holding the flames downwards.

If we may believe *Matthew Paris*, the emperor, who was then at *Turin*, received the news of this ceremony with transports of rage very unbecoming a prince of his dignity. He call-

ed for the casket in which the imperial ornaments were kept; and putting the crown upon his head, "*Innocent*, cried he, has not yet deprived me of this, nor will I give it up without abundance of bloodshed; but we shall see how he and his adherents will support this instance of audacity."

Certain it is, he wrote to almost all the princes of Christendom, vindicating his own conduct, expatiating upon the pope's violence and injustice, complaining of their indifference, and soliciting their assistance (1).

(1) *Matth. Paris*, p. 702.

Henry,
landgrave
of Thuringia,
elected
king of the
Romans.

matters to such extremity; but finding himself engaged too far to retract, he exerted himself so industriously by his emissaries, that some princes of the empire were prevailed upon to proceed to the election of a king of the *Romans*. Accordingly, the three ecclesiastic electors, together with the bishops of *Bremen*, *Straßbourg*, *Metz*, and *Spire*, the duke of *Brabant*, and Henry landgrave of *Thuringia*, assembled on *Ascension-day* at *Frankfort*, and elected this last king of the *Romans*, who was afterwards surnamed *The King of Priests*. In favour of this election the pope solicited succours from all quarters, and presented the new king with five-and-twenty thousand marks of silver, to enable him to support the war against *Conrad*, whom the emperor had left as his lieutenant in *Germany*; so that *Henry*, being in a condition to take the field, gave him battle, and obtained a considerable advantage. He afterwards made an irruption into the duchy of *Suabia*, part of the emperor's hereditary dominions, and made an attempt upon *Reutlingen*, which was so valiantly defended by the burghers, that he was obliged to retire. He likewise attacked the city of *Ulm*, where he received a wound from an arrow, of which, in a few days, he died.

The emperor
sets out
for Lyons,
but returns
on account
of Parma's
being surprized.

A. D.
1247.

THE emperor, understanding the bad situation of his affairs in *Germany*, resolved to go in person to *Lyons*, and solicit an accommodation with the pope. For this purpose he had obtained a safe-conduct from the king of *France*; and leaving his *Italian* affairs to the direction of his natural son, *Entius* king of *Sardinia*, he actually set out for that kingdom; but, on his arrival in *Piedmont*, he received the news of *Parma's* being surprized by the troops of his holiness, while *Entius*, with a part of the garrison, was employed in the attack of *Brescia*. This information obliged him to abandon his first design, and return with all expedition into *Italy*, where he obstinately attached himself to the siege of *Parma*; which, being well fortified, made such a vigorous defence, that he resolved to reduce it by famine. He accordingly surrounded it with a high wall, and built hard by a new city, called *Victoria*, which in a little time was as well inhabited as any other town in *Italy*†.

FREDERIC persisting in his design upon *Parma*, several months were ineffectually consumed before it, during which he took no step to remedy the bad situation of his more important affairs; and this supine neglect gave the pope and his partizans such a handle over him, that they found no difficulty in convoking at *Nuitz* an assembly of several princes

† KRANTZ SAY. l. viii. c. 13. HEISS, l. ii. c. 17.

of the empire, ecclesiastic as well as secular, where, in the room of the landgrave of *Thuringia*, they elected *William*, count of *Holland*, king of the *Romans* *. The cities of *Co-*
logn, *Mentz*, and *Straßbourg*, approved of this election; but those of *Worms*, *Spire*, *Landau*, and *Weissenbourg*, together with others of *Suabia* and *Bavaria*, preserved their fidelity to the emperor and *Conrad*, in spite of all the excommunications of the pope. Mean while the emperor, still attached to the siege of *Parma*, lived in the midst of enemies and traitors, who, as they could not execute their revenge upon him in open war, had recourse to poison, during an indisposition which confined him to his bed. For this purpose, they bribed not only his first physician, but also *Peter de Vineis*, a native of *Capua*, who was his chancellor and intimate friend, who undertook his destruction by means of a poisoned draught; but *Frederic*, being luckily apprized of their design, upon the very day appointed for the execution of their purpose, refused the cup when it was presented to him; though *Peter de Vineis* intreated him to take the medicine, of which, he said, he would soon feel the good effects. The physician likewise joining in the remonstrance, the emperor fixed his eyes upon him, and ordered him to drink one-half of it to his health. Confounded at this command, he pretended to stumble, as if by accident, and spilt one-half of the medicine. This expedient, however, was not so artfully executed, but that all who were present perceived his guilt and confusion; upon which he and his accomplice the chancellor were immediately put under arrest, and what remained in the glass given to a condemned malefactor, who instantly died of the dose. This being a convincing proof of their treacherous intention, the physician was strangled; and the chancellor's eyes being put out, he was abandoned to the resentment of the *Pisans*, who were his mortal enemies †. But this miserable traitor dashed out his own brains against a pillar, in order to anticipate their ridicule and resentment.

NOT long after this event, fortune, which had hitherto favoured *Frederic*, all at once declared against him. He still continued his operations before *Parma*; but as, in those tedious sieges, the troops are apt to relax in their vigilance and discipline, and sink into a dangerous security, the besieged took the advantage of *Frederic's* carelessness and neglect; and *Frederic* is making a furious and unexpected sally, cut in pieces the defeated by

* *Ann. Boior. Jo. AVENT. l. vii. p. 549.*
Aph. Pol. Chr. Relig.

† *DANÆUS, in*

(the Parmesians.

greatest part of the imperial troops; and pursuing those that fled, entered with them pell-mell into their camp and city, and put all they found to the sword. It was impossible to resist the torrent; so that the emperor, who was altogether unprovided for resistance, mounted his horse unarmed, and escaped to *Cremona*; while the *Parmesians* pillaged his palace and camp, and razed his new city of *Victoria* to the ground. The report of this victory, being spread over all *Italy*, not only raised the spirits of the *Guelphs*, and the reputation of the legate, *Gregory Montelongo*, who had conducted the enterprise, but likewise overwhelmed the *Gibelines* with dismay and despondence. The emperor, indeed, without allowing himself to be dejected at this overthrow, re-assembled all his scattered troops, and reinforced them with the *Gibelines*, who flocked to him from all quarters: but his reputation being greatly diminished by this defeat, no town of any consideration would receive him; and to crown the misfortune, he learned, while he remained in *Tuscany*, that his natural son *Entius*, king of *Sardinia*, with whom he had intrusted the command of his troops, had marched against the *Bolognians*, by whom he was defeated and taken prisoner; and what added to his affliction on this occasion, was their refusing all the offers of ransom which he made in behalf of that prince, who ended his life amongst them, after a captivity of twenty years.

His natural son
Entius is
taken prisoner by the
the Bolognians.

He retires
to his kingdom of
Naples,
and dies.

THE emperor, being thus destitute of all other resource, resolved to return to his kingdom of *Naples*, in order to recruit his army; for which purpose he carried on levies with great diligence. Mean while he settled his private affairs with respect to the partition of his dominions, which he regulated in this manner: To his natural son, *Mainfroy*, he bequeathed the principality of *Tarentum*, together with the government of his hereditary dominions in *Italy*, for the term of ten years. *Entius* had been already settled in the kingdom of *Sardinia*; to *Henry*, his third son, he gave the kingdom of *Sicily*, and *Austria* to *Frederic*, his grandson, by the late *Henry*, his first-born of the first marriage; to *Conrad* he left the kingdoms of *Naples*, *Jerusalem*, and *Italy*; together with the duchy of *Suabia*, and the empire. As for his two daughters, one of them was already married to *Albert* landgrave of *Thuringia* (E), and the other to the landgrave

(E) His eldest daughter, *Margaret*, was very unhappy in her marriage with *Albert*, landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, at the insti-

gation of one of his mistresses, resolved to make away with her in the castle of *Warburg*, near *Eisenac*; but those who were employed

grave of *Hesse*. In a few days after this distribution, he died of a fever, in the fifty-fifth year of his age (F).

FREDERIC was certainly a prince of great genius, erudition, courage, and fortitude, and might be justly ranked amongst the most accomplished princes, if the violence of his temper, the cruelty of his revenge, and his excessive appetite for women, had not contributed to tarnish the glory of his reputation (G).

§ KRANTZ Sax. l. viii. c. 18. HEISS, l. ii. c. 17.

ployed to execute his barbarous design respected the princess so much, as to give her an opportunity to escape into a convent in *Frankfort*. She had two sons by him, *Frederic* and *Dietmann*; at parting with whom she bit a mark in the cheek of the eldest, that he might remember, so long as he lived, the wrongs of his mother, and revenge them with the first convenient opportunity. Accordingly *Frederic*, when he came to be of age, expelled his father from his dominions, and compelled him to fly for shelter to *Erfort*, where he died in misery (1).

(F) *Mezeray* and some other historians affirm, that he was stifled with a pillow by his own natural son *Mainfroy*.

(G) Though it cannot be denied that *Frederic* II. exercised extraordinary cruelties against those who incurred his resentment, it must likewise be owned, that his provocation was very great; for the popes were indefatigable in sowing the seeds of sedition through all his dominions, and in propagating calumnies to the prejudice of his character. By the intrigues of the clergy, the empire was split

into such divisions and quarrels, as rendered it a scene of rapine, misery, and blood: they raised up two competitors against his son *Conrad* in *Germany*; they supported the league of the *Italian* cities against himself; they denounced excommunications, and even preached up crusades, as if he had been an enemy of the Christian name; and, lastly, employed all their industry and invention, in order to murder his reputation. For this reason we ought to be upon our guard, when we read the accounts of him written by monks, bigotted to the church of *Rome*, with which he was always at variance.

Certain it is, he was a great encourager of learning: he set up schools at *Naples*, and caused *Aristotle*, and other antient authors, to be translated from the *Greek* and *Arabian* languages; and with regard to his settling a colony of *Saracens* at *Nocera*, for which he hath been so much exclaimed against, the malice and rancour of the *Guelphs* are sufficient excuses for his having taken any step of that kind, which might contribute to his own safety and advantage.

(1) *Remarq. sur Heiss*, l. ii. c. 113.

INTERREGNUM.

A. D. 1250. *Is succeeded by Conrad, who had narrowly escaped assassination*

WE have already seen that *Conrad*, when he was no more than eight years of age, had been elected and crowned king of the *Romans* in the room of his elder brother; but we have not yet observed, that ten years after his election, he married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Otho*, king of *Bavaria*, nor mentioned an accident that happened to him after his defeat by *Henry* of *Thuringia*, commonly called *King of Priests*. This was an attempt upon his life by the bishop of *Ratisbon* and the abbot of *St. Emeran*. *Conrad*, after the battle, had retired into the city of *Ratisbon*, of which some time before he had made himself master, and with a small retinue went to lodge at the aforesaid abbey. The bishop, looking upon this as a favourable opportunity for his execrable design, sent thither in the night some soldiers to assassinate *Conrad*, when he should be asleep: but he having happily changed his apartment, the murderers killed two of his attendants by mistake, and retired upon a supposition that they had done their business; while *Conrad*, waked by the noise, escaped to his army, which was encamped under the city walls. Next day he ordered the bishop and abbot to be apprehended, and the abbey to be demolished. The bishop was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, the abbot was deprived of his benefice, and *Hochfels*, who had murdered the two attendants and fled, was in a few days struck dead with thunder^a.

He sets out for his Italian dominions, quarrels with the pope, and dies.

CONRAD no sooner received the news of his father's death, than he assumed the quality of emperor, and set out from *Germany* to take possession of his hereditary dominions; but the cities of *Naples*, *Capua*, and *Aquila*, had put themselves under the protection of the holy see. He therefore marched towards *Naples*, which he invested and took after a siege of eight months. But he did not long enjoy this conquest in peace; for he was engaged in several quarrels with the church of *Rome*, and in a little time fell sick and died, leaving by his wife, *Elizabeth* of *Bavaria*, an only son, called *Conradin*, at that time in the third year of his age. His brother prince *Henry*, who had come to congratulate him upon the success of his arms, did not live to see his untimely fate; but was cut off in the blossom of his youth, not without suspicion of foul play. Some authors affirm, that *Conrad* was poisoned by his natural brother *Mainfroy*, prince of *Tarentum*, who taking the advantage of the minority of young *Conradin*,

A. D. 1254.

^a HEISS, l. ii. c. 18. Ann. Boior. AVENT. l. vii. p. 551. whom

whom his father had left in *Germany*, seized upon the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*¹.

WILLIAM II. count of *Holland*, son of *Florentius IV.* had *William*, been, in the twentieth year of his age, elected king of the count of *Romans*, in an assembly near *Cologne*, by several princes of the *Holland*, empire, who were in the interest of the pope, and declared crowned at *Aix la Chapelle* as enemies of *Frederic* and his son *Conrad*. As his coronation at *Aix la Chapelle* was supposed to be a matter of great importance, and that city had declared for his competitor, it was taken after a long siege^k, when he was crowned in it with the usual solemnity; and some time after that ceremony, he had engaged and defeated *Conrad* in a severe battle. *and favoured by the pope.*

AT the death of the emperor *Frederic*, he assumed all the ensigns of the imperial dignity, which was confirmed to him by the pope. In order to support himself against the party of *Conrad*, he entered into alliance with *Otho*, duke of *Brunswick*, whose daughter he espoused, and a very remarkable accident happened to him on his wedding-night.

SOME tradesmen being at work in a chamber near the apartments of the new-married couple, a candle's end happened to fall among straw, which it immediately kindled; and the flames raged with such violence, that the miserable workmen perished, and *William*, with his bride, were obliged to run out of the palace naked, with such precipitation, that their jewels, furniture, and apparel, were left to the mercy of that devouring element.

THIS was not the only hazardous accident which this unfortunate emperor escaped; for being that same year at *Utrecht*, to which city he had repaired in order to concert measures for his journey to *Rome*, whither he was invited by the pope, to his coronation, he was so terribly wounded with a stone from an unknown hand, that he had almost lost his life.

THE party of this young prince did not make much progress in *Germany* against the noblemen who refused to acknowledge him as king of the *Romans*; nor was he strong enough to subdue them by force, involved, as he happened to be, in a war with *Margaret* countess of *Hainault*, who wanted to defraud her eldest son by her first husband of his inheritance, that she might bestow it upon the sons of her second marriage. The dispute had been referred to the arbitration of *Lewis* king of *France*, and *Eudes*, the pope's legate; but *John d'Avenes*, the eldest son, being dissatisfied

¹ Vide *MORERI*, sur l'Article de *Conr. IV.*
Boiot. l. vii. p. 549.

^k *AVENT. Ann.*

with their decision, had recourse to arms; and with the assistance of *William* king of the *Romans*, who was his brother-in-law, reduced the mother and her younger sons to such extremity, that she was fain to cede the county of *Hainault* to *Charles* count of *Anjou*, the *French* king's brother, on condition that he would assist her with his forces. Thus supported, she renewed the war with various success, until it was terminated by a treaty at *Brussels*, effected by the mediation of *France*¹.

He conciliates the affection of the German noblemen, and patronizes the union of the hans towns. WHILE this affair was in agitation, *William* neglected no opportunity to conciliate the affection of the *German* princes and states. He gratified *John* and *Otho*, marquisses of *Brandenburg*, with the reversion of the imperial fiefs in *Saxony*; he bestowed on *Thomas* of *Savoy* the investiture of *Turin*, *Montcalier*, *Ivrea*, and several other fiefs that constitute the power and greatness of the house of *Maurienne*; and confirmed the rights and privileges which had been granted to *Thomas* of *Savoy* by the emperor *Frederic* II. He likewise patronized and protected a league, or association, formed by the cities of *Frankfort*, *Mentz*, *Cologne*, *Worms*, and *Spire*, for the defence of their commerce, which in those times of confusion had suffered grievously from a number of little petty noblemen, possessed of castles, who lived upon plunder and rapine; and the effects of this society were so visibly advantageous to the public, that almost all the trading towns of *Germany* and *Flanders* sued for admission; so that, in one year after the institution, the confederacy included above threescore towns, together with a good number of noblemen, zealous to encourage the commerce of their subjects. This, in all probability, is the true epocha of the general union among the *hans towns*^m; tho' such a treaty had long before subsisted between *Lubec*, *Hamburgh* and *Bremen*; in consequence of which, vessels of war were maintained at the common charge, in order to protect their commerce; their bills were negotiated without difficulty, and a firm credit was mutually established among them.

Intestine troubles of Denmark. AT this period, however, neither these three cities, nor the noblemen of *Lower Saxony*, could engage in this association, because the war, in which they were involved by the *Danes*, would not permit them to contract new engagements. *Lubec* had fitted out a fleet against *Eric* king of *Denmark*, who had quarrelled with his three brothers; and they, finding themselves unable to cope with such an antagonist, had

¹ Chron. Fland. p. 59. DUMONT. Corp. Diplom. t. i. p. 205.

^m STRUV. per. vii.

solicited assistance of the regency of this town, as well as of the dukes of *Saxony*, and the marquis of *Brandenburg*. By means of these allies, the brothers *Abel*, *Canut*, and *Christopher*, maintained the war for some time, though with indifferent success, until a reconciliation was effected by the mediation of *Jean* of *Brandenburg*, and the dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunswick*. After this accommodation, king *Eric* was betrayed and murdered by the accomplices of his brother *Abel*, who immediately mounted the throne, and reigned with the most arbitrary sway. In particular, he imposed grievous taxes upon the *Friezelanders*; and they being incapable of raising the sums which he demanded, he laid waste their country with fire and sword, oppressing them to such a degree, that they became desperate, ran to arms, attacked him in his camp, routed his forces, and pursued him into a morass, where he perished.

His eldest son, *Waldemar*, being at that time prisoner to the archbishop of *Cologne*, his brother *Christopher* took the advantage of his nephew's absence to seize the crown of *Denmark*; and, under pretence of being guardian to *Abel*'s children, took possession of the duchy of *Sleswic*, which they inherited by the death of their father. The counts of *Holstein*, who were uncles to the children of *Abel* by the mother's side, after having made fruitless remonstrances to *Christopher* on the subject of this unjust encroachment, solicited aid of *John* and *Otho*, marquisses of *Brandenburg*, whose troops enabled them to retake the town of *Sleswic*, and reduce the rest of *Holstein* under their power; while the fleet of *Lubec* ravaged the coasts of *Scania*, and a rebellion broke out in the heart of *Denmark*.

CHRISTOPHER, thus hampered on all hands, gladly listened to proposals for an accommodation, which was concluded by the good offices of the dukes of *Saxony*, on condition that *Christopher* should restore the duchy of *Sleswic* to his nephews, and that they should renounce all pretensions to the crown. This affair being settled, young *Waldemar* was, after having been a prisoner four years, set at liberty, in consideration of a ransom paid to the archbishop of *Cologne*, by whom he had been arrested at *Bonn*, without any cause assigned^a.

DURING these transactions, an army of German crusaders, *A crusade* under the command of *Ottobarus* king of *Bohemia*, marched against the into *Prussia* to the relief of the *Teutonic* knights, who had *Prussians* been deprived of several towns, and cooped up in others, by

^a PONTAN. ref. Dan. Hist. BARRE, t. vi. p. 27 & seq.

the infidels of the country, reinforced with a body of *Tartars*. The *German* auxiliaries, being joined by the knights, worsted these idolaters in several encounters, and at last defeated them in a pitched battle; after which the town of *Elburg* surrendered at discretion, the *Prussian* generals were baptized, and, upon this occasion, the town of *Konigsberg* was founded by the *Teutonic* knights °.

The affairs of Italy. WHILE *William* endeavoured to establish himself in *Germany*, many, great part of *Italy* was involved in war and confusion.

The young *Conradin*, who still remained in *Germany* with his mother, *Elizabeth* of *Bavaria*, had been recommended by his father to the protection of the holy see; and *Mainfroy*, who acted as regent for the kingdom of *Sicily*, sent ambassadors to pope *Innocent* to signify this request. His holiness accordingly promised to defend his ward, and preserve for him the kingdom of *Jerusalem*, the duchy of *Suabia*, and the other great fiefs that belonged to the emperor *Frederic*; but, at the same time, he commanded *Mainfroy* to leave the administration of *Sicily* to the holy see, of which it was a fief, and excommunicated him for non-compliance. *Mainfroy*, who harboured the design of seizing the kingdom for himself, finding the pope's party very strong in *Sicily*, thought proper to temporize, and deprecate the wrath of *Innocent*, who, in consequence of this submission, freed him from the censure of the church, confirmed him in the principality of *Tarentum*, and appointed him his lieutenant for a great part of the kingdom. But this harmony was not of long duration: a nobleman of the pope's court being assassinated, *Mainfroy* was suspected of having contrived the murder, because he had been at enmity with the defunct; and though he exerted all his endeavours to acquit himself of the imputation, he could not vindicate his character to the satisfaction of the pope, who resolved to arrest and punish him as a malefactor. *Mainfroy*, apprized of his intent, retired to *Lucera*, where he was received with open arms by the *Saracen* inhabitants, who supplied him with money to raise an army; then, taking the field, he marched towards *Troja*, where he defeated the ecclesiastical troops commanded by the pope's legate. *Innocent* did not long survive this misfortune; and dying at *Naples*, was succeeded by *Alexander IV.* whose first care, after his elevation, was to check the progress of *Mainfroy*. He appointed a new legate to command the troops in the room of the cardinal *de Fresque*, who was lately dead, and bestowed upon the marquis of *Honebruc* the post of

Pope Innocent dies, and is succeeded by Alexander IV.

high-steward of the kingdom of *Naples*: but this new general, finding himself inferior in strength to *Mainfroy*, sued for peace, and an accommodation was effected, tho' the pope refused to ratify the treaty; and holding the throne of *Sicily* as vacant, offered it to *Edmund*, second son of *Henry III.* king of *England*: nay, he ordered a crusade to be preached up in that kingdom against *Mainfroy*; and, borrowing great sums of money upon the credit of the *English* monarch, reinforced his army commanded by cardinal *Octaviano Ubaldini*, and ordered him to besiege *Mainfroy* in *Nocera*. The prince ^{whose} of *Tarentum*, however, saved him that trouble, by attacking ^{troops are} him in the field with such fury, that the papal forces were ^{defeated by} intirely routed, and the victor made himself master of *Capua*, *Labour*, *Apulia*, and the greatest part of *Calabria*; thence he transported his army into *Sicily*, which he soon reduced to his obedience; while his holiness retired to *Viterbo*, to wait for a reinforcement from *England* P.

A. D.
1255.

MEAN while *William* king of the *Romans* undertook an ^{The king} expedition against the *Frizelanders*, who had revolted; be- ^{of the} cause he not only exacted homage of them to the counts of *Romans Holland*, but also wanted to abrogate their antient laws and ^{exposed to} privileges, which had been granted and confirmed by *Charle-* ^{unfortu-} *magne*. In the prosecution of this design, he met with a ^{nate acci-} misfortune which proved his last; for attempting to pass ^{dents, and} over the morasses, which were frozen, in order to recon- ^{slain by the} noitre the burgh of *Hochwend*, without any attendants, the ^{Frize-} ice broke, and he and his horse stuck fast in the mud. The ^{landers.} *Frizelanders*, seeing him in this situation, killed him⁹, with- ^{1256.} out knowing who he was, and carried his body into the burgh; but afterwards, understanding it was the emperor they had slain, they privately buried him in a burgher's house, being afraid of a severe chastisement from the princes of *Germany* for having shed the blood of their sovereign. Thus perished that unfortunate young prince, who, by his courage and accomplishments, was worthy of a better fate.

THE election of the landgrave of *Thuringia*, and that of ^{The em-} the count of *Holland*, both of which were effected by the ^{pire in-} practices of *Rome* against *Frederic II.* had divided *Germany* ^{volved in} into such violent factions, as intirely destroyed public peace ^{troubles} and good order. The clergy took arms against the laity, the ^{and confu-} weak were oppressed by the strong, and laws divine and hu- ^{sion.} man were disregarded; nay, to such a degree of disorder did those disturbances rise, that, as we have already observed,

P RAIN. ad ann. 1255.
HEISS, l. ii. c. 20.

9 KRANTZ, & GOB. PERS. ibid.

the towns of *Spire, Frankfort, Bingen, and Oppenheim*, were obliged to enter into an association for the security of commerce and the public roads; and *Louis* count Palatine, seeing the good effects of this confederacy, desired to be included in the league, which, by his example, was reinforced by a great number of other towns and noblemen (H). These confederates abolished the toll upon rivers, which had been introduced and augmented during the troubles; by which means the tranquillity of those countries was restored, tho' it was soon after destroyed by the villainy of those who wanted to convert the public disorder to their own private advantage.

AFTER the death of the emperor *William*, the princes several times assembled, in order to elect a successor; but these meetings produced no effect, because no prince would undertake such a weighty charge. At length, however, *Richard*, duke of *Cornwall*, brother to *Henry III.* king of *England*, is elected who accepted the proposal, and repaired to *Germany*^r. It is remarkable of this prelate, who was devoted to the court of *Rome*, that by his address he had, since the excommunication of the emperor, *Frederic II.* raised three princes successively to the dignity of the king of the *Romans*; namely, *Henry*, landgrave of *Thuringia*; *William*, count of *Holland*; and this *Richard*, duke of *Cornwall*. With regard to this

^r Vide auct. sup. citat. MEZER. Abr. Chron. t. i. p. 452.

(H) In this association were likewise engaged *Gerhard*, elector of *Mentz*; *Conrad*, elector of *Cologne*; *Arnold*, elector of *Triers*; *Jacob*, bishop of *Metz*; the abbot of *Fulde*; *Conrad Wilgraf*; *Richard*, count of *Catzenclubogen*; *Frederic*, count of *Luningen*; *Berthold*, count of *Zeigenhagen*; *Ernich* and *Galtfred* *Wiltgraves*; *Pappo*, lord of *Tubingen*; *Ulrich*, count of *Baor*; the count of *Wirnberg*; *Sophia*, landgravine of *Thuringia*; *Adelbert*, countess of *Leiningen*; the lords of *Tireberg*; *Ulrich* of *Mintzenberg*; *Gerlach* of *Limberg*; *Philip* of *Falckenstein*; the lord of *Starenberg*; the cupbearer of *Erbach*; the steward of *Altzey*; *Henry Ermberg*; *Runboft* of *Steinbach*; the cities of *Cologne, Strasbourg, Basil, Zurich, Fribourg, Brisac, Colmar, Schelestat, Haguenau, Weissenbourg, Neustadt, Wimpfen, Heidelberg, Lauterbourg, Freideberg, Witzlar, Gelnhausen, Marburg, Altsfeld, Fulde, Mulhausen, Achusenbourg, Seligstadt, Diebach, Bacharach, Wesel, Boppard, Andernach, Bonn, Neu, Aix la Chapelle, Munster, Bremen, Brawenberg, and Hirschfeld* (1).

(1) Heiss Hist. de l'Empire, l. xi. c. 19.

last, indeed; foreseeing the difficulty he should have in elevating him to the imperial throne, without the archbishop of *Mentz*, who had been kept prisoner a whole year by *Albert of Brunswick*, he engaged *Richard*, over and above the vast presents he had already made him, to pay eight thousand marks of silver for the ransom of that prelate, on condition he should assist him with his vote and interest for obtaining the crown. Accordingly the archbishop of *Mentz*, being released, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, where *Richard* was elected by the two archbishops, *Louis*, count Palatine, his brother *Henry*, and some others, who had been influenced by their advice^{*}. On the other hand, the archbishop of *and Al-Triers*, and some other princes, who refused to appear at *phonso*, this election, held another assembly, in which they declared *king of* for *Alphonso*, king of *Castile*, surnamed *The Astrologer*; and *Castile*, the archbishop having obtained by proxy the votes of the *chosen by* king of *Bohemia*, the duke of *Saxony*, and marquis of *Bran-* *another.* *denbourg*, in favour of that prince, dispatched into *Spain* the bishops of *Spire* and *Constance* to inform him of his election[†]. A. D. 1257. *Alphonso* accepted this honour with many acknowledgements; but as his war against the *Moors* hindered him from repairing into *Germany* at that time, he dismissed the ambassadors, after having treated them with great magnificence, and loaded them with presents for the electors and other princes of *Germany*. Nevertheless, those who had espoused the cause of *Richard* did not desist from their enterprize: he was *Richard is* conducted to *Aix la Chapelle*, and with his empress, *Sanc-* *crowned* *tia* (1), crowned on the *Ascension-day* by the hands of the *at Aix la* archbishop of *Cologne*. This ceremony being performed, *Chapelle;* he visited the towns situated upon the *Rhine*; namely, *Cologne*, *Boppard*, *Wesel*, *Mentz*, *Oppenheim*, *Frankfort*, *Worms*, and *Spire*, from which he received the usual homage. But this was no more than a fire of straw; for this prince being *and soon* exhausted by the great largesses he was obliged to make in *abandons* purchasing votes for his election, and finding himself with- *the empire;* out credit (K), friends, or resource, to maintain the imperial A. D. 1258. dignity,

* Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 559.
Cosm. æt. vi. c. 65. KRANTZ Sax. l. viii. c. 22.

† Id. ibid. GOB. PERs.

(1) *Richard's* wife *Sanctia*, or *Senébia*, was sister of *Philip*, count of *Falkenstein*. She was counted the most beautiful woman of her time, and captivated *Richard*, who married her at *Worms*, where their nuptials were celebrated with extraordinary magnificence (1).
(K) *Richard's* money intirely

(1) *Thibem. Chron. Hirsang. ad an. 1257.*

dignity, was obliged to abandon the empire and retire into *England*, where he ended his days. But he did not abandon *Germany* before he had committed the care of the empire to three vicars; namely, *Werner de Falkenstein*, archbishop of *Mentz*, who governed *Alsace*; *Philip de Falkenstein*, who held the administration of *Wetteravia*; and *Philip de Hohenfels*, who enjoyed the vicariate of *Worms*, *Mentz*, *Oppenheim*, and other cities.

RICHARD at his coronation invested *Ottocarus* with the kingdom of *Bohemia* and the duchy of *Austria*; in passing thro' *Flanders*, he received homage for the county of *Hainault* from *Guy de Dampierre*, whom he created a prince of the empire; together with the renunciation of prince *Henry* to the duchy of *Brabant* in favour of his brother *John*; and performed many other acts of sovereignty before he returned to *England*, where he still preserved the title of king of the *Romans*, though he did not concern himself much with the affairs of the empire (L).

AFTER *Richard's* abdication, *Alphonso* might have peaceably enjoyed the empire, had not his wars with the *Moors* rendered it impossible for him to quit his own dominions. Nevertheless, he likewise exercised the imperial authority with respect to *Frederic*, duke of *Lorraine*, who brought the news of his election. He gave him the investiture of his duchy in the most solemn manner, and assigned to him an annual pension of a thousand marks upon the city of *Burgos*, in consideration of the homage which he rendered to *Alphonso* in

^u GOLDAST. t. i. p. 311. Hist. de Hainault, l. x.

failing in the city of *Basil*, the princes of *Germany* took that opportunity of abandoning him; giving out, that they had not elected him for his personal merit, but solely for his riches; so they sent to him a formal act, by which they renounced the oath of allegiance they had taken; and he was fain to make the best of his way into his own country (1).

One may judge of these largesses, by which he was exhausted, by the immense sums he possessed before his election. Such

were his treasures, that he was in a condition to spend an hundred marks a day for the space of ten years, without touching the revenues he drew from *Germany* and *England* (2).

(L) Tho' we follow the most authentic historians in saying that *Richard* did not meddle with the affairs of the empire after his first return to *England*, *Thomas Wick*, in his chronicle, affirms, that he repaired at three different times to *Germany*, and even governed the empire till his dying-day (3).

(1) *Frag. Hist.* p. 93.

Chronica Compendios. ad an. 1269.

(2) *Matth. Paris*, p. 809.

(3) *Wic.*

the market-place of *Toledo*, according to the custom of *Castile*.

EACH competitor solicited the pope to confirm and support his election, and annul the pretensions of his antagonist. However, they received nothing but evasive answers from his holiness, who thought proper to observe a strict neutrality, that he might not, by espousing either party, give offence to one of two princes whose friendship was of such consequence to the *Roman* church. From the kingdom of *England* he drew very large subsidies, and the arms of *Alphonso* were necessary to curb the insolence of the infidels in *Spain*, over whom the king of *Castile* had obtained several complete victories.

FROM the departure of *Richard*, therefore, to the election which is of *Rodolphus*, the empire may be said to have been without involved a chief, and during that interregnum suffered all the miseries in trouble of a country abandoned to destruction. No laws were observed; no order was maintained; murder, theft, and all sorts of licence, were committed with impunity; the poor and weak subjected to the most miserable oppression; and the constitutions of the empire utterly neglected and laid aside. These disorders were not confined to *Germany*; they passed the *Alps*, and the greatest part of the cities and states of *Italy*, which depended upon the empire, either erected themselves into independent republics, or chose princes from the number of their own citizens. In short, universal confusion prevailed, and the accounts we have of these times partake of that confusion; for they generally content themselves with lamenting the deplorable condition of their country, without giving a regular detail of the incidents that constituted its distress. Bishops and prelates had recourse to arms, and shed each other's blood for the defence or augmentation of their benefices; implacable quarrels, and incessant wars, were kindled, and raged with great violence, among private noblemen, on the most trivial disputes; nothing but rapine and robbery prevailed; travelling was become unsafe; commerce almost altogether extinguished; and anarchy reigned in full despotism.

IN vain did the princes convoke assemblies to remedy these evils; as there was no supreme authority to influence and direct their deliberations, they produced nothing but fruitless debate and altercation; and sometimes the disputes of individuals terminated in open defiance and bloodshed.

HARRASSED by these miseries, the princes of *Germany* resolved to proceed to a new election; and *Werner*, archbishop of *Mentz*, convoked a diet, at which it was supposed, that

that young *Conradin* would be elevated to the imperial throne; but pope *Urban*, being apprized of their intention, forbade them to chuse the grandson of *Frederic II.* on pain of excommunication; and at the same time undertook to determine the difference between *Alphonso* of *Castile* and *Richard* of *England*, within a limited time; before the expiration of which he died; and *Clement IV.* his successor, left the dispute still undecided.

IN the mean time the empire continued to groan under the most severe oppression; and the people, instead of exercising their endeavours to re-establish the peace of their own country, were so infatuated, as to take up the cross, and form an expedition against the *Prussian* pagans, who had once more quarrelled with the *Teutonic* knights.

AT length the miseries of *Germany* became so intolerable, that leagues were formed between cities and states for their mutual security; noblemen engaged in contracts of confraternity, in consequence of which they obliged themselves to assist one another with their lives and fortunes; and in case either party died without male issue, his lands and superiorities devolved to the survivor. This kind of *pactum*, or covenant, was afterwards much practised in the empire; but could not take place without the sanction of the diet, and the consent of the states belonging to the contracting parties *.

IT was also during this interregnum that some princes, and a good number of cities, seeing their laws without force, and the empire without a chief, or judge, for the administration of justice, instituted certain arbitrators, whom they called *Austreges*, invested with sovereign power, to decide all differences and suits that might happen among the constituents. Their office lasted but six months, at the end of which others were chosen; and this tribunal continued in force till the reign of *Maximilian I.* who subjected their jurisdiction to the diet of the empire †.

BUT waving the particular scenes of violence, injustice, and usurpation, we shall proceed to the relation of an event, which, though it does not immediately regard the empire, is yet naturally connected with it, being an account of the last prince of one of its most powerful families.

MAINFROY, the emperor *Frederic's* bastard son, seeing the whole house of *Suabia* reduced to *Conradin*, who was an infant, had seized upon the kingdom of *Naples*, and become

* KILLINGERUS de Garnebiis Castorum Syntagma Juris pub. c. xxviii. parag. 21, 22, 23. † CORRINGIUS de Indic. Germ. parag. 53.

so powerful as to rouse the jealousy of pope *Urban IV.* A. D. who, that he might not have a master so near him, made an offer of the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* to *Charles* brother of *St. Lewis*, and count of *Anjou* and *Provence* ². The proposal was embraced; but *Urban* dying about the end of the year, was succeeded by *Clement IV.* who confirmed the choice of his predecessor, and pressed *Charles* to come without delay and take possession of his kingdoms. In consequence of these solicitations, that prince put himself at the head of a powerful army, marched directly to *Rome*, and the pope, who was not then in that city, having impowered five cardinals to perform the ceremony of his coronation, he, with his wife *Beatrice*, was crowned and consecrated, on condition of holding his kingdoms of the holy see, and of paying to it annually the sum of sixty thousand ducats, as a mark of acknowledgement. He then put himself at the head of his army, being reinforced by the *Guelphs*, who flocked to him from all quarters; and, after having gained several advantages, at last obtained a complete victory near *Benevento*, in which *Mainfroy* was slain, so that he found very little difficulty in making himself master of the *Two Sicilies* ². But, far from enjoying his good fortune with humanity, he let the wife and children of *Mainfroy*, together with several noblemen of that party, die in prison, and allowed his army to commit enormous cruelties, when the city of *Benevento* was taken.

MEAN while *Conradin* duke of *Suabia*, and son of the emperor *Conrad*, at that time no more than sixteen years of age, who lived at the court of *Lewis the Severe* duke of *Bavaria*, his own uncle by the mother's side, hearing the news of *Mainfroy's* death, assumed the title of king of the *Two Sicilies*, which belonged to him by right of inheritance, and, being excited by the *Gibelines*, who were afraid that the *Guelphs* would grow too powerful by the support of *Charles of Anjou*, he resolved to hazard every thing for a crown, to which he had such an indisputable claim. Accordingly he levied forces, with which he marched into *Italy*, defeated one of the lieutenants of *Charles*, and, flushed with this victory, began to flatter himself with the hopes of being proclaimed emperor, especially when he had brought over to his party a *German*, named *Honorius*, his own relation, and a senator of *Rome*. With this expectation he marched towards that capital, and was received with great magnificence, as emperor, by *Don Henry of Castile*, governor of the city, who, having

² Ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 363. ² Id. p. 564. MEZ.
Abr. Chron. tom. i. p. 457. MACH. Hist. di Fir. lib. i.

Henry of Castile. been expelled from his own country by his brother *Alphonso*, the nominal emperor, had thrown himself into the arms of the pope, and was now become an enemy to *Charles*, because he thwarted him in his designs upon the kingdom of *Sardinia*.

Defeated by Charles, taken in disguise, together with his friend Frederic duke of Austria. CHARLES, on *Conradin's* arrival in *Italy*, had repaired to *France* for a reinforcement, by which he found himself at the head of a very powerful army when he returned to *Italy*, and encountering *Conradin*, who had by this time made himself master of *Sicily*, gave him battle near *Alva*, where he thought he could avail himself of an advantageous post which he had taken. He concealed some of his best troops behind a rising ground, and, after the battle had continued upwards of three hours with equal fury on both sides, he ordered them to quit the place of ambush, and charge the forces of *Conradin*, who, being already fatigued, were utterly defeated. *Conradin*, his cousin *Frederic of Austria*, who had accompanied him in this expedition, and *Henry of Castile*, betook themselves to flight, but were apprehended on the road in the disguise of grooms, and by *Charles* committed to close prison. Some time after, resolving to accompany his brother *Saint Lewis* in his expedition to *Africa*, and being afraid to leave these prisoners behind in a kingdom full of faction and revolt, he ordered them to be tried by the syndics of all the cities of the realm, and these judges condemned *Conradin* and *Frederic* to death as perturbators of the repose of the church (M). They were accordingly beheaded on a scaffold in the middle of the city of *Naples*, to the eternal reproach of *Charles*, and the scandal of humanity; for *Conradin* had been guilty of nothing but endeavouring to retrieve his inheritance, and *Frederic of Austria* had assisted him out of pure friendship and generosity. Much about the same time *Conrad* prince of *Antioch*, son of *Frederic*, who was a bastard of the emperor *Frederic II.* having come from the east to the assistance of *Conradin*, was taken by *Charles*, and hanged like a malefactor. Thus perished by the hands of the common hangman the last of that glorious race of *Swabian* princes, which had produced so many kings and emperors. By this execution also the family of *Austria* was extinct ^b (N).

Tried, condemned, and beheaded, in the city of Naples.
A. D.
1268.

POPE

^b Ann. Boiôr. lib. vii. p. 566. Mez. Abr. Chron. tom. i. p. 459. MACH. Hist. de Fir. lib. i.

(M) Pope *Clement* is said to have advised *Charles* to this barbarous step, by saying on

his death-bed, *Conradi vita, Caroli mors.* (N) *Conradin*, when he appeared upon the scaffold, pulled off

POPE Clement IV. survived this barbarous homicide but one month, and his death was succeeded by a vacancy in the papal chair that lasted two years and nine months before it was filled by *Thibaut of Placentia*, who assumed the name of *Gregory X.* As for the desolation of *Germany*, it continued till after the death of *Richard of England*, when the princes assembled, and, notwithstanding the remonstrances of *Alphonso*, and the intrigues of *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, raised the count of *Hapsburg* to the imperial throne.

C H A P VI.

The History continued to the Interregnum occasioned by the Death of Henry VII.

R O D O L P H U S I.

R O D O L P H U S, the first of that name, count of *Haps-* Some ac-
burg, was educated under *Frederic II.* who held him count of
up to the baptismal font, but is afterward's said to have taken Rodol-
umbrage at the prediction of an astrologer, who prophesied phus pre-
that the count would ascend the imperial throne, on the fail- vious to
ure of *Frederic's* issue, which, at that time, consisted of ten his election.
persons. *Rodolphus*, perceiving the emperor's favour sensibly
cooled upon this account, dexterously withdrew himself from
his court, on some plausible pretence, and afterwards re-
tired to that of *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, where he exercised
the office of grand marshal with great reputation. From
thence he returned to his own territories, where, by his pru-

off one of his gloves and threw it among the croud, as a mark of investiture to his heir, whom he declared to be *Frederic* of *Castile*, the son of his aunt; the glove was taken up by a gentleman called *Henry Trasches de Walpurg*, who carried it to the king of *Arragon*. The duke of *Austria's* head being separated from his body, *Conradin* took it up and kissed it with great tenderness, bewailing the un-

happy fate of that prince, and upbraiding himself as the cause of his death: then he kneeling, submitted to the fatal stroke, and the executioner was afterwards put to death, that he might not live to boast of having shed such noble blood (1). This cruel execution was performed in the market-place of *Naples*, before the church of the *Carmelites*, in which *Conradin* lies interred (2).

(1) *Brant. dans la Discours sur la Mort de Marie Reine d'Ecosse.* (2) *Re-
marq. sur l'Hist. de l'Empire, par Heiss, liv. ii. c. xxi. See the History of Na-
ples.*

dent and gallant behaviour, he acquired authority among all his neighbours. He had, during the troubles in *Germany*, performed divers exploits, which augmented his fame and patrimony at the same time. His first military expedition was against *Hugo Trieffenstein*, who had said something to his prejudice. Him he slew in combat, and afterwards took possession of his lands; then he turned his arms against *Rodolphus of Loffenberg*, his own relation: but that war was terminated by an accommodation. He, in consequence of a quarrel with *Hartman* count of *Kyburg*, seized upon his succession for his own use, defeated the counts of *Toggenburg*, and ravaged their country; and putting himself at the head of a troop of gentlemen devoted to the emperor *Conrad IV.* pillaged the suburbs of *Basil*, and burnt a monastery; for which outrage, he and all his companions were excommunicated. The citizens of *Straßburg* having quarrelled with their bishop, and reflecting on the advantages they had derived from the protection of *Albert of Hapsburg*, they now solicited that of his son *Rodolphus*, chose him chief of their militia, and, under his conduct, took the fortrefs of *Haldemburg*. They likewise surprized *Colmar* and *Mulhausen*, and at last obtained a complete victory over their bishop, who, in a few days, died of grief for this overthrow. His successor sued for peace, which was granted by *Rodolphus* and the citizens of *Straßburg*, who erected a stone statue in gratitude to their deliverer. But, two years before this event, the citizens of *Zurich*, harrassed by the nobles of their neighbourhood, had proposed to chuse *Ulrick* of *Regensberg* for their protector, and he refusing that office, unless they would yield to him the perpetual superiority of their town, they put themselves under the auspices of *Rodolphus*, who was his declared enemy, and three years were consumed in hostilities and mutual incursions; but at length fortune declared in favour of *Rodolphus*, who reduced *Ulrick* to a dependence upon that very city, the government of which he had refused. Nor was the piety of *Rodolphus* inferior to his valour (O).

When

(O) Being one day at the chace, it began to rain with such violence as rendered the road extremely dirty, when chancing to meet a poor curate on foot, carrying the host to a sick person, he was so much affected with the sight of this good priest labouring through

the mud, that he immediately alighted, saying, it ill became him to ride on horseback, while the priest who carried our Saviour was walking on foot, and not only mounted the curate, but attended him bareheaded to the sick man's house, and afterwards reconducted him to

When count *Werner* of *Falkestein* was chosen archbishop of *Mentz*, and set out on his journey to *Rome*, *Rodolphus* gave him a convoy, with a strong body of troops, as far as the *Alps*, and, waiting for his return in the same place, reconducted him in safety to his see; an obligation for which the archbishop assured him he would take all occasions to express his gratitude; and he afterwards kept his word.

THE empire had been now fifteen years without a chief, that is, since the abdication of *Richard*; for though *Alphonso* took the title of emperor, and promised from time to time to repair into *Germany*, he never could find leisure for that expedition. The *German* princes, tired with his delays, and seeing the empire more and more involved in disorder and confusion, and being moreover pressed by pope *Gregory X.* who threatened, if they should longer delay an election, to provide for the necessities of the empire by his own authority; induced, I say, by these motives, the princes intreated the elector of *Mentz* to call a diet at *Frankfort*. There, notwithstanding the protestations which *Alphonso's* ambassadors made against all that should be done to the prejudice of their master, and the pretensions of the king of *Bohemia* and some other princes to the imperial crown, the archbishop of *Mentz* had such influence in the diet, as to engage a majority in favour of the count of *Hapsburg*, whose merit he did not fail to extol.

A. D.

1273.

Pope Gre-

gory X.
presses the
princes of
the empire
to a new
election.

THE beginning of this assembly was very tumultuous. The deputies of *Ottocarus* pretended that their master had two votes, as king of *Bohemia* and duke of *Austria*; but his pretensions were opposed by the count *Palatine*, who affirmed that he had usurped *Austria*, and that he could not justly avail himself of the investiture he had received from *Richard* of *England*, whom *Germany* had never acknowledged as emperor; besides this contest, which could not be determined, another dispute arose about the choice of a king of the *Romans*. *Menhard* count of *Tyrol* proposed three persons, namely, *Albert* count of *Goritz*, *Rodolphus* of *Hapsburg*, and *Barnard*, who called himself duke of *Carinthia*, though he

* Vide ARSTIR. Chron. Basil. BOECLER. de Rod. Hapfb. Ann. Colmar. HEISS, liv. ii. c. 22.

his church, where the priest, amazed at such an extraordinary instance of zeal, gave him his benediction, and, being inspired by the Holy Ghost, prophesied that he and his descendants would sit upon the imperial throne (3).

(3) Heiss, ubi sup.

was

Rodol-
phus is
chosen em-
peror.

was not in possession of that province. Each of the three had partizans at the assembly, but the strongest party declared for *Rodolphus*. Some of the electors, indeed, were of opinion, that they ought rather to chuse a prince of higher rank and greater power (P), who might be more enabled by his authority to retrieve the reputation of the empire; but the archbishop of *Mentz* replying, that this end would be better answered by a wise, valiant, and experienced prince, than by one who had nothing to recommend him but his riches and power, his brethren of *Cologne* and *Triers* favoured him with their votes, without further hesitation. The secular princes, and in particular *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria*, and *Albert* duke of *Saxony*, who were unmarried, reflecting that *Rodolphus* had six fair daughters, of whom they might have their choice in marriage, while, by means of the rest, he might make other advantageous alliances, assented to the opinion of the ecclesiastic electors, and unanimously gave their voices in favour of count *Rodolphus*. The news of his elevation was brought to him by *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg*, while he was engaged in the siege of *Basil* (Q), in consequence

He repairs
to Frank-
fort, and
is crowned
at Aix la
Chapelle.

of the protection he had granted to one of the factions of that city. He no sooner received this intimation, than he repaired to *Frankfort*, where, having accepted the imperial dignity, he was conducted by all the princes to *Aix la Chapelle*, and there crowned with the usual solemnity^d (R).

HAVING

^d Avent. Ann. Boior. p. 567.

(P) This seems to have been an unreasonable objection, when we consider the birth and fortune of *Rodolphus*. He was the son of *Albert* count of *Hapsburg* and *Itha*, daughter of the count of *Bregentz*, descended by his father from the counts of *Thierstein*, near *Basil* in *Switzerland*, as may be proved by the antiquities of the monastery of *Mucy*; and by the mother, from the counts of *Hapsburg*. At the time of his election there was not a count in *Germany* who could vie with him in wealth and extent of dominion; besides the county of *Hapsburg*,

which he inherited from his father, he possessed three more; namely, *Kybourg*, *Baden*, and *Lentzenbourg*, which last he enjoyed by his uncle *Hartman*, and by his wife he obtained the landgraviate of *Alsace* (4).

(Q) *Henry* of *Neuchâtel*, bishop of *Basil*, was so confounded and chagrined at the news of this election, that he fell sick of mortification, and is said to have addressed himself to God in these words:

Sede fortiter Domine Deus; ahas, Rodolphus locum occupabit tuum (5).

(R) At this coronation, the

(4) *Remarg. sur Heiss, ubi, sup.*
dolph I.

(5) *Vide Memoir. sur l'Art. de Rodolphe*
princes

HAVING thus taken possession of the imperial throne, his first care was to suppress the rapine, robberies, and murders, which had so long prevailed with impunity, and he succeeded so well in his endeavours, that, in a little time, peace and security were re-established^a, for he destroyed in *Thuringia* sixty castles, which were the retreat of banditti, and ordered ninety-nine highwaymen to be hanged at one time in the city of *Erfurt*. A certain *Hungarian* count, having for some years publicly murdered, robbed, and pillaged the country, the emperor, who then resided at *Vienna*, would not make war upon a whole country for the villainy of one man, and therefore employed the count's friends to reclaim him by remonstrance and admonition. They accordingly made such good use of their exhortations, that he was persuaded to wait upon the emperor in person, after he had been assured that he had nothing to fear from his resentment. He was very kindly received by *Rodolphus*, had the honour to eat at his table, and even to drink out of his own glass (S). After this hospitable entertainment, the emperor having remonstrated to him the injury he did himself by his enormous actions, he swore by all that was sacred that he would reform his life, and upon that promise was suffered to retire towards his own habitation. But he was beset by his enemies on the road, and thrown into a river, where he perished^f. Thus was the country rid of a notorious thief, without any prejudice to the emperor's word of honour (T).

A. D.

1274.

He suppresses robbery, and restores the security of the public roads.

^a Id. *ibid*.

^f HEISS, liv. ii. c. 22.

HIS

princes making some scruple of taking the accustomed oaths, because the sceptre was wanting, without which they could neither give nor receive the investiture of their fiefs, *Rodolphus* took a crucifix from the altar, saying "This is the representation and sign of him by whom we were saved, let us use it instead of a sceptre." They accordingly agreed to the expedient, and were invested with their fiefs with a crucifix (6).

(S) Upon this occasion, "I have now, said he, no reason to be afraid; for I have

"drank with the best man on earth (7)".

(T) Towards the end of the Interregnum many of the princes and towns caused their peculiar laws to be reduced to a body, and published. The principal were those of *Magdeburg*, *Saxony*, and *Suabia*: the first of these were adopted by the states of *Prussia*, and afterwards received in several provinces, that did not belong to Germany. The *Mirror of the Saxon Law* was likewise composed during the anarchy, by one *Epko*, or *Repko*, who says

(6) *Johan. Guspinian.*

(7) *Heiss, ubi sup.*

He lays
claim to
the inher-
itance of
Conradin.

His election
is confirm-
ed by the pope.

HIS son *Albert* having married *Elizabeth* daughter of the count de *Tyrol*, and uterine sister of *Conradin*, who was executed at *Naples*, he laid claim to the rich inheritance of that young prince, consisting of *Alsace* and part of *Suabia*, and, by force of arms, wrested them from several noblemen who had seized those fiefs, during the troubles of the interregnum, and now engaged in an association to defend their unjust acquisitions. The next step which *Rodolphus* took was to solicit the pope's confirmation of his imperial dignity, which he obtained, after his ambassadors had sworn in his name that he would assert and defend the holy see against all its enemies, and never make any attempts to the prejudice of its vassals, particularly of the illustrious *Charles* king of *Sicily* and his heirs &c.

THIS complaisance of the pope was owing to the hope he had entertained of engaging *Rodolphus* in a crusade for the relief of the Christians in *Palestine*, the expence of which was to be defrayed by the tythe of all church revenues, to be raised for that purpose for the space of six years, according to the decree of the council held at *Lyons*.

Alphonso
renounces
his claim
to the em-
pire.

ALPHONSO of *Castile*, far from renouncing his pretensions to the imperial crown, loudly protested against these proceedings of the pope, whom he visited at *Beaucaire* in *Provence*, in order to engage him in his interest: but *Gregory* was deaf to all his remonstrances; and, though he returned to *Castile* very ill satisfied with the result of this interview, and even affected to reassume the imperial ornaments, which he had for some time laid aside, he was at last, by the admonitions of the archbishop of *Séville*, prevailed upon to renounce his claim to the empire; and, in consideration of this self-denial, the pope permitted him to lay a tax upon the clergy, for the expence of the war against the *Moors*, who threatened to attack him from all quarters ^h.

§ STRUV period. ix. p. 518.
c 22.

^h MARIANA, lib. xiii.

he had collected the laws of *Constantine* and *Charlemagne*. This work, which first appeared in *Latin*, and was afterwards translated into the *German* language, though not recommended by any public authority, acquired great reputation thro' all the empire. Before its ap-

pearance the laws of *Charlemagne* and the *Otto's* were very little known. The *Germans* had forgot the statutes enacted in the assemblies of their nation, and followed implicitly the codes of *Theodosius* and *Justinian* in all their tribunals and courts of justice (8).

(8) *Conring. de Orig. Jur. Germ.*

RODOLPHUS

RODOLPHUS having in a great measure pacified the troubles of the empire, assembled a diet at *Mentz*, where he granted new privileges to *Goslar* and other cities, and confirmed those which had been conferred by his predecessors. Upon this occasion also the deliberations of the assembly turned upon certain noblemen who had protested against the election of the count of *Hapsburg*, particularly *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, against whom they had other causes of discontent; *Ottocarus king of Bohemia* for the states of the duchy of *Austria*, which, after the death of *Frederic* their last duke, had been seized upon by *Ottocarus*, complained of the oppression they suffered under the government of the usurper, from which they begged to be delivered. *Ottocarus protests against his election.*

MOVED by these solicitations, *Rodolphus* convoked a diet at *Angsburg*, to which *Ottocarus* sent ambassadors, who, instead of doing homage in his name to the emperor, whom he had not yet acknowledged, one of them began a long harangue, in which he disavowed and declared void the election of *Rodolphus*. The members, incensed at this presumption, interrupted the discourse, and ordered the ambassadors to be turned out of the assembly; then they declared *Ottocarus* a rebel to the empire, and concluded, that, as he had unjustly taken possession of *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Carniola*, and *Carinthia*, the emperor should divest him of these dominions. Ambassadors being sent to him with a notification of this sentence, he arrogantly answered, that as to *Rodolphus*, who was formerly his servant, he had already paid him his wages; that he possessed *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carniola*, as the dowry of his wife; and that as he had purchased *Carinthia* with ready money, he was resolved to maintain himself in his lawful possession. The ambassadors having made this report to the diet at *Angsburg*, it was decreed that he should be chastised for his disobedience, and those lands reunited to the empire (U). *Rodolphus* undertook to execute this resolution, and raised a sufficient body of forces for the occasion; but, before he turned his arms against *Ottocarus*, he resolved to subdue and chastise all the other noblemen, who refused to

Insults the emperor and the diet.
A. D. 1275.

(U) One of the emperor's domestics offered, for a good recompence, to kill the king of *Bohemia*, while he was hunting; but this proposal was rejected with disdain by *Rodolphus*, who said, that, although *Ottocarus* was his inveterate enemy, nothing should ever prevail upon him to transgress the bounds of justice and moderation (9).

(9) *Idem ibid.*

the empire, and makes peace with Henry of Bavaria. acknowledge him as emperor. Accordingly he fell upon the marquis of *Baden* and the counts of *Neuburg* and *Fribourg*, who were soon reduced, and compelled not only to do him homage for the lands they legally possessed, but also to restore some fiefs they had unjustly seized in the *Brisgaw*, *Suabia*, and on the banks of the *Rhine*. He afterwards attacked and defeated *Eberhard* count of *Wirtemberg*, surnamed *the Quarrelsome*, and obliged *Henry* of *Bavaria* to sue for peace, which was granted by the intercession of his brother *Lewis* of *Bavaria* count *Palatine*, on condition that *Henry's* son *Otho* should marry the emperor's daughter *Catherine*, on whom he should bestow, by way of dower, all the fiefs he possessed on the river *Ens*; that he should pay to *Rodolphus* forty thousand ounces of gold, and take the oath of allegiance to him for all the towns and territories in his possession¹.

A. D.

1276.

RODOLPHUS, having humbled those petty adventurers, marched into *Austria*, accompanied by the archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, the bishops of *Wurtzburg*, *Ratisbon* and *Passau*, and *Lewis* count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*. But the prelates being sick of the war, and unwilling to see the king of *Bohemia* altogether reduced, mediated an accommodation in his favour, on condition that he should be contented with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and hold them as fiefs of the empire (X).

Ottocarus does homage to Rodolphus for Bohemia and Moravia.

Ottocarus was fain to comply with these terms, and to receive from his imperial majesty the investiture of his dominions, which was performed in the island of *Camberg*, in the *Danube*, with great magnificence, under a pavilion which was close shut up, in order to spare *Ottocarus* the mortification of being seen in such an attitude of humility by more people than those whose presence was absolutely necessary; but in the midst of the ceremony, the pavilion, either by accident or design, opening on both sides, discovered *Ottocarus* on his knees before the emperor, a circumstance which greatly mortified the king, and concurred with the instigations of his wife, who was a *Russian* princess, and remarkably haughty,

(X) In this accommodation it was stipulated, that *Austria* should revert to the emperor its lawful lord; that *Carinthia* and the other provinces of *Ulrich* should be given in dowry with *Agnes* the daughter of *Ottocarus*, who should be married to *Rodolphus* the emperor's fifth son; and, in order to strengthen this treaty, it was also agreed, that *Jutta*, one of the emperor's daughters, should marry *Wincestus*, the son of *Ottocarus*, tho' he was at that time but seven years of age (10).

to induce him to renounce the treaty he had made, and have recourse again to arms, for reducing *Austria* again to his obedience ^{*Renounces his engagements at the instigation of his wife, but is defeated and slain.*} ^{*his engagements at the instigation of his wife, but is defeated and slain.*} ^{*his engagements at the instigation of his wife, but is defeated and slain.*} The emperor no sooner understood this breach of faith, than he assembled his army, and marching against *Ottocarus*, as a perfidious infractor of the peace, a battle ensued, in which the king was slain (Y). After this victory, *Rodolphus* gave the government of *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, to his eldest son count *Albert*, whom he afterwards, in a diet at *Augsburg*, publicly invested with the dukedom of *Austria*, which was incorporated with the college of the princes, and at the same time he invested *Rodolphus*, another of his sons, with the county of *Suabia*, which belonged to him in right of his wife *Ann* countess of that country (Z). He likewise resolved to adhere to the articles of the last treaty, and, for that purpose, put young *Winceslaus*, whom he had destined for his son-in-law, under the tutelage of *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*.

THEN he declared war against *Henry* of *Bavaria*, who had favoured *Ottocarus*, in hopes of sharing the spoils, should that prince be victorious. His brother *Lewis* count *Palatine*, and son-in-law to the emperor, though he had hitherto been firmly attached to *Rodolphus*, in expectation of recovering the investiture of *Austria*, being by this time disappointed in his hope, was on the eve of declaring openly for his brother, that, by their united force, they might compel the emperor to bestow the duchy of *Austria* upon a *Bavarian* prince.

* *ÆN. SYLV. Bohem. c. 27. DUBR. l. xvii. BONF. lib. viii. KRANTZ. Wand. lib. vii. c. 30. AVENT. ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 570.*

(Y) In this battle the emperor's horse being killed, he fought on foot with great gallantry, until he was remounted by *Bertold Capella*; then he furiously charged among the thickest of the foe, and by his personal valour contributed to the fortune of the day (11).

(Z) About this time appeared one *Tilo Collup*, a man of some eloquence and undaunted effrontery. He pretended to be

the real emperor *Fredric II.* who had, for thirty years, been obliged to be concealed in the *Holy Land*, to evade the fury of the Infidels. He claimed the empire as his right, and altho' he was generally considered as a fanatic, he found means to engage some people in his cause; but he was apprehended at *Westzlar*, and, with all his adherents, condemned to the flames (12).

(11) *Aventin. ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 571. ubi sup. Avent. ann. Boior. p. 572.*

(12) *Remarg. sur Heiss,*

But, before they could join and take proper measures for maintaining the war, *Rodolphus* fell suddenly upon *Henry*, whom he entirely defeated; so that the project fell to the ground, and the emperor granted him peace, though upon conditions that were very hard upon his son *Otho*, who had married *Catherine* the daughter of *Rodolphus*; for he obliged him to restore *Litz*, *Steyer*, and the other towns above the river *Ens*, which he had given to that princefs by way of dower.

Has an interview with the pope at Laufanne, and promises to go to the Holy Land.

RODOLPHUS, without going in person into *Italy*, terminated all his differences with the pope, by means of ambassadors. In the year of his coronation *Gregory X.* having held a council at *Lyons*, at which *Alphonso* king of *Castile*, and *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, had, by their ambassadors, demanded the imperial crown, *Rodolphus* sent thither his chancellor *Otho*, with full power to confirm all the privileges which his predecessors had granted to the holy see, provided the empire should in no shape be dismembered. Accordingly *Otho* agreed and swore, in his master's name, to a certain number of articles concerning the defence of the lands belonging to the holy see, and *Gregory* on his side confirmed the imperial crown to *Rodolphus*, rejecting the claims of his competitors¹. Next year there was an interview between the emperor and the pope, in the city of *Lausanne*, where the former promised to restore to the church all the countries between *Radicofani* and *Ceperano*, the exarchate of *Ravenna*, *Pentapolis*, the marquisate of *Ancona*, the duchy of *Spoletto*, the estate of the countess *Mathilda*, the county of *Bertinoro*, and all the lands mentioned in the different privileges granted by *Lewis* the emperor. On these conditions the crown was again confirmed to *Rodolphus*, who engaged not only to repair to *Rome*, at the feast of *Pentecost* next ensuing, to receive the crown from the hands of the pope, but likewise to set out for *Palestine*, immediately after the ceremony of his coronation²; and, as a mark of this his intention, he at that time took the cross. This last condition, in all probability, was stipulated by the pope, in order to hinder the emperor from enterprizing any thing in *Italy*. But *Rodolphus* made no preparations either to go to *Rome* or the *Holy Land*: on the contrary, he empowered ambassadors to receive the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants of the cities of *Romagnia*, and the neighbouring countries; an instance of disregard which pro-

¹ *MARIAN. cum Surit. Ind. lib. ii. BARON. Cart. i. tom. i. p. 352.*

² *KRANTZ, Sax. l. viii. c. 30.*

voked his holiness to such a degree, that he had recourse to a sentence of excommunication ¹¹.

AFTER Gregory's death, *Innocent V.* wrote to the emperor, inviting him to send ambassadors to *Rome*, to negotiate an accommodation with the holy see, forbidding him at the same time to go thither in person, until the peace should be concluded, and the dispute terminated between him and *Charles of Anjou*, about the vicariate of *Tuscany*, and the county of *Provence*. The king of *Sicily* had obtained the vicariate during the interregnum, and still kept it, after the election of an emperor, when he had no longer any just claim to that office. *Rodolphus*, at the same time, disputed with the son of *Charles* the possession of *Provence* and *Forcalquier*, which he affirmed had devolved to the empire, of which they were fiefs, by the death of *Raymond Berenger*, who left no male issue, and had no power to bequeath his dominions to heirs female, in right of whom they were claimed and possessed by *Charles of Anjou*.

POPE *John XXI.* had writ to the same purpose, and laid *Performs* injunctions upon the archbishop of *Mentz* to persuade the emperor to perform his promises; finally, *Nicholas III.* pressed him to confirm the articles he had promised to *Gregory*, which he now willingly performed, not only in consideration of the vicariate of *Tuscany*, which was at length yielded to him by *Charles* king of *Sicily* (A), at the desire of the pope, but also because he was inclined to a reconciliation with the holy see. His ambassador therefore renewed and confirmed, in full consistory at *Rome*, all the promises which he had made; and the nuncio, whom the pope sent into *Germany*, obtained a full ratification of these articles, as well from the emperor as from the princes of the empire. Notwithstanding this agreement, the pope, far from having any real friendship

¹¹ NAUCIER, vol. ii. gen. 48. p. 968. RECORD. MALESPIGNI, in Hist. Florent. c. 99. VILLAN. in Hist. Florent. TRITH. Chr. Hirfang. ad. ann. 1273. • RAIN. ad. ann. 1279. n. 45.

(A) By the mediation of the pope, a peace was concluded between the emperor and the king of *Sicily*, on condition that *Charles* should renounce the vicariate of *Tuscany*; that he and his heirs should possess the provinces of *Provence* and *Forcalquier*, as fiefs of the empire, and the accommodation was cemented by a match between *Charles Martel* the grandson of his *Sicilian* majesty, and *Clementia* the emperor's daughter (13).

(13) Rain. ad. ann. 1279. n. 10.

for *Charles* king of *Sicily*, wished for nothing so much as his destruction, and the expulsion of his family from the throne of *Naples*. *Charles* had affronted his pride in rejecting with disdain a match that he proposed between his nephew and one of the daughters of the prince of *Salerno*; and this slight operated so strongly upon his resentment, that he engaged in the conspiracy of *John di Procida*, which broke out in the massacre, known by the appellation of the *Sicilian Vespers*, and had well-nigh terminated in the ruin of his *Sicilian* majesty.

The emperor invests his son *Albert* with the duchy of *Austria*, &c.

A. D.

1283.

THE emperor still resided in *Austria* or *Stiria*, insensibly preparing the people of these provinces for becoming subjects to his family: he granted privileges to the clergy, bestowed new dignities upon the noblemen, diminished the taxes, built and repaired public edifices, and, in a word, behaved with such generosity and moderation, as won their hearts, and they unanimously demanded a prince of the imperial house. In consequence of this agreeable request, he founded the *German* princes, and finding them favourably disposed towards him and his family, convoked a diet at *Augsbург*, where his son *Albert* received the investiture of *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Carniola*, and the march of the *Vinides*: but this ceremony was not performed until *Rodolphus* had obtained the consent of *Albert* duke of *Saxony*, who had more weight in the diet than any other nobleman of *Germany*. At the same assembly *Rodolphus* the emperor's second son was invested with *Suabia*, which had devolved to the emperor upon the death of *Conradin*, who left no issue; and *Carinthia*, with the march of *Trevisano*, was bestowed upon the count of *Tyrol* P (C).

IMMEDIATELY

* See the History of *Naples*.
tom. i. parti. p. 247.

P DUMONT. Corp. Diplom.

(C) The ceremonial of taking possession of this duchy is so singular, that we shall describe it for the entertainment of the reader. Near the town of *St. Voit*, in a pleasant valley, are the ruins of an old town, the name of which is not known: in the neighbourhood of these is a piece of marble set upright, and upon this stands a peasant of a certain family, which has

an hereditary right to take that station. On his right hand is a black meagre bullock, on his left a lean mare, and all around him a crowd of peasants and other people. Then the prince, environed by his officers, advances with the standards and marks of principality. Count *Goritz*, who is marshal of the court, goes first, with twelve small standards, and is followed by

IMMEDIATELY after the diet, the emperor marched into *Alface*, to the assistance of the bishop of *Basil*, from whom the count *de Montbelliard* had taken the castle of *Porentrui*, which *Rodolphus* in person besieged, and restored to the right owner; then he appeased some quarrels which had produced a civil war among the inhabitants of *Mulhausen*, and cost their neighbours abundance of blood. But, notwithstanding all the care and industry he exerted in re-establishing peace and tranquility through the towns of *Germany*, the spirit of discord reigned in many cities, and even possessed the churches and religious communities. There was scarce a parish which did not feel the miseries of civil war. The different processions engaged each other in the streets: canons fought with their own bishops, and the burghers, as well as noblemen, decided the most trivial dispute by single combat. Nay, this absurd custom prevailed with such rage and barbarity, that it contributed as much as all the other wars to the depopulation of the empire.

ABOUT this period the pope used all his endeavours to execute the project for a crusade, which had been formed by *Gregory X.* and even began to levy through all the countries

by all the magistrates in their formalities, while the prince himself appears in the habit of a shepherd. He is no sooner perceived by the peasant on the stone, than he exclaims in the *Sclavonian* tongue, "Who is he that comes with such a magnificent train?" He is answered, "It is the prince of the country." The peasant asks again, "Is he an equitable judge, zealous for the good of his country? Is he of a liberal disposition? Does he deserve to be honoured? Is he an observer and defender of the catholic religion?" Being answered in the affirmative, "I desire to know, cries he, by what right he comes to take my place?" Then the count *de Goritz* exclaims,

"The favour is purchased of thee for sixty deniers: these beasts are thine: thou shalt have the cloaths the prince now wears, and thy family shall be exempted from taxes." Then the prince approaching, receives a box on the ear from the peasant, who exhorts him to be a good judge. So saying, he gives him his place, and carries off the bullock and the mare; the prince mounts the stone, brandishes his sword, promises to judge equitably, goes to hear mass, quits his pastoral garb for apparel more suitable to his quality, entertains the company, and returns to the stone, where he hears some caules, and receives homage from the vacant fiefs (14).

Diet at
Wirtz-
burg.

Irruption
of the
Cumani
into Hun-
gary.

A. D.

1285.

of Christendom, the tythes which had been granted for this purpose by the council at *Lyons*. *Rodolphus* convoked a diet at *Wirtzburg* to deliberate on this subject, and was not displeased to find all the princes, ecclesiastic as well as secular, averse to this imposition. Indeed his holiness could not have chosen a more improper season for carrying this design into execution. The emperor was intirely ingrossed by the measures he took to aggrandize his family, and establish his power. *Peter III.* of *Arragon* was employed in supporting his claim to *Sicily*; *Castile* was harrassed by a civil war, on the death of *Alphonso*; *Italy* was divided by a quarrel that raged between the *Genoese* and *Pisans*; the pope himself could hardly contain the *Romans* and subjects of the ecclesiastical state within the bounds of their duty; and *Hungary* was laid waste by the *Cumani*, a savage people, inhabiting part of *Walachia* and *Moldavia*, who poured like a deluge every year into *Hungary*, precisely about the time of harvest, and lived with their families and flocks until they had consumed all the fruits of the earth, and all the substance the country afforded; then they retired to their own habitations. These incursions were repeated for several seasons, and the *Hungarians*, quite dispirited under the government of *Ladislaus III.* a weak effeminate prince, till at length they derived courage from despair, and prevailed upon their monarch to lead them against the enemy. He accordingly levied an army, and took possession of the hills of *Krapatz*, by which the *Cumani* usually entered the kingdom; there waiting for a proper opportunity, attacked them, while they were engaged in the defiles, with such fury and unexpected resolution, that the greatest part of them were cut in pieces, and their king *Oleto-mer* obliged to retreat with the utmost precipitation: however, he soon returned with a reinforcement of *Tartars*, and penetrating as far as *Pesth*, destroyed the whole country with fire and sword.

HONORIUS IV. who about this time succeeded *Martin* in the papacy, began his reign by declaring one *Pinzivello Flesea*, a *Genoese*, vicar of the empire in *Italy*, and his office was confirmed to him by the emperor, who had no inclination to quarrel with the *Roman* see: this vicar, however, behaved with such insolence and indiscretion as attracted the hatred and contempt of the *Tuscans*; so that there was a necessity for divesting him of his dignity, and *Rodolphus* appointed in his room *Henry Crodeur*, bishop of *Basil*, his own chancellor, a no-

mination which was approved by the pope, in consideration of the emperor's relinquishing all the rights the empire still retained upon the exarchate of *Ravenna* [†].

ALTHOUGH *Martin* and his predecessors had often invited *Rodolphus* to come and receive the imperial crown, he would never go to *Rome*; but to those who pressed him to that journey, he used to repeat the fable of the fox, who refused to go and visit the sick lion, because he perceived the footsteps of a great many animals who went thither, but none of those who came back. In the same manner the emperor observed that many of his predecessors had gone to *Italy*, but that they seldom, if ever, returned, without the loss either of their rights or authority [‡]. He therefore contented himself with sending his chancellor into *Italy*, with power to receive, in his name, the homage and allegiance of the imperial towns, but they refused to take the oaths to a commissary; so that one would have thought *Rodolphus* should have reduced them to their duty by force: but being in no condition to take this step, he had recourse to the method of accommodation, and was the first emperor who sold these privileges and immunities which they have since enjoyed. The city of *Lucca* paid but twelve thousand crowns, those of *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Bologna*, paid but six thousand each, on condition, nevertheless, that they should still preserve their fidelity to the empire, of which they were members [§]. This conduct not a little tarnished the reputation of *Rodolphus*, who, in the sequel, was looked upon as an avartitious prince, who turned every thing to ready money (D).

HE ordained, with the consent of the states, that the German language only should be used in all proceedings at law, German

[†] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 209.
tom. i. p. 364.

[‡] SPOND. Contin. BARRE,
[§] MACH. Hist. de Fir. lib. i. SIGON.
de Regn. Ital. l. xx. in fin. ex Blondo. Plat. Sabell. Trith.
KRANTZ. Nauc. Cuspin.

(D) *Lucensis*, who was an eye-witness of these transactions, affirms in chronic. MS. that *Rodolphus*, in the year 1283, sent his vice-chancellor into *Italy*, of whom many *Tuscan* cities purchased their liberties, and that in 1288, another chancellor, called *Princevalles*, sold the

emperor's jurisdiction to the inhabitants of *Lucca*, for the sum specified above; and that several cities redeemed themselves: but there is no mention made of *Florence*, the citizens of which deny that their liberties were purchased either from *Princevalles* or the emperor (15).

language
to be used
in law
proceed-
ings.

and in the diets, that every person might understand in his mother tongue the affairs in which his interest was concerned. In the same language also, he ordered the first constitution of the empire to be published, relating to every thing that was to be mutually observed between the ecclesiastics and secular princes and states, as well as the administration of justice, and the policy and subordination established among the vassals and subjects of the empire ^u.

The pope's
legate
holds a
council at
Wirtz-
burg.

A. D.
1287.

THE emperor's chancellor, whom the pope had created archbishop of *Mentz*, returned to *Germany*, loaded with gold and silver, and accompanied by a legate called *John Buccamali*, bishop of *Tusculum*, who held a council at *Wirtzburg*, where he published regulations to prevent disorders among the clergy, and demanded, in the pope's name, one fourth of the income of all benefices for the term of four years. This exaction was strenuously opposed by the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Triers*, and particularly by *Conrad* bishop of *Toul*, who expatiated upon the mischiefs which had been entailed upon the empire by such legations, and protested aloud, in the name of the *German* bishops, against every thing that should be done in the assembly in favour of the pope's demand. These remonstrances involved the council in such confusion and tumult, that the legate's nephew and another *Roman* nobleman lost their lives, and *Buccamali* himself, who escaped with great difficulty, excommunicated the bishop of *Toul*, as a person refractory to the orders of the holy see, and a perturbator of the public peace ^x.

The abbot
of St.
Gall is
humiliated.

THE council being finished, the emperor sent his son *Rodolphus* to reduce a number of freebooters who had made an irruption into *Switzerland*, while his eldest son *Albert* besieged the town of *Weill*, which was supported in its rebellion by *William* abbot of *St. Gall*. Both expeditions were attended with success; the banditti were destroyed, the town surrendered, and the abbot was obliged to submit to the emperor's decision, touching the privileges of his abbey. Then the young *Rodolphus* turned his arms against the town of *Lauterburg*, which had revolted in consequence of his endeavours to divest it of its antient privileges, and his father coming to his assistance, the place was besieged and obliged to surrender at discretion. But he did not meet with the same success in his war with *Anselm* lord of *Rapoltstein*, against whom he sent a body of troops, because he refused to divide his lands with his brother and nephew, in obedience to the

Lauter-
burg
deprived of
its privi-
leges, and
the trou-
bles of Al-
face ap-
peased.

^u AVENT. ann. Boior. p. 567. & seq. Ann. Suev. Crus. part iii. l. iii. c. 1.

^x FUGG. l. i. c. 15.

emperor's decree. The imperial troops were defeated, and *Anselmo* took several towns and fortresses, proceeding with such rapidity in his conquests, that the whole province of *Alface* was filled with the terror of his name; until the emperor, in person, arrived with a strong body of forces, and put an end to the war by an accommodation ¹. *Rodolphus* having in a great measure quelled the troubles of the empire, enjoyed the satisfaction of seeing his daughter *Judith* married to *Wincelaus* king of *Bohemia*, who, before the ceremony was performed, renounced by a solemn oath all his pretensions to the duchies of *Austria* and *Stiria*, as well as to the other fiefs belonging to the succession of *Frederic*, surnamed *The Warlike*, and the emperor, to whom this advantageous match could not but be very agreeable, confirmed by patent the honorary post of cup-bearer attached to the crown of *Bohemia*.

THIS affair being consummated, *Rodolphus* convoked a general assembly of the princes at *Erfort*, where the famous quarrel touching the succession of the landgraviate of *Thuringia*, was terminated, to the satisfaction of all parties, by a division, in consequence of which *Thuringia*, properly so called, remained in the hands of *Albert*, son of *Henry the Illustrious*, marquis of *Misnia*, and the western part, distinguished by the name of *Hesse*, devolved to the posterity of *Henry duke of Brabant* ². But the chief deliberations of this diet turned upon a dispute of much greater consequence. *Ladislaus III.* king of *Hungary*, having been killed by the *Cumani*, his kingdom was claimed by three competitors; namely, *Charles Martel* of *Sicily*, the nephew of *Ladislaus* by his sister *Mary*, *Andrew the Venetian*, grandson of king *Andrew*, and *Rodolphus*, who pretended that *Hungary* was a fief of the empire. *Nicholas IV.* who had succeeded *Honorius* in the papacy, sent a legate into *Germany*, to declare to the emperor that *Hungary* belonged to the church of *Rome*, and to forbid all persons whatever to interfere in any shape with the pretensions of the holy see. Notwithstanding this prohibition, *Andrew the Venetian* took possession of the throne; and, when the pope afterwards, by the hands of a legate, bestowed the crown upon *Charles Martel*, the emperor protested against the coronation, and bestowed the investiture of *Hungary* upon his own son *Albert*; but next year he renounced his pretensions in favour of *Charles*, who married his daughter.

¹ *Barre*, tom. vi. p. 225.
ii. p. 491.

² *Apud Meneken*, tom.

Rodolphus
marches
against
Otho
count Palatine of
Burgundy.

ter *Clementia*, according to the treaty formerly concluded between him and the king of *Sicily* ^a.

AFTER the diet at *Erfort*, *Rodolphus* took the field against *Otho* count *Palatine* of *Burgundy*, the declared enemy of the empire, who had taken the oath of allegiance to *Philip the Fair* king of *France*, and been formerly put to the ban of the empire, for that instance of apostacy. *Rodolphus* had defeated him in a pitched battle, and compelled him to sue for peace, which was granted : but now, being joined by the count *de Montbelliard*, he renewed the war, and the emperor marching against him, at the head of twenty thousand men, made himself master of *Montbelliard*, ravaged the country, and undertook the siege of *Besançon* (E). But he was so hampered for want of provisions, that he listened to terms of accommodation, and a treaty was concluded at *Basil*, on condition that *Otho* and his allies should pay the expence of the war, and do homage to the emperor, who, on his part, should discharge them of all sentences and decrees of proscription.

ALL the malecontent princes of the empire being reduced to order, *Rodolphus* resolved to extirpate some formidable bodies of banditti, who infested the provinces of *Franconia*, *Suabia*, and *Thuringia* ; and with this view sent detachments of troops to dislodge them from their recesses and retreats : these in a little time freed the country from the oppression under which it had groaned for many years, and took nine-and-twenty of their chiefs, whom the emperor ordered to be tried and beheaded, although they belonged to the best families of the province. Nay, such was the zeal of this prince for the establishment of tranquility in the empire, that understanding justice was very partially administered in the remote provinces, he appointed extraordinary judges to make a mi-

^a VILLANI, lib. vii. c. 134.

(E) While he was employed in the siege of *Besançon*, ambassadors arrived in his camp from the king of *France*, giving him to understand, that, if he would not raise the siege, he would march to the assistance of the duke of *Burgundy* : In answer to this message *Rodolphus* said,

Let him come ; we shall wait and receive him with open arms : he shall feel and own that we have not come hither to dance and make merry ; and know by experience how easy it is to give law with the sword (16)."

(16) *Advent. ann. Boior.* lib. vii. p. 571.

nute.

nute inquiry into all malversations of that kind, and ordered them to punish the delinquents upon the spot, according to their demerits, of what rank and quality soever they might be. By this expedient he not only laid a restraint upon those who thought they could shelter themselves from justice, under the shadow of their wealth and interest, but at the same time filled his own coffers with the fines which were exacted from the guilty ^b.

RODOLPHUS, after having reigned eighteen years, finding himself exhausted and indisposed, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, where he demanded, that the imperial crown should be secured to his son *Albert* duke of *Austria*, by creating him king of the *Romans*; but the princes excused themselves from complying with this request, on pretence that the empire could not maintain two kings at once. Chagrined at this refusal (F), he repaired to *Straßburg*, from whence he set out for *Spire*, saying he would go and pay a visit to the deceased emperors. This he actually performed, sooner, perhaps, than he expected; for, being taken ill at *Germerßheim*, he died in the 73d year of his age; and, his body being carried to *Spire*, was interred in the great church, together with the rest of the emperors ^c.

The princes refuse to elect his son king of the Romans.

He dies at Germerßheim.
A. D. 1291.

By his first wife *Ann*, daughter of *Albert* count *Hochberg*, whose dowry was the greatest part of the landgraviate of *Alsace*, he had seven sons and as many daughters; but of the first none remained, except *Albert* duke of *Austria*, and *Rodolphus* duke of *Suabia* and landgrave of *Alsace*. The daughters were *Jutta* or *Judith*, wife of *Winceßlaus* king of *Bohemia*; *Clementia*, married to *Charles* king of *Hungary*; *Mathilda*, wife of *Lewis* count palatine; *Agnes*, espoused by *Albert* duke of *Saxony*; *Hedrige*, married to *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*; *Catherine*, wife of *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*; and *Eupheme*, who was a nun ^d.

His issue,

THUS died *Rodolphus*, on his birth-day, in the seventy-third year of his age, and the eighteenth of his reign, a

and character.

^b Variloq. Erfardian. p. 490. ^c BARRE, t. vi. p. 240. Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 369. ^d BARRE, ubi sup.

(F) This chagrin co-operated with his grief for the death of his son *Rodolphus*, which happened a few months before this transaction. That prince left his wife big with child of a son, who was called *John*, and afterwards murdered his uncle *Albert* king of the *Romans*, to whom he owed his education (9).

prince, renowned for his valour, sagacity, and love of justice, who, by his sole courage and conduct, extricated the empire from misery and confusion, and restored it to the fruition of peace, policy, and riches. He was extremely frank and obliging, plain in his dress, and very much addicted to pleasantries (G). His stature was tall and thin, his head small, his complexion pale, his nose remarkably long, and hair scanty.

(G) Two deputies of a certain town, having one day waited upon him to remonstrate upon the necessities of his fellow-citizens, he listened with great attention to what they said, and observing that the beard of one was black and his head grey, while the other's head was black and his beard grey, he asked the reason of these uncommon phenomena: when the first replied, "My beard is grown grey sooner than the hair of my head, because my chief concern hath always centered in my mouth." And the reason which the other gave, was, that as the hair of his head was older than that of his beard, so it was, of consequence, sooner grey (1).

A merchant having once complained to him of an inn-keeper of *Nuremberg*, who refused to refund a sum of money which he had deposited in his hands, the emperor, tho' the defendant could not be convicted, took an opportunity some days after, when he came with some other deputies of the city upon business, to praise his hat, and propose an exchange; ac-

cordingly, he no sooner received the inn-keeper's hat, than he sent it as a token to his wife, with a message in her husband's name, desiring she would deliver to the bearer the money which the merchant had left in his hands. The stratagem succeeded: the wife sent the purse, which was restored to the right owner, and the inn-keeper condemned to pay a large fine (2).

Such was his affability and obliging demeanour, that while he was no more than count of *Hapsburg*, and engaged in a war against the bishop and city of *Basil*, supported by the abbot of *St. Gall*, finding himself unequal to such powerful antagonists, he went one day to dine with the abbot, without giving the least previous notice of his intention, and found means over the glass, not only to detach the abbot from the adverse party, but also to engage him on his side (3).

With regard to his moderation in dress, it was so remarkable, that, when *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia* came to do him homage, in the most magnificent apparel, *Rodolphus* was clad in a coarse grey coat (4).

(1) *Heiss Hist.* l. ii.(2) *Ibid.*(3) *Cuspinian de Imp.*(4) *Ibid.*

Interregnum of Nine Months.

DURING the interregnum, which lasted nine months, the empire was exposed to several domestic disturbances. Conrad, bishop of *Straßburg*, by force of arms, reduced the town of *Colmar*, which set up for independency, and compelled the inhabitants to take the oath of allegiance to his brother *Frederic de Lichtemberg*. The noblemen of *Austria* and *Stiria* were extremely disgusted at the administration of duke *Albert*, who, instead of indulging them like his father, began to govern with great rigour, and lay them under such restrictions and impositions, that they exclaimed loudly against his conduct, and even taxed him with the design of enslaving his subjects. Nor was their resentment limited to complaints only; they entered into an association, which was supported by the kings of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*, and *Conrad* of *Salzburg*, on condition of their being rewarded with part of the spoil; and, having revolted openly, took the field with these their allies. *Albert*, finding it would be a difficult task to reduce them by force of arms, published a manifesto, in which he promised to re-establish the government upon the old footing, and put the noblemen and people in possession of their antient privileges, provided they would return to their duty. This declaration had great weight with the malecontents; and by the mediation of *Lewis* count palatine of the *Rhine*, first a truce was agreed to, and then peace was concluded, to the satisfaction of all parties ^d.

A.D.

1291.

The noble-
men of
Austria
and Stiria
revolt
against
duke Al-
bert.

BUT this difference did not produce such serious consequences as those that attended the dispute between the pretenders to the succession of *Valeran* III. duke of *Limbourg*, who had died in the reign of *Rodolphus*, leaving one only daughter, called *Hermengarde*, married to *Renaud* count of *Guelderland*. This lady likewise dying without issue, *Adolphus*, count of *Bergue*, who was her cousin, disputed the succession with her husband, who insisted upon keeping possession of *Limbourg* during his natural life. *Adolphus*, finding himself too weak to cope with such a powerful antagonist, ceded his right, in consideration of a large sum of money, to *John* duke of *Brabant*, who resolved to confirm his purchase by force of arms, and put himself at the head of an army for that purpose. *Renaud* was no sooner ap-

Disputes
about the
succession
of the
duchy of
Lim-
bourg.

^d BARRE, ubi sup.

prised of his design, than he engaged in an alliance with the archbishop of *Cologne*, the counts of *Luxemburg*, *Cleves*, *Fuliers*, *Nassau*, and several other noblemen, who joined their forces near *Aix-la-Chapelle*, and both sides commenced hostilities without farther hesitation. When the armies were in sight of each other, and just ready to engage, some noblemen, who were neutral, proposed that the dispute should be decided by the arbitration of the counts of *Flanders* and *Hainault*. The proposal was embraced by the competitors, and the arbiters, having considered the case with due deliberation, pronounced, that the count of *Guelderland* should enjoy the duchy for his life, and that the reversion should be vested in the duke of *Brabant*.

THIS sentence, equitable as it was, disgusted both parties; and before any other steps could be taken for an accommodation, the count of *Guelderland* made over his right to *Henry of Luxemburg*, who was descended from the dukes of *Limbourg*, and actually the next male heir of that duchy. Then both parties, with their allies, had recourse to arms. Several skirmishes were fought with various success, the friends of the count of *Guelderland* made an unsuccessful attempt upon *Maastricht*, and ravaged the territory of *Dalem*; the duke of *Brabant*, passing the *Meuse*, laid waste part of the duchy of *Limbourg*; and at length the two armies meeting at *Worringen*, a fortress between *Cologne* and *Nuits*, belonging to the archbishop of *Cologne*, a very obstinate battle ensued, in which *Henry of Luxemburg* and his brother lost their lives, after having performed miracles of courage, the archbishop of *Cologne*, the counts of *Nassau*, *Fuliers*, and *Guelderland*, were taken prisoners, and the duke of *Brabant* obtained a complete victory, in consequence of which he got quiet possession of *Limbourg*. This acquisition was confirmed to him by *Henry IV. of Luxemburg*, afterwards emperor, who, soon after his father's untimely death, married the duke of *Brabant's* eldest daughter; and after this marriage the dukes of *Brabant* and the counts of *Luxemburg* always lived in the greatest harmony and friendship^e.

The duke of Brabant obtains a signal victory at Worringen.

A D O L P H U S.

SEVEN or eight months after the decease of *Rodolphus*, the princes of the empire assembled at *Frankfort*, in order to elect a new chief; and as it was grown into a custom, to give the preference to the family of the last emperor, their votes

^e Hist. Luxemb. t. v. l. 43.

were solicited for *Albert* duke of *Austria*; but *Gerhard*, elector of *Mentz*, by artful insinuations to each of them in private, obtained their promises separately to adhere to his nomination, and were not a little astonished to hear him propose his own kinsman, *Adolphus* of *Nassau*^f; whom, how-
Adolphus
 ever, they could not in honour reject (H). He was accord-
 ingly proclaimed emperor, and tho' he possessed some of *elect* em-
 those qualifications which constitute a great prince, he was *peror*.
 not rich enough to support the imperial dignity.

THE beginnings of his reign were fortunate, inasmuch
 as he governed the empire by the advice of *Boemond*, arch-
 bishop of *Triers*, a prelate of great virtue and capacity, who
 persuaded the emperor to leave all those in possession of their
 employments, who had served his predecessor with fidelity,
 although some of them had connexions with his rival, *Albert*
 duke of *Austria*: nor had he the least cause to repent of the
 confidence he reposed in their honour.

As his natural genius inclined him to war, and he was *Declares* }
 desirous of employing those princes who were averse to his *war*
 elevation, he convoked a diet at *Spire*, and proposed that *agust*

^f CUSP. in Adol. AVEN. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 578.

(H) *Adolphus* was the son of *Walrab* count *de Nassau*, and the poorest prince that ever ascended the imperial throne; for all his possessions were limited to the lordships of *Istein*, *Wissbaden*, and *Wrilbourg*, in the county of *Nassau*; but he was reckoned the greatest warrior of his time. He had defeated *John* I. duke of *Brabant*, in five pitched battles; but in the sixth, which was that of *Worringen*, he was taken prisoner, and carried before the duke, who asked him, with a contemptuous sneer, *who he was?* "I am (said he) the count *de Nassau*, a poor lord of the empire; but who art thou?" *John* (replied the duke) against whom thou hast waged a most obstinate war, and

slain five of his best generals, in as many severe battles." I wonder (cried *Adolphus*) how thou thyself hast escaped my sword, which was whetted for thee and thee only." The duke was so struck with his intrepidity, that he set him at liberty, overwhelmed him with presents, and solicited his friendship. Nor was *Adolphus* ungrateful in the sequel; for, when he was raised to the imperial throne, he not only gave him the investiture of the fiefs, which the dukes of *Brabant* held of the empire, but also appointed him governor and supreme judge, in his name, thro' all the countries from the *Moselle* to the sea, and from the *Rhine* to *Westphalia* (1).

(1) Cusp. in Adolph. Cæs. *Tropæus du Brab.* l. iv.

Otho
count palatine of
Burgundy.

war should be declared against *Otho* count palatine of *Burgundy*, who wanted to dismember *Franche Compté* from the empire, and become a vassal of the *French* king.

His expedition
proves abortive.

THIS proposal being embraced, the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, and the bishops of *Spire* and *Basil*, furnished him with troops, which at first took the route of *Besançon*; but *Albert* of *Austria* refusing to contribute his proportion for this war, and being suspected of carrying on a correspondence with the king of *France*, *Adolphus* marched towards *Suabia*, with intention to seize the fiefs which belonged to *Albert* in that province. The duke, however, came to the assistance of his vassals, with a body of forces, and posted himself in such a manner, that the emperor could not act against him, while the boisterous weather that supervened effectually hindered him from executing his scheme against *Franche Compté*; besides, he did not at that time chuse to give umbrage to the king of *France*, so as to produce an open rupture with that monarch.

THE miscarriage of this enterprize greatly diminished the reputation of *Adolphus*: moreover, being a better soldier than a politician, he was too much governed by the advice of his officers, and paid too little regard to that of the princes of the empire, many of whom, being disobliged at this neglect, attached themselves in the sequel to the duke of *Austria's* party.

Several
noblemen
of Alsace
revolt;

THE emperor no sooner quitted *Alsace*, than the bishop of *Straßburg* put a garrison in the fortress of *Ortemberg*, in order to preserve it for the duke of *Austria*; and an insurrection was raised in *Colmar*, by means of *Anselmo* lord of *Rapoltstein*, who took possession of the town with a body of troops, and renounced all allegiance to *Adolphus*. Information of this revolt being brought to the emperor, he marched into *Alsace*, ravaged the lands of *Rapoltstein*, and besieged the city of *Colmar*, which, being reduced to great extremity, was obliged to surrender at discretion. *Anselmo* was imprisoned for life, and all his estate confiscated; and the provost of *Colmar*, who was his accomplice, punished in the most ignominious manner. After the reduction of this town, he took the route of *Lower Alsace*, in order to besiege the castle of *Erstein*, the lord of which had joined the bishop of *Straßburg* in his rebellion. The place was accordingly taken, as well as the castle of the count *de Wart*, remarkable for its strength and situation; and the inhabitants of *Straßburg*, fearing that his next visit would be to them, prevailed upon the bishop to go and ask pardon of the emperor, which he obtained for himself and his associates.

and are
reduced by
the emperor.

ALTHOUGH

ALTHOUGH *Albert* of *Austria* had taken the oath of fidelity to the emperor, it was very well known that he entertained an animosity against him; and *Adolphus*, fearing his power and resentment, took all the opportunities in his power to engage the friendship and attachment of the duke. With this view he proposed a match between his own son *Gerlac* and *Albert's* daughter; when the haughty *Austrian* replied, that he would consent to the marriage, provided it could raise his daughter to the rank of a princess: but, that being impossible, he said *Adolphus* might send his daughter to one of *Albert's* sons, whom he intended to make a prince (H).

A. D.
1293.

A WAR breaking out about this time between *France* and *England*, on account of some provinces claimed by each, *Edward* king of *England* sent ambassadors to *Adolphus* to propose an alliance, and to promise, that, if he would reinforce him with troops against *France*, *Edward* would go in

Adolphus
enters into
an alli-
ance with
Edward

(H) In the *German* marriages, a maiden of the first nobility acquired the title of princess, by marrying a prince; but a maiden of the lower noblesse has not the same right: she does not even become a countess or baroness, by marrying a count or a baron. In case of such an alliance, the husband is obliged to have recourse to the emperor, and solicit for his wife the honours due to his rank. If the emperor consents, the diet of the empire must ratify his consent: then the prince's wife enjoys the honours due to her husband, and her children are declared capable of succeeding to the dignities and fiefs of their father. This was the case, in the beginning of the thirteenth century, with *John Adolphus* duke of *Saxe-Weissenfels*, *Albert* duke of *Saxe-Cobourg*, *George William* duke of *Zell*, and a prince of *Anhalt*.

are stiled *matches of the left hand*, it is usually stipulated, that the wife shall continue in her original condition and rank, and that the children she shall bear shall have no other rank or prerogative than that of their mother. *Rodolphus* duke of *Luxemburg* caused his wife to be called madame *Rodolphina*, because it was a *left-handed match*. *Henry* landgrave of *Thuringia*, *Ernest* and *Edward the Fortunate*, marquises of *Baden*, and *Frederic Lewis* elector palatine, did not raise their wives to the dignity of princess, or demand the consent of the emperor or diet to declare the children of these marriages capable of succeeding them in their honours and estates. They never make such a request, except when they have no children by a former match with a lady of the first quality, or have not made an alliance of confraternity with some princes of the empire (1).

In these marriages, which

(1) *Barre, t. vi. p. 237.*

king of
England
against
France.

person to Germany, and assist him in his turn, with forces and money, to recover the kingdom of *Arles*, which *France* had wrested from the empire. His proposal was joyfully embraced, because it was accompanied with a good round sum of money, which enabled him to purchase the landgraviate of *Thuringia* and *Misnia*, from *Albert* surnamed the Depraved, who had disinherited his own sons, *Frederic*, *Henry*, and *Dietsmann*, out of hatred to their mother *Margaret*, daughter to *Frederic II.* §.

His pro-
posal treat-
ed with
contempt
by Philip,
who en-
gages the
duke of
Austria in
his inter-
est.

MEAN while he sent ambassadors to demand from *Philip* king of *France* the kingdom of *Arles*, and some other countries which he pretended were fiefs of the empire, together with the crown of thorns that Christ wore; and to denounce war in case of a refusal. But *Philip*, despising his impotent arrogance, dismissed his ambassadors without an answer (I); and this contempt, in all probability, deterred him from prosecuting the enterprize which he had projected, for all his exploits were limited to a few skirmishes between *Theobald* count of *Pfirt*, governor of *Alsace*, and the troops of the king of *France*^b. *Philip*, however, being informed of the league between the emperor and the king of *England*, made use of the same expedient, by engaging in his cause *Albert* duke of *Austria*, who upon this occasion observed, that there was at least as little dishonour in taking subsidies from the king of *France*, as in being pensioner to the king of *England*. The *English* money, which *Adolphus* received, instead of advancing, contributed to the ruin of his affairs; for the purchase he had made, entailed upon him the enmity of *Dietsmann*, *Henry*, and his brother *Frederic*, who were gallant princes (K), and defeated his troops upon more occasions than one; and the count of *Pfirt* had, by his insolent beha-

§ Chron. Colm. l. ii. p. 55.
Phil. & hujus Resp. apud LEIB.

^b Adol. Epist. Diff. ad
p. 1. Cod. Dip. p. 32.

(I) *Philip* is said to have answered him in these two words, *Trap Allemund*, i. e. too much of a German (2).

(K) *Albert the Depraved* had married *Margaret* daughter of the emperor *Frederic II.* by whom he had three sons, namely, *Frederic*, *Dietsmann*, and

Henry; but conceiving a disgust for this princess, he attached himself to *Cunegunda of Issenbourg*, and laid a scheme for poisoning *Margaret*, who, being apprised of his design, made her escape from the castle of *Eisenach*; and, in bidding adieu to her children, severely bit the

behaviour to *Conrad*, bishop of *Straßburg*, wholly detached that prelate from his interests. Besides, his best friends, and among the rest the elector of *Mentz*, who had raised him to the empire, were incensed, because he neither gave them a share of the *English* subsidy, nor had recourse to their advice in his most important affairs. These concurring motives induced the princes of the empire to engage in an association for the support of *Frederic*, *Diëtmann*, and *Henry*, as well as for the preservation of their own liberty.

FREDERIC having taken possession of the margraviate of *Misnia*, which he inherited from his uncle, levied a body of troops, and entered *Thuringia*, in order to expell the emperor, who had already made himself master of several towns in that province; and *Adolphus*, by way of reprisal, made an irruption into *Misnia*, took the city of *Dresden*, together with twelve strong castles, and pillaged every place where he met with resistance. This cruel war continued for the space of three years; but justice prevailed at last in favour of *Frederic* and his brothers: for *Adolphus*, notwithstanding all his efforts, could never obtain possession of *Thuringia*.

INSTEAD of endeavouring, by reforming his conduct, to efface the bad impressions he had made upon the minds of his people, by engaging in such an unequitable enterprize, his behaviour became more and more haughty and tyrannical. He bestowed employments upon the unworthy and debauched ministers of his own pleasures; and ruled with a most arbitrary sway, in diametrical opposition to the remonstrances of the nobles, whom he treated with insolence and disdain.

¹ Paralip. URSP. p. 342.

check of *Frederic* the eldest, in order to imprint upon his mind the memory of his mother's wrongs: hence he derived the appellation of *Frederic with the bitten Cheek*. *Margaret* having retired to a monastery at *Frankfort*, her husband lived openly with his concubine, by whom he had a son called *Lewis*, to whom he gave the additional name of *Apicius*. He was distractedly fond of this child, and

resolved to declare him his heir: but afterwards foreseeing the opposition he must have encountered from the noblemen of the empire, as well as from his own vassals, he put up his fiefs to sale, that he might give the purchase-money to his bastard: but there was no bidder except the emperor, who bought them for twelve thousand marks of silver (3)

(3) *Struv. Period.* 9.

who form
a con-
spiracy
against
him;

THESE imprudent proceedings alienated the hearts of almost all the princes and states of the empire: the spirit of discontent diffused itself through every province of *Germany*, and a great number of noblemen, ecclesiastic as well as secular, not only declared openly against his mal-administration, but even formed a conspiracy, in order to remove him from the throne. Not that he was utterly destitute of adherents: *Bohemond* archbishop of *Triers*, *Rodolphus* count palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*, still supported his interest, and furnished him with troops; at the head of which he took the field, and encamped at *Voigtland*, to observe the motions of those princes who had declared themselves his enemies; namely, *Gerhard* archbishop of *Mentz*, *Winceflaus* king of *Bohemia*, *Albert* duke of *Austria*, the two margraves of *Brandenburg*, and the duke of *Saxony*.

digest ar-
ticles of
accusation
against
Adol-
phus;

THE confederates assembled at *Prague* for the coronation of *Winceflaus*, and next day deliberated upon the heads of accusation, which might serve as a foundation for deposing *Adolphus*, digesting them into the following articles. That he had shamefully renounced the rights of the empire in *Italy* and *Lombardy*: that, instead of establishing union and peace in the provinces of *Germany*, he had fomented a division and civil war, to the desolation of the country: that he had indiscreetly squandered away the revenues of the crown, and bestowed employments and offices of state upon inexperienced and ill-intentioned persons, to the great detriment of the *Germanic* body: that by his sole authority he had imposed exorbitant taxes upon the subjects of the empire: that he had affirmed his will was law, and, in consequence of that maxim, ruined a great number of vassals: that he had received a considerable sum of money from *Edward* king of *England*, on promise by oath to send succours to that prince, which promise he had broke, tho' he kept the money: that he had slighted the advice of the princes, nobility, and clergy, and never consulted them in affairs of importance, but acted wholly from his own authority: that he had connived at robberies on the highway: that he had allowed his officers to oppress the poor, and his soldiers to commit all manner of outrages: and, lastly, that he had ravished a great number of wives, widows, maidens, and nuns, and put several women to death, after having satisfied his brutal appetite.

THE emperor's "guilt, in all these particulars, being notorious, the princes appointed meeting of the diet at *Mentz*, in order to depose *Adolphus*, and elect *Albert*, who now

levied

levied an army to support his pretensions, and oppose whatever measures *Adolphus* might take to traverse his election: at the same time he sent his uncle, the count *de Hohemberg* and *Hagerloch*, to solicit the pope's consent to this deposition; which, however, he could not obtain, with all the promises and presents he lavished away among the members of the consistory. On the contrary, his holiness wrote an account of his refusal to *Adolphus*, and even offered to consecrate him emperor, if he could come to *Rome*. Mean while the count *de Hohemberg* pretended that he had succeeded in his commission, and, at his return to *Germany*, presented the three electors, who were *Albert's* friends, with forged letters, containing the pope's approbation of their design.

ADOLPHUS, encouraged by the declaration of *Boniface* in his favour, advanced towards *Austria*, in order to wrest that province from *Albert*, who marched to the banks of the *Rhine* to support his friends, who intended to elevate him to the imperial throne, at the meeting of the diet in *Mentz*: they accordingly assembled for that purpose; the deposition of *Adolphus* and election of the duke of *Austria* were actually performed; and *Albert* being encamped with his army without the city, the electors waited upon him, in order to notify what they had done, to wish him all sort of prosperity, and to promise that they would assist, protect, and maintain, him against all his enemies * (L).

ADOL-

* *ÆN. Hist. Boem. c. xxviii. AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 587. Chron. Colm. P. xi. p. 38, 59.*

(L) Before they proceeded to the election, they assembled and harangued the people upon the subject of their present design. Then they repaired to church, attended by a vast multitude, and turning towards the altar spoke to this effect. "Six years ago, the empire being vacant, we canonically elected *Adolphus* count *de Nassau* king of the *Romans*, knowing at that time no person more worthy of that dignity. At first he conducted himself wisely, following the advice of the most prudent electors and princes of his court; but, in a little

"time, he began to despise their
"advice, and listen to the coun-
"sels of young persons, with-
"out either sense or experi-
"ence: then he found himself
"destitute of means and friends
"to assist him sincerely in bear-
"ing the burden of govern-
"ment. The electors, perceiv-
"ing his indigence, and sway-
"ed by twenty other motives,
"have demanded the pope's
"consent to depose him and
"choose another emperor. We
"are told that our envoys have
"obtained the consent of his
"holiness; tho' those of *Adol-*
"*phus* affirm the contrary. But

"W^qq

ADOLPHUS, being apprised of this election, raised the siege of *Ruffach*, in *Alsace*; and marched towards *Spire*, where he encamped; he was reinforced by the count palatine *Rodolphus*, *Otto* duke of *Bavaria*, and the cities of *Spire* and *Worms*, which, with some others, never deserted his cause. *Albert* at the same time advanced towards him, in order to dispute the imperial crown by force and defeats of arms. They accordingly engaged between *Gelnhausen* and the cloister of *Rosendal*, and the battle was maintained with great fury on both sides. In the heat of the fight, the emperor, singling out the duke, attacked him hand-to-hand, saying, "Here you shall abandon to me the empire and your life." To this address the duke replied, without hesitation, "Both are in the hands of God;" and with these words struck him in the face with such violence, that he fell from his horse, and was immediately slain by some of *Albert's* party¹. Thus fell *Adolphus*, a valiant, tho' unfortunate prince, whose death is said to have been bitterly lamented by *Gerhard*, archbishop of *Mentz*, who had been the principal cause of his deposition. He was no sooner killed than *Albert* put a stop to the carnage, and granted quarter to all the enemy; but the count palatine and duke of *Bavaria* saved themselves by flight. As for the emperor's body, it was interred in the cloister of *Frauenfeldt*, because *Albert* would not allow it to be deposited in *Spire*, with the rest of the emperors, tho' it was afterwards carried thither by the emperor *Henry* of *Luxemburg* (M).

and defeats
Adol-
phus, who
is slain in
battle.

¹ Chron. Colm. P. ii. p. 6.

"we, having no regard to any authority but that which is vested in ourselves, and finding *Adolphus* incapable of governing the empire, do depose him from the imperial dignity, and elect *Albert* duke of *Austria* king of the Romans (4)."

(M) *Adolphus* was the son of *Walrab* count of *Nassau*, and grandson of *Henry the Rich*, who is looked upon as the founder of that family. He succeeded to the county of *Nassau* in 1289, and that same year married *Ima-*

gine, daughter of *Gerlac* count of *Limbourg*, by whom he had *Henry*, who died young; *Rupert*, who married *Gutta*, daughter of *Wincelaus*, and was made prisoner by the archbishop of *Mentz*, in a battle fought near *Worms*; *Gerlac*, who succeeded his father in the county of *Nassau*; *Walram*, and *Adolphus*: his daughters were *Adebeide*, a nun in the monastery of *St. Claire* in *Mentz*, *Imagine*, who was never married, and *Mechtilda*, wife of *Rodolphus*, elector palatine (5).

(4) Chron. Columb. part ii. p. 5.

(5) Heiss, l. ii. c. 23.

IN the reign of *Adolphus*, as well as in that of his predecessors, the *Jews* were persecuted in the empire with great cruelty, on the supposition that they had slain several Christian children, and committed other crimes which attracted the hatred of the public. During the troubles produced by the competition between *Adolphus* and *Albert*, a certain peasant, called *Raind-Fleisch*, preached in the *Upper Palatinate*, that God had sent him to destroy the *Jews*: from thence he made a progress through *Franconia*, and the neighbouring provinces, haranguing on the same subject, and affirming that the *Jews* had stole a consecrated host. The common people, without giving themselves the trouble to investigate the truth, were incensed at this pretended sacrilege; and the inhabitants of *Nuremberg*, *Rottembourg*, *Amberg*, and other towns of *Bavaria* and *Franconia*, seizing all the unhappy *Israelites* that fell in their way, committed them to the flames, and drove the rest to such despair, that numbers burned themselves and their families, rather than fall into the hands of the merciless Christians. These violences were exercised for some time with impunity, until *Albert* duke of *Austria* took the *Jewish* nation into his protection, re-established them in all their privileges, and imposed a very heavy fine upon the town of *Nuremberg*, where the massacre had begun. Yet all his care could not extinguish that aversion, which the people of that city entertained for the *Jews*. It broke out on divers occasions, and in the sequel proved fatal to the famous *Mordecai* of *Austria*, who composed a commentary on some books of the *Talmud*, and was author of several other curious performances. He quitted *Austria* to go and teach the oriental languages at *Triers*; and afterwards, in passing through *Nuremberg*, was apprehended and hanged by the people. Nor were the miserable *Jews* treated with more lenity in *Friesland* and *Holland*, which at that time were provinces of the empire. *Florentius V.* count of *Holland* and *West Friesland*, who had rendered himself odious to the nobility by the severity of his government, thought to engage the people on his side, by favouring their hatred to the *Jews*, whom he expelled from his dominions: but this step served only to increase the discontent of the nobles, who had derived great advantages from the *Jewish* nation: they therefore engaged in a conspiracy, and slew him at the chace. As his son *John* at that time resided in *England*, and did not think it safe to come and take possession of his father's estate, the nobles solicited the protection of *Eric VIII.* king of *Denmark*, who came with an army to support them, reduced all the towns, subdued the whole country, saddled them

Florentius V.
count of
Holland
is murdered:

that an-
tient
house ex-
tinct.

them with a severe tribute, and left a *Danish* nobleman to rule them in his absence. The governor treated them so harshly, that they began to repent heartily of having intailed such slavery upon themselves; and, conspiring against this minister of arbitrary power, compelled him to fly for shelter into a fortress, where he was taken and murdered on the spot. Then they recalled from *England*, *John*, the son of *Florentius*, whom they acknowledged as count of *Holland* and *Friesland*. He received the investiture of these fiefs from *Adolphus*, and in a few years died at *Haarlem* without issue, so that the antient house of the counts of *Holland* was extinct, after it had subsisted four hundred and thirty-seven years ^m.

A L B E R T I.

A. D.
1298.

Albert is
re-elected,
and
crowned
at Aix la
Chapelle;

sollicits
the pope's
confirmation ;

AL B E R T I. called *the Triumphant*, on account of his generosity and valour, and the many victories he obtained over his enemies, was likewise surnamed *the One-Eyed*, because he had lost one eye by the operation of poison, which was given to him in his own palace at *Vienna*, about three years before he was elected emperor. Altho' he had been elected king of the *Romans* before the victory which he obtained over the emperor *Adolphus*, being apprehensive that his election would be contested, because the elector of *Triers* and the *Palatine* had not joined in it, he convoked the whole number at *Frankfort*, and desired them to proceed to a new election ⁿ. After which they attended him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned with great solemnity; and such was the concourse of people upon that occasion, that his brother-in-law the duke of *Saxony*, and several other persons, were squeezed to death in the croud.

AL B E R T, being thus established on the throne, sent to *Rome* to desire that pope *Boniface VIII.* would confirm his election. That pontif, chagrined at the elevation of this prince upon the ruins of his friend *Adolphus*, refused for some time to comply with his desire, on pretence that the electors had no authority to set him on the throne, without the concurrence of the pope ^o; till at length the desire he had to be revenged on *Philip* king of *France*, being stronger than his resentment against *Albert*, he promised to confirm the election of this last, and even made a tender to him of the crown of *France*. *Albert* thanked him for his offer; but re-

^m Ann. Steron. ad an. 1298. EMMIVS Rerum Frisic. Hist.
ⁿ SPOND. Cont. BAR. t. x. p. 452. ^o BALÆUS, l. vi.

presented that he could not embark in a quarrel of such importance, unless his holiness would assist him in carrying on the war against *Philip*. The pope refusing to contribute, the project was not only laid aside, but *Albert*, in order to anticipate the ill-offices of *Boniface*, made advances to the king of *France*, with whom he had an interview at *Vaucouleur*, where they renewed the antient leagues between the empire and *France*, and treated about the marriage of *Rodolphus*, *Albert's* son, with *Blanche*, *Philip's* daughter, which was not consummated till next year P.

has an interview with Philip king of France.

A. D. 1299.

AT this interview a treaty of alliance was concluded between the emperor and the king of *France*, by which *Albert* obliged himself to bestow upon his eldest son *Rodolphus*, and his heirs for ever, as hereditary fiefs, the duchies of *Austria* and *Stiria*, with the lordships of *Carniola*, *La Marche*, and *Port-Naon*: he moreover assigned, as the dowry of the princess *Blanche*, the county of *Alsace*, and the territory of *Fribourg*, to be possessed for ever by her husband and his heirs; so that this seems to be the æra at which the duchy of *Austria* and the landgraviate of *Alsace* became the hereditary countries of the house of *Hapsburg*. Be that as it will, when the emperor convoked a diet at *Toul* to authenticate this contract, the three ecclesiastic electors protested against the articles of alliance; and when *Albert* sent ambassadors to the pope, with an intimation of the nuptials, and a demand that his holiness would confirm the choice which the electors had made in elevating him to the imperial throne, *Boniface* publicly declared, that the election of *Albert* was null and void, and that he ought to be treated as a murderer. Nay, after having refused audience to the *German* ambassadors, he appeared in public with a sword by his side, habited like the general of an army, and affirmed that there was no other *Cæsar*, or king of the *Romans*, but the sovereign pontif of Christendom.

The ecclesiastic electors protest against the treaty of Vaucouleurs.

IN the mean time the emperor gave orders for assembling a diet at *Nuremberg*, on *St. Martin's-day*, at which were present, besides the ecclesiastic electors, *Wenceslaus* king of *Bohemia*, the elector palatine, and several other princes of the empire. There his wife *Elizabeth*, daughter of the count of *Tyrol*, was crowned, and his son *Rodolphus* invested with the duchy of *Austria* for himself and his successors. After the diet, the empress set out for *Vienna*, with duke *Rodolphus*

P AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 588. BAILLET D'EMELES de Boniface.

and

and the princess, who died within the year, without issue by the duke of *Austria*.

A. D. ABOUT this period *Albert* was engaged in a war with
1300. *John D'Avenes*, who, as next heir to *John* count of *Holland*,
Albert lately dead, had taken possession of his dominions, which
engages in *Albert* claimed as fiefs reverfible to the empire. After hav-
a war ing published a manifefto to this purpose, he levied an army
with John to fupport his pretentions, and advanced as far as *Nimeguen*
D'Avenes againft *John D'Avenes*, who had affembled a ftrong body of
touching forces, with which he paffed the river *Waal*, without being
the fucces- perceived; and having furprized a detachment of imperialifts,
fon of whom he cut in pieces, fpread fuch an alarm among the reft
Holland of the emperor's troops, that he was fain to decamp with
and Weft great precipitation, and by hasty marches retreat to *Cologne*,
Friesland. where he intrinched himfelf under the ramparts of the city.
 There being in danger of perifhing by famine, blocked up as
 he was by the enemy, he employed the archbifhop of *Cologne*
 to negotiate a peace; which was concluded, on condition
 that *John D'Avenes* fhould enjoy the counties of *Holland*,
Weft Friesland, and *Zealand*, in confideration of doing ho-
 mage to the emperor, from whom he accordingly received
 the inveftiture of thefe dominions.

Quarrels THIS war being happily terminated, the emperor caufed
with the his ftatutes touching the charge and function of the electors
ecclefiaftic of the empire to be published and executed. As the ec-
electors. clefiaftical electors, and fome other of the princes, had con-
 verted to their own ufe the toll and other revenues formerly
 appropriated to the maintenance of the emperor, he demanded
 that thefe impofts fhould be put upon their antient footing,
 and was answered, that as they inherited thefe revenues from
 their predeceffors, without being queftioned by the emperors
 or kings of the *Romans*, they hoped he would maintain them
 in thefe rights, which they could not, nor would not relin-
 quifh. The emperor fent the bifhop of *Bafil* to complain of this
 anfwer to the pope; and, in order to obtain a favourable
 audience, folemnly promifed to engage in a crusade, as he
 had already propofed fuch an expedition to the princes of
 Chriftendom, provided his holinefs would enable him to de-
 fray the expence of the enterprize, by obliging the three eccl-
 efiastical electors to part with the tolls and duties, which they
 had ufurped during the anarchy of the empire; but *Boni-*
face lending a deaf ear to his complaint, he refolved to do
 himfelf right by force of arms. In the mean time, by the
 advice of his friends, he declared his difcontent to the eccl-

siaſtical electors, whom he ſummoned to appear before the ſtates and princes of the empire at *Mentz*, and answer to the charge that ſhould be laid againſt them.

THE electors, inſtead of obeying this citation, wrote a letter to the pope, in which they repreſented *Albert* as an inſolent and ambitious tyrant, a profeſſed enemy to the clergy, and gave his holineſs to underſtand, that meaſures were taking in *Germany* for electing another king of the *Romans*. Theſe were agreeable tidings to *Boniſace*, who perſecuted *Albert* with the moſt rancorous hatred. He had already reſcued the mediation of *Philip the Fair*, who attempted to reconcile him to the emperor; he had even allured *Philip's* brother, *Charles de Valois*, into *Italy*, with a promiſe of raiſing him to the imperial throne; and now he ſent an answer to the letter of the eccleſiaſtical electors, in which, after having ſtigmatized the emperor as a rebel; “ We com-

A. D.
1301.

mand you (added he) to ſignify by public proclamation to *Albert* the pretended king of the *Romans*, that he muſt, in ſix months, appear before us, by his envoys, ſufficiently authorized and inſtructed, to juſtify himſelf, if he can, of the imputation of treaſon againſt king *Adolphus*, as well as to avert the ſentence of excommunication, which he has incurred by perſecuting the holy ſee and other churches, and to undergo ſuch penance as we ſhall preſcribe. We ſtrictly forbid the electors, vaſſals, and ſubjects of the empire, to acknowledge him as king of the *Romans*; we reſeaſe them from their oath of allegiance, and will proceed againſt him and his adherents, ſpiritually and temporally, as we ſhall judge moſt expedient.”

The pope forbids the ſubjects of the empire to acknowledge Albert.

IN conſequence of this order, the three archbiſhops retired to the dominions of the elector palatine, as if he had been a competent judge, and preferred a formal complaint againſt the emperor for having cruelly ſlain his predecessor. The count, who hated *Albert*, ordered a formal information to be taken; and upon the frivolous accusations of the eccleſiaſtical electors, and a few other perſons of diſtinction, he pronounced him convicted of the crimes laid to his charge, and conſequently unworthy of the empire (N).

The eccleſiaſtic electors complain of him to the elector palatine, and are obliged to ſubmit.

THIS

(N) This right of the elector palatine has been ſince confirmed by the golden bull, in theſe words. “ Although, by very ancient cuſtom, the emperor, or king of the *Romans*, is obliged to an-

swer in all caſes inſtituted againſt them before the count palatine of the Rhine, arch ſteward, prince elector, of the holy empire, the ſaid count palatine, however, ſhall not exerciſe that juriſdiction, except in the imperial court, where the emperor, or king of the *Romans*,

Romans,

A. D.
1302.

The emperor in-
vades Bo-
hemia ;

THIS step, however, they were not allowed to take with impunity ; for *Albert*, incensed at their presumption, no longer hesitated in declaring war against them ; and although the marquis of *Brandenburg*, the duke of *Saxony*, and the king of *Bohemia*, remained neuter in this contest, the majority of the princes espoused the cause of the emperor ; and he soon saw himself at the head of a very formidable army, with which he ravaged the archbishopric of *Mentz*, took the strong town of *Bingen* upon the *Rhine* by assault, compelled the three prelates to sue for peace, which they obtained at the expence of parting with the toll and duties which occasioned this rupture ; but the elector palatine was obliged to purchase his pardon with a considerable sum of money *.

ALBERT'S next expedition was against *Winceslaus*, king of *Bohemia*, who had not only ascended the throne of *Poland*, after having defeated his competitor *Uladislaus Loëticus*, but also received a deputation from the noblemen of *Hungary*, with a tender of the crown, become vacant by the death of *Andrew the Venetian*. Possessed as he was of two crowns already, he recommended his son *Winceslaus* to the *Hungarians*, who changed the young prince's name to *Ladislaus*, and crowned him at *Alba Regalis*, to the no small mortification of the pope, who protested against his election as an enterprize against the holy see, to which he said the kingdom of *Hungary* appertained. Nay, he even affected to decide the affair in a judicial manner, and adjudged the crown to *Mary* queen of *Naples*, wife of *Charles II.* and sister of *Ladislaus III.* king of *Hungary*. This princess made over her title to her grandson *Charobert*, whose interest the emperor espoused from a double motive : for the young prince was his own nephew,

* SPOND. CONT. BAR. t. i. p. 477. AVENT. c. l. n. 10.

Romans, shall be personally present, and in no other place (6).

This article, however, ought not to be understood of causes instituted against the emperor as sovereign, but of those only in which he may be involved as a private person ; such as civil causes, which were naturally tried before the count palatine, because he was of old the ordinary and supreme judge at the

emperor's court. No prince, who had the least regard to justice, would refuse to answer complaints of that kind, before the tribunal which they themselves had erected for that purpose ; or scruple to leave the course of justice free in those disputes of law which they might have with private persons.

and *Winceslaus* his professed enemy; besides, he had an eye to the silver mines of *Bohemia*, part of which he had already demanded without success. These co-operating considerations induced him to renew his old quarrels with *Winceslaus*. He assembled a formidable army of *Austrians*, *Hungarians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Cumani*, which having divided into two bodies, he detached the one to ravage *Moravia*, and marched at the head of the other into *Bohemia*, where his soldiers committed the most cruel outrages, without distinction of age, sex, or condition, and made a fruitless attempt upon the mines, from which they were repulsed with great loss. Notwithstanding this check, *Winceslaus* being disappointed of a reinforcement which he expected from *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*, and finding his forces greatly inferior to those of *Albert*, he permitted the miners to poison the water in the neighbourhood of the imperial camp; so that the greatest part of the *Austrian* troops, which used these waters, perished in the utmost torture, and the emperor, having moreover lost almost all his whole cavalry, was obliged to retreat into *Austria* with the miserable remains of his army. and is obliged to retreat with loss.

WHILE the reconciliation subsisted between *Philip the Fair* and *Boniface*, this last refused to acknowledge *Albert* as king of the *Romans*, and even raised up a rival against him, in the person of *Charles de Valois*; but now that he had quarrelled with the king of *France*, who had granted an asylum to his enemies, the cardinals *Colonna*, he made advances to the emperor, confirmed his election, invited him to come and receive the imperial crown at *Rome*, and exhorted him to declare war against *Philip*, whom by this time he had communicated. But, before he granted his bull of confirmation to *Albert*, he exacted very humbling conditions from that prince, who sent him letters patent dated at *Nuremberg*, in which he acknowledged that the empire had been transferred by the holy see from the *Greeks* to the *Germans*, in the person of *Charlemagne*; that the right of electing a king of the *Romans* was granted, by the sovereign pontif, to certain ecclesiastical and secular princes; and that kings and emperors received the power of the temporal sword from the holy see. He likewise agreed to take the oath of allegiance to the pope, to perform all the promises made by *Rodolphus* and his predecessors, confirmed the concessions of *Lewis the Debonnair* and *Otho the Great*, and undertook to defend the rights of the holy see against all its enemies, whomsoever A. D. 1303. The emperor's election is confirmed by the pope.

they might be, and declare war against them, at the command of his holiness.

who is
surprised
at Anagni;

THE king of France, informed of the steps which the pope had taken to engage the emperor in his interests, contrived a scheme for seizing his person at Anagni, where he resided, and this was actually executed by William de Nogaret and Suarez Colonna, who, at the head of three or four hundred knights, formerly in the service of the count de Valois, surprised the town and apprehended Boniface, whom they treated with great indignity; but on the fourth day of his imprisonment, during which he had been almost famished to death, the inhabitants took to their arms, under the command of the cardinal de Fresque, expelled Nogaret and Colonna, and set the pope at liberty. Boniface repaired immediately to Rome, where he fell sick of chagrin for having suffered such indignities; and, dying, was succeeded by Nicolas Bocassini, cardinal bishop of Ostia, who assumed the name of Benedict X.^a

sets at
Rome,
and is
succeeded
by Bene-
dict X.

who does
not long
survive
his elec-
tion.

THIS new pope, who is said to have been a shepherd's son, seemed very well disposed to maintain an intimate union between the holy see and the empire, and even took some steps towards effecting a reconciliation between the Guelphs and the Ghiblins, which last still supported the emperor's party in Tuscany, and some other provinces of Italy; but Benedict did not live to bring his laudable design to perfection; for he died eleven months after his elevation, very much regretted by Albert and the German princes, who hoped to re-establish the rights of the empire in Italy, under his pontificate.

MEAN while Ladislaus, by his misconduct, lost the footing he had gained in Hungary: his vices and debauchery alienated the hearts of his friends, and raised such a spirit of animosity against him, that he was obliged to lock himself up in the citadel of Buda, from which he was released by his father Winceflaus; who dying soon after this expedition, he succeeded to the throne of Bohemia, and resumed his former name of Winceflaus: while the party of Charobert acquired new strength every day in Hungary.

WHEN Winceflaus the younger ascended the throne of Bohemia, his conduct continued so irregular, that he was assassinated by his own subjects; and, he dying without issue, Henry count of Carinthia and Tyrol, the emperor's own cousin, was, in consequence of a free election, promoted to the throne. But Albert, on pretence of a family compact, raised a strong army, in order to put the crown on the head

Albert
seizes the

^a Hist. des Demel. de Bonif. VIII. avec Philip. le Bel.

of his own son *Rodolphus*; and *Henry*, being too weak to cope with him in the field, resigned his pretensions in favour of his cousin *Rodolphus*, whose first wife *Blanche* being dead, he married *Isabella*, widow of *Winceslaus*, in order to fix himself more firmly in throne. However, he did not long enjoy his good fortune; for he was soon after taken off by sudden death, upon which the kingdom was divided into two factions, one of which recalled *Henry* count of *Carinthia*, and the other elected *Frederic* the emperor's son. *Albert*, who had before anticipated *Henry*, was now anticipated in his turn by that prince, who was now so well established upon the throne, that it was not in his power to depose him: after having ravaged part of his country, he was fain to return with his army, and leave him in peaceable possession of his dominions *.

At his return from this fruitless expedition, he employed his arms in a war still more unjust and unsuccessful. We have seen that *Adolphus* purchased *Misnia* and *Thuringia* from that unnatural parent, who wanted to defraud his own children; but that the greatest part of the princes siding with the brothers *Frederic* and *Dietmann*, he had never been able to gain possession; so that he lost both his money and his reputation. Nevertheless, when he died, his brother *Philip* of *Nassau* claimed those countries, and the emperor supported his pretensions, in hope of profiting by the troubles that would necessarily ensue, and of obtaining some portion of the lands in dispute. He accordingly summoned the two brothers to appear before the diet at *Fulde*, and give an account of their title; and they refusing to adhere to the conditions he wanted to impose, were by a formal sentence divested of their estates, and put to the ban of the empire. He at the same time raised an army to carry this sentence into execution: but such a flagrant piece of tyranny and injustice raised up a number of friends to the young princes; so that *Frederic* found himself in a little time at the head of a strong body of forces, and actually gave battle to the emperor near *Luchau*, where he obtained a complete victory, in consequence of which he remained peaceable possessor of the two provinces in question, while *Albert* was obliged to fly with disgrace, and sit down with the mortifying reflection of having seen all his laurels blasted by the prowess of a boy †.

His chagrin, however, did not prey upon his faculties so much, but that he exerted all his endeavours in establishing

* DUBRAV. Hist. Bohem. l. xix.

† STRUV. per. ix.

his nephew *Charobert* upon the throne of Hungary. Pope *Clement V.*, who succeeded *Benedict*, confirmed the sentence of *Boniface* in favour of *Mary*, queen of *Naples*; and forbade the *Hungarians*, on pain of the most terrible censures, to receive any other prince but *Charobert*. At the same time he commanded *Otho*, duke of *Bavaria*, to lay aside the title of king of Hungary, which that prince had purchased with his money after the expulsion of *Ladislaus*. He had even been crowned at *Alba*, and made a progress through the kingdom; but the pride and insolence of his disposition gave such disgust, that the nobles abandoned his interest, and the vavode of *Transilvania* actually imprisoned him in a strong castle, from which he was not released until he had renounced his title to the crown.

Charobert
elected
king of
Hungary.

A. D.

1307.

A civil
war
breaks out
between
Gerhard,
count of
Holstein,
and his
nobility.
He turns
his arms
against the
city of Lu-
bec.

THE throne becoming vacant by his abdication, the two parties united in favour of *Charobert*, who was elected and approved by the pope's legate in the name of the Roman church.

THOUGH the troubles of Hungary were thus appeased, the northern parts of Germany felt the disagreeable effects of a civil war that broke out between *Gerhard*, count of *Holstein*, and the nobility of his country, who took the field against him, under the command of one *Pelas*; but they were vanquished in a pitched battle, and their chief being taken prisoner, was convicted of treason, and broke alive upon the wheel. As the city of *Lubec* gave sanctuary to the fugitive nobles, the duke resolved to punish the regency of the town for this mark of disrespect. He accordingly encamped at the mouth of the *Trave*, where he built a fort, in order to interrupt their commerce, and hinder them from receiving supplies by sea. The regency, who had concluded a treaty of alliance with the duke of *Saxony*, determined to defend themselves by force of arms, and had recourse to *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, their protector, who sent *Waldemar*, duke of *Sleswick*, to take the command of their troops.

COUNT *Gerhard*, in order to ballance these preparations, received a reinforcement from the duke of *Mecklenburg* and some other princes, who were his allies, and took post near a place, called *Suartow*, from whence he greatly incommoded the inhabitants of *Lubec*, and supported the garrison of the fort which he had raised at the mouth of the river.

An accom-
modation
is effected
by the me-
diation of

BUT before any action of consequence was undertaken on either side, the difference was terminated by the mediation of duke *Waldemar*, and a peace concluded, on condition that the new fort should remain in the hands of the count for the term of four years, which being expired, the emperor

Albert

Albert should be solicited to decide to which party it should belong. This treaty was followed by a reconciliation between the count and his nobility, who mutually agreed, that in case of any future quarrel and dispute, they should have recourse to the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, who would decide the affair in question, according to the laws and customs of *Holstein* *.

Taxes and commotions did not affect the emperor so nearly as did the revolt of the *Helvetians* or *Swiss*, which was occasioned by the tyranny of those whom he appointed to govern that people, accustomed to cherish and maintain the idea of liberty as an inestimable jewel, transmitted to them by their ancestors from time immemorial. Fortified by their natural situation, and surrounded with mountains, torrents, and woods, they had nothing to fear from strangers, and lived happily in a rugged country, suitable to none but those who were used to a frugal and laborious course of life. Equality of condition was the most solid base of their government; and when their nobility attempted to tyrannize, they were either altogether expelled, or reduced within bounds by the people. *Rodolphus* of *Hapsburg* had appeased these troubles by his courage and discretion; the exiles were permitted to return, and peace was re-established on a solid footing. Although the *Swiss* were extremely jealous of their liberty, yet they were always submissive to the empire of which they held; and a great many of their towns were free and imperial. With respect to the three cantons of *Ury*, *Switz*, and *Underwald*, they do not seem to have been in any-ways dependent upon the house of *Austria*. Indeed, they put themselves under the protection of *Rodolphus*, when he was no more than landgrave of *Alsace*; and after his elevation to the imperial throne, they never acknowledged in him any other sovereignty but that of chief of the empire. Nor does he seem to have considered them as fiefs of the house of *Austria*; for he always treated them with great indulgence, and defended their rights and privileges against the noblemen who attempted to infringe them.

ALBERT's conduct in this particular was quite the reverse of his father's: he wanted to govern the *Swiss* as an absolute sovereign, and had formed a scheme for erecting *Switzerland* into a principality for one of his sons: he had endeavoured to persuade the cantons of *Ury*, *Switz*, and *Underwald*, to submit voluntarily to his dominion, in which

* *HUTTFELD. Hist. Dan. t. iii.*

case he promised to rule them with the utmost tenderness; but finding them tenacious of their independency, and deaf to all his solicitations, he resolved to tame them by rougher methods, and appointed governors, who domineered over them in the most arbitrary manner. Complaints were preferred without effect; their deputies were treated with contempt at the imperial court; they were subjected at home to numberless species of oppression; they were plundered, taxed, fined, imprisoned, tortured, and even put to death occasionally, without justice or form of law; and, in a word, they groaned under all the miseries flowing from despotic power and barbarity.

which
form a con-
spiracy for
the reco-
very of
their
liberty,

A. D.
1308.
and shake
off the
Austrian
yoke.

IN this emergency they had no prospect of relief, except in their own courage, and they began to concert proper measures for delivering themselves from the tyranny of the *Austrian* government. The chiefs of the confederates were *Arnould Melchiat*, a native of *Underwald*, *Werner Strauffacher*, of *Switz*, and *Walter Furtz* of *Ury*. These men, naturally bold, enterprising, and united by a long intimacy of friendship, having frequently met in private to deliberate upon means to free their country, admitted nine other persons to their councils; and the association being confirmed by oath, they resolved to raise insurrections in the three cantons, to demolish the fortified castles, and expel the *Austrian* governors, with all their adherents. A certain time being fixed for putting this laudable design in execution, the individuals began privately to make preparations for such an important enterprize, which was actually atchieved, without the loss of one single life. On the first day of *January* the conspirators sent fifty men to the governor of *Sarn*, with the usual presents and compliments of the season; and these being admitted into the citadel, seized the gates and made the governor their prisoner. The people of *Ury* at the same time surprised *Altorff*, and the inhabitants of *Switz* made themselves masters of *Lowertz*. The forts were instantly demolished, and the governor was conducted to the frontiers, where they obliged him to promise, upon oath, that he would never serve the house of *Austria* against the *Helvetic* nation, and never return to the cantons: an instance of moderation rarely found in an incensed people, who have their oppressors in their power.

In this manner the three cantons delivered themselves from the *Austrian* yoke, and retrieved that liberty, which they still enjoy unimpaired. The other cantons soon engaged

in the confederacy, which was the origin of the *Helvetian* republic * (P).

THIS desire of aggrandizing his family, in a great mea-^{The empe-}sure influenced *Albert's* whole conduct. He had by his wife ^{or Al-}*Elizabeth* six sons and three daughters, for whom he endeavour-^{ed}ed to procure all possible advantages; and the eagerness ^{of his}with which he prosecuted these endeavours in the end cost him his life. After the decease of his brother *Rodolphus*, duke of *Suabia*, and landgrave of *Alsace*, he had taken upon him the education of his only son *John*, as well as the administration of his dominions. This young prince, when he

* STETTLER. Ann. Helvetic. Bern. t. i.

(P) The tyranny of the *Austrian* governors was extended even to the most ridiculous lengths. *Grisser*, governor of *Ury*, ordered a pole to be erected in the market-place of *Altstorf*, crowned with a kind of hat or cap, to which every passenger was commanded to make obeisance: but *William Tell*, one of the conspirators, having refused to yield this absurd homage, he was summoned to appear before the governor, who condemned him to shoot an arrow through an apple, placed upon the head of his own son, at a certain distance, on pain of being hanged. This feat he successfully performed in public; when the governor, perceiving he had two arrows in his girdle, desired to know for what use he intended the supernumerary shaft. *Tell* having first obtained his promise that his life should not be taken away, acknowledged, that if it had been his misfortune to kill his son with the first arrow, he would have aimed the second at the governor's heart. *Grisser* incensed at this declaration, *Tho*

I will not break my promise (cried he) *so as to take away thy life, thou shalt spend it in a close prison*. So saying, he caused him to be fettered and put into a boat, to be transported to *Cussetenach*, a castle in the lake of *Lucern*; nay the governor himself embarked with the prisoner, that he might with his own eyes see the sentence put in execution. They had scarce proceeded half way when they were overtaken with such a tempest, that the boatmen could not manage the vessel, and all on board were in the most imminent danger of their lives. In this extremity, one of the governor's servants, who knew *Tell* to be the most expert boatman of the country, proposed that he should be unbound and set to the helm. The governor assented to the proposal, and *Tell* taking the command of the vessel, steered her close to a rock, where leaping ashore with great agility, he made his escape thro' the mountains to *Stauffacher*, and lay concealed till the day on which the scheme was executed (1).

(1) *Histor. lib. xxi. p. 207.*

*He refuses
to do jus-
tice to his
nephew
John, duke
of Suabia,*

was of age, had often solicited the emperor, both by him-
self and his friends, to put him in possession of his patrimony,
or at least to give him some portion. His uncle had, under
various pretexts, delayed doing him justice; and it was ge-
nerally suspected, that his design was to appropriate his pu-
pil's estate to the benefit of his own children. This suspi-
cion was confirmed by the intrigues he had used to possess
himself of *Bohemia*, and the marquise of *Misnia*, where
he had even employed force in behalf of his usurpation, by
these means incurring the aversion and resentment of several
princes of the empire. The emperor having gone out on
the first day of *May* to take the air at *Basil*, duke *John* pre-
vailed upon the bishop of *Strasbourg* to intercede with his
uncle, that he might put him in possession of some of the
castles belonging to his patrimony. To this proposal the
emperor replied, that he would make his nephew an officer,
and employ him in the *Bohemian* war, after which he should
receive satisfaction. The young duke, who overheard this
declaration, called aloud in a transport of passion, "I plain-
ly see that he who would defraud me of my estate, would
also deprive me of my life." So saying, he went in quest
of three confederates, namely, *Rodolphus of Warth*, *Walter
of Eschebach*, and *Ulrick of Palm*, who were all favourites
of *Albert*. With these he had already concerted measures
for destroying the emperor, in case he should refuse to com-
ply with his demand; and now they determined to put their
design in execution.

*He enters
into a con-
spiracy
against
him,*

*and assassi-
nates him
near
Schaff-
hausen.*

AFTER the entertainment the emperor had given to those
who accompanied him, during which he had, with his own
hands, crowned them with chaplets of flowers, he set out
for *Rhinfelden*, and arriving at the river *Rhees* near *Schaff-
hausen*, he went into a boat, attended by duke *John* and his
three confederates, while his son, together with the rest of
his retinue, waited on the bank for its return. *Albert* hav-
ing crossed the river, the conspirators advanced to him, while
he walked through a new sown field, when duke *John* stab-
bed him in the throat, *Warth* plunged a sword into his
breast, and *Palm* cut him across the head and face ^b. After
having thus executed their purpose, in sight of his own son
and attendants, who could give him no assistance, they be-
took themselves to flight. Duke *John*, after having con-
cealed himself for some time in different parts of *Italy*, went
at length and threw himself at the feet of *Clement V.* suc-
cessor of *Boniface VIII.* begging he would impose a penance

^b REHDORF. ad an. 1308. Chron. Aust. p. 1183.

proportioned to his crime, when the pope enjoined him to *The fate of*
 is the remainder of his life in the monastery of the hermits *the regi-*
 of *St. Augustine* at *Pisa*, where he actually ended his days. *cides.*
 By order of the emperor *Henry VII.* his duchy of *Suabia*
 was seized and confiscated for the use of the duke of *Au-*
stria. *Palm* concealed himself in a convent of friars at *Basil*,
 where he died some time after. *Etschbach* lived thirty-five
 years as a cow-herd in a village of the county of *Wirttemberg*,
 and discovered himself upon his death-bed; and *Warth* being
 apprehended was broke alive upon the wheel. In the place *A monas-*
 where the emperor was slain a cloister was built, and called *tory erect-*
Königsfelt, from whence his body, after having been depo-
 sited there for some time, was carried to *Spire*, and interred *ed on the*
 among his predecessors ^c (Q). According to some histor- *spot where*
 ians, he was a prince of a brutal disposition, and extremely *the empe-*
 ill bred, of a most terrible aspect, and the most fordid avar- *ror was*
 rice ^d. Others, however, soften this character, affirming, *murdered.*
 that he was a prince of great courage and extraordinary ad- *His cha-*
 drcfs, remarkable for an excellent understanding, and an in- *character.*
 violable attachment to truth; that he was neither cruel nor
 vindictive, though all agree in taxing him with avarice.

^c AVENT. ANN. Boior. lib. vii. p. 593. ALB. ARGENTIN in
 Chron. VILLAN. lib. viii. c. 95. FELIX FAB. Hist. Suev. lib.
 i. c. 14. KRANTZ Sax. lib. viii. c. 41. ^d TRITH. in
 Chron. Hirfang.

(Q) *Albert*, by his wife *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Minard*,
 duke of *Carinthia* and *Gorecia*, had six sons and five daughters,
 namely, *Frederic*, surnamed *the Handsome*, competitor with *Lewis*
 of *Bavaria* for the empire; *Rodolphus the Debonnaire*, king of
Bohemia, who married *Blanche*, daughter of *Philip III.* and
 grand-daughter of *St. Lewis*, king of *France*, and afterwards
Elizabeth of *Poland*, by whom he had no issue; *Leopold*, sur-
 named *the Boaster*, married to *Mabel*, daughter of *Amadeus IV.*
 count of *Savoy*; *Otto*, who married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Ste-*
phen, duke of *Bavaria*; *Henry*, who had no posterity, though he
 married *Elizabeth*, daughter of the count of *Wirtzburg*; and
Albert, surnamed *the Counterfeit*, from whom the male issue
 of the family is derived. Of his daughters, *Agnes* was match-
 ed with *Andrew*, king of *Hungary*; *Elizabeth*, married to
Frederic III. duke of *Lorraine*; *Ann*, first to *Herman*, marquis of
Misnia, and afterwards to *Henry*, duke of *Vrattslavia*; *Ka-*
therine was wife of *Charles*, duke of *Calabria*, and *Gutta* espoused
 by *Lewis*, count of *Oettingen* (1).

(1) Struv. per. ix. sect. 3.

He equally abhorred flattery and slander, and was used to say, that there were three sorts of persons for whom he had a particular regard, namely, women of honour, men of courage, and pious ecclesiastics °.

H E N R Y VII.

Philip,
king of
France,
aspires to
the empire.

The pope is
embarrassed,

and by the
advice of
cardinal
Prat, pro-
poses Hen-
ry of Lux-
emburg
to the elec-
tors.

AFTER the death of the emperor *Albert*, the electors could not for some time agree in their choice of a person to succeed him on the throne. *Philip the Fair* of France aspired to the empire; and in order to facilitate the accomplishment of his wish, resolved to go and treat in person with pope *Clement V.* who was at that time at *Avignon*, and who is said to have been raised to the papacy, on condition that he should assist the king in his designs upon the imperial throne. The pope being apprised of this intended visit, and well knowing the subject of it, was very much embarrassed in his own mind; for being obliged to remain in *France*, on account of the commotions of *Rome* and *Italy*, he could not decently nor safely refuse to comply with *Philip's* desire, though he knew it was not in his power to grant it, as the imperial crown was intirely at the disposal of the *Germans*, who, if he should arrogate to himself the right of conferring it on this occasion, would in all probability explain themselves in express terms against the pretensions of the pope; because they would foresee, that, should *Philip* ascend the imperial throne, *France* would retrieve the dominions and rights to which she laid claim in the empire. He was likewise very well persuaded that *Philip* was dissatisfied with the court of *Rome*, on account of the insolence with which he had been treated by *Boniface VIII.* who had commanded him in a very imperious strain, on pain of excommunication, to make war upon the *Turks*, for the recovery of the kingdom of *Jerusalem*.

CLEMENT V. who was now in the chair, being very much perplexed in consequence of these reflections, and undetermined in his behaviour towards *Philip* at the approaching interview, cardinal *Nicholas Prat* advised him to dispatch private messengers to the *German* electors, with pressing instances to elect a chief, and to declare, that, if the election did not immediately take place, the imperial dignity would revert from *Germany* to *France*. He likewise counselled him

to propose *Henry of Luxemburg*, as a proper person to fill the throne¹.

CLEMENT relished the advice, and immediately communicated *Philip's* design to the ecclesiastic princes, who entered into his views, and promised to conduct themselves according to his directions. Mean while *Berthold*, count of *Henneburg*, and *Conrad*, knight of *Reida*, as proxies of *Otho* and *Waldemar*, marquises of *Brandenburg*, and *Rodolphus*, duke of *Saxony*, repaired to *Boppard*, where they found *Rodolphus* and *Lewis*, counts palatine of the *Rhine*. These four agreed to propose in the diet of election *Otho* and *Waldemar*, *Albert*, count of *Hanau*, *Rodolphus* and *Lewis*, and *Frederic*, duke of *Austria*; and they obliged themselves by oath to acknowledge for king of the *Romans* him, of these six competitors, who should have a majority of voices. At the same time they drew up some articles touching the preservation of their fiefs and privileges, which the future emperor should approve and confirm.

THESE preliminaries being regulated, the electors, to the number of six, assembled at *Frankfort* (R), where the archbishop of *Trier's* began the diet by reading a protestation, importing, that all excommunicated or outlawed persons, and others who had no right to be present, should retire: then they deliberated upon the election, and *Henry of Luxemburg* (S) being proposed by the three electors, was unanimously chosen, as a prince in all respects worthy of the imperial crown. As he happened to be at that time in the city of *Frankfort*, he was forthwith made acquainted with the

He is accordingly elected.

¹ VILL. l. viii. c. 101. ANT. tit. xxi. c. i. AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 593.

(R) *John* and *Henry*, dukes of *Saxony*, claimed the right of sitting in this assembly, and protested in form against whatever should be done without their concurrence. *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*, who had ascended the throne of *Bohemia*, did not appear at this election, probably because the majority of the *Bohemian* nobility had not yet acknowledged him as their king (1).

(S) Before he was elected, emperor he had signalized himself in a war against the city of *Triers*, on account of their having refused to pay certain tributes and duties, to which the family of *Luxemburg* had a claim. He not only succeeded in this enterprise, but, when the see of *Liège* was vacant, took his measures so effectually, that one of his brothers was chosen archbishop (2).

(1) *Leibnitz in Marites*, p. 252.

(2) *Remorg. sur Huis*, l. ii.

election; and *Philip of France*, who was on the road to *Avignon*, receiving these tidings, proceeded no farther, but returned immediately without seeing the pope †.

A. D.
1309. HENRY was not a little surprised when he understood the electors had conferred upon him that dignity, which he thought himself too weak to support. Nevertheless, he gratefully accepted of the honour, and was on the *Epiphany*

He pro-
nounces
sentence of
death upon
the mur-
derer of
Albert.

Grants the
investiture
of Austria
to the sons
of that
emperor.

Celebrates
his nup-

crowned at *Aix la Chapelle* †. This ceremony being performed, he made a progress along the *Rhine*, to receive homage and the oath of fidelity from the princes, noblemen, and cities, and convoked an imperial diet at *Spire*, to which the electors, princes, and deputies of towns, repaired in great numbers. Here sentence of death was pronounced against *John of Austria*, for the murder of the emperor *Albert*, whose sons, *Frederic*, *Leopold*, *Albert*, and *Otho*, appearing at the same time, demanded the investiture of *Austria*, and the other hereditary dominions, which had been left to their father by the emperor *Rodolphus*. These four princes had been summoned by order of the emperor, who commanded them to resign their pretensions to *Austria*, which had already been fatal to five kings (T.) They, on the other hand, insisted upon being maintained in the possession of a duchy, which had been bestowed upon their father with the consent of the princes of the empire. The emperor, however, remaining fixed in his resolution, duke *Frederic* of *Austria* retired, and at his departure is said to have sent a person to tell the emperor, that the duchy of *Austria*, which had already been the death of five kings, might still be fatal to a sixth, if he did not desist from his unjust pretensions. Be that as it will, certain it is, the emperor ordered the dukes to be called back, and, with the consent of the *German* princes, bestowed on them the investiture of that duchy. At this assembly also appeared *Elizabeth*, daughter and heiress of *Wenceslaus*, king of *Bohemia*; deceased, by a daughter of the emperor *Rodolphus*. A treaty of marriage had been agreed upon between her and *John*, son of *Henry* the emperor, whom the *Bohemians* had set upon the throne; after having expelled *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*. This marriage having been delayed from time to time under different pretexts, the prince's

‡ KRANTZ Sax. l. ix. c. i. BARRE, t. vi. p. 361. † ALB. ARGENT. in Chron. l. viii. c. 102. VECER. in vit. Hen. TRI- THEM. in Chron. ‡

(T) Namely *Conradin*, *Ottocarus*, *Rodolphus* of *Austria*, *Adolphus*, and *Albert*.

now demanded that the treaty should be fulfilled, or cause *trials of his* shewn why the nuptials should not immediately be solemnized. *own son* Count John of Luxemburg was at that time in the seventeenth year of his age, and Elizabeth turned of twenty-two. She *John with* was of a tall stature and genteel appearance; but a report *Elizabeth,* had been spread abroad to the prejudice of her chastity, for *daughter* which reason the emperor had, from day to day, deferred the consummation of the marriage, until the princess, having *of Win-* discovered the cause of this delay, found means to convince *cesslaus,* him of her innocence (U); upon which the ceremony was *late king* performed with great magnificence, in presence of the elec- *of Poland.* tors, and other princes and noblemen of the diet.

IN this manner Bohemia became the property of the house of Luxemburg, who possessed it for a good number of years without interruption. At present, however, there was a necessity for conquering, before the new married couple could enjoy the kingdom; for Henry, duke of Carinthia, joined by Frederic, marquis of Misnia, had levied a considerable army, taken and garrisoned Prague and Cuttemberg, and exacted a new oath of allegiance from the inhabitants: John of Luxemburg, therefore, could not take possession, except by force of arms. The emperor and the princes furnished him with a strong body of troops, commanded by the archbishop of Mentz, the count palatine of the Rhine, and the counts of Oettingen and Heinsberg, and with these he entered Bohemia. His first operation was the siege of Cuttemberg, which in a little time surrendered; and then he invested Prague, the garrison of which was commanded by the duke of Carinthia and the marquis of Misnia in person, who made a

(U) The princess Elizabeth no sooner understood that her virtue was called in question, than, repairing to the emperor's antichamber, she undressed herself before the ladies there present, and approaching Henry in her shift, "Sire (said she) I am informed you entertain some suspicion of my honour, and, on that account, delay my marriage with the prince your son. Conscious therefore of my own innocence, I have taken the liberty of pre-

senting myself in this manner, to intreat your imperial majesty will order me forthwith to be examined by matrons, whose testimony will soon refute the malice of my enemies, and redound to the triumph of my character." The emperor complied with her request, and she was committed to the care of some ladies and midwives, who unanimously declared her an unspotted virgin; upon which the marriage was solemnized (1).

(1) Heiss. liv. ii. c. 25.

John and Elizabeth crowned king and queen of Bohemia.

very vigorous defence, until the burghers, incensed at some outrages committed by the soldiers, opened the gates to the besiegers, who soon became masters of the city. The duke and marquis, thus betrayed, took refuge in the fort of *St. Wit*, where they capitulated with king *John*, who permitted them to retire to their own dominions. The states were immediately assembled, and the coronation of *John* and *Elizabeth* was performed by the archbishop of *Mentz*, assisted by the bishops of *Prague* and *Olmütz*, amidst the acclamations of the *Bohemians* ¹.

The emperor sends an embassy to the pope.

THIS affair being settled, it was resolved that the emperor should make a journey into *Italy*, and orders were given for raising the troops necessary to attend him in this expedition. Mean while he ordered the body of *Albert*, together with that of his predecessor *Adolphus*, whom he had slain, to be carried to *Spire* and interred in one day, he himself assisting in person at the funeral ^k. Then he sent a splendid embassy to *Clement V.* composed of the bishops of *Basel* and *Côire*, *Amadeus*, count of *Savoy*, *John Dauphin*, count of *Albon* and *Vienna*, *Gui* count of *Flanders*, *John* count of *Sarbruc*, and doctor *Simon de Marville*, who repairing to *Avignon*, delivered their credentials to the pope, together with the decree of the election, which were very courteously received. His holiness acknowledged *Henry* as king of the *Romans*, promised to crown him emperor at *Rome*, and received the oath from these deputies, who swore, in the name of their master, that he never would make the least attempt upon the life or honour of the pope; that he would never enact any law in *Rome*, without the consent of his holiness; that he would restore all the lands belonging to the church; that he would exalt the holy see, defend all her rights, and take the accustomed oath at his coronation ^l.

A. D. 1310.
He reduces the dominions of Everhard, count of Wirtemberg.

DURING the reign of *Albert I.* *Everhard*, count of *Wirtemberg*, had molested the imperial cities of *Suabia*, and now, since the death of that emperor, had continued to exercise such violence against them, that they were obliged to complain of his conduct at the diet of *Spire*. The count being summoned to appear and answer to the charge, came attended with such a large body of troops as gave umbrage to the emperor and the princes, who, nevertheless, endeavoured to compromise the affair; but he rejected their advice, and retired without having listened to any terms of accommodation. He was therefore put to the ban of the em-

¹ Hist. Luxemb. l. xlvii.

^k AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii.

p. 593.

^l BARRE, t. vi. p. 371.

pire^m; and a body of troops being raised to reduce him to obedience, the lord of *Vinsberg* was invested with the command, and in a little time subdued almost all the dominions of the count, who escaped into the territories of the marquiss of *Baden*, with whom he lived till the death of the emperor, after which he, without difficulty, obtained possession of his estates.

AMONG other regulations for establishing the peace of the *The Jews* empire, *Henry* at this period, by public decree, expelled the *are expelled from* *Jews* from all the provinces of *Germany*, on account of the *Germany.* mischiefs which attended their usury and extortion; for they farmed the taxes of almost every prince at a low rate, and levied them with such severity and rapaciousness, as rendered them odious and detestable to the people. At the same time he, in conjunction with *Philip the Fair* of *France*, solicited the pope to abolish the order of templars, who not only imitated the *Jews* in their usury, but were accused of the most licentious debauchery, and all sorts of enormity. *Clement*, however, was deaf to their remonstrances, and refused to take any steps to the prejudice of an order, which had done such signal service to the cause of religionⁿ (X).

As no emperor, since the death of *Frederic II.* had repaired to *Italy*, the rights of the empire in that country were all gone to wreck. Every nobleman had erected himself into a petty sovereign, and the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* butchered one another without humanity or remorse. Pope *Clement V.* who had been the chief cause of *Henry's* election, urged him, with unceasing importunity, to go in person and quell

He is solicited to march into Italy.

^m AVENT. ubi supra.

ⁿ STRUV. per. ix. sect. 4.

(X) This order was instituted at *Jerusalem* in the beginning of the twelfth century, for the defence of the holy sepulchre, and the protection of Christian pilgrims. They were first called *the Poor of the Holy City*, and afterwards assumed the appellation of *Templars*, because their house was near the temple.

After the ruin of the kingdom of *Jerusalem*, about the year 1186, they spread themselves through *Germany* and o-

ther dominions of *Europe*, whether they were invited by the liberality of the Christians: but their morals were soon corrupted by the riches they acquired: their lives became scandalous, and their pride insupportable. Among other pranks of the most shameless debauchery, they were taxed with having renounced the Christian religion, and with spitting in derision on the cross at all their meetings (1).

(1) Gurtler, *Hist. Templar*, Num. 150.

*Diet at
Frank-
fort.*

the disturbances in *Italy* °; and the *Gibelines*, who were imperialists, solicited him to the same effect, that they might be supported against their enemies. He now, therefore, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon proper measures for maintaining the tranquillity of the empire in his absence. His son *John*, king of *Bohemia*, was appointed vicar, and the office of his counsellor given to the count of *Henneberg*, together with the dignity of prince, confirmed by the assembly. The treaty which *Henry's* predecessors had made with *France* was renewed, and the states promised to second the emperor's enterprize with their whole power. But that he might not alarm the *Italians*, he sent deputies before him to the cities of *Lombardy* with letters, importing, that he would march into *Italy*, not as an enemy, to ruin the subjects and enrich himself with the spoil, but as a friend, coming to administer justice, repress disorders, redress grievances, and re-establish the provinces in the full and free enjoyment of their antient rights and privileges.

*Sets out on
his expedi-
tion.*

HAVING taken these precautions, he set out for *Italy* with the troops, which had been granted him by the states of the empire, being accompanied by the dukes of *Austria* and *Bavaria*, *Baldwin*, archbishop of *Triers*, the bishop of *Liege*, the counts of *Savoy* and *Flanders*, and other noblemen, together with the militia of all the imperial cities. Pope *Clement*, at whose earnest solicitation this journey had been undertaken, changed his opinion, as soon as he saw *Henry* set out with sufficient forces to re-establish the authority and sovereignty of the empire in *Italy*, and set on foot divers secret negotiations to prevent his march. He committed the government of *Rome*, to *Robert*, king of *Apulia*, or *Naples*, with whom he engaged in alliance against the emperor, and that king sent thither his brother prince *John*, with a good body of troops, at the same time joining in a confederacy with the cities of *Florence*, *Bologna*, *Sienna*, *Lucca*, *Cremona*, *Padua*, *Brescia*, and some others; which being strongly garrisoned, and well provided with munitions of war, resolved to hold out against the emperor. *Rome* was divided into two factions; that of the *Colonnas*, which declared for the emperor, had seized upon *St. John of Lateran*, the amphitheatre, and some other principal parts of the city, distinguishing themselves by the old word *Gibeline*, and giving the appellation of *Guelphs* to the other party, which had declared

*The pope
endea-
vours to
thwart
his mea-
sures.*

*The state
of Italy
and
Rome.*

° VILLAN. l. viii. c. 88, 89, 96. ANTON. tit. xxi. c. i. sect 4.

for prince *John*, and secured the capitol, the castle of *St. Angelo*, and the vatican.

THE emperor having, according to the custom of his predecessors, dispatched envoys to the cities of *Italy* to intimate his journey, and prepare provisions and necessaries for his court and army, he set out, in the month of *September*, from *Lausanne*, where he had received a deputation from the *Gibeline* faction. Crossing mount *Genis*, he staid ten days at *Turin*, and having appointed a governor for the empire, repaired to the city of *Asti*, where he changed the magistracy, and gave the government to one *Nicholas Bonsignori*. Here he staid two months waiting for his army, with which he marched to *Casal* and *Vercelli*, where the inhabitants took the oath of allegiance, and submitted to the appointment of the *German* governors. He was likewise joyfully received by the city of *Milan*, and other towns of *Lombardy*, of whom he exacted considerable sums of money on account of arrears.

A. D.
1311.

Henry visits Turin, Asti, Casal, and Vercelli. Is well received at Milan: receives the submission of many other cities.

NOTWITHSTANDING the great honours that were paid to him by *Guy de la Torre*, chief of the *Milanese*, and governor of the city, he deprived him of his office, which was conferred upon *Matthew Visconti* his professed enemy; and indeed *Henry* favoured the *Gibelines* with such partiality, as disquieted all people of moderation, and was of great prejudice to his own affairs. It was in consequence of this disgust that the iron crown, kept at *Monza*, could not be found for his coronation; so that he caused another of steel to be made, with which he was crowned, together with his empress, by *Gaston de la Torre*, archbishop of *Milan*, and after the ceremony created 200 knights P.

Is crowned at Milan.

GUY DE LA TORRE, exasperated at the emperor's behaviour towards him and his party, resolved to make an attempt upon *Henry's* life, and with some of the *Guelphs* actually concerted a scheme for assaulting him in his palace, during the execution of a malefactor without the walls, which they did not doubt would attract the curiosity of the *Germans*, so as that they would croud to the place, and leave the emperor almost quite unguarded. *Matthew Visconti* having luckily received intimation of this plot, communicated the whole contrivance to *Henry*, who took his measures in such a manner, that, when the conspirators assembled to execute their design, they were suddenly attacked and cut in pieces by a body of troops prepared for that purpose. As for *Guy de la Torre* he escaped with some of his family; but

Guy de la Torre forms a conspiracy against the emperor's life.

his house was razed to the ground, and his effects confiscated for the use of the emperor.

NOTWITHSTANDING this miscarriage, he still continued to project plans for *Henry's* destruction, and even engaged the emperor's own chancellor in another design against his life. That perfidious wretch sent letters, sealed with the imperial seal, to the magistrates of *Lombardy*, commanding them, at an appointed time, to murder all the *Germans* who were in garrison among them: and the execrable scheme would, in all probability, have been executed, had not a *German* knight happily intercepted one of the letters, and boldly expostulated on the subject with *Henry*, who being informed of the particulars, caused his chancellor to be apprehended immediately, and among his letters found one of the letters not yet expedited. Far from attempting to exculpate himself, this miscreant confessed the crime, owning, that being a *Guelph* of the race of the *Turriani*, massacred at *Milan*, he had entered into the emperor's service with no other view but that of destroying him with the first favourable opportunity; and that he had before poisoned several waggon loads of wine destined for the *German* army, though that scheme did not take effect. *Henry*, amazed and confounded at the villainy and boldness of this traitor, condemned him to be burnt alive, and the sentence was executed accordingly ⁹.

The chancellor convicted of perfidy, and committed to the flames.

CREMONA was the first place that ventured to oppose the emperor, and that he took by force, and fleeced accordingly. *Parma*, *Vicenza*, and *Placentia*, made peace with him upon reasonable conditions. *Padua* paid 100,000 crowns, and received an imperial officer as commander of the city. The *Venetians* presented his majesty with a large sum of money, an imperial crown of gold enriched with diamonds, and a vermilion chain of very curious workmanship. *Brescia* made a desperate resistance, and sustained a very severe siege, in the course of which *Waleran* of *Luxemburg*, the emperor's brother, was slain by an arrow, and *Henry's* army diminished to such a degree, that the inhabitants marched out, under the command of their prefect *Thibault de Druffati*, and gave him battle. After a very obstinate engagement, in which the emperor was knocked off his horse and almost killed, the *Germans*, animated by the danger in which they saw their sovereign, charged the *Brescians* with such redoubled fury and impetuosity, as bore down all opposition, and compelled them to retire into the city with great loss. *Thi-*

Brescia is besieged.

⁹ CUSPIN. in vit. Henric. VII. Hist. Luxemb. l. xivi.

bault, who had fought with incredible valour, was found upon the field not yet dead, though grievously wounded, and being carried to the place where the emperor stood, *Henry* reproached him with his perfidy, ordered him to be tore asunder by four horses; then his quarters were exposed upon the wheel, and his head was fixed upon a pike before the gates of the city. And indeed this punishment, severe as it was, seems to have been no more than adequate to his treachery and ingratitude; for two years before this event, when he was banished from his native country, he had come to *Spire* and implored the protection of *Henry*, who received him with great hospitality, and knighted him with his own hand: yet, unmindful of these favours, he afterwards joined the *Guelphs*, and was the person who excited the *Brescians* to revolt against his benefactor. His townsmen, in order to revenge his death, hanged fifty *German* prisoners upon their walls: a circumstance which incensed the emperor to such a degree, that he was resolved to humble them, or lose his life in the attempt. Thus determined, he redoubled his efforts, and repeated his attacks with equal vigour and perseverance, until the besieged were, by the enemy without and famine within, reduced to the utmost extremity. Then they had recourse to his clemency, and presented themselves before him barefoot, with halters about their necks: a spectacle which he could not behold unmoved. He accordingly granted them their lives, on condition they should pay 60,000 crowns, and deliver 100 hostages, chosen from their principal citizens; but, at the same time, he ordered their walls and fortifications to be demolished, and entered in triumph the breach he had made^r. From hence the emperor, after having appointed governors in that city, *Verona*, *Parma*, and *Mantua*, marched directly to *Genoa*, where he was splendidly received and entertained by the city.

Surrenders at discretion, and is dismantled.

By this time *Henry's* successes in *Lombardy* had greatly alarmed the pope, who began to fear that he would not only reduce all the *Italian* towns and states to his obedience, but also take advantage of *Clement's* absence to fix the seat of his empire at *Rome*. It was from this apprehension that, although he had sent a commission to five cardinals to crown the emperor, he now exerted all his endeavours to traverse his success, in concert with *Robert*, king of *Naples*, who formed a confederacy among the towns of *Florence*, *Bologna*,

Henry is amused by Robert, king of Naples.

^r Idem ibid.

and *Lucca*, and ordered his brother *John*, prince of *Morea*, to march with a body of forces to *Rome*, to oppose the emperor's entrance into that city, and act as the ally and protector of the *Ursini*, who headed the faction of the *Guelphs*. Mean while he sent a deputation to the emperor at *Genoa*, to declare that his sole view of detaching his brother to *Rome* was to honour the entry of his imperial majesty; and that he was sincerely disposed to cultivate and cement a friendship with his imperial majesty, by means of a match between his son, the duke of *Calabria*, and *Katherine* of *Luxemburg*.

A. D.
1312.

THO' *Henry* was for some time amused by the dissimulation of this prince, who endeavoured to protract the negotiation, he would not delay his coronation, but set out from *Genoa*, where he had been joined by the cardinals appointed to perform that ceremony; but before he began his march, he sent ambassadors to the prince of *Morea*, who, in conjunction with the *Ursini*, had taken possession of part of the city, to give notice of his approach, that all obstacles to his entry might be removed. At length the *Neapolitan* thought proper to pull off the mask, after having amused the envoys for a considerable time, on pretence of sending to his brother for further orders, and declared, that he would oppose *Henry's* entrance and coronation with all his power.

Henry presents himself before Rome in order of battle;

MEAN while the emperor continued his march, and on his arrival at *Pisa* was, by a messenger from the *Colonnas*, intreated to advance to *Rome* with all expedition. In compliance with this request he proceeded with great diligence, and presented himself in order of battle at the *Ponte Mola*, where he imagined they would dispute his passage: but the prince of *Morea* had withdrawn his troops from that quarter; so that the imperialists entered almost without opposition, and were lodged in different parts, with strict orders to be upon their guard against all attempts of the enemy.

and is crowned in the church of St John of Lateran.

THE basilicon of *St. Peter's*, in which the emperors were usually crowned, being in the hands of the *Ursini* faction, *Henry* proposed that he should receive the imperial crown in the church of *St. John of Lateran*; and though the cardinals at first refused to comply with his desire, on pretence that it was contrary to custom, and exceeded the bounds of their commission, such was the deplorable situation of *Rome*, divided and distracted between two implacable factions, which filled the city with carnage and consternation, that they were at length prevailed upon to embrace the expedient; and he received the crown with the usual ceremonies, amidst the acclamations of the people, who looked upon this event

as the only means of being delivered from such oppressive guests*.

UPON this occasion, instead of making largesses, according to the custom of his predecessors, he demanded money from the *Romans*, who were so much provoked at this unusual imposition, that many of the citizens joined his enemies, who were in possession of the strongest places in *Rome*, and a tumult ensued, in which the emperor lost about 2000 men; and was besides so straitened by want of provision and money, that he could no longer subsist in *Rome*. *Makes an abrupt departure from the city.*

HENRY having, after his coronation, exerted his endeavours to remedy the disorders of *Rome*, resolved to take vengeance on the king of *Naples*, who had duped him in such a perfidious manner; and for that purpose concluded a treaty of alliance with *Frederic II.* king of *Sicily*, brother of *James II.* of *Arragon*, importing, that as soon as the emperor should have made himself master of *Tuscany*, he should invade the kingdom of *Naples* by land, while the *Sicilian* fleet should attack the maritime places.

THE pope, willing to prevent the consequences of this rupture, wrote to the cardinals who had crowned *Henry*, desiring they would effect an accommodation, or at least command both parties to agree to a truce, inasmuch as they were obliged to obey his commands by the oath of fidelity they had taken, and the benefits they had received from the holy see.

THE emperor paid no manner of regard to this remonstrance; but finding himself incapable to reduce his enemies at *Rome*, he left the government of the city to the *Colonnas*, and repaired to *Tivoli*; from thence taking his route through the territory of *Perugia*, which he had laid waste with fire and sword, arrived at *Arezzo*, with an intention to attack *Florence*. He accordingly invested that city, after having taken and demolished some forts in the neighbourhood; but, after a fruitless siege of forty days, was obliged to retire to winter quarters. In the spring he convened all the princes of *Italy* at *Pisa*, and decreed, that they should punctually and annually pay the accustomed tribute; and after mature deliberation upon the acts of hostility, which had been committed by *Robert*, king of *Naples*, upon the empire, he summoned him to appear as his feudatory. *Robert* refusing, was put to the ban (Y), his kingdom being bestowed upon *Fre-* *Resigns Florence without success.*

* REBDORF. ad ann. 1309. KRANTZ. Sax. l. ix. c. 4.

(Y) The *Florentines* surrendered the sovereignty of their territory, for the term of five years, to *Robert*, on condition

A. D.
1313.
*Makes an
alliance
with Fre-
deric, king
of Sicily.*

Frederic, king of *Sicily*, who was in the emperor's interest ^t. The pope, in consequence of these proceedings against his ally, wrote letters to the emperor, earnestly exhorting him to listen to an accommodation; but they happened to produce the contrary effect; for being couched in the stile of a sovereign who writes to his vassal, *Henry* was incensed at his insolence, and, in order to manifest his resentment, joined his forces with those of *Frederic*, king of *Sicily*, in order to attack the dominions of *Robert* both by sea and land. He had been in great distress for want of forces, because those he expected from *Germany* were retarded, by the war which his son *John* was obliged to maintain against the duke of *Carinthia*, who had renewed hostilities and ravaged *Moravia*. At length, however, a reinforcement arrived with his brother, who was archbishop of *Triers*, and a powerful armament being fitted out for his service by *Frederic* of *Sicily* and the *Genoese*, he was flushed with the hope of making a complete conquest of *Naples*. The king of *France*, alarmed at these preparations, began to fear, that, should *Henry* succeed in this enterprize, and reduce the towns of *Italy*, he

^t Idem ibid. VILLAN. lib. ix. c. 43, usque 47. PLATIN. in Clem. V. VEC. in vit. Hen.

he would protect them from the resentment of the emperor; the inhabitants of *Lucca*, *Pistora*, and *Prato*, submitted to him on the same terms: and the pope conferred upon him the government of *Ferrara*. *Henry* was extremely mortified to see the power of his enemy daily increasing; and his resentment glowed with the greater ardour, when he learned that the *Neapolitan* galleys had attacked his vessels in the harbour of *Pisa*, after having ravaged the islands of *Gorgonia* and *Capraia*. He therefore denounced a sentence against him as a child of perdition, which for the entertainment of the reader we shall repeat. "We declare *Robert*, who calls himself king of *Naples*, who calls himself king of *Naples*, divested of the authority, ho-

nours, and immunities, which he enjoyed: we deprive him of the provinces, counties, cities, castles, townships, and other domains, which he either did or may possess: we declare the said *Robert* rebel, traitor, enemy to the empire, guilty of treason: we banish him from the empire for ever, on pain of losing his head, if he shall presume to remain in it contrary to our will, or to return after having been expelled. Finally, we forbid, under the pecuniary penalties specified in the said sentence, all persons, of what condition soever they may be, all towns and communities, to receive or assist him against us and the empire; and we release all his subjects from their oath of allegiance (1)."

(1) *Aquila Vaga* tit. Hen. VII.

would

would reclaim *Prouence* and some other domains, which formerly belonged to the empire: he therefore complained to the pope of the violent proceedings of the emperor, who intended to dispossess *Robert* of the patrimony of his ancestors, and to trouble the repose of the church; so as to hinder the princes of *Europe* from going to the *Holy Land*, according to the resolution taken in the council of *Vienne*. In consequence of this remonstrance, the pope issued a bull, forbidding all persons whatever, on pain of excommunication, to invade *Naples* by sea or land, on any pretence whatsoever: but this prohibition had little weight with *Henry*, who sent a splendid embassy to explain his motives to the king of *France*, who was satisfied with his explanation; and then began his march towards the territory of *Sienna*, with a view to enter *Robert's* dominions. Though his health was extremely precarious, he was resolved to be personally present in this expedition, and advanced as far as *Bonconvento*, where all his fine schemes for the establishing the imperial authority in *Italy* ended with his life (Z). His body was carried back to *Pisa*, and interred with great pomp in the cathedral church, amidst the inexpressible sorrow of all his followers, after he had reigned four years seven months and eighteen days *.

He engages in an expedition against Robert, king of Naples, and dies at Bonconvento. His character,

THUS died *Henry VII.* in the 51st of year of his age, a prince who had the reputation of being valiant, politic, just, affable, and devout. He was well made, though thin; his complexion was florid, and his hair of a sandy colour: he

* MUSSAT. l. xv. rub. 2 & 3. * SPONDAN. Contin. BAR. tom. i. p. 532. KRANTZ. Sax. lib. ix. c. vij. MACH. Hist. de Firen. lib. ii.

(Z) He is said, by some authors, to have been poisoned by a *Dominican*, whose name was *Bernard Politian*, in administering the sacrament, which the emperor frequently received. This monk was supposed to have been hired by his own countrymen the *Florentines*, to perpetrate this execrable action. Several writers have endeavoured to vindicate the order from such an asperson, and to prove that *Henry* died of a complica-

tion of distempers; they have even produced a letter written by his own son, in which he acquits the monks of all suspicion. Nevertheless, the dispute is still undecided; and though it is well known that the emperor laboured under an ill state of health when he embarked in this expedition, it is likewise certain, that the report of the poison was generally believed at the time of his death (1).

(1) *Gest. Episcop. Trevir. l. ii.*

had a small defect in his right eye, his nose and chin were long, his speech was slow, and his stile concise: he had an air of majesty, mingled with great complaisance. Nothing gave him so much pain as to be obliged to treat with his subjects. He abhorred the names of *Cibelines* and *Guelphs*, and loved to command as sovereign. In his youth he had, by means of the pope's dispensation, married *Margaret*, daughter of *John*, duke of *Brabant*, his own cousin. By this princess, who died at *Genoa*, he had prince *John*, of whom mention hath already been made, and four daughters, namely, *Beatrice*, wife of *Charobert*, king of *Hungary*; *Mary*, queen of *Charles the Fair* of *France*; *Agnes*, matched with *Rodolphus*, count palatine of the *Rhine*; and *Katherine*, married to *Leopold*, duke of *Austria*.

C H A P. VII.

Including the History of Charles IV. in whose Reign the Constitution, called the Golden Bull, was established.

I N T E R R E G N U M.

The progress of the Teutonic knights.

BEFORE we proceed to give a detail of what steps were taken to fill the imperial throne, become vacant by the death of *Henry*, it will be necessary to give a retrospective view of the transactions of *Lower Germany*, and those that regard the *Teutonic* order. The majority of these knights, on their return to *Germany* from the *Holy Land*, had taken arms against the *Russians*, and other pagans of the north: they had made themselves masters of *Samogitia*, and butchered all the inhabitants who refused to embrace the Christian religion: they had built the town of *Konisterg*, in honour of *Lewis IX.* their good benefactor: the city of *Montreal* afterwards owed its origin to their industry; and they supported a long and troublesome war against *Seth Wan de Pol*, duke of *Pomerania*. This prince, when upon his death bed, declared his eldest son *Mestewin* heir to his dominions; but he was deposed by his younger brother *Wratislaus*, who governed with such insolence and tyranny, that the people were in arms, expelled him from the duchy, and restored his brother. *Wratislaus*, thus exiled, had recourse to *Conrad*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, whose assistance he procured by promising to defray the expences of the war, and leave him in possession of *Dantzick*, until he should have obtained full satisfaction. On these conditions

the

the marquis took the field, and surpris'd both town and citadel; but understanding that *Mestewin* was supplied with a strong body of forces by his brother-in-law *Boleslaus*, palatine of *Kalis*, he did not choose to encounter such a powerful enemy; and gave his employer to understand, that if he did not immediately pay his troops, the town must be abandoned to pillage. In this emergency *Wratislaus* applied to the *Teutonic* knights, residing at *Elbing*, offering to surrender his person and dominions at discretion, provided they would expel *Mestewin* and the marquis: but their hands were then so full, that they declined embarking in the affair, and *Wratislaus* died of grief at their refusal. Mean while *Mestewin* and his ally besieged and took *Dantzick*, which the palatine kept by way of security until his death; immediately after which *Mestewin* surpris'd both city and citadel, and drove out the *Polish* garrison.

HERTMAN, count *de Helderingen*, grand master of the *Teutonic* order, having repressed the insolence of the *Russians*, *Lithuanians*, *Samogitians*, and *Semigalli*, by whose irruptions the knights had been greatly harrassed, marched at the head of an army towards *Dantzick*, to avail himself of the cession which *Wratislaus* had made in favour of the order. Before hostilities commenced, however, an accommodation was effected, by the intercession of the pope's legates, who were at that time in *Prussia*; and by an article of the treaty, the knights were put in possession of the town and citadel, with all their dependencies. They were afterwards possessed by *Primislaus*, the nephew and heir of *Mestewin*; and at his death the city fell into the hands of the marquis of *Brandenburg*, though the citadel continued in the power of *Uladislaus*, king of *Poland*. This fortress being besieged by the princes of *Brandenburg*, who were bent upon making themselves masters of all *Pomerania*, the *Polish* governor implored the assistance of the knights, who marching to his relief, compelled the enemy to raise the siege of the citadel, and even relinquish the city itself, both which they kept for their own use, because the *Poles* could not pay the sum they demanded for their service: nay, they afterwards purchased *Pomerelia* of *Waldemar*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, and the contract was performed by the emperor *Henry VII.* notwithstanding the opposition of the king of *Poland*. While the order supported itself in *Europe* against all its enemies, its interest was ruined in *Syria* under *Conrad de Feuschawang*, their grand master, in whose time the city of *Acra*, where

they had established their principal house, was taken by the sultan of *Egypt*, and the knights that remained obliged to return to *Germany* ².

IN the petty wars of the north, as the marquisses of *Brandenburg* were powerful enough to make either scale preponderate, their alliance was courted by the kings of *Denmark* and *Poland*; and *Eric VIII.* of *Denmark*, in particular, lived in great friendship with these princes, the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, and the other noblemen of *Lower Saxony*. Having invited his allies to a tournament at *Rostock*, the inhabitants of that city, jealous of their liberty, refused to admit so many princes within their walls: an affront which his *Danish* majesty resented so highly, that he equipped a powerful fleet and landed in *Wandalia*, where he was joined by the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, and the other noblemen, who had jointly sustained the insult. Then they invested the city of *Rostock*, and hampered it in such a manner, that the people, driven to despair, murdered their magistrates and submitted to *Eric*, who bestowed it as a proprietary fief upon the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, by an authentic deed, which was confirmed by the inhabitants in the most solemn manner ².

Rostock
becomes
the property
of the
duke of
Mecklen-
bourg.

A. D. 1314.
The templars are
persecuted, and their
order abolished.

ABOUT this period, the templars who resided in *Germany* were, in consequence of the abolition of their order by pope *Clement* at the council of *Vienne*, distributed in different monasteries to do penance, with a moderate pension from the revenues of the order; and the lands and houses they possessed in *Lorraine* were given to the hospitallers of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, but in the other provinces, their lands were resumed by the noblemen to whose families they originally belonged ^b.

The competition between
Lewis of
Bavaria
and Frederic of
Austria,
for the tutorage and
regency of
the children of
Stephen,
duke of
Bavaria.

THE few templars who resided in *Bavaria* and *Austria* were not disturbed; for these provinces were otherwise employed in a war, occasioned by a competition for the guardianship of the children left by *Stephen*, duke of *Bavaria*. This province formerly belonged to *Otho*, duke of *Lower Bavaria*, brother of *Stephen*, who had been elected king of *Hungary*: but he did not survive his brother many months, and declared in his last will, that the tutorage and regency of the dominions belonging to his nephews devolved to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, now become duke by his death. This right was contested by *Frederic*, duke of *Austria*, who, by presents and promises, gained over some of the noblemen of the province to his interest; and notwithstanding the repeated

² Idem ibid.
General.

^a Hist. Dan. t. iii.

^b NAUCLER.

endeavours of the landgrave of *Thuringia*, to reconcile these two rivals, they were so exasperated against each other, that they had recourse to the decision of arms, and each competitor took the field at the head of a formidable army.

THE duke of *Bavaria* having received advice that the body of *Austrians*, on their way to join *Frederic*, had halted at *Camelftorf*, five leagues from *Mosburg*, detached a part of his best troops to beat up their quarters; and a battle ensued, in which the *Austrians* were routed and cut in pieces; so that *Frederic*, finding himself without resource, was fain to sue for peace. *Lewis*, exclusive of his private hatred to the duke of *Austria*, had another view in continuing the war, namely, that of seizing the dominions of the antient house of *Austria*, to which he had pretensions: but considering that *This* of the scheme might interfere with his design of mounting the *fair is* imperial throne, which was now vacant, he agreed to hold a congress at *Saltzbouurg*, where *Wichard*, archbishop of that see, and *Henry* of *Carinthia*, acted as arbiters of the peace; and an accommodation was effected, in consequence of *Frederic's* renouncing all right to the guardianship and regency, and promising to restore the booty and prisoners which he had acquired in the course of the war ^{*compro-*}_{*mised.*}

THE disorders and dangers which had already begun to *The disorder-* interrupt the commerce of *Germany*, even in the life-time of *Henry VII.* increased to such a degree after his death, that *empire* certain cities of the *Rhine* were obliged to enter into an association with the prince palatine *Rodolphus*, duke of *Bavaria*, who signed an instrument in his own name, and that of his brother *Lewis*, for their mutual security against highwaymen, and their protectors or relations, who might attempt to revenge the death of such as should fall a sacrifice to justice, by committing outrages on the inhabitants of the cities where they had been executed. This confederacy was formed during the interregnum, which continued from the 24th of *August*, when *Henry* died, to the 18th of *October* in the following year. All that intermediate time being employed in the intrigues of *Frederic*, duke of *Austria*, and *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*, who, though first cousins, and grandchildren of the emperor *Rodolphus I.* now set up for the throne in opposition to each other. ^{*during the*}_{*interreg-*}^{*num.*}

THE long vacancy in the empire was owing to several *Disputes* concurring causes. *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*, disputed with *about the* *John* of *Luxemburg*, not only the title of king of *Bohemia*, ^{*right of*} but also the quality of elector, which last was likewise con-^{*elector.*}

* BARRE, ubi supra.

tested between *John* and *Rodolphus*, dukes of *Saxony*; for the number of electors was not yet regulated: and in the elections of *William* of *Holland*, and *Alphonso* of *Castile*, two princes of the house of *Brandenburg* had given their suffrages; nay, two of the *Bavarian* family had voted for *Richard*, duke of *Cornwall*. Some of the princes were of opinion, that the right was inherent only in the elder branch of the electoral house; but this affair, though often discussed, was never determined till the reign of *Charles IV.* by the famous constitution called the *Golden Bull*.

Germany *is afflicted with pestilence and famine.* EXCLUSIVE of these divisions, *Germany* groaned under all the miseries of plague and famine, by which whole towns were unpeopled, and provinces left in desolation. The rich fled for refuge into other countries, while the poor perished by hunger or disease; the wolves and other beasts of prey, compelled by famine, quitted their savage haunts, and rushing into the villages, destroyed all who fell in their way. The air was tormented with storms and tempests, the lands were deluged with torrents of rain, and cataracts of water bursting from the mountains, and sweeping trees, animals, and houses, before them with incredible impetuosity; and the earth was convulsed with dreadful shocks, that seemed to shake it from the center ^d.

THESE calamities obliged the princes to shut themselves up in their castles; so that the election of a king of the *Romans* was for some time delayed: but these evils were no sooner alleviated, than the competitors renewed their cabals, and canvassed with equal industry for the imperial throne. At length, however, *Peter*, archbishop of *Mentz*; *Baldwin*, archbishop of *Triers*, who was count of *Luxemburg*, and brother to the late emperor; *Henry* of *Virnberg*, archbishop of *Cologne*; *John*, king of *Bohemia*, son of the late emperor; *Rodolphus*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*, his brother; *Volmar*, marquis of *Bavaria*, *Brandenburg*; *Rodolphus*, duke of *Saxony*, son of *Albert II.* and *Eric*, duke of *Lower Saxony*, assembled at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon the choice of an emperor, when a schism happened among the electors (A). Those of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Bohemia*, and *Brandenburg*, declared for *Lewis*, duke

^{c d} Gest. BALDWIN. l. iii.

(A) Various are the accounts who seems to have compared all the authors who have written on this subject, and followed the best authority.

of *Bavaria*, who was then in the city; while the archbishop ^{each is r-} of *Cologne*, the count palatine, and the duke of *Saxony*, ad-^{lected by} hered to *Frederic*, duke of *Austria*, who had taken up his ^{his own} quarters at *Saxenhausen* on the other side of the river. ^{party, and} *Lewis* immediately set out for *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was ^{crowned.} crowned by the archbishop of *Mentz*; and the other electors ^{A. D.} conducted *Frederic* to *Bonn*, where he received the crown ^{1315.} from the elector of *Cologne* *. After this double coronation, ^{They take} these two emperors exerted themselves in gaining over the ^{the field} imperial cities, and in procuring advantages, each to the pre-^{against} judice of the other. Besides those we have already men-^{one ano-} tioned, *Lewis* had engaged in his party several bishops and ^{ther.} counts, particularly those of *Westphalia*, to whom he granted sundry privileges. The city of *Cologne*, although its archbishop was of the contrary faction, together with the towns of the *Lower Rhine* as far as *Seltz*, espoused his cause. As for *Frederic* he was acknowledged by *Seltz*, and all the other cities of the *Higher Rhine*, except *Berne* and *Soleure*, which remained neuter. This dispute, which involved the whole country in civil war and confusion, and had like to have ruined the empire intirely, was maintained in mutual ravages for several years, until the two rivals gave battle to each other, in order to decide the contest at once.

WHILE *Frederic*, flushed with pride and ambition, and ^{An at-} confiding in the power, magazines, and affluence, which ^{tempt to} he inherited of his father, exerted all his endeavours to ^{assassinate} anticipate and drive his rival from the imperial crown, one *Lewis*. *Truchses* of *Alzein* attempted to assassinate *Lewis*, in hope of ingratiating himself with the duke of *Austria* by this execrable action. With this view he and his accomplices repaired to *Oppenheim*, where the emperor resided with the archbishop of *Mentz*; but *Lewis* having received notice of their design, took measures for their being apprehended. They were accordingly taken, tried, convicted, broke alive upon the wheel, and their quarters exposed *in terrorem* of all traitors †.

MEAN while *Leopold* of *Austria*, zealous for the glory of *Leopold* his brother *Frederic*, assembled an army, and marched towards *Austria* *Spire*, whither *Lewis* had advanced; but this last intrench-^{ravages} ing himself so strongly that he could not be attacked with any ^{the country} probable hopes of success, *Leopold*, having ravaged the coun-^{of Spire,} try, took the route of *Augsburg*, crossed the black moun-^{marches} tains, passed the river *Lech*, and entering *Upper Bavaria*, ^{into Bava-} *ria*, and

* STRUV. per. ix. sect. 5.

† ADLZREITTER. part ii.

burns
Land-
sperg.

surprised and set fire to *Landspurg*. *Frederic*, supposing that the inaction of *Lewis* proceeded from his weakness, began to look upon him with contempt; and instead of pursuing the advantages he had gained, amused himself at *Basil* with the ceremony of a double match between him and *Elizabeth* of *Arragon*, and between his brother *Leopold* and *Katherine* of *Savoy*.

Lewis ne-
gotiates a
treaty
with the
Swiss,

WHILE he trifled away his time in these nuptials, which were celebrated with great magnificence, *Lewis* was employed in negotiating a treaty with the *Swiss* cantons, which he knew to be the natural enemies of the *Austrian* house: but although part of them had already acknowledged him as emperor, they were very scrupulous of taking up arms in his favour, and before he could remove their objections, *Leopold* endeavoured to prevent the alliance. On pretence of assisting the abbot of the hermitage of the virgin *Mary*, who had excommunicated the *Swiss*, in consequence of a dispute concerning the limits of their territories, he advanced with an army of 20,000 men against the cantons of *Switz*, *Ury*, and *Underwald*, which were confederated for their mutual defence. As their whole force did not exceed 1600 men, they had recourse to the policy of war; and knowing the enemy must necessarily pass through a narrow defile, they posted part of their troops upon the mountains near *Morgarten*, from whence they rolled down such a quantity of huge stones upon the *Austrians*, that great numbers of them were killed and wounded, and the whole army put in confusion; then the *Swiss* fell upon them with great fury, and drove them out of the canton with terrible slaughter. Such exploits of valour were performed by the *Swiss* upon that occasion, and so much depended upon the fortune of the day, that the fight of *Morgarten* may be compared to the battle of *Marathon*, which ascertained the liberty of *Greece*; and it certainly gave rise to the *Helvetic* union; for the alliance which the three cantons had made for the term of ten years only, was now converted into a perpetual league, in which the others occasionally engaged.

who de-
feat the
Austrian
army at
Morgar-
ten.

A. D.
1316.
Drawn
battle
fought be-
tween
Lewis and
Frederic.

FREDERIC, in the mean time, besieged *Esslingen* on the *Neckar*, and *Lewis* coming to the relief of the place, with a body of troops which he had received from *Bohemia*, a battle was fought with great obstinacy, until night parted the combatants; so that neither side could claim the victory: for although *Lewis* sustained the greatest loss, his rival was so weakened by the engagement, that he was fain to raise the

siege and retire. Thus the two competitors maintained the war with various success, endeavouring to acquire new friends, and strengthen their different factions, by favours and grants, which both bestowed in quality of emperor.

IN the midst of this contention, *John XXII.* being raised to the papacy, both princes strove to obtain his good graces, and both were disappointed in their expectation; for though he amused each party with flattering promises, he would confirm neither, but resolved to take the advantage of their division for extending his own power in the empire, and ruining the party of the *Gibelines* in *Italy*.

Pope John XXII. makes encroachments upon the imperial crown.

WITH this view he published the constitutions of pope *Clement V.* in which that pontif declared, that the empire is dependent on the *Roman* church, and that the emperors, in receiving the crown, ought to take the oath of allegiance to his holiness. Then he issued out a bull upon his own authority, annulling the offices of the vicars or lieutenants, whom the emperor *Henry VII.* had appointed in the different cities of *Lombardy*, declaring, that as the imperial throne was now vacant, the government of the empire belonged to the pope alone, as successor of *St. Peter*, to whom was granted all power on earth as well as in heaven; forbidding all persons, of what rank or quality soever, whether royal or patriarchal, to assume the quality of vicar, or any other office or dignity of the empire, without his permission, on pain of personal excommunication, and an interdiction on his lands and territories; and, lastly, nominating *Robert*, king of *Naples*, vicar of the empire in *Italy*. Not contented with these arbitrary proceedings, he summoned the two competitors for the empire to appear at his tribunal, that he might hear their different pleas, and determine to which of them the empire should belong.

THE *Gibelines*, far from being intimidated by his threats, still kept possession of their posts and dignities; and the pope, incensed at their contempt of his authority, declared openly for the *Guelphs*, and the civil war was renewed in *Italy* with infinite rancour and animosity. The *Gibelines* espoused the cause of *Lewis*, which was likewise supported by *Frederic* of *Arragon*, king of *Sicily*; and the *Guelphs*, reinforced by *Robert*, king of *Naples*, attached themselves to the interest of the duke of *Austria*. *Matthew Visconti*, the most powerful of all the *Gibelines*, made himself master of *Milan*, taking to himself the quality of prince and lord of that city, for *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, king of the *Romans*. He reduced *Pavia*, *Novara*, *Placentia*, *Alexandria*, and several other cities; and notwithstanding a sentence of excommunication thundered out

A. D. 1317. The Gibelines declare for Lewis, and the Guelphs for Frederic. makes himself master of a great many

towns in
Lombardy, and
besieges
Genoa.

out against him and all his adherents by the pope, he undertook the siege of *Genoa*, where the *Guelphs* prevailed, which he maintained, with the assistance of the families of *Doria* and *Spinola*, for the space of two years; during which the place was several times relieved by *Robert*, king of *Naples*, and the joint efforts of the pope and *Florentines*, until the army of the besiegers being reduced to an inconsiderable number, he was obliged to relinquish the enterprize ^b.

A.D.
1319.

Frederic
is defeated
at Mul-
dorf.

FREDERIC of *Austria*, seeing the strength of his rival daily increasing, began to be apprehensive of his growing power, especially as he now presumed to act upon the offensive, and had actually made an incursion into *Austria*. Thither he was followed by *Frederic*, who obliged him to pass the river *Inn*; and the two armies came in sight of each other near *Muldorf*. Here the duke of *Austria*, perceiving himself inferior in power to his adversary, proposed that their difference should be decided by a combat between fifteen of each side; and his proposal being embraced by *Lewis*, the champions were chosen, and engaged in presence of both armies with such fury, that in a very little time there was not one of them alive. This was but the prelude to a general action, which lasted from the morning till the afternoon, when the *Austrians* were worsted, and obliged to repass the river in the utmost disorder; while *Leopold*, who advanced on the side of the *Lech* at the head of a body of cuirassiers, in order to surround the *Bavarians*, understanding his brother's defeat, and the dispersion of his army, retreated with great expedition into *Suabia*, where he employed himself in making new levies.

Repairs his
loss, joins
his brother

NOTWITHSTANDING the great loss which *Frederic* sustained on this occasion, he found means to repair it in a very short time, and joined his brother, who was reinforced by *Leopold*, *Ulric*, count de *Ferrera* (B) and *John*, bishop of *Straßburg*.

By

^b VILLAN. C. 110.

(B) This *Ulric*, count de *Ferrera*, died without male issue, but left two daughters *Jane* and *Ursula*; the former was married in the sequel to *Albert II.* archduke of *Austria*, surnamed the *Sage*, or the *Lame*. This prince being bishop of *Passaw*, represented to the pope, that his four brothers, archdukes of *Austria*,

were dead without male issue, and obtained a dispensation to marry *Jane*, with whom he acquired the extensive county of *Ferrera*, which the house of *Austria* continued to possess till the peace of *Munster*; for *Ursula* ceded all her rights in consideration of 8000 marks of silver. Thus *Alsace* gave a wife to the arch-

By this juncture the archdukes were in a condition to appear again in the field against *Lewis*, though supported by the archbishops of *Mentz* and *Triers*, and the king of *Bohemia*. While they faced one another on different sides of the *Brusch* in *Lower Alface*, *Lewis* sent a trumpet to defy *Frederic* to battle, in consequence of which defiance, this last immediately quitted his intrenchments, drew up his army in order of battle, and even passed the river in order to attack the enemy, with such resolution, as struck a panic into the *Bavarians*, who retreated with great precipitation, and were pursued for three days, until they took shelter under the ramparts of *Haguenau*. *compels the Bavarians to retreat with precipitation,*

NEXT year *Frederic* and *Leopold* went in quest of *Lewis*, A. D. into his own country of *Bavaria*; and he not being in a condition to oppose them in the field, betook himself to his strong places, leaving the open country a prey to his enemies, who lived at discretion, and ravaged it for a considerable time ¹. 1320. and ravages Bavaria.

In a little time after the *Bavarian* was freed from these troublesome guests, he sent a body of horse to the assistance of the *Gibelines* in *Italy*; and the pope perceiving the affairs of the *Guelphs* upon the decline, invited *Philip de Valois*, nephew to the king of *France*,* to come to their assistance, in which case he would declare him general of the holy see. *Philip* accepted of the dignity, and began his march into *Italy*, at the head of a number of *French* volunteers, on the promise of being joined at *Ast* by cardinal *Paget* with 800 horse, and of receiving reinforcements from the king of *Naples*, and the cities of *Bologna*, *Sienna*, and *Florence*. But this expedition was ruined by his inexperience and precipitation; for advancing to *Mortaro*, in his way to *Vercelli*, with 1500 horse only, he was cut off from the rest of his army by *Galeazo Visconti*, and obliged to solicit a conference, in which he agreed to relinquish his enterprize, and actually returned to *France* with disgrace. *The pope invites Philip de Valois into Italy, who makes a shameful retreat into France.*

THE pope, baffled in his hopes from this quarter, had recourse to *Frederic* of *Austria*, whose election he promised to confirm, provided he would deliver *Italy* from the tyranny of the *Viscontis*; and this prince detached his brother prince

¹ BARRE, tom. vi. p. 447.

archduke *Albert*, who continued the line of the house of *Austria*, when it was almost extinct by the death of the other sons of *Albert*, king of the *Romans* (1).

(1) *Cuspin. Austr.*

Frederic Henry with 200 horse to the assistance of the *Guelphs*; for by this time *John XXII.* had published a crusade against the *Gibelines*. *Matthew Visconti*, however, who was equally politic and brave, found means, by artful remonstrances, to convince the duke of *Austria*, that he acted contrary to his own interest in supporting the *Guelphs*, who were the declared enemies of the empire, against the *Gibelines*, who had always been its unshaken adherents. To these representations he added some valuable presents; in consequence of which *Frederic* recalled his brother, on pretence that the *Guelphs* had refused to put him in possession of *Brescia* ^k.

HENRY, on his return, joined his brother *Frederic*, who had made a second irruption into *Bavaria*, and acquired a considerable booty, with which he might have retired before the arrival of *Lewis*, who was employed in assembling all the forces he could bring together; but disdaining, perhaps, to make a retreat, which might be construed into the effect of fear, he, though inferior in number, resolved to remain in *Bavaria*, and cantoned himself between the *Iser* and the *Inn*, where he received a reinforcement from the *Austrian* nobility: but he was not yet joined by his brother *Leopold*.

LEWIS, whose army amounted to 30,000 effective men, under the different commands of the king of *Bohemia*, the burgrave of *Nuremberg*, and other experienced chiefs, passed the *Inn* and encamped near *Frederic*, in the plain of *Vechivis*, between *Muldorf* and *Oettingen* (C). They engaged, upon *St. Michael's* day, and fought with great obstinacy, till at last *Frederic*, having obliged his enemies to give ground, began to congratulate himself upon the victory, when an experienced officer, belonging to the *Bavarian* side, found means to rally the fugitives, and bring them back to the charge with redoubled fury (D); so that their first giving way

A. D.
1322.
A battle
is fought
near
Vechivis.

^k RAINALD. ad ann. 1320.

(C) While they lay fronting each other, *Lewis* sent an herald to tell *Henry* that in three days he would give him battle: an intimation which was so agreeable to the *Austrian*, that he presented the messenger with a curious sword. On the eve of the battle he detached an Hun-

garian captain to reconnoitre the enemy, and bring an account of their numbers, and this officer brought him word, that there was *enough to kill, enough to be taken, and enough to run away* (1).

(D) The name of this captain was *Seyfried Schwaefperman*.

(1) *And. Freßb.* p. 2. *Stenzl* p. ix. *Jell.* 5.

way seemed no other than a feint to disorder the enemy. By this very circumstance *Lewis* gained the battle. The first prisoner that was brought to him was *Frederic's* brother, duke *Henry*, dangerously wounded; then the burgrave of *Nuremberg* presented to him *Frederic* himself, who, after having fought with amazing valour, and killed fifty men with his own hand, had surrendered when he found himself abandoned by all his troops¹. The duke of *Lorrain* was likewise taken prisoner on this occasion. *Lewis* ordered the pursuit to be stopped, and sent *Frederic* prisoner to the castle of *Transnitz*, where he remained in confinement for three years^m.

MEAN while duke *Leopold* advanced by long marches with a body of troops from *Suabia*, but, hearing of the defeat and captivity of his brothers, he retreated in a great hurry to his own fiefs on the frontiers of *Switzerland*, and derived sufficient time to intrench himself on the mountains, from an accident that happened to *Lewis*, who was taken ill and fell from his horse, while he was in pursuit. Though disabled for the present by this misfortune, he detached *Albert Humelion de Lechtenburg*, in quality of landvoct of *Alsace*, many places of which province submitted to the conqueror. Nevertheless, *Leopold* made shift to continue the war in that country, where many severe skirmishes were fought with various success. He likewise solicited the pope and the king of *France* to employ their credit for the enlargement of his brothers; but all that he could obtain was the liberty of *Henry*, who did not long survive his release: as for the duke of *Lorrain*, he was, at the desire of *Charles the Fair*, dismissed, after having taken an oath, importing, that he would never more engage in the cause of the *Austrian* princes.

LEOPOLD, thus disappointed in the hopes he had conceived from his arms, as well as from his neighbours, attempted to excite a revolt among the *Bohemians*, against their king *John*, who was his declared enemy. That kingdom was full

¹ REBD. ad ann. 1322. ^m AVENT. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 605, 606, 607. VILLAN. c. 174. REBDORF. in ann. ONUPHR. in Chron. SURIT. Indic. l. ii.

After the battle, while *Lewis* and his officers sat at table, the steward told his imperial majesty that there was nothing for dinner but eggs, and of these but a small number; upon which *Lewis* ordered one to be given to each guest, and a couple to *Schwepperman*; adding, "If I lie in my own camp to-night, it will be intirely owing to *Seyfrid* (1)."

(1) *Avent. an. Boior. lib. vii. p. 607.*

against
John king
of Bohe-
mia ;

of malecontents, including not only those who were disgusted at the weakness, sloth, and debauchery of their prince, but also such as adhered to the party of *Henry Lippa*, a factious insolent minister, who, for his maladministration, had been banished, returned, raised disturbances, and been imprisoned in the fortress of *Praque*. His partisans, who were both numerous and powerful, had written a letter to the king, demanding his release, and threatening, in case of a refusal, to destroy the country with fire and sword. *Leopold* seized the opportunity of marching with his troops to the frontiers, and, in all probability, might have wrested the crown from the legal possessor, who was very ill beloved, and worse obeyed, by his subjects. But the scheme was frustrated by a reinforcement which *John* received from the archbishops of *Triers* and *Mentz*, who headed their troops in person, and effected an accommodation between the king and the discontented nobility. *Lippa* was set at liberty, in consequence of this agreement ; yet he seized the first opportunity of *John's* absence to re-embroil the state, by means of fomenting a jealousy between the queen-dowager and reigning prince : nay, when the king returned to his own dominions, this indefatigable incendiary alienated his affection from his wife, by possessing him with a notion that she was privately engaged in forming cabals to dethrone her husband, and raise her son to the throne. The king, alarmed at these false insinuations, sent the young prince to be educated in *France*, at the court of *Charles the Fair*, and, terrified at the thoughts of a rebellion in *Bohemia*, resolved to exchange his crown for the *Palatinate of the Rhine*, which was by this time in the hands of the emperor^a.

who wants
to ex-
change his
crown for
the Palati-
nate of the
Rhine.

Lewis ac-
knowledges
as lawful
emperor.

He expells
his own
brother,
who flies
into Eng-
land.

For all the princes of the empire, who had favoured the party of *Frederic*, seeing him totally ruined by this overthrow, reconciled themselves with *Lewis*, and owned him for legitimate emperor, and those that scrupled to submit voluntarily, were compelled by force. But his chief resentment was expressed against *Rodolphus* count *Palatine*, his own brother, who had favoured the election of *Frederic*, and afterwards supported his faction. He was driven from his territories, and obliged to retire with his family into *England*, where he died in extreme poverty.

LEWIS, who seized upon his territories, assented to the proposal made by the king of *Bohemia*, and ordered an act of exchange to be expedited, by which he obliged himself to guarantee the *Palatinate* to *John of Luxemburg* and his heirs.

^a DUBARRV. Hist. Boem. l. xx.

This deed was no sooner known than it filled all *Bohemia* with alarm ; the estates of the kingdom assembled, and declared the exchange void and injurious to the nation : nay, so much were they incensed against *John*, that they resolved to shake off the yoke of the house of *Luxemburg*, and proceed to the election of a new sovereign. In this dilemma, *John* had recourse to the emperor, who repaired to *Prague* in person, and having ineffectually used all his endeavours to reconcile the states to the exchange, he cancelled the original act, and the *Bohemians*, pacified by this sacrifice, took a new oath of allegiance to their king, whom they promised to support against all his enemies ^{The act of exchange is cancelled by the emperor.}.

THESE civil commotions being appeased, *Lewis* convoked a diet at *Nuremberg*, in order to deliberate upon measures for securing the tranquillity of the empire ; and in this assembly, among other wholesome regulations, a statute was enacted against *Provisors*, who, in a clandestine manner, should obtain the reversions of benefices from the church of *Rome* ; a practice which had been shamefully abused by pope *John XXII.* to whom the noblemen, vested with the right of presentation, had often complained, without having received the least redress. His holiness was extremely chagrined at this new law, which served to augment the rancour of his hatred against *Lewis* ; though he would not venture to complain aloud, because he knew the nobility and clergy were resolved to support the edict.

AFTER the death of *Rodolphus*, his children were recalled, and their inheritance restored ; though *Lewis* rendered the electoral dignity alternative between his family and theirs, on condition that they should be the first to enjoy it. He likewise, with the consent of the states and princes of the empire, united to his family the marquisate of *Brandenburg*, vacant by the death of *Waldemar II.* and *John IV.* who was the last marquis of *Brandenburg* of the posterity of *Otho I.* count of *Anhalt (E).*

BESIDES

• Hist. Luxemb. l. xlviii.

P BARRE, tom. vi. p. 470.

(E) During the contest between *Lewis* and *Frederic, Waldemar II.* elector and marquis of *Brandenburg*, having no children, set out privately for the *Holy Land*, in the habit of a pilgrim, after having put his brother *John* in possession of his

dominions. *John* dying in less than a month after his departure, the emperor bestowed the electorate upon his own son *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, as a vacant fief reverted to the empire. The dukes of *Saxony* and the princes of *Anhalt*, as branches of the

BESIDES these acquisitions, *Lewis*, by espousing *Margaret*, daughter of *William* count of *Hainault* and *Holland*, attached to the house of *Bavaria* those two counties, together with *Friezland* and *Zealand*, which it preserved during the best part of a century ; and he might have likewise made himself master of other rich domains, had he, in imitation of *Rodolphus*, cultivated the popes, so as to render them propitious to his designs ; but he had the misfortune to be ever at variance with the see of *Rome*, in supporting the rights of his crown, and the canonicity of his election.

Endea-
vours to
appease
pope John
XXII,
who pub-
lishes a bull
against
him.

HAVING now nothing to apprehend in *Germany*, he resolved to employ his whole attention in striving to appease pope *John XXII.* for by this time *Galeazo Visconti*, who succeeded to the command of the *Gibelines*, at his father's death, had been expelled from *Milan* by the *Guelphs*, and the chiefs of the emperor's party at *Verona* and *Mantua* had done homage to the pope, and received absolution from the hands of the legate, cardinal *Bertrand de Paget*. To this prelate, who resided at *Placentia*, the emperor sent some officers to desire a cessation of arms might be granted to the *Gibelines* ; but the cardinal treating them with insolence and contempt, they repaired separately to *Lucca*, *Passora*, *Mantua*, and *Verona*, where they tampered so successfully with the inhabitants, that all the *Gibelines* of these cities united under the conduct of count *Bertholdi*, and marching to *Milan*, made themselves masters of that city, almost without resistance.

The sub-
stance of
the bull.

THE pope, incensed at this transaction, resolved to proceed against *Lewis* without further reserve, and forthwith published a monitory, in which he declared, that the imperial dignity commenced a fief of the holy see that very day on which the empire was by the *Romans* transferred from the *Greeks* to the *French*, in the person of *Charlemagne* ; because at that time it was decreed, that the election of an emperor should never take place until after it should be approved and confirmed by the pope, who was the father and prince of all Christendom. He added, that, when the empire was vacant by death or otherwise, it belonged to the pope alone to provide another, and to take care of the administration during

ancient house of *Brandenburg*, remonstrated against this alienation, especially as there was no account of *Waldemar's* death : but these representations having no effect upon the emperor or

the states, they entered a solemn protest against the investiture, which was conferred upon young *Leuts*, and refused to assist at the ceremony (1).

the interregnum; and even while the election remains contested between two competitors, his holiness alone has the sole power to decide the dispute, and to exact the oath of fidelity of the prince to whom he shall have adjudged the empire, in quality of viceroy or lieutenant of Him, who is emperor of heaven and earth; for, as the soul commands and governs, and the body is bound to obey its orders, so those things, which are frail and perishable in Christianity, ought to be subject to those that are celestial and eternal; that the profane should be subjected to the holy, and the corporeal to the spiritual; a regulation that will take place when the pope, by his own authority, shall dispose of both dignities, when the church shall prevail, and the empire and all other powers humble themselves before her, and submit to her laws. He therefore concluded, that as the princes of *Germany* had been divided ever since the death of *Henry VII.* and elected two princes, each of them pretending to the crown, he alone had the right to decide the contest, and, in the mean time, to govern the empire; and as *Lewis* had encroached upon his rights, he commanded him, by virtue of that power which he derived from heaven, to lay aside the imperial dignity, and desist from exercising the functions of an emperor, without pretending to resume them, until he should have obtained the express permission of his holiness; who, in the mean time, laid injunctions upon all patriarchs, bishops, priests, nobles, and commons, to abandon and withdraw their obedience from the usurper.

This bull was no sooner published, than the emperor assembled all the learned men of *Germany*, both of the clergy and laity, to examine, and give their opinions of that performance. They accordingly concluded, that it was unjust, unreasonable, contrary to the Christian religion, and that he ought to call a general council. The emperor followed this advice; and, having protested against the bull, which he answered article by article, reproaching the pope himself as a favourer of heresy, since he endeavoured to abolish the sovereign power of princes, which was established by God; he signified his appeal with all the requisite formalities. He sent envoys to *Avignon*, with this vindication of himself, and to desire his holiness would suspend his censures until he could receive the advice of the princes of the empire: but all the favour he could obtain was a delay of two months, at the expiration of which he issued another monitory, complaining that *Lewis* had made no use of this indulgence, and

The emperor protests against the bull, which he answers article by article.
A.D.
1324.

declaring that he would proceed to publish the sentence of excommunication pronounced against him, if he would not, within the term of three months, resign the title of king of the *Romans*, and withdraw his protection from the *Viscontis* and other enemies of the church ^r.

*He disre-
gards the
pope's in-
nuence; sup-
ports the
Gibelines
in Italy.*

LEWIS was too jealous of the independency of his crown, to be swayed by this remonstrance; and the pope's menaces seemed the less terrible, as the *Viscontis* had just defeated the army of the church, and carried the general prisoner to *Milan*; an incident, in consequence of which his holiness renewed the censures against that family, and even caused a new crusade to be preached against them and all their adherents. The emperor, therefore, resolving to pay no farther regard to the church of *Rome*, appointed vicars in *Italy*, and reinforced the *Gibelines* in such a manner, that they gained several advantages over their enemies, while in *Germany* he exerted his endeavours to reduce *Leopold of Austria*, who still refused to acknowledge his authority, or surrender the imperial ornaments, which he kept in the strong castle of *Burgau* in *Alsace*. This fortress was accordingly invested by the imperial troops, who had made some progress in the siege, when *Leopold*, marching to its relief, defeated the rear of the *Bavarians*, and compelled them to abandon the enterprize ^s.

*Besieges
Burgau in
Alsace.*

THE three months prescribed by pope *John* being elapsed, he proceeded to the excommunication of *Lewis*, which was no sooner known in the empire, than the princes and states assembled at *Ratisbon*, where the emperor was requested to take care that the imperial dignity should not be trampled upon, nor the *Germanic* liberty reduced to bondage. There also it was decreed, that the proceedings of the pope should be deemed abusive and void, and that all those who paid the least regard to his bulls, should be punished as perturbators of the public peace, and enemies of the empire ^t.

AT this assembly *Lewis*, in a distinct apology, justified every part of his own conduct, and produced thirty-six articles, in consequence of which, he affirmed that the pope ought to be deposed; and again appealed to a general council, desiring that it might be convoked, with all convenient speed, in a place of safety ^u (F).

THIS

^r RAINALD. n. 7. 12. ^s NICOL. BURG. p. 89. ^t AVENT. ubi sup. KRANTZ. l. ix. c. 14. RIC. HERUART. contra BZOV. ^u BALUZ. vit. Pap. Avenin. tom. ii. p. 278.

(F) In order to combat the pope's authority, *Lewis* employed the pens of *Marsilius of Padua* and *John of Ghent*, two famous

THIS step being taken, he published the holding of tour- Lewis
 naments at *Frankfort* and *Nuremberg*, where there was a holds tour-
 vast concourse of noblemen and knights, a great number of naments.
 whom he, by his liberality, engaged in his interest, and many
 private treaties were made, by which they bound themselves
 to supply him with troops, to frustrate the efforts of the
 house of *Austria*. But this expedient proving ineffectual, he
 had recourse to the princes of the empire, and a confederacy A. D.
 was formed in his favour by the king of *Bohemia*, the arch- 1325.
 bishop of *Triers*, *Ferry* duke of *Lorrain*, and *Edward* count *Forms the*
de Barr, who engaged to furnish a certain proportion of confedera-
 troops, to be maintained at their own expence ; and each cy of Ree-
 prince obliged himself to head his forces in person. In nich.
 consequence of this treaty, which was concluded at *Ree-*
nich upon the *Moselle*, the city of *Metz* was besieged, and
 in a little time surrendered upon capitulation, the articles of
 which were very unfavourable to the inhabitants, who bought
 their pardon with a very large sum of money *. Against this
 powerful association the pope resolved to raise a competitor
 that should be able to dispute the empire with *Lewis*, and
 actually negotiated with *Leopold* of *Austria*, and some other
German princes, for electing *Charles the Fair* king of the
Romans. *Frederic* of *Austria* promised to resign his preten-
 sions in favour of the *French* monarch ; the king of *Bohemia*,
 the electors of *Saxony*, *Cologne*, and *Mentz*, being tampered
 with, seemed willing to concur in any scheme that would re-
 store peace to the empire ; and *Leopold*, mistaking this fa-
 vourable disposition for a fixed resolution, desired the pope *An inter-*
 would give *Charles* to understand, that it would be necessary view pro-
 for him to have a personal conference with the *German* posed be-
 princes. *Bar sur Aube* was the place pitched upon for this tween the
 interview, and thither did *Charles* repair with a magnificent king of
 equipage ; but the *German* princes, who had given no pos- France
 itive promise, would not quit their own dominions ; so that and the
Leopold was the only person who waited upon the king of German
France, and that monarch was so chagrined at the disappoint- princes at
 ment, that he quitted the pursuit, and left *Lewis* and the *Bar sur*
 pope to battle each other †. *Leopold*, notwithstanding this *Aube*.

* Hist. Luxemb. c. 48.

† VILLAN. l. ix. c. 268.

famous doctors, and schismatic
Cordeliers, who, in the empe-
 ror's name, wrote a number of
 defamatory libels against *John*
 XXII. styling him an unjust per-
 secutor of the innocent, a de-
 stroyer of the holy see, a viola-

tor of the canons, author of dis-
 cord, perturbator of the empire,
 and a prevaricator of the laws,
 who despised the poverty of Je-
 sus Christ and his sacraments
 (3).

(3) Villan, lib. ix. c. 265.

miscarriage,

Leopold
of Austria
sends the
imperial
ornaments
to Lewis.

miscarriage, would not abandon his enterprize; but assembling all the princes who opposed *Lewis* at *Rens* near *Coblentz*, where the pope's nuncios and the envoys of *France* were present, he proposed that, in order to quiet the troubles of *Germany*, *Charles the Fair* should be elected emperor. This proposal was strenuously opposed by *Berthold de Bucheck*, commander of the *Teutonic* order, and afterwards bishop of *Straßburg*; and the *French* envoys declared their master would never consent to wear a crown which belonged to *Lewis* of *Bavaria* ². This succession of disappointments, obliged *Leopold* at last to listen to the advice of his friends, who exhorted him to desist from all opposition, and surrender to *Lewis* the imperial ornaments: he accordingly sent to that prince the lance, sword, and crown, of *Charlemagne*, together with the other ensigns of royalty, in expectation of seeing his brother *Frederic* released. *Lewis* received these symbols with great indifference, and still refused to set the duke of *Austria* at liberty, until he found his conduct was blamed even by his own adherents.

Listens to
the advice
of the
archbishop
of Mentz;

and makes
peace with
the princes
of Austria.

THE archbishop of *Mentz*, shocked at such violent proceedings, which intailed misery and devastation on the empire, begged the emperor to consider, that *Germany* had never been so much united within itself, but that the popes, by their intrigues, had found means to disturb its repose; and observed that the most salutary measure he could take in the present conjuncture, would be to make an accommodation with his enemies, and especially with the princes of *Austria*. In consequence of this advice, proposals of peace were made to *Frederic*, who was, by this time, heartily tired of his confinement; and it was agreed between them, that *Frederic* should be set at liberty, on condition of his renouncing all claim and title to the imperial dignity during the life of *Lewis*. This treaty being afterwards executed, the two princes met at *Mourbach*, where they were personally reconciled to each other ³, and *Frederic*, as a proof of his sincerity, promised, by an authentic deed, that the princes of the house of *Austria* should never pretend to the imperial crown, when any prince of *Bavaria* should be competitor (G).

THERE

² GERHARD. de Rev. l. iii. ³ VILLAN. lib. ix. c. 294, 315. HERUART. contra Bzov. Hactem. de gest. Pont. Léodien. l. ii c. 10. AVENT. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 614. KRANTZ. l. ix. c. 14.

(G) This condition, though and other writers, seems contra-mentioned by *Aventinus*, *Heiss*, dictory to the terms of the treaty,

THERE was no great likelihood, however, that the articles of this accommodation would be inviolably observed ; for the pope absolved *Frederic* from his oath, as an obligation laid upon him by compulsion, while he remained in captivity, and even promised to confirm his election. *Frederic* himself and his brother seemed to consider the treaty in the same light, and waited only for a convenient opportunity of acting openly against the emperor. But, before the necessary preparations could be made, *Leopold* was seized with a fever, of which he died in *Alsace* ; and with him expired the hopes of *Frederic*, whose personal activity was destroyed by a malady which he had contracted in prison. Besides, he was greatly embarrassed by the pretensions of his brother *Otho*, who claimed an equal share of the succession of *Leopold* ; tho' this dispute was afterwards referred to the decision of *John* king of *Bohemia* ^b.

By this peace *Lewis* found himself at leisure to mind the affairs of *Italy*, to which he was resolved to apply himself in earnest, not only with a view of being crowned at *Rome*, but also to fortify the party of the *Gibelines* against the pope and the king of *Naples*, who, for the relief of *Florence*, which was besieged by *Castruccio* in the name of the emperor, had set on foot a considerable army, almost wholly composed of *French* and *Gascons*. The *Gibelines*, far from being discouraged at the fulminations of the pope against *Lewis*, were rather animated by them to maintain their party against the *Guelphs*, whose chief and patron was king *Robert*. Besides, the *Romans* had driven the creatures of the pope out of the city, and signified to his holiness, that, if he would not come and reside at *Rome*, they would take care of their own affairs. It was on account of his refusing to satisfy them in this particular, that they pressed the emperor to come and receive the crown at *Rome*.

LEWIS, finding the conjuncture favourable, convoked a diet at *Spire*, where the princes and states of the empire

Is invited into Italy by the Gibelines.

A.D. 1327.

^b ANON. LEOPSIENS. ad ann. 1327.

ty, the first articles of which import, " That duke *Frederic* shall renounce his claim to the empire ; that he shall deliver up to *Lewis* the title of his election, if it could be called a title ; that, during the life

" of the emperor *Lewis*, he should not aspire to the empire ; and that, if ever the pope should solicit him to renew his claim, he should not hearken to his solicitations (4)."

(4) Hen. Rehdörf, ad ann. 1322.

granted

Sets out for that country ; is crowned at Milan. granted to him the troops and supplies necessary for his expedition. In the beginning of the next year therefore, he set out for *Italy*, and at his arrival at *Trent*, he was met by the chiefs of his party, the deputies of the towns, and the enemies of the pope, who received him as the deliverer whom they had so long and eagerly expected ^c.

HERE he convoked a diet, at which were present *Cau de l'Escala*, *Passarini*, *Visconti*, *Gui de Tarlata*, bishop of *Arezzo*, deputies from *Castruccio*, and *Frederic* king of *Sicily*, together with other chiefs of the *Gibelines*, and a crowd of schismatic *Franciscans*, with whom *Lewis* was always surrounded. In this assembly the emperor took an oath to go to *Italy*, from whence he would never return until he should have received the imperial crown at *Rome* ; and here he ordered the pope to be excommunicated as an heretic, unworthy of filling the pontifical throne ^d.

Great commotions among the Guelphs and Gibelines. FROM thence he repaired to *Milan* with the empress-queen, where he was crowned king of *Italy* by the bishop of *Arezzo*, as the archbishop of *Milan* resided in *Genoa*, and refused to perform the ceremony, on pretence of the emperor's being excommunicated. The arrival of *Lewis* in *Italy* put the factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* in great commotion ; the *Guelphs* sent envoy after envoy to press the king of *Naples* to march to the relief of *Tuscany*. *Rome* was divided between the partizans of *Lewis* and the pope's adherents, and there was a third party that refused to declare themselves for either, until the imperial faction having gained the ascendancy, compelled them to relinquish their neutrality, and side with *Lewis*. Thus reinforced, they elected *Sciarra Colonna* captain of the people, and sent ambassadors to *Avignon*, to summon the pope to come and reside at *Rome*, otherwise they would receive *Lewis* of *Bavaria* as their sovereign. His holiness was solicited to the same effect by the king of *Naples*, as senator of *Rome* ; but he did not think proper to trust himself in a city where he had such powerful adversaries ; he contented himself with exhorting the *Romans* to preserve their fidelity to their pontiff, and shut their gates against *Lewis*, whom he represented as an enemy to God and man. At the same time he directed his legate *John d'Ursini*, who resided at *Florence*, to publish new bulls against the emperor, and, by his personal presence, to keep the peace at *Rome*. In obedience to this order the legate advanced towards that city, in hope of effecting a reconciliation between the *Romans* and

^c Idem ibid. ^d CORIO, p. 459. * AVENT. ubi sup. Id. ibid. SPONDAN. Contin. Barre. tom. i. p. 589.

Robert king of *Naples*, who had lately attempted to introduce his brother the prince of *Morea*, at the head of a thousand horse, to support the faction of the nobles. As the people shut their gates against this body of troops, the prince ravaged the territory of *Viterbo*, and some *Genese* galleys in the service of *Robert* surprized the port of *Ostia*; so that the *Romans*, being extremely incensed against his *Neapolitan* majesty, would listen to no terms of accommodation. The legate, finding he could make no progress in the way of negotiation, joined the prince of *Morea*, who, entering the city by surprize, took possession of the church and quarter of *St. Peter*, and cut in pieces all those who opposed his arms. Next morning, however, the people ran to arms, sounded the alarm, assembled at the *Capitol*, from whence they marched to the gate possessed by the *Neapolitans*, which they attacked with such fury, that, after an obstinate and bloody dispute, the prince and legate were obliged to abandon the city in the utmost disorder, and retreat for shelter to *Ostia*. *The prince of Morea surprizes Rome, but is repulsed.*

THESE transactions were very favourable to the emperor, *A. D.* who, having quitted *Milan*, held a diet at the castle of *Orzi*, *1328.* in the *Brescian*; then he advanced into *Tuscany*, from whence he sent ambassadors to prepare for his reception at *Pisa*; but the inhabitants of that city refusing to receive him, because he lay under the sentence of excommunication, he besieged the town, which he compelled to surrender at discretion; then he entered in triumph, extorted a very large sum of money from the citizens, and, during his abode in this place, renewed the sentence which the emperor *Henry VII.* had pronounced against *Robert* king of *Naples*, as a rebellious subject of the empire ^f. On the other hand, the pope published a new bull of excommunication and privation against *Lewis*, and forbad all persons, of what quality soever, under the most severe penalties, to furnish him with the means of subsistence. Notwithstanding this prohibition, the emperor began his march from *Pisa*, along the coast, towards *Rome*, without meeting with the least opposition from the king of *Naples*, who, supposing that the intention of *Lewis* was to invade his kingdom, and act in conjunction with *Peter* king of *Sicily*, retired, in order to defend his own dominions. At *Viterbo* the emperor received a deputation from the *Romans*, with whom he adjusted the articles of his entry, which was performed with great splendour. The governor and senators came forth to meet him and the empress, whom they conducted to the palace of *St. Peter*, where he staid four *Marches towards Rome; The emperor reduces Pisa. where he is received amidst the*

^f RAINALD. ad an. 1327. n. 20.

acclamati-
ons of the
people.
Is crown-
ed, with
the em-
press, in
the church
of St. Pe-
ter.

days with the princes of his train (H). Then he removed to *Santa Maria Major*, where *Sciarra Colonna* presented him with the keys of the city and fortresses, which he garrisoned with his troops. In a few days, he and the empress were crowned in the church of *St. Peter*, with great magnificence, the ceremony of the unction having been performed by the bishops of *Venice* and *Aleria*, who, as well as *Lewis*, had incurred the sentence of excommunication. In a word, the emperor, by his liberality and courteous behaviour, gained the affection of the *Romans* to such a degree, that his enemies durst not even avow their animosity or discontent §.

THE pope, finding himself disappointed in all the measures he had taken to prevent the coronation of *Lewis*, concerted other schemes for diminishing his power in *Italy*: for this purpose, he, by his emissaries, tampered with the governors of *Viterbo* and *Ostia*, who had actually agreed to receive *Neapolitan* garrisons in these places; but *Lewis*, being timely informed of their designs, sent forces to secure the towns, and apprehend the traitors, who were brought prisoners to *Rome*.

Is provoked
by the
pope to
such a de-
gree, that
he resolves
to be re-
venged.

THE emperor resided nine months in the capital, during which he set every thing to rights, and restored the repose of *Italy*, while the pope renewed his bulls of excommunication and deposition against him, refusing to listen to any proposals of accommodation, unless the emperor would divest himself of his sovereign authority, and, as a private person, submit to the sentence he should pronounce upon his election. In a word, he treated him with such indignity, that *Lewis* lost his patience, and resolved to be revenged upon him by choosing another pope. In order to pave the way for this measure, he convoked a numerous assembly at *Rome*, where the pope was degraded, on pretence of his being an heretic, and a deserter of his flock; and all the subjects of the empire were prohibited from owning him as the head of the church. He afterwards published a decree, by which all bishops, particularly the pope, were forbid to absent them-

Degrades
him.

§ Id. *ibid.* BURGUND. l. ii. p. 105.

(H) The emperor was accompanied in this expedition by his nephews *Robert* and *Rodolphus*, dukes of *Bavaria*, *Henry* de *Lechtemberg*, chancellor of the empire, *Henry* duke of

Brunswic, *Albert* de *Lechtemberg*, *Henry* landgrave of *Hesse*, *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg*, *Menhard* d'*Ortemberg*, *William* de *Montfort*, and the grand-master of the *Teutonic* order (5).

selves from their see longer than three months, or to go farther than two days journey, without the consent of their chapters ; and that, after having been recalled three times without returning, they should be no longer owned as bishops, but a new election take place, in the same manner as if they were dead ; and, in consequence of the first decree, by which all heretics were made guilty of a capital crime, he pronounced sentence of death upon *James of Cahors*, so he named pope *him to John XXII.* as a person convicted of downright heresy and treason, for having encroached upon the rights of the empire (I), by discarding the emperor's officers, and supplying their places by his own authority ^h.

THESE steps were no more than the preludes of the emperor's vengeance ; for afterwards assembling all the most considerable persons of his own court, as well as of the city of *Rome* ; he set *Pietro de Rainaucci*, a Cordelier, upon a low chair on his left hand, ordered the assembly to be asked three times, whether or not they would receive this same Fa-

Condemns

him to

death.

place ;

and again

receives

the crown

^h CIACON. in Joan XXII. AVENT. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 616, 617. SPONDAN. Contin. BARRE, tom. i. p. 592.

(I) The abbot of *Fulde*, in an harangue to the people, observed that the said *James of Cahors* was a deserter of the church of which he pretended to be bishop, and a persecuter of the *Roman* people ; that he had extorted vast sums of money on pretence of maintaining war against the *Saracens*, whereas it was used against the faithful and the friends of the *Roman* empire, enforced by the preaching of a crusade, and the largesses of spiritual treasure ; that he had turned against the *Romans* and imperialists those succours which he had obtained from the king of *France* and other princes, for the relief of the distressed king of *Armenia* ; that he unjustly reserved to himself the distribution of ecclesiastical benefices, which he often simoniacally conferred upon the un-

worthy ; that he had, by the power of a new *Joab*, and the counsels of another *Abiathar* (meaning king *Robert* and cardinal *Ursini*) raised up pernicious schisms and wicked heresies in the church of God ; that he had oppressed the cardinals and prelates in such a manner, that they durst not even murmur ; that he had perverted the doctrine of Christ and the apostles, with regard to the temporal dominion of emperors, confounding spiritual with secular power, and rashly arrogating to himself the prerogative of confirming or rejecting emperors : and, lastly, that, by ranking himself among the notorious heretics in his false definition concerning the poverty of Christ and his apostles, he had forfeited all title to *St. Peter's* chair (6).

from his
bandi.

ther *Peter* as pope ; and, being answered in the affirmative, he invested him with the papacy, putting the ring upon his finger, and the cloak upon his shoulders ¹. Then placing him upon his right hand, in the pontifical chair, he saluted him by the name of *Nicholas V.* took him by the hand, and conducted him to the chair of *St. Peter*, where this new pope celebrated mass, and bestowed the papal benediction upon the people. Some days after this ceremony, *Lewis*, in order to give more authority to *Nicholas*, was crowned again on the feast of *Pentecost*.

JOHN was no sooner informed of the elevation of *Peter*, than he excommunicated the antipope and all those who were present at the ceremony, except the poet *Petrarch*, whom he revered on account of his genius. Nor was *Nicholas* less active in returning these hostilities ; for he published two bulls, confirming the deposition of *John*, and declaring that all his adherents, whether ecclesiastic or lay, should be punished as heretics ; in consequence of this bull two persons actually lost their lives at the stake, and pope *John* was burnt in effigy.

The Ro-
mans re-
volt
against the
emperor
and pope
Nicholas.

THE emperor had resolved to recover the rights and dominions of the empire, which *Robert* king of *Naples* and *Apulia* had usurped by order of the pope ; but, having delayed this enterprize until *Robert* had time to put himself in a posture of defence, he was obliged to postpone the execution of his purpose ; for, when he marched out of *Rome* on the expedition, he found *Robert* strongly fortified in the *Campagna*, and, in his attempt upon the province of *Labour*, had the mortification to see his troops several times repulsed : nay, as the *Neapolitans*, by being masters of *Ostia* and *Anagni*, commanded the whole course of the *Tiber*, *Lewis* was so hampered for want of provisions and ammunition, that he could not help returning to *Rome*, where his presence occasioning a great scarcity, the people began to murmur ; and their discontents being fomented by the cardinal *d'Ursini*, broke out into open rebellion. The emperor, whose troops had been worsted both within and without the city, seeing it would be impossible for him to resist a mutinous populace, as well as the *Neapolitan* troops, sent his pope immediately to *Todi*, under a strong escorte, whither he himself afterwards retired ; and he had no sooner quitted *Rome*, than cardinal *Ursini* entered the city, and harangued the people, who now acknowledged *John* as their lawful pontif, and renounced the

¹ VADING, ad ann. 1328.

antipope and the emperor with all the marks of detestation and abhorrence.

MEAN while *Lewis* had an interview with *Peter* the son of *Frederic* king of *Sicily*, at *Corneto*, where he bitterly complained that his *Sicilian* majesty had been the cause of all his misadventures, by failing to send the fleet and a sum of money which he had engaged himself by treaty to furnish; and *Peter*, finding him so ill disposed towards a continuance of the war, set sail on his return to his father's dominions, but was overtaken by a violent tempest, which destroyed the greatest part of his fleet.

FROM hence the emperor repaired to *Pisa*, whither he was followed by *Nicholas*, and there he spent some months, during which he re-published his decree against pope *John*, and received an embassy from the *Algerines*, who craved his protection, in consideration of which they promised to assist him with fifty vessels well manned, and a very large sum of money. They were graciously received, and *Lewis*, in all probability, would have availed himself of the proposal, had not he found a more honourable resource in the friendship of the king of *Bohemia*, who promised to march to his assistance, at the head of a victorious army, with which he had conquered *Lithuania* for the knights of the *Teutonic* order. But, before he could execute his intentions in favour of *Lewis*, that prince, finding himself destitute of troops, and abandoned by the greatest part of his friends in *Italy*, whom he had disoblged by his violent proceedings, was obliged to retire into *Bavaria*, in order to re-establish his affairs.

HIS back was no sooner turned than the *Pisans* reconciled themselves to the see of *Rome*. The *Romans* recalled the cardinal legate, and put themselves under the auspices of pope *John*; the cities of *Todi*, *Viterbo*, and *Peslora*, followed the example; the *Visconti* renounced the emperor's party, and received absolution from the holy see; and the antipope *Nicholas*, finding it impossible to conceal himself longer at *Pisa*, submitted to *John*, who, having received his abjuration of the papacy, absolved him of his crimes, and imprisoned him for life.

HAVING thus far succeeded in detaching almost all from the interest of *Lewis*, and in making himself master of the person of his competitor, he still continued to press the *German* princes to a new election; but, by this time, they were so tired with civil discord, that his remonstrances were altogether disregarded; and even those princes who had op-

^k SPOND. ad. ann. 1329. RAINALD, ad. ann. 1329.

Lewis
sends an
embassy to
the pope;

posed *Lewis* in the beginning, now expressed a desire of seeing him peaceably established on the imperial throne. In order to manifest his own pacific disposition, he sent an embassy to the pope, to sue for a reconciliation with the holy see, in consideration of which he promised to retract every thing he had done, said, or decreed, against his holiness. But all his advances were treated with disdain by *John*, who, far from granting his request, wrote two letters to the king of *Bohemia*, exhorting, and even commanding, that prince, as a son of the church, to depose *Lewis*, and proceed to a new election.

who tam-
pers with
the king of
Bohemia,
at that
time the
emperor's
vicar in
Italy.

THESE remonstrances seem to have had no effect at first upon the *Bohemian*, who declared for the emperor, and marched into *Italy* as his lieutenant, at the head of an army, with which he reduced almost all the cities of *Lombardy* under obedience to the empire.

A. D.
1331.

ELATED with this success, he began to harbour notions very different from those with which he crossed the *Alps*, and the pope, being well acquainted with his disposition, flattered his ambition so effectually, that, by the means of his legate, *Bertrand de Poyet*, the king of *Bohemia* engaged with him in a private treaty against the emperor. The nature of this agreement having transpired, alarmed both *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* to such a degree, that they united against the *Bohemian*; and the emperor, being suspicious of his fidelity, resolved to cut out such work for him at home, as would soon recall him from *Italy*: for this purpose, he excited against him *Frederic* marquis of *Misnia*, *Otho* duke of *Austria*, by this time reconciled to the house of *Bavaria*, *Uladislaus* king of *Poland*, and *Charobert* king of *Hungary*, who attacked his dominions at the same time, under various pretexts ¹.

He returns
to Ger-
many, and
defeats all
his adver-
saries.

JOHN of *Bohemia*, being informed of these transactions, left his son *Charles* as vicar in *Italy*, and marching into *Germany*, and many, defeated all his adversaries one after another: then repassing the *Alps*, in order to succour his son against the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines*, came up just as the young prince had obtained a complete victory; after which he carried him in triumph to *Prague*, where, beginning to be jealous of his son's reputation, he bestowed upon him the marquisate of *Moravia*, that he might have a pretence for removing him from the capital of *Bohemia* ^m.

1332.

MEAN while the pope employed his artifices so successfully with *Otho* of *Austria*, that this prince abandoned the em-

¹ AVENTIN. ann. lib. vii. p. 618. SPOND. Contin. ubi supra. ^m DUBRARI. Hist. Boem. l. xxi.

peror, submitted his dominions to the holy see, and declared himself vassal to the church of Rome; nevertheless Italy groaned under the utmost misery and desolation: for altho' the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* joined against the *Germans*, they still maintained a civil war among themselves with the most implacable resentment, and a number of private noblemen erected themselves into petty tyrants, during this period of confusionⁿ.

WHILE *Lombardy* suffered such a complication of disorders, *John* king of *Bohemia* marched to the assistance of the *Teutonic* knights, who had been worsted by the *Poles*, and penetrating as far as *Cracovia*, undertook the siege of that city, which the inhabitants defended with great obstinacy, until they were compelled by famine to demand a capitulation, which was soon succeeded by a treaty of peace, effected under the mediation of the king of *Hungary*. *Otho* of *Austria*, who was now become a partisan of the pope, being joined by the bishop of *Constance*, took this opportunity to besiege *Colmar*, which held for *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and actually invested it with an army of thirty thousand men; but it was gallantly defended, by the marquis of *Baden*, until the emperor marched to its relief with a strong body of troops, furnished by the king of *Bohemia*, who had found means to justify his conduct to *Lewis*, and by the count of *Wurtemberg*; so that *Otho*, losing all hope of succeeding in his enterprize, and perceiving that he himself was no other than a dupe to the see of *Rome*, resolved to make peace with the emperor, which was ratified accordingly. Now *Lewis* began to govern the empire in peace, though the public tranquillity was often invaded by feuds and animosities among the noblemen and cities, which produced all the terrible effects of civil war, until they were restrained by associations like that of *Strasbourg*, *Friburg*, and *Basil*, which, about this time, formed a league for their mutual defence^o.

NOTWITHSTANDING the success of *Lewis* in *Germany*, pope *John* would not desist from his intrigues; but, having confirmed *John* king of *Bohemia* in his interest, during an interview which he had with this prince at *Avignon*, he prevailed upon him to march into *Italy*, in order to support the concerns of the holy see against *Robert* king of *Naples*, who was now become his most inveterate enemy, and the *Viscontis* and *Escales*, who had joined his *Neapolitan* majesty,

ⁿ RAINALD. ad an. 1332.
tom. i. p. 415.

^o Annal. de l'Empire,

because they found their account in fishing in troubled waters.

ACCORDINGLY the *Bohemian*, being reinforced by a body of *French* troops, passed the *Alps*, as the champion of the church, engaged the enemy near *Verona*, was twice defeated, and returned to *Germany*, having lost his troops, money, and reputation.

THE emperor, mean while, remained in peace at *Munich*, without having any share in these transactions; but, as the pope solicited, without ceasing, the *German* princes to revolt against his administration, and he himself, as well as a number of his friends, lay under the censures of the church, he resolved to assemble a council, in order to stigmatize and depose that resilefs pontif, as a tyrant and heretic (K), but he was anticipated by death, which overtook his holiness in the ninetieth year of his age. This turbulent pope left immense treasures, and was succeeded in the papacy by *James Dufour*, surnamed *The White Cardinal*, who assumed the name of *Benediēt XII* P.

Pope John
dies at
Avignon.

A. D.

1334.

War be-
tween the
emperor
and the
king of
Bohemia.

THIS new pope seemed to tread in the steps of his predecessor, and even confirmed all the bulls which *John* had issued against the emperor, who did not so much regard these impotent fulminations, as he had affairs of greater importance to engross his attention. *John of Luxemburg*, second son of the king of *Bohemia*, had married *Margaret* surnamed *Great Mouth*, heiress of *Carinthia*, and this princess accusing her husband of impotence, the marriage was dissolved by the bishop of *Frisingen*. Thinking herself at full liberty to dispose of her person, she espoused the margrave of *Brandenburg*, son of the emperor, who readily consented to a match which added *Tyrol* and *Carinthia* to his family; and this contract produced a war between the houses of *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*, which, after having been maintained for a whole year, with various success, was terminated by a very singular accommodation, in consequence of which young *John of Luxemburg* renounced

P VILLANI, l. x. c. 21:

(K) Among other errors in Christ in heaven until the resurrection, after which they will point of doctrine, *John* alleged that the souls of the happy see enjoy the beatific vision of the only the human nature of Jesus Divinity (7).

(7) *Baluz. vit. Pap. Advent*, t. i. p. 788. See the history of the popes.

all claim to his wife, and ratified her marriage with the marriage ⁹.

THIS war being finished, *Lewis* exerted all his endeavours *The cities* to appease the domestic troubles of the empire. The magistrates of *Straßbourg* finding themselves interrupted in their commerce by the incursions of *Walter* lord of *Schwanau*, who distressed them from the castle of *Erstein*, of which he was in possession, joined in an association with *Basil*, *Friburg*, and all the imperial cities of *Alsace*, in order to reduce this formidable neighbour. Their first attempt was against *Walter Erstein*, which they took at the very first assault; then they invested the strong fortrefs of *Schwanau*, situated on the bank of the *Rhine*, and, although *Walter* defended it with incredible valour for the space of three months, it was at length taken and demolished, but not before *Walter* had made his escape in the habit of a peasant.

THE next disturbance was occasioned by *Berthold* bishop of *Straßbourg*, who refused to do homage to the emperor, because he was excommunicated, and ravaged the country belonging to the count *de Wirtemberg*, who was his declared enemy, being joined by a reinforcement of troops sent by the duke of *Lorraine* and bishop of *Metz*. He took several castles, and began to form schemes of importance upon some of the imperial towns; so that the emperor was obliged to take the field in person: but, finding *Berthold* strongly posted, he listened to the first overtures of peace, which was granted almost on the bishop's own terms, because he knew him to be an experienced warrior, and understood that he was on the brink of concluding a peace with the princes of *Austria*.

LEWIS being informed of a misunderstanding between *Philip* of *France* and *Benedict XII.* on the subject of the crusade, resolved to seize this opportunity of being reconciled to the holy see, and with that view sent an embassy, with submissive letters to the pope at *Avignon*, who received them very graciously, and expressed a desire of terminating the long quarrel which had subsisted between *Lewis* and the see of *Rome*. A negociation was accordingly set on foot, but the pope's favourable intentions were defeated by the remonstrances of the kings of *France*, *Naples*, and *Bohemia*, who protested that, in case *Lewis* should be absolved from the censures of the church, they would take measures for electing a new king of the *Romans*.

⁹ Hist. de Luxemb. l. xlviii.

^r BARRE, tom. vi. p. 573.

^s RAINALD. ad an. 1335.

Edward of MEAN while Philip of France and Edward of England, being on the eve of a rupture, these two princes employed all their art and insinuation to acquire partisans in Germany: the English monarch formed a strong alliance among the princes of Germany, at the head of which was the emperor himself, who created Edward vicar of the empire, and trusted so much to the strength of this new league, that he recalled his ambassadors from Avignon, and broke off his negotiation with Benedict: nevertheless, he wrote a letter to the pope, complaining of the king of France, as a violator of treaties, inasmuch as he had seized several fiefs belonging to the empire, in the diocese of Cambray, and solicited his holiness to assist him in making war upon that monarch.

Benedict *stewards the measures of the emperor.* BENEDICT, instead of complying with this singular desire, exerted all his abilities to produce a rupture between Lewis and Edward, to procure intelligence to Philip de Valois, and to excite a spirit of jealousy in the German princes against the ambitious Englishman; nay, he even detached Henry duke of Bavaria from the interest of Lewis, whom he renounced as an excommunicated heretic^t.

The pope and the king of France excite the king of Bohemia to rebel against the emperor. THE pope's conduct on this occasion was chiefly influenced by his dependence upon Philip, who, in order to counterbalance the alliance of Edward, secured the assistance of the kings of Bohemia and Navarre, as well as of the duke of Lorraine and count of Savoy: and the spirit of pope John still reigned in the factions he had fomented against the emperor. John king of Bohemia, elated with the hope of the imperial crown's devolving to his son Charles of Luxemburg, in consequence of the assurances which he received from France and Rome, had fortified himself with the alliance of the kings of Hungary and Poland, and raised a powerful army in order to carry the war into the bowels of Bavaria; but the emperor assembling his troops, harrassed him in such a manner, and pursued him so closely, that he was obliged to hazard a battle, in which, after an obstinate and bloody dispute, he and his auxiliaries were totally routed. This defeat neither quelled his courage nor diminished his hope; for he trusted to the friendship and forces of the French king, to whom he sent his son Charles, in order to concert new measures for repairing his loss^u.

LEWIS, notwithstanding all the repulses he had sustained, still endeavoured, with all his might, to retrieve the affec-

^t BARRE, tom. vi. p. 584.

^u HEISS, tom. ii. p.

tion of the holy see, in the person of *Benedict*, who rejected his advances, for fear of disobliging the king of *France*. The princes of the empire, ecclesiastic as well as secular, assembling at *Spire*, declared the empire independent of the pope, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria* lawful emperor; then they sent deputies to *Benedict*, desiring he would annul the sentences of his predecessor, otherwise they would proceed against him in another manner; and the pope refusing to give them satisfaction, a diet was convoked at *Frankfort*, wherein that famous constitution was made in form of a law, by which the independence of the empire was for ever established * of the popes.

(L). *LEWIS*, next year, by his own authority, took off the interdiction which had been laid against him by pope *John XXII.* bishop of and expelled from their churches all those who refused to submit to his order. Copies of the manifesto published by *Lewis* in his own vindication, containing the steps which had been taken in the diet, were sent to *Benedict*, by *Berthold* bishop of *Straßburg*, who represented his own inability to cope with the emperor, and desired the pope would allow him to do homage to that prince, otherwise he should be destroyed. This permission was granted by *Benedict*, who now began to perceive that he had carried his resentment too far, and *Berthold* went to *Spire*, to do homage to the emperor, who invested him with the temporalities of his diocese. To this condescension the bishop was in a great measure determined by the remonstrances of *Albert*, surnamed *The Deformed*, duke of *Austria*, who wished to see the troubles of *Alsace* appeased, that he might have a fairer opportunity of acting against the *Swiss*, whom he had resolved to subdue.

* Extat. apud *ALBERT DE ROSAT.* Jur. conf in l. bene a Zernone. 3. C. de quadr. proscript. Hier Balb. Ep. Surcens. lib. de. Coron. ad Car. v. & int. addit. ad REBDORF. HERUART. contra. BZOV. AVENT. ann. &c. lib. vii. p. 621, & sequente. y *ALBERT.* Argent. de gestis Bertholdi, p. 173.

(L) All the electors, except the king of *Bohemia*, who was attached to *Philip*, assembling at *Constanz*, in the territory of *Mentz*, declared, by a solemn protestation, that he who was elected king of the *Romans* by a majority of the princes electors, needed not the approbation, confirmation, or consent, of the holy see, to assume the title of king, administer the laws, and govern the estates of the empire (8).

(8) *Albert. Argent. p. 129. Spencer.*

Albert of
Austria
attempts in
vain to
subdue the
Swiss.

He accordingly assembled all his forces and those of his allies, composing an army of forty thousand men, with whom he passed the *Rhine* at *Schaffhausen*, and advanced as far as *Kybourg*, where his van-guard was defeated by the enemy. Notwithstanding this check, he continued his route as far as the canal of *Zurich*, where he received the news of fresh disturbances in *Alsace*, which obliged him to abandon his enterprize, in order to succour the towns of his own dominions.

The Jews
are massa-
cred in Al-
face.

THESE disorders were occasioned by a spirit of fanaticism, in consequence of which the lower class of people assembled under the banners of an inn-keeper, distinguished by the appellation of *Armlader*, who elected himself into a prophet, and persuaded his followers, that, in order to revenge the death of Christ, it was their indispensable duty to extirpate the *Jews*. In obedience to this doctrine, which was first broached in *Franconia*, they assassinated great multitudes of that unhappy nation, and the carnage, which extended to *Alsace*, was so dreadful, that the *Jews* themselves, driven to despair, augmented the horror of the scene; for, rather than fall into the hands of such inhuman enemies, they made away with themselves, after having murdered their own wives and children, and concealed their riches, which they justly supposed had contributed to their disaster. The deplorable condition of these miserable wretches excited the compassion of *Berthold* bishop of *Straßburg*, who being more-over affected with the desolation of his own country, laid waste by that frantic herd of enthusiasts, formed an association with some other noblemen of *Alsace*, and assembling a body of troops, expelled them from that province. The *Jews* that remained were permitted to live in peace; and *Armlader* being taken, was executed as a sower of sedition, and an enemy to the public tranquillity².

They are
protected
by Ber-
thold bi-
shop of
Straßburg.

A. D.

1339-
The empe-
ror becomes
jealous of
the Eng-
lish mon-
arch.

THIS commotion having subsided, the troops of the empire and princes of *Germany* marched to *Mechlin*, where they joined the *English*, commanded by king *Edward*, who invested the city of *Cambray*, which was so valiantly defended by the *French*, that, on the approach of winter, he abandoned the enterprize. He afterwards ravaged *Picardy*, and offered battle to the king of *France*, which being declined, he retired into *Brabant*, and the greatest part of his *German* allies returned to their own dominions. Indeed, by this time, *Lewis* began to repent of having conferred the vicariate of the em-

² Lunig, Arch. Imper. tom. vii. p. 12.

pire upon such a powerful prince, and of having engaged with an ally who drained *Germany* of her best troops, so that she could not spare a sufficient number to maintain the interest of the empire in *Italy*, where almost all the cities had made their submissions to the pope. When the princes returned from the *Low Countries*, the emperor assembled a diet, and having represented the posture of affairs in *Lombardy*, demanded such supplies of men and money, as would enable him to cross the *Alps*, and punish the revolted towns. But this expedition appearing impracticable at the present juncture, when *Germany* was in a great measure drained of all her funds, he was fain to refer it to a more favourable opportunity. Mean while he was, by the emissaries and intrigues of the *French* king, so irritated against the king of *England*, who had neglected to pay the subsidies, and made a truce at *Tournay*, without his participation, that he abandoned the cause of that monarch, and deprived him of the vicariate, notwithstanding all the protestations and condescension of *Edward*, who tried every method he could devise to deprecate his anger. Deprives him of the vicariate. A. D.

1340.
LEWIS the more readily entered into the views of *Philip*, He is amused by the French king and the pope. as he was flattered with assurances of being reconciled to the pope, by the mediation of that monarch, who accordingly wrote to the pope in favour of the *Bavarian*; but, in all probability, he was not sincere in his remonstrances, inasmuch as *Benedict* paid no manner of regard to his interposition. On the contrary, he amused the emperor with evasive excuses, while he disposed of the governments and signories of *Italy*, as administrator of the empire, which he deemed vacant ^a. About this period, the restless king of *Bohemia* lost his eyesight, and made his will, by which he bequeathed *Bohemia* and *Silesia* to his son *Charles*, afterwards emperor, *Moravia* to *John*, and *Luxemburg*, with the lands he had in *France* in right of his wife, to *Winceslaus*, born of *Beatrice* of *Bourbon*; though this last precaution was useless, for that province was seized by *Charles* the eldest son, while *Winceslaus* was yet in his infancy ^b. John king of Bohemia makes his will.

In the course of this same year *Lewis* was chosen arbiter to decide the quarrels of the house of *Denmark*. *Gerhard* count of *Rendsburg* and *Waldemar* duke of *Sleswic* had usurped the crown, which of right belonged to young *Waldemar*, educated at the court of *Munich*. But the administration of those usurpers was so odious to the *Danish* nation, that a ge-

^a RAINALD. ad an. 1341. n. 12.
l. xxix.

^b Hist. Luxemb.

about the
crown of
Denmark.

A. D.

1341.

Gives
magnifi-
cent tour-
naments
at Mu-
nich.

1343.
Lewis
makes ad-
vances of
friendship
to Clement
VI. who
treats him
with an
high hand.

neral revolt ensued, and count *Gerhard* was assassinated by *Nicholas Jacobi*, a nobleman of that country, who chose this method of vindicating the liberty of his nation: then putting himself at the head of the *Danish* revolters, he gave battle to the princes of *Holftein*, and, though he lost his life in the engagement, they were entirely defeated, and the lawful heir ascended the throne of his ancestors.

THIS young prince had been maintained and protected by the emperor, who now called an assembly at *Speindow*, where an accommodation between the new king and the princes of *Holftein* was effected, on condition that he should renounce all pretensions to the throne, give his sister in marriage to *Waldemar III.* and remain in quiet possession of *Jutland*.

ALL these contests being ended, *Germany* began to enjoy that peace with which she was so seldom blessed, and *Lewis* took this opportunity to establish wholesome regulations for the continuance of the public tranquility. He caused the laws to be rigorously executed against vagabonds and criminals of all kinds; he granted his protection to the innocent and industrious, and rewarded merit to the utmost of his power. His mild and prudent administration not only conciliated the affections of his people in general, but also conquered the animosity and prejudices of almost all the princes who had been his enemies; so that they now sought and cultivated his friendship. His court became numerous, gay, and polite; and, in order to render himself more popular, he instituted magnificent tournaments at *Munich*, after they had been four hundred years discontinued by the princes of *Germany*.

WHILE the emperor in this manner established his authority on this side of the *Alps*, his own interest in *Italy* was almost totally ruined. Pope *Benedict* dying at *Avignon*, he was succeeded by *Clement VI.* a native of *France*, and archbishop of *Rouen*, who confirmed by new bulls all the sentences of excommunication pronounced by *John XXII.* and *Benedict XII.* and endeavoured to excite all *Italy* to rebel against the emperor. *Lewis*, who may be said to have been a martyr to the independency of the empire, as *Henry V.* had been to the investitures, in order to manifest his own innocence, made advances of friendship to the pope, and, even in the midst of these acts of enmity, sent an embassy to him to treat of a reconciliation; but his holiness prescribed such unreasonable conditions, as the ambassadors had not power to accept;

upon which they desired he would give them his demands in writing, that they might, upon their return to *Germany*, lay them before the emperor (M). *Lewis* having obtained these articles, sent copies of them to all the states of the empire, and such a general indignation prevailed against the presumption of the pope, that the princes and states assembling at *Frankfort*, the articles were openly read, and rejected as an insult upon the honour of the empire, and a second embassy was appointed to wait upon *Clement*, and desire he would retract them; otherwise, the states would of themselves take such measures on that subject, as they should judge convenient. The pope, more than ever incensed at this instance of disregard, fulminated new excommunications (N) against *Lewis* and all his adherents; and, being instigated by *Philip of Valois* king of *France*, who, though he had made peace with the emperor, wished to see him employed at home, he set on foot and managed underhand intrigues and negotiations, in order to raise a faction among the princes, and induce them to proceed to the election of a new emperor.

As all these steps were taken in favour of *Charles of Luxemburg*, son of *John* king of *Bohemia*; who was one of the most considerable members of the electoral college, and as he had already made sure of *Baldwin of Luxemburg*, archbishop of *Triers*, the king's uncle, their chief aim was to secure the other suffrages. The pope had already excommunicated *Charles of Luxemburg*, who

A.D.
1346.

Intrigues
in favour
of Charles
of Luxemburg, who

* ARGENT. in Chron. Naucler. gen. 45.

(M) These were the articles: Against *Charles* and *Clement*, whom *Lewis* shall deliver to the pope *William* of *Ockham*, he treats with great scurrility.

(N) In a bull published against *Lewis*, we read the following imprecation. "May the wrath of God, of St. Peter and St. Paul, crush him in this world and that which is to come. May the earth open and swallow him alive: may his memory perish, and all the elements be his enemies: and may his children fall into the hands of his adversaries, even in the sight of their father (10)."

William of *Ockham* was an Englishman, who wrote a book

(9) *Avent. an. Boior. lib. vii. p. 627. p. 428.*

(10) *Annal de l'Empire, tom. i.*

is chosen
king of the
Romans,
and crown-
ed by his
own facti-
on.

He nominated Henry of Verneburg, archbishop of Mentz, because he was in the emperor's interest, and promoted to that see count Gorlach of Nassau, who was devoted to his service. The vote of Walderan of Juliers, archbishop of Cologne, was purchased with eight thousand marks of silver, and that of Rodolphus duke of Saxony for two thousand. These princes assembling at Reintz near Coblentz, elected Charles of Luxemburg king of the Romans, and, as the city of Cologne would own no other emperor but Lewis of Bavaria, he was crowned at Bonn by the new archbishop Gorlach, his election having been confirmed by the pope^t (O).

Lewis
maintains
his dignity
and repu-
tation.

THE other princes and states of the empire preserved their fidelity and attachment to Lewis, notwithstanding this schism, which served only to unite them more firmly in his interest; and, some time after this event, his son Lewis, marquis of Brandenburg, attacked and defeated the new king of the Romans in the Tyrol; so that the emperor maintained his dignity and good fortune to the last; and reigned with the love, esteem, and applause of his subjects.

PERHAPS this opposition might have been much more dangerous to Lewis, had not part of the pope's attention been employed on the affairs of Naples, which was conquered by Lewis king of Hungary, in revenge for the death of his brother Andrew, who had married Jane heiress of Naples, and been assassinated by her domestics: and at the same time Clement was greatly perplexed by a very extraordinary revolution in Rome, effected by an obscure notary called Nicholas Rienzi, who being elected tribune of the people, renounced the pope's authority, and restored the form of the antient republic, which, however, did not long subsist.

THE emperor's predecessors were used to move from one imperial city to another, that their courts might subsist at the expence of the inhabitants; whereas Lewis never oppressed his people in this manner; but, except when he was obliged

^t VILLANI. l. xii. c. 59. MUT. l. xxiv.

(O) Charles of Luxemburg, who went to Avignon with his father, to solicit the pope's interest, engaged to annul all the decrees of Lewis, to acknowledge that the county of Avignon belonged to the holy see, as well as Ferrara and the lands of Mathilda, with the kingdoms of Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica; and promised that, if he should go as emperor to receive the crown at Rome, he would quit the city that same day, and never return without the express permission of his holiness (11).

to be present at the diet, staid at home in his own duchy of *Bavaria*, and generally amused himself at the chace, a diversion which at length cost him his life⁸: for while he one day exercised himself in hunting the bear, he was attacked, it is said, by a fit of the apoplexy, when falling from his horse, he immediately expired, after having recommended his soul to God, and his body was interred at *Munich*⁹ 1347-
(P). *Falls from his horse and dies. A. D. 1347.*

THIS prince, having lost his father when he was but twelve years of age, had been educated at *Vienna* in *Austria*, with his cousins, under the tuition of his mother, who bestowed such care upon his education, that he surpassed all the princes of his age, both in the qualifications of the body and the understanding. He was very tall, though agile; his hair was sandy, his complexion florid, his nose was long, and his chin lengthened. He perfectly well understood the exercise of arms; he feared no danger, but was hasty, and too much addicted to love: in adversity he needed advice: he was master of himself in prosperity: he was gay and polished in his manners; but there was rather too much vivacity in his behaviour, and he could not stay long in one place. The monks and nuns gave him the appellation of *most Christian* and *most Pious*, and expressed great veneration for his knives, napkins, and other things of that sort that belonged to him. For a long time he had no other possession than *High Bavaria*, till after the death of *John* duke of *Low Bavaria*, he succeeded to his dominions¹ (Q). *His character and person described.*

CHARLES

⁸ AVENTIN. ann. Bolor. l. vii. p. 631. ⁹ Ibid. p. 630. VILLAN. l. xii. c. 105. HFRUART contra Bzov. ad ann. 1347. ¹ AVENTIN. ann. ubi supra.

(P) He is said to have been poisoned by the widow of *Albert of Austria*; and prescribed some violent exercise by his physicians, after they had, without success, tried other methods of cure. In consequence of this advice, he had rode out to hunt the bear, when the operation of the poison became so violent that he dropped dead from his horse (12).

(Q) *Lewis* first married the

daughter of a count whose name is not known; and she died without issue: his second wife was *Beatrice* daughter of *Henry* duke of *Glogau*, by whom he had *Lewis* marquis of *Brandenburg*, *Stephen*, who was deformed: *Beatrice*, married to *Charles* king of *Hungary*; *Anne*, wife of *Musigne Lescale* lord of *Verona*; and *Mathilda*, who espoused *Frederic the Severe*, marquis of *Misnia*. The em-

(12) *Spand. Cont. ann. Ecclesiastic. tom. i. p. 625.*

CHARLES IV.

Charles IV. count of *Luxemburg*, son of *John* king of *Bohemia*, and grandson of *Henry VII.* was born at *Prague*, and named *Wenceslaus*; but being sent by his father into *France* to *Charles the Fair*, who had married *Mary* of *Luxemburg*, his aunt, they caressed him with great affection; and, as they had no children, gave him the name of *Charles* when he received the sacrament of confirmation. At the same time, they provided him with excellent preceptors, under whom, exclusive of the *German* and *Bohemian* languages, which were natural to him, he made himself master of the *Latin*, *French*, and *Italian*. After the death of *Charles the Fair*, he returned to his father, whom he attended to *Italy*, where he was created viceroy of the empire, and ran the risque of being poisoned by *Azon*, viscount of *Milan*. At the age of seventeen, he was invested with the marquisate of *Moravia* by king *John*, his father. He repaired the castle of *Prague*, reunited to the crown of *Bohemia* a great many lands which the barons had usurped, and settled the affairs of that kingdom, which were in great disorder. He likewise had signalized himself in some military expeditions: he marched against *Bucer*, duke of *Munsterberg*, who refused to do homage to the king his father, and compelled him to submit: he went to war with the count of *Goritz*, who had sided with the dukes of *Austria*: he accompanied his father in an irruption into *Lithuania*: he made a second journey into *Italy*, where he obliged the *Venetians* to raise the siege of *Parma*, took from them the city of *Belluna*, and then concluded a peace with that republic: he erected into an archbishop's see the bishopric of *Prague*, which had been

His education, qualities, and exploits.

peror's third wife was *Margaret* daughter of *William III.* count of *Holland*, by whom he had *William*, *Albert*, *Otho*, and *Lewis*; *Elizabeth*, first married to *John* duke of *Low Bavaria*, and afterwards to *Ulric* count of *Wirtemberg*; *Agnes*, a nun; and *Anne*, wife of *Guntber de Schwartzburg*, who disputed the empire with *Charles IV.* king of *Bohemia*.

Lewis of *Bavaria* was the first emperor who had a double eagle engraved upon his seal. In his reign the count palatine founded the university of *Heidelberg*; and there was such abundance of wine upon the *Rhine* and the *Moselle*, that it was used to slake lime. The people then contrived those huge tuns, one of which is still to be seen at *Heidelberg* (1).

(1) *Struw.* period ix. *scr.* 5. *Heinec.* de veter. Germ. aliisumq. Nation. Sigil. *Barre*, tom. vi. p. 665.

suffragan to *Mentz*, and impowered the archbishop to perform the office of coronation to the kings of *Bohemia*: in a word, he acquired a good deal of reputation by his wise government; so that, upon the death of his father (R), he was, with the unanimous consent of the people, raised to the *Bohemian* throne^k. The first step he took after this elevation, was to make new preparations for war against the emperor *Lewis*; and having raised a powerful army, he set out for *Bavaria*, in order to obey the dictates of revenge; but, in the middle of his march, receiving the news of that emperor's death, "Praised be God, said he, in the wonders of his providence, for having spared me the effusion of Christian blood, and deprived me of the opportunity of being avenged upon my enemies^l;" then, changing his route, he advanced into the heart of the empire, and was acknowledged as king and emperor of the *Romans* by *Ratisbon*, *Nuremberg*, and four-and-twenty other imperial cities of the *Rhine* (S). Thus established, he returned to his kingdom of *Bohemia*, and next year began to build the new city of *Prague*. He had no sooner retired to his own dominions, than *Henry* archbishop of *Mentz*, *Robert* count *Palatine*, *Lewis* marquis of *Brandenburg*, and *Erich* duke of *Saxony*, who had not assisted at the election, assembled at *Loefstein*, and chose *Edward*, king of *England*, emperor; but that prince declining the dignity with suitable acknowledgments to the electors, they proceeded to the nomination of *Frederic*, landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, being afflicted with the gout, renounced his pretensions in favour of *Charles* for ten thousand marks of silver^m. The same electors, notwithstanding this repulse, chose in his room *Gunther*, count of

Succeeds
his father
on the Bo-
hemian
throne.

A. D.
1347.

Is acknow-
leged as
emperor
and king
of the Ro-
mans by
the imperi-
al cities of
the Rhine.
1348.

Edward
king of
England is
elected by
another
party, and

^k Hist. Luxemb. l. li. ^l HEISS, l. ii. c. 27. ^m SPOND. an. Contin. Bar. c. i. p. 686. AVENT. an. l. vii. p. 634.

(R) This was the blind king of *Bohemia*, who was slain in the battle of *Cressy* by the *English*, and whose motto, *Ich dien*, was adopted by the prince of *Wales* (1).

(S) Though he was acknowledged by the magistrates of *Nuremberg*, the citizens took arms, obliged him to fly, and declared for *Lewis* of *Brandenburg*, to whom they opened their gates.

He was also affronted in divers other places. At *Worms* he was arrested by a butcher, who had furnished him with meat: at *Rottenburg on the Neckar* he presented himself in a tournament, under the name *Schilbard* of *Rechberg*, where he was unhorsed by one *de la Pieve*, to whom he was obliged to pay the forfeit (2).

(1) BURKE, t. v. p. 652.

(2) ADRIANUS, p. ii. l. iv.

Schwartzeberg,

declines the honour ; then they nominate Frederic landgrave of Thuringia, and he, resigning his right, proceed to the election of Gunther count of Schwartzzenburg, who enters Ratisbon, renounces his claim in favour of Charles, and dies of poison.

A. D.

1349.

Schwartzzenburg, a nobleman of great courage and unquestioned merit, who accepted the honour, on condition that the electors should conduct him to *Frankfort*, and publicly proclaim him emperor in that city. This condition he stipulated, because the magistrates and citizens of *Frankfort* pretended to have a right of refusing entrance to any king of the *Romans*, or emperor, who had not been unanimously elected, until he should have overcome his competitor, or at least tarried six weeks and three days before the city without being questioned by his rival. The electors promised to comply with *Gunther's* demand, and actually assisted him in raising an army sufficient to compel the city to open its gates in case of a refusal. Accordingly, being denied admission, he undertook the siege of it, which having lasted two months, the citizens were obliged to open their gates, because *Charles* had not marched to their relief. During his residence in this city he fell sick, in consequence of having taken a medicine which his physician had poisoned (T); and, during his illness, he was so powerfully sollicitated by the emperor *Charles* to quit his pretensions to the empire, that at length he resigned in his favour for the consideration of two and-twenty thousand marks of silver; and dying in a month after, was honourably interred by his competitorⁿ.

GUNTHER, in all probability, would have rejected such a scandalous composition, had not he felt his faculties and health greatly impaired by the poison he had received, and found himself abandoned by his best friends, whom *Charles* had gained over to his interest by slight presents and magnificent promises. Among these was *Lewis*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, who persuaded *Gunther* to resign the imperial crown, and was for this good office invested by the *Bohemian* with the marquisate of *Brandenburg* °.

ⁿ Vide auct. sup. citat. KRANTZ Sax. l. ix. c. 26. period. ix. sect. vi.

° STRUV.

(T) The physician's name was *Fredank*, supposed to be bribed by *Charles*. When he presented the medicine, he was desired by one present to taste it before the emperor. *Gunther*, perceiving him hesitate, ordered him to swallow part of it, and he obeyed; upon which the count took

the remainder: but observing the physician's countenance changed, he suspected the treachery, and endeavoured by vomits to expel the poison, which therefore had not an immediate effect. As for *Fredank*, he died in three days (1).

CHARLES, however, was resolved to chastise the city of *Charles Frankfort* for having received *Gunther*; and, without having *chastises* any regard to their pretended right, he deprived them *the city of* of their privileges and fair, which he transferred to *Mentz*. *Frankfort*. Nevertheless, he afterwards restored these privileges, but taxed the city in the sum of twenty thousand marks of silver. Being thus rid of all his competitors, he by his address prevailed upon those electors who had opposed him to confirm his election, and with his empress, who was daughter of the *Is crown-* Count Palatine, received the crown at *Aix la Chapelle* from *ed.* the hands of the archbishop of *Cologne*. During this ceremony a quarrel arose between the marquisses of *Juliers* and *Brandenburg*, about bearing the sceptre; and *Charles* himself interposing, decided the dispute in favour of the marquis of *Brandenburg*, after having taken the advice of the princes^p.

CHARLES, being universally acknowledged, began to employ his mediation towards reconciling the partizans of *Lewis* with the holy see, and the re-establishment of peace in the empire, when all at once this happy prospect was destroyed by an insurrection against the *Jews*, whom the people con- *A dreadful* sidered as the authors of a dreadful plague, that ravaged the *plague, at-* coasts of the *Mediterranean*, and diffused its contagion thro' *tributed to* *Savoy, Switzerland, Alsace, Suabia, Franconia*, and some *the prac-* other provinces of the empire. *tices of the*

THE miserable *Jews*, detested on the score of religion, *Jews* had lived under the immediate protection of the emperors ever since their first settlement in *Germany*; and as many of them had acquired large fortunes^q by usury, they became the objects of envy as well as of abhorrence; so that it was in the power of any enthusiast or artful schemer to expose their nation to the fury of the populace, according to the dictates of avarice or superstition. At this juncture they were said to have poisoned the wells and fountains; and this extravagant notion prevailed to such a degree, that the *Jews* were put to the torture in *Bonn* and several other cities; and, tho' *who are* they still refused to own the imputed crime, a great number *mossacred* of those unfortunate wretches were poniarded, burnt, and *at Bonn* drowned, by the incensed populace; nor was it in the power *and divers* of the civil magistrates to prevent such cruel sacrifices. At *other places* *Strasbourg* the common people, under the conduct of a *in Germa-* butcher, deposed the magistracy; and investing their chief ^{ny} with absolute power, he ordered two thousand *Jews* to be burnt alive, confiscated their effects, and decreed that no in-

^p ALBERT. ARGENT. SPINER. ad. an. 1349.

dividuals of that nation should be admitted into *Strasburg* for the term of 100 years.

THO' the populace were the perpetrators of this inhuman tragedy, they were instigated and abetted by the bishop and several other noblemen, who owed considerable sums to the *Jews*, and took this method of discharging their debts; nor would they listen to any pacific terms, until the emperor promised, in behalf of the sufferers, that the sums due to them should never be demanded † (U).

A. D.
1350.
Charles
imposes
new tolls
upon the
Rhine;

CHARLES, finding his finances exhausted by those largesses, in consequence of which he ascended the imperial throne, and being moreover importuned by some of the princes to perform the promises he had made to them before his election, endeavoured to raise subsidies by imposing new taxes and tolls upon rivers, which had well nigh involved the whole empire in confusion; for the magistrates of *Strasburg* not only refused to pay these impositions, but even blocked up the *Rhine* with stakes and chains, so as intirely to obstruct the navigation.

THIS project miscarrying, the emperor had recourse to another expedient. He mortgaged the domains of the empire to divers noblemen and cities, and allowed others to re-

† LUNIC. t. vii. Arch. Imp. p. 18.

(U) During this plague the sect of *Flagellants* revived; and this taste for self-discipline became so general, that crouds of people of all ranks, sexes, and condition, abandoned themselves to this cruel superstition. Two hundred of these disciplinants from *Suabia*, crossing the *Rhine*, repaired to *Spire*, and, assembling before the cathedral, stripped off their cloaths, and whipped themselves with scourges pointed with iron. The extremities of the weather could not stop them in their career: they would not speak to any woman: they lay upon the hard ground, and admitted none into their association but such as had wherewithal to maintain themselves

during the term prescribed for their penance: they walked by twos and threes in procession, with their eyes fixed upon the earth, crosses on their cloaths and hats, and a rich standard carried before them: their number acquired the addition of one hundred at *Spire*, and increased considerably at *Strasburg*: in short, this confraternity was augmented to some thousands, and became so formidable, that the pope fulminated bulls, the emperor issued edicts against them, and the princes refused to admit them into their dominions; by which precautions all bad consequences were prevented, and the society in a little time dispersed (1).

(1) *Chronic. Alsac.*

deem those that were already mortgaged; by which means he raised a considerable sum of money. *Haguenau* purchased, at a very high rate, an exemption from being comprehended in the number of those towns which the noblemen united to their domains. It was confirmed in all the privileges conferred upon it by *Richard* king of the *Romans*, and particularly in that of its being unalienable from the domains of the empire. The same prerogative was afterwards bestowed upon all the towns of the prefecture of *Alsace*; but they could never obtain an independency of the jurisdiction of the Grand Bailie, nor of the princes whom the emperor had invested with that dignity. The imperial towns of *Alsace*, indeed, employed all their endeavours to free themselves from the authority of the princes, which they apprehended would in time degenerate into oppression; and they made strong remonstrances on the subject to *Charles*, who, without paying the least regard to their claims, mortgaged the prefecture of the province to *Robert*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, for fifty thousand florins; and the towns were, after some restitution, obliged to submit.

IN the midst of these transactions, the enemies of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, renewed the old posture of the pretended *Waldemar* in the person of one *Muller-Meincken*, who confidently asserted, that he was the real margrave returned from *Palestine*, and insisted upon being repossessed of his dominions, which, he said, were usurped by *Lewis* of *Bavaria*. As he resembled the late margrave, and mimicked his deportment, in consequence of having been his groom, the common people espoused his cause, which was likewise supported by the dukes of *Saxony*, and the princes of *Anhalt* and *Mecklenburg*, enemies to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*.

THE king of *Denmark*, incensed at the countenance they gave this impostor against his friend, and brother-in-law, *Lewis*, equipped a considerable fleet, and made a descent upon the territories of *Mecklenburg*, which he ravaged with fire and sword; then he undertook the siege of *Berlin*, tho' he had not time to finish that enterprize; for the duke, who had already defeated *Lewis*, surnamed *the Roman*, brother of the margrave, appeared at the head of a strong army, and a battle must have ensued, had not the ministers of both princes advised an accommodation, which was effected under the arbitration of the king of *Sweden*, who decreed that *Lewis the Roman* should ransom his people who were taken

prisoners, and absolve from their oath of allegiance those towns of *Mecklenburg* antiently included in *Wandalia*; and that he should marry the daughter of the duke of *Mecklenburg*, who, on his part, should abandon the pretended *Waldemar*.

*Diet at
Spren-
berg.*

CHARLES, who had likewise protected this pretender, and even issued a decree in his favour, thought proper to renounce him publickly in a diet held at *Sprenberg*; and *Lewis*, surnamed *the Roman*, being declared lawful possessor of the estates of *Brandenburg*, this counterfeit competitor disappeared.

*Charles
Jews suc-
cours to the
empress
dowager;*

AFTER the assembly at *Sprenberg*, in which *Eric*, duke of *Saxony*, ceded to the king of *Denmark* a certain tribute, called *Stuergerde*, paid by the regency of *Lubeck*, which had been mortgaged to the Saxons, *Charles* returned to *Prague*, which was the place of his residence. Here he had established a famous university, while yet no more than king of *Bohemia*, and set proper persons at work to form a code of laws to regulate the police of his kingdom. From hence he detached a body of troops to the *Low Countries* to the assistance of the empress dowager, heirs of those dominions, and at war with her own son *William*, who endeavoured to deprive her of one-half of her possessions. She was a princess of a masculine spirit, and, with the succours she received from *England* and *Bohemia*, took the field against this undutiful child, whom she defeated in a pitched battle, and compelled to retire into *Holland*, of which he was count. But he soon re-appeared, at the head of a more formidable army, assembled from *Cleves*, *Guelderland*, and the neighbouring provinces, and in his turn obtained a complete victory over his mother, who was obliged to fly for refuge into *England*. An accommodation was afterwards effected by the mediation of the *English* monarch, on condition that the empress should rest contented with the possession of *Hainault*, and *William* remain master of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friezland*.

*who is de-
feated by
her son,
William
count of
Holland.*

A. D.

1351.

*The affairs
of Italy.*

*John Vis-
conti
archbishop
of Milan
makes him-*

BUT the emperor did not interest himself so much in this contention, as in the deplorable condition of *Italy*, where an infinite number of petty tyrants, declaring themselves independent of the empire, as well as of the holy see, committed every species of outrage upon those who were unable to resist their power. The chief of these oppressors was *John Visconti*, archbishop of *Milan*. He made himself master of the city of *Bologna*, in direct contradiction to the remonstrances of the pope, who for that reason thundered out a bull of excommunication against him and his three nephews,

Galazzo, Bernabo, and Matthew, the sons of Stephen Visconti, self master of Bologna, and threaten Florence;

NOTWITHSTANDING these anathemas, the archbishop, under the specious pretext of defending the liberty of the people against the encroachments of the *Florentines*, began to make preparations for enterprises of greater moment: in order to oppose this formidable prelate, a league was formed between the republics of *Florence, Pisa*, and some other states; and *Charles* sent letters to the pope, in which he promised to cross the *Alps*, and chastise that rebellious son of the church.

THE archbishop, apprized of his intention, was alarmed at the prospect, and forthwith made strong advances towards an accommodation with the pope, who being himself jealous of the imperial power, and very unwilling to see *Charles* in the midst of *Italy*, gave ear to his solicitations, which were backed with a large sum of money, and granted him the investiture of *Milan and Bologna*, after having absolved him from the censure of the church. *but is afterwards reconciled to the pope.*

THIS reconciliation did not divert the emperor from his purpose of crossing the *Alps*, though his march was delayed for some time by the domestic troubles of *Germany*. The inhabitants of *Zurich*, thinking themselves aggrieved by the mal-administration of justice, expelled their magistrates, who interested the count *de Hapsburg* in their behalf, and even prevailed upon him to undertake the surprisal of the city. *The town of Zurich revolts.*

He accordingly, with some accomplices, entered the town in disguise; but being discovered, he was taken prisoner and loaded with chains; and the people, running to arms, ravaged his lands, and took possession of his castle of *Rappersville*. These proceedings alarmed the dukes of *Austria*, whose possessions lay contiguous to those of the count: they therefore espoused the quarrel, and formed a league with *Strasburg, Basil, Colmar, Scelestadt, and Friburg*, in order to curb the insolence of *Zurich*. *The dukes of Austria form a league against it.* This town, seeing the storm ready to burst upon its head, fortified itself with the alliance of *Sultz, Uri, Underwald, and Lucerne*, which last, though belonging to the house of *Austria*, resolved to take this opportunity of establishing its own independency.

ALBERT of *Austria*, surnamed *the Sage*, having made suitable preparations for the war, demanded the enlargement of the count *de Hapsburg*, which being refused by the inhabitants of *Zurich*, he took the field, fully resolved to besiege the city; but several noblemen, foreseeing the miseries of a

The differ- civil war, interposed their good offices, and arbitrators were
 once is ac- chosen to decide the difference, which was compromised, on
 commodat- condition that the count *de Hapsburg* should be set at liberty,
 (d) and all the places restored which had been taken from the
 house of *Austria*.

but breaks THIS peace, however, was not of long duration. The
 out of fresh town of *Zug*, having enjoyed a transient taste of the sweets
 of liberty, allied itself more strictly than ever to the con-
 federated *Swiss*, *Albert* complaining to the emperor of
 this association, as a direct infraction of the last treaty, and
 a dangerous example in the empire, *Charles* interested him-
 self in the dispute; and, repairing to *Constance*, appointed
 proper persons to treat with the *Swiss*, and endeavour to
 terminate the affair in an amicable manner: but, the confe-
 derates persisting in their refusal to submit to the house of
Austria, all that he could obtain was a suspension of arms,
 until a more solid accommodation could be effected: in
 the mean time he made a progress through *Alsace*, where
 he established several wholesome regulations for the mainte-
 nance of the public tranquillity.

Charles HAVING performed this visitation, he returned to *Stras-*
 takes the burg, where, being importuned by duke *Albert* to take
 field in vengeance on the rebellious *Swiss*, he levied an army, and
 person a- advanced against the enemy, whom he found already ranged
 gainst the in order of battle; but a dispute arising between the duke
Swiss. of *Austria* and the bishop of *Constance* about leading the van,
 A. D. the spirit of the officers was exhausted in vain altercation;
 1353. and the emperor, judging it improper to begin the attack
 while his commanders were so divided among themselves,
 retired at leisure from the neighbourhood of *Zurich*, while
Albert remained to form the blockade of that city.

1354. ON his return from this expedition he was made acquainted
 with the death of pope *Clement VI.* and the succession of
Innocent VI. to whom he sent letters of congratulation,
 which were answered by the new pontif in very gracious
 terms; but he could not yet execute his design of going to
Italy, because he was detained by fresh commotions in *Ger-*
many. He was obliged to go and suppress a popular insur-
 rection at *Nuremberg*; and to decide a competition between
 two pretenders to the archbishopric of *Mentz*, one of whom
 had been deposed, and the other substituted in his room, by
 pope *Clement VI.* He confirmed the antient privileges of the
 church of *Triers*, incorporated *Lusace* with the kingdom of
Bohemia, renewed the peace with the house of *Bavaria*, and

received from *Lewis* the imperial ensigns, which before this period he would not surrender. Then he made a circuit through the provinces, to establish peace, and conciliate the affections of the people: he made a public entry into *Mentz* as king of *Bohemia*; for the magistrates would not receive him in quality of king of the *Romans*, because he had not yet received the imperial crown. During his stay in this city, he erected the counties of *Luxemburg* and of *Bar* into duchies, in favour of his brother *Wincelaus*, and his cousin *Robert de Bar*, whose lordship of *Pont-à-mousson* was likewise raised into a marquisate and principality of the empire*.

HAVING regulated the affairs of *Germany*, and appointed his father-in-law, *Robert* count palatine, vicar of the empire, he resolved to cross the *Alps*, according to an agreement which he had made with pope *Innocent VI.* By the beginning of *January* he had arrived at *Milan*, where he was crowned king of *Lombardy* on the day of *Epiphany*. From thence he repaired to *Pisa*, where he tarried some time, in order to compose the divisions of *Tuscany*, and to receive homage from the cities of that province; then he visited *Siena*, from whence he rode post to *Rome*, which he entered in disguise with some of his nobles on *Holy Week*, during which he visited the principal churches of the city; but on the day of the resurrection, which was the fifth of *April*, he made a solemn procession from his camp into the city, where he was joyfully received by the pope's legate, senators, clergy, and people of *Rome*, and on *Easter-day* crowned with the imperial empress², who had followed him from *Germany* for that purpose. Sets out for Italy; receives the iron crown at Milan; A. D. 1355.

THIS ceremony was no sooner performed than he quitted the city of *Rome*, in consequence of the agreement he had made with the pope, although the *Romans* came to offer him the government of *Rome* as his hereditary right, and intreated him to re-establish their antient liberty. He told the deputies he would deliberate upon the proposal; but, being apprehensive of some treachery, he sneaked out of the city in the evening, on pretence of going to take the diversion of hunting; and afterwards ratified and confirmed, by authentic acts, all the promises he had made to *Clement* and the pope, so much to the prejudice of the empire in *Rome*. He departs from Rome on the day of his coronation;

HIS pusillanimous conduct excited the indignation of the *Germans* and the contempt of the *Italians*. The noblemen of his retinue looked upon his coronation as the era of the

* BARRE. t. vi. p. 706, & seq.

2 FLEURI, t. xx. l. 96.

and is in-
sulted in
divers
places of
Italy.

empire's decay, as all her rights in *Italy* were now totally annihilated. He sustained divers insults on the road in his return to *Germany*: there was an attempt made to burn him in his lodgings at *Pisa*, from whence he escaped with great difficulty, after having seen several persons of his train massacred by the populace. The greatest part of the towns attached to the empire shut their gates against him: at *Cremona* he was obliged to wait without the walls two long hours for the answer of the magistrates, who at length permitted him to enter as a simple stranger, without arms of retinue, and continue for the space of one month only ^a (X).

Supports
the
Guelphs
against the
Gibelines.

HE seemed to have renounced intirely the politics of his predecessors; for he not only discouraged and rejected the proffers of the *Gibelines*, who espoused the interests of the empire, but he affected to treat them as enemies to religion, and actually sent a reinforcement of troops from *Bohemia* to the assistance of the *Guelphs*, who by these means recovered some places which had been taken from the holy see; and, in consideration of these services, he was applauded and flattered by the pope and his dependents with the most fulsome adulation.

Troubles in
Low Ger-
many.

WHILE he acted this absurd part in maintaining the temporalities of the pope, he seemed to neglect the troubles which agitated the northern parts of *Germany*. A war had broke out between the dukes of *Mecklenburg* and *Stettin* about some frontier fortresses, and was carried on with great violence for some years, until *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, undertook the office of arbitrator, and effected an accommodation. Then marching against the princes of *Sclavia* and *Verle*, who had revolted, he defeated their forces and ravaged their dominions, where he committed great cruelties. After this expedition, he consented that a dispute, subsisting be-

^a BARRE, t. ii. p. 718.

(X) The poet *Petrarch*, who, “from the habitation of the *Cæ-*
adhered to the party of the *Gi-* “*sars*! to be crowned emperor,
belines, reproached him in a let- “and then prohibited from
ter couched in these terms: “You “reigning, or acting as chief of
“have then promised upon oath, “the empire: what an insult
“that you will never return to “upon him who ought to com-
“*Rome*. What shameful con- “mand the universe to be no
“duct in an emperor, to be com- “longer master of himself, but
“pelled by *Rome* to content him- “be reduced to obey his own
“self with the bare title of *Cæ-* “vassal (1).”
“*sar*, and exile himself for ever.

(1) *De Vit. Solit.* l. ii. sect. 4. c. iii.

tween him and the counts of *Holftein*, should be referred to the arbitration of *Eric* duke of *Saxony*, and *Gerhard* count *de Hoja* : they decreed, that his *Danish* majesty, to whom the counts of *Holftein* had ceded one-half of *Fionia*, should relinquish all pretensions to that county, and release the *Holfstein* prisoners which he had taken in the last war ^b.

BESIDES these contests, there were other disputes which hastened the return of *Charles* to *Germany* ; namely, those proceeding from an opinion of equality, which prevailed among the princes of the empire ; and this opinion was derived from the election of the emperors, the form of which was not as yet reduced to writing. The number of electors was not yet fixed, nor the quality limited to any particular princes ; for the principal states were in general called electors, because all had equally the right of voting. The emperor therefore resolved to settle this point, that due subordination should take place, and future elections be performed without confusion or disorder. For this purpose he ordered a diet to be convoked at *Nuremberg*, to which the electors, princes, counts, noblemen, and deputies of the free towns, repaired in great number : but, before the chief design of their meeting was brought upon the carpet, the emperor issued a particular decree, touching a difference which *Lewis* and *Stephen*, dukes of *Bavaria*, had with *Robert* count palatine of the *Rhine*. The emperor had made an agreement with his nephews, the counts palatine, that the right of voting as an elector should be alternately exercised by the chiefs of the two houses ; and now the dukes of *Bavaria* wished to see this convention confirmed by *Charles*, who, from his hatred to the posterity of *Lewis*, pronounced a sentence, by which this right of voting was vested intirely in the count palatine, and the other branches of the *Bavarian* house were excluded from this privilege.

LEWIS the Roman approved of this decree, and for this instance of complaisance received the investiture of the marquissate of *Brandenburg* ; but *Lewis* the Elder and *Stephen*

^b MEURSIUS Hist. Dan.

(Y) *Charles* is justly reproached for his too great complaisance to the pope ; for, by the treaties which were made between them, they seemed to act in concert for the destruction of the

empire ; one by his avarice, and the other by his ambition to extend the patrimony of *St. Peter*, to the prejudice of the imperial chiefs (1).

(1) *Spond. Cont. Baron. t. i. p. 737.*

presented a memorial to the diet, containing a detail of their pretensions; and this being overlooked, protested in form against the decree ^c.

THIS affair being discussed, the assembly deliberated upon the other more important affair; and it was not only resolved, that many customs, which had never been reduced to writing, should, in the form of constitutions, be augmented, with several regulations for the public good; but also to compose and publish the celebrated edict touching the form and ceremonies of the election of emperors, the number of electors, their particular functions, rights, and privileges, together with every circumstance relating to the government of the empire. This is the famous edict called *The Golden Bull* (Z), composed of thirty articles, three-and-twenty of which were confirmed in this assembly, where the emperor sat on his throne, wearing the crown and other imperial ornaments, and heard them read and published with the unanimous consent and approbation of all present ^d. Towards the latter end of that same year another diet was held at Metz, where the other seven articles were added in presence of the same electors, princes, and states, as well as of the cardinal-bishop of *Alva*, *Charles* the eldest son of *France*, who was duke of *Normandy*, dauphin of *Vienne*, and the emperor's own nephew ^e. This edict being published, with all the formalities necessary to make it a fundamental law of the empire, the emperor, in order to put the articles in execution, prepared a magnificent entertainment, at which each of the electors should exercise his own particular function. The emperor and empress in their royal robes, having heard a solemn mass, repaired to the place appointed for the festival, accompanied by all the prelates and princes; and being seated at a table raised upon a scaffold in the market-place, *Lewis* archbishop of *Mentz*, *Connon* archbishop of *Triers*, and *FredERIC* archbishop of *Cologne*, as arch-chancellors of *Germany*, *Gaul*, and *Italy*, appeared on horseback, each having a seal hanging from his neck, and a letter in his right hand. They were followed by the four secular electors, likewise on horseback. The first of those was *Winceslaus* duke of *Saxony*,

The emperor prepares a festival, at which each elector performs his own peculiar function.

^c REINHARDT ed an. 1356. n. 18. ^d BARRE, t. vi. p. 724 & seq. ^e SPOND. CONT. t. i. p. 744. KRANTZ, l. ix. c. 29. Chron. Comit. de Mark. ex. MEIB. t. i. p. 406.

(Z) So named from a golden seal, called *Bulla*. A translation of this famous edict, will be inserted at the end of this history of the empire.

with a silver peck full of oats in his right hand, as arch-marshal of the empire; and, as it was his function to regulate the precedency, he alighted, and put each of his colleagues in his proper place. Then *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg* dismounting, presented the emperor and empress with water to wash in an ewer of gold, placed in a basin of the same metal. *Robert the Red*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, served up the victuals in plates of gold; and *Winceflaus* duke of *Luxemburg* and *Brabant*, the emperor's nephew, representing the king of *Bohemia*, who was the emperor himself, placed upon one corner of the table a golden flaggon full of wine, of which he presented a draught to the emperor in a cup of gold. After the electors rode the marquis of *Misnia*, and the count of *Schwartzenburg*, great hunters, sounding their horns, who, being followed by their hounds, killed a stag and a bear in presence of the emperor, who, after dinner, having bestowed presents upon the electors, princes, counts, and noblemen, gave them leave to depart, and put an end to the diet^f.

A. D.
1357.

FROM *Metz* the emperor marched against the dukes of *Charles Bavaria*, who had formed a league with the princes of *Austria*, in order to maintain their rights, which they conceived were invaded by the golden bull; and he compelled them to renounce this alliance, and agree to an accommodation on reasonable terms. Then he took the route to *Prague*, where he finished the citadel of *Carlestein*, not without attracting the jealousy of his subjects, whom, however, he found means to appease, by reminding them of the care he took to increase and confirm their prerogatives in the golden bull.

against the
dukes of
Bavaria.
1358.

BUT one article of that famous constitution produced great disturbance in some of the imperial towns. This related to the *Phalburgers*, or false burghers; and ordained, that the burghers belonging to any prince should not be received as free citizens in the imperial towns. The design of this law was to prevent subjects from withdrawing themselves from the obedience and dominion of their natural lords; but under this pretext the princes endeavoured to deprive the people of the undoubted right they have from nature to shift the place of their residence, in order to better their situation in life. Among others, the inhabitants of *Strasburg* were expressly forbid to give the freedom of their city to strangers; and this prohibition they rejected, as an infringement of their privileges.

^f HARS, l. ii. c. 27.

and a band
of free-
booters,
called
Tard ve-
nus.

WHILE *Strasburg* thus defended its rights from innovation, *Alsace* was ravaged by a troop of robbers, who distinguished themselves by the appellations of *Malandrines*, *Tard Venus*, or late comers, and *Great Companies*. They were originally formed of deserters from the armies of *France* and *England*, and grew to such a pitch of insolence and power, that the emperor was obliged to assemble the forces of the empire, which drove them out of *Germany*. Then they marched towards *Avignon*, in order to lay the pope and cardinals under contribution; but finding it impracticable to make themselves masters of that place, which was defended by the marquis *de Montferrat*, the greatest part of them insisted under the banners of that experienced commander, who led them against the *Milanese*, whom he defeated in several engagements.

The empe-
ror returns
to Bohe-
mia, where
his whole
attention
is engrossed
in amass-
ing money,
and aug-
menting
his heredi-
tary domi-
nions.

ON his return to *Bohemia*, his whole care was engrossed in accumulating treasure, and extending the frontiers of his hereditary kingdom, which he considered as his real patrimony. He had already augmented it with the addition of *Silesia*, which he held of *Poland*; and *Lusatia*, which was a fief of the empire; nay, he even sold new privileges to several cities, and for money increased the rights and power of other dominions. He left no stone unturned to enrich himself; but anticipated the wish of those who wanted to sell, give, mortgage, or alienate, the lands and privileges of the empire, as if he had entered into a league with foreign princes, in order to weaken its power^h (A).

A. D.
1358.
Encou-
rages the

IN other respects, he was not a bad prince, although the *Germans* have no great cause to applaud his reign, because he expressed no zeal for the glory and dignity of the empire. It must be confessed, nevertheless, that he possessed some qualities that were very commendable: he was perfectly well acquainted

BARRE, t. vi. p. 747.
p. 639.

AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii.

(A) The incorporation of these two provinces with the kingdom of *Bohemia* involved him in a war with the duke of *Austria*, who represented to the states the bad consequence of such an alienation from the empire; but his real motive was to appropriate to himself the pro-

vince of *Lusatia*, upon which he had long looked with a wishful eye. In order to determine this difference, the two princes took the field; and the emperor, perceiving himself greatly inferior to the enemy, he seduced by his promises three of the duke's principal officers, who persuaded their

acquainted with the languages, and an encourager of the liberal arts. An illustrious proof of his munificence in this particular is the university of *Prague*, which he founded on the model of that of *Paris*, having procured copies of its statutes, while he was employed in his studies in *France*. He expressed great aversion to the ambition and pomp of ecclesiastics, which was at that time excessive, and even made public remonstrances to the bishops, when they gave him reason to complain on this head¹. He applied himself with extraordinary care to the administration of justice, and usually sat in person as a check upon the judge; but, on the other hand, he was inexcusably remiss in the affairs of *Italy*, where every thing relapsed into the utmost confusion. He had sold, for a large sum of money, to the dukes called *Sforza*, the vicariate of *Lombardy*, with the state of *Milan*; and he found his own private interest in neglecting to recover the cities of *Padua*, *Verona*, *Vicenza*, together with the other dominions of the empire and their jurisdictions, which the *Venetians* had gradually appropriated to themselves, and now peaceably enjoyed.

THE princes of the empire, excited by the universities of *Germany*, represented to him, that, among the bulls of pope *Clement VI.* there were some that reflected disgrace upon him and the *Germanic* body, especially that which imports the emperors to be vassals of the pope. In consequence of this representation, *Charles* wrote to his holiness, desiring that this odious insinuation might be cancelled; but *Innocent VI.* gave him to understand, that it was become a fundamental law of the church; and, in order to amuse the emperor in his turn, sent the bishop of *Cavaillon* as his prelate into *Germany* to demand the tenth of all ecclesiastical revenues for the benefit of the holy see. This extraordinary demand alarmed the clergy and the princes of *Germany* to

A. D.
1359.

Difference
between
the emper-
or and
pope.

¹ NAUCLER. gener. 46.

their master that the emperor's forces were infinitely superior to his, and produced a forged list of his troops, which they pretended to have intercepted. In consequence of these treacherous representations, the duke thought proper to consult his safety by a precipitate flight:

when the traitors came afterwards to demand their recompence of the emperor, he expelled them from his court with disgrace, and even threatened to detect and deliver them to the duke, whom they had betrayed (1).

(1) *Cuspinian*, in *Carol. IV. Cesare.*

such a degree, that the emperor convoked a diet at *Mentz*, to deliberate upon the subject, and the result of their deliberations was a flat refusal delivered to the nuncio, with heavy complaints of the pope's presumption ^k (B).

Troubles in
the north
of Ger-
many.

AT this period the provinces situated in the centre of *Germany* many enjoyed peace and tranquillity; but *Charles* seemed to neglect the northern parts, which were almost always involved with *Waldemar* king of *Denmark*, who, by imposing a severe tax upon the *Jutlanders*, had provoked these people to revolt, and they were supported by the duke of *Sleswick* and the counts of *Holslein*. In the beginning of this war the confederates were successful; but, in the sequel, *Waldemar* defeated their army, razed the fortifications of *Gamburg*, conquered the inlands of *Langeland* and *Alsén*, and compelled them to sue for peace, which was accordingly ratified at *Strafsund* ¹.

Bernabo
Visconti
besieges
Bologna,
and is de-
feated by
Malatesta.

A. D.
1360.

MEAN while pope *Innocent* implored the assistance of the emperor against *Bernabo Visconti*, lord of *Milan*, who was then employed in the siege of *Bologna*, which was garrisoned by the troops of the holy see; but all that he could obtain from *Charles* was an imperial edict, commanding *Bernabo* to desist, which *Visconti* treated with great contempt; and *Bologna* would certainly have fallen into his hands, had not *Galeot Malatesta* entered in the night with a considerable reinforcement; and next day, making a vigorous sally, defeated the enemy with great slaughter.

YET the emperor's indifference on this occasion was not so remarkable as his total neglect of the commotions in *Lower*

^k FLEURI. Hist. Ecclesiast. t. xx. l. 96.
Hist. Dan. t. iii.

¹ HUITFELD.

(B) The emperor, having resolved to reform the *German* clergy, communicated to the bishops the measures he had taken for that purpose, and threatened so to sequester the revenues of those who should refuse to obey his orders. The pope, believing the honour and liberty of ecclesiastics at stake, desired the emperor to forbear meddling with the reformation of the clergy, which was his province, and insisted upon his restoring what the secular noblemen had at different times usurped from ecclesiastics. *Charles*, in order to pacify *Innocent*, whose resentment he dreaded, published the famous constitution called *The Caroline Bull*, cancelling all the statutes or regulations which had been made to the prejudice of ecclesiastical liberty, and denouncing the severest penalties against those who should aggrieve the persons of the clergy (1).

(1) Goldast. Constit. Imper. t. ii. p. 92.

Germany. The hans towns; being interrupted in their commerce by the *Danes*, had craved his protection in repeated solicitations, which being denied, they renewed their ancient alliance, entered into a league with the king of *Norway*, the duke of *Mecklenburg*, and the count of *Holstein*, and equipping a considerable fleet, laid *Copenhagen* under contribution. The war was maintained for some time with various success, till at length, all parties being tired of hostilities, an accommodation took place, though not until his *Danish* majesty made satisfaction for the damage his subjects had done to the trade of the confederates^m.

The hans towns maintain a war against the king of Denmark.
A. D. 1361.

IN the course of this year the empress was delivered of a son, who was baptized by the name of *Winceflaus*, and his birth was solemnized with great magnificence: but the noblemen, dissatisfied with the sloth and indolence of *Charles*, presented to him a remonstrance, importing, that the occupations of an emperor consisted in holding diets, visiting the provinces, administering justice, and maintaining good order. He paid, however, no regard to these representations; but replied to the deputies, that he was not at all disposed to maintain an emperor in the provinces with the revenues of *Bohemia*. In a word, he was by this time grown extremely covetous, and sold privileges to all the noblemen and towns that chose to pay the price he demanded. The town of *Dille*, in *Upper Alsace*, purchased the power of inflicting death upon certain criminals, and even of conferring the right of burghership on all persons whatever, not excepting the vassals of the noblemen, if they were not reclaimed within the year. The bishop of *Strasburg* paid a round sum for uniting to his see the landgraviate (C) of *Alsace*, and several fiefs which had been possessed by the counts of *Oettingen*; and it might have

Charles neglects the affairs of the empire;

and grows extremely avaritious.

PONTAN. Rer. Danic. Hist.

(C) The dignity of landgrave was originally a commission given by the emperors to a certain nobleman, constituting him judge and governor of a province, *quandiu se bene-gesserit*; but in the sequel it became an hereditary fief; and besides the rights and privileges attached to the dignity, there were certain fiefs united to it, of which some depended immediately upon the

emperors, and others upon the bishop, or some powerful nobleman of the province; so that the landgraves not only received the investiture of their office, and its fiefs depending upon the empire, from the emperor himself, but they were likewise obliged to do homage for the other fiefs to the lord paramount (1).

(1) *Carta Carol. IV. apud Obrecht. in*

been said of *Charles*, that he bought the empire wholesale, and sold it by retail ^u.

A. D. ^{1363.} *JOHN* bishop of *Strasburg* by this new acquisition excited the jealousy of the inhabitants of *Haguenau*, who committed hostilities upon his vassals, and obliged him to take the field at the head of an army, with which he ravaged their territory, and even invested their city: but a peace was soon concluded by the mediation of *Burcard* burgrave of *Magdeburg*.

War

breaks out
between
the house
of Bavaria
and Au-
stria.

THESE troubles were hardly appeased when other disturbances arose from the death of *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria*, who having made no regulations in his will, touching the tutorage of his son *Menchard*, by his second wife *Margaret Mauffsch*, heiress of *Carinthia*, his brother *Stephen* took charge of the young prince, who dying in a few months, his tutor was acknowledged duke of *Bavaria*, and received the investiture from the emperor: but *Margaret Mauffsch*, who hated the *Bavarian* house, made a formal cession of all her rights and pretensions upon the *Tyrol*, the country of *Goritz*, and the territory situated between the *Inn* and the *Adige*, to *Rodolphus* of *Austria*, who promised to take her for his wife; so that a war broke out between the houses of *Austria* and *Bavaria*; and pope *Urban*, who had succeeded *Innocent*, prevailed upon both parties to agree to a truce for three years, in consequence of which each competitor retired to his own dominions ^o.

The empe-
ror solli-
cited in
vain for
succour to
Peter of
Lusignan
king of
Cyprus.

ABOUT this period, *Peter de Lusignan*, king of *Cyprus*, finding himself unable to withstand the power of the *Egyptian* sultan, repaired to *Avignon* to solicit succours against the infidels, and persuade the pope to set on foot a new crusade for the conquest of *Jerusalem*. His holiness and the king of *France* seemed very well disposed to promote this enterprise; but all their remonstrances had no effect upon the emperor, who was not the man to sacrifice the tranquillity he enjoyed to the prospect of uncertain conquest; nor would the *German* princes, though severally exhorted by *Urban* to engage in such a glorious expedition, assist his *Cyprian* majesty with any thing but fair promises, which they had no intention to perform.

An accom-
modation
effected be-
tween the

CHARLES, however, to manifest his regard for the successor of *St. Peter*, interposed his good offices to terminate the war, which still raged in *Italy*, between the pope and *Bernabo Visconti*; and finding the latter extremely obstinate, and averse

^u SPINER. t. ii. l. ii. c. 2.
par ii. l. v.

^o ADLREITT. an. Boic. gent.

to an accommodation, he ordered all the vicars of the empire ^{pope and} in *Italy* to take arms, and pursue that prince, as an enemy to ^{Bernabo} God, and a rebel to the empire. It was ^{owing to this vigor-} Visconti. ^{A. D.} 1354. ^{1354.} ^{was confirmed by a treaty ; in consequence of which he was} absolved from the sentence of excommunication [?].

THE emperor, notwithstanding his pacific disposition, in- ^{Charles} volved himself in a quarrel with *Lewis* king of *Hungary*, ^{quarrels} whose mother he had aspersed ; and the licence of his tongue ^{with the} would have intailed upon him a very troublesome war, had ^{king of} not the affair been compromised by the mediation of the pope, ^{Hungary.} who interested himself greatly in the cause of *Peter de Lusignan*, and foresaw that no substantial assistance could be granted to that monarch while the princes of *Europe* were at variance among themselves. Immediately after this accom- ^{Marries} modation, *Charles*, being a widower, married *Elizabeth*, ^{the daughter of} *Bugislaus* duke of *Pomerania*, and grandchild of ^{ter of} *Bucastimir* king of *Poland*, who defrayed all the expence of the ^{gillaus} nuptials, which were celebrated with incredible magnificence ^{duke of} at *Cracovia* ; nor was her reception at *Prague* inferior to the ^{Pomerania.} pomp and splendour of her marriage ; for the emperor seemed to have laid aside his natural disposition on this occasion. It must be owned, that he knew how to counterfeit those ^{Projects} virtues he did not possess : he courted the esteem of strangers ^{great designs ; and} by a shew of hospitality ; he engaged in great designs, which ^{creates the} he had not spirit enough to execute ; he embellished *Prague*, ^{abbots of} encouraged learning, projected a scheme for the reformation ^{Fulde,} of monks, and raised the abbots of *Fulde*, *Weissembourg*, *Kem-* ^{Weissembourg,} *Wormbach*, the most rich and powerful monks of ^{Kempten,} *Germany*, to the rank and dignity of princes [?].

HIS tranquillity was again invaded by another body of free- ^{and Mour-} booters, who made a fresh irruption into *Alsace*, where they ^{plundered towns, villages, and passengers, with impunity ;} ^{princes of} while another army of banditti, under the command of ^{the empire.} *Arnold de Carnolle*, surnamed *The High Priest*, fell upon *Champagne* to the number of forty thousand, pillaged the open ^{again in-} country, entered *Bar* and *Lorraine*, laid *Metz* under contri- ^{bu- tion,} bution, and afterwards, marching into *Alsace*, made incur- ^{the ban-} sions to the gates of *Strasbourg*. *Charles* being apprized of ^{ditti under} these outrages, and pressed by the princes of *Germany* to op- ^{the com-} pose the progress of such lawless ruffians, at length took the ^{mand of} field, and, having put the most exposed places on the *Rhine* ^{Arnold,} in a posture of offence, marched towards *Strasbourg* ; where ^{surnamed} he was joined by a strong reinforcement. *Arnold*, who had ^{The High} *Priest*.

They are expelled by the emperor at the head of his troops. committed dreadful ravages in the neighbourhood, finding himself unable to cope with the imperial troops, and having made certain proposals, which were rejected, took the resolution to retreat into *Burgundy*, where he was assassinated by his own followers, who were soon dispersed after the death of their chief.

A. D.

1365.

Has an interview with the pope at Avignon;

and engages to march into Italy against the usurpers of church lands.

ON the emperor's return from this expedition, his council having represented to him, that he ought to act with more spirit in *Italy*, and hinder the rights and dominions of the empire from falling into the hands of the first comer, he resolved to go to *Avignon*, and conclude an alliance with *Urban V.* and some of the princes of *Italy*, against *Bernabo*, tyrant of *Milan*. There he was honourably received by the pope, and during his stay they treated each other with reciprocal marks of the most sincere friendship. The emperor was present in his imperial robes at a solemn mass which the pope sung on the day of *Pentecost*, after which he went to the city of *Arles*, and was crowned by the hands of the archbishop; then he returned to *Avignon*, where the treaty was concluded between him, the pope, and several *Italian* princes, against the usurpers of the church-lands, and those belonging to the empire in *Italy*; and as he obliged himself by the treaty to assemble, as soon as possible, a number of troops to march against these usurpers and their adherents, his holiness granted a tenth upon the clergy of *Germany* to help him to defray the expence of the war. The enterprize, however, was not set on foot till three years after; so little had he at heart the concerns of the empire on the other side of the *Alps*; nay, as an authentic proof of this disregard, some historians relate, that for one dinner, which he received from *Lewis* duke of *Anjou*, brother of *Charles V.* at *Villeneuve*, near *Avignon*, he yielded to *France* the sovereignty of *Dauphiny*, which had been reserved to the empire by the donation which *Humbert*, the last dauphin, made of that province to the crown of *France*.

THE chief design, however, of the assembly at *Avignon*, in which a great number of princes assisted, was to deliberate upon means for subduing those vagabonds who infested the provinces, and for assisting the king of *Cyprus* against the sultan of *Egypt*; but *Charles*, instead of consenting to the measures which were proposed for the relief of that prince, represented the necessity of forming a crusade against the *Turks*, who had already taken *Adrianople*, and threatened all *Christendom* with destruction.

AFTER much altercation the assembly broke up, without having come to any resolutions on these interesting subjects. The banditti continued their devastations to the very gates of *Avignon*, so as to endanger the person of the pope, who on this account hastened his departure for *Rome*, after that city had been deserted by the pontiffs for the space of sixty-two years; yet, as the *Viscontis* were masters of all the passages of the *Alps*, and *Urban* was not at all disposed to put himself in their power, he embarked on board a galley belonging to the queen of *Naples*, and made his entry into *Rome*, where he was received with great honours by the clergy and the *Roman* people^s.

Pope Urban repairs to Rome.
A. D. 1367.

HE had solicited the emperor to march against the *Viscontis*, who continued to tyrannize over the states and cities depending upon the *Roman* see; but *Charles* was resolved to gratify his own indolence, and excused himself from leaving his dominions, on pretence of the war, which was now revived between the dukes of *Austria* and *Bavaria*. These princes had actually taken the field to decide their pretensions to the *Tyrol*, and the armies were in sight of one another, when *Waldemar* king of *Denmark* arrived from the emperor's court, and prevailed upon the contending parties to agree to the prolongation of the truceⁿ.

The dukes of Austria and Bavaria take the field against each other.

WALDEMAR had no sooner transacted this affair to the satisfaction of the emperor, than he was called to his own dominions, in consequence of a revolt in *Sweden*; and in the mean time a war was kindled in *Lower Saxony* by count *Egon*, who endeavoured to make himself master of *Fribourg*, to which he had some pretensions, as *Avoyer*, or defender. The inhabitants, who had declared themselves independent, ventured to meet his forces in the field, and were defeated; and *Egon* ceded his right to the house of *Austria*, in consideration of a sum of money; so that *Fribourg* lost that liberty which it had maintained for several years^x.

A. D. 1368.

Fribourg falls under the dominion of the house of Austria.

VISCONTI still persisting in his hostilities, and *Urban* in his solicitations, the emperor at length determined to cross the *Alps* at the head of an army. With this view he employed some time in putting the affairs of *Bohemia* in order; and being supplied by the princes of *Germany* with a strong body of forces, he began his march for *Italy*. His first operations were directed against *Verona*, which he took by assault, while the duke of *Austria* reduced *Vicenza*, and com-

^s Vit. Pap. AVEN. t. i.
1364.

^x Chron. Hirsang.

ⁿ HUITFIELD. t. iii. ad. an

Mates

peace with
the Vis-
contis.

He revokes
the privi-
leges of the
rebellious
towns.

The em-
press is
crowned
at Rome.

War be-
tween the
duke of
Brunswick
and the bi-
shop of
Hilde-
sheim.

A. D.
1369.

Visconti
renews the
war
against the
pope;

elled the inhabitants to renounce the alliance of the *Viscontis*. *Bernabo*, finding himself unable to cope with the imperial forces, joined by those of the pope, set on foot a negotiation by means of his son-in-law, *Stephen* duke of *Bavaria*; and, peace being made, the pope confirmed the treaty, which was not much for the honour of either ⁷.

NOTWITHSTANDING this accommodation, the emperor punished the towns and noblemen who had followed the fortunes of *Bernabo*, by revoking the privileges they had obtained from his predecessors, and remained deaf to all their remonstrances and intreaties, until they found means to appease him with sums of money; and then he not only restored, but augmented their prerogatives.

HAVING nothing else to fear from this quarter, he continued his march to *Viterbo*, where he was met by his holiness, whom he accompanied to *Rome*, where he held the stirrup till the pope alighted, after having led his horse by the bridle to *St. Peter's*, in which the empress was crowned at the altar on the feast of *All Saints*, having been first anointed by the cardinal bishop of *Ostia*². This ceremony being performed, the emperor quitted *Rome*, and retired to *Tuscany*, where he staid some months; during which he exacted a great deal of money from the cities, and even from *Florence* itself, which was fain to purchase his forbearance. Then, returning to *Germany*, he convened a diet at *Frankfort*, where measures were taken to maintain the peace of the empire, and in particular an imperial edict was published, in order to prevent the feuds that used to rage among the nobles. These precautions, however, did not hinder *Magnus* duke of *Brunswick*, and *Gerhard* bishop of *Hildesheim*, from taking the field against each other: a battle ensued, in which the latter was victorious. The war was renewed by *Otho* duke of *Lunenburg*, who resolved to revenge the disgrace of his kinsman; and after they had fatigued each other with marches and counter-marches, a treaty of peace was concluded. This quarrel did not so much disturb the emperor, as did the war which broke out afresh between the pope and *Visconti*, which last obtained a victory over the troops of his holiness, and filled the whole country with outrage and devastation. *Urban* had recourse to *Lewis* king of *Hungary*, who actually levied forces to march to his assistance; but he could not obtain the permission of the emperor for his passing the *Alps*,

⁷ Vit. Urb. V. Ric. Bar. hoc Ann. sect. 6.

² Struv. Period.

because *Charles* was jealous of his designs; yet he sent such *but is said* intimidating messages to *Bernabo*, as induced him to recall *to sue for* his troops from the territories of the church, and make the *peace*.
 first advances to a pacification, which the pope would have *A. D.* rejected, had not he been pressed to accept them by the emperor, who dreaded the thoughts of the *Hungarians* entering *1370.* *Lombardy*, and therefore importuned *Urban* to embrace the proposals of *Bernabo* *. His holiness did not long survive this pacification; for he died in a few months on his return to *Avignon*, and was succeeded by *Peter Roger de Maumont*, who assumed the appellation of *Gregory XI.* and sent intimation of his promotion to the emperor and other Christian princes. Among these, *Waldemar* king of *Denmark* *The Jut-* begged he would interpose the papal authority in his behalf, *landers* with the counts of *Holstein*, and the duke of *Mecklenburg*, *revolt* who supported the *Jutlanders* in a revolt, and even formed *against* such a strong alliance with the king of *Sweden*, the duke of *Walde-* *Sleswic*, and other princes, that *Waldemar* was obliged to fly *mar king* from his own kingdom to the court of the emperor, who *of Den-* would afford him no other assistance than some letters of recommendation to the marquis of *Misnia*, the duke of *Stettin*, *who is ob-* and some other noblemen, whom he exhorted to take arms *liged to* in defence of the *Danish* king. *quit his do-*

His embassy to the pope met with no greater success; for *minions*; *Gregory* having heard the complaints of the *Jutlanders*, who accused the king of tyranny and oppression, he advised him to reform his character, and strive to regain the affections of his people by a milder administration. Disappointed in his hope from the emperor and his holiness, *Waldemar* set on foot a private negotiation with the towns of *Wandalia*, which *but is af-* having detached from the league, he retook possession of his *terwards* dominion, confirmed the treaty of *Stralsund*, and obtained *restored.* a deed from the hans towns, by which they obliged themselves to restore to the crown of *Denmark*, at the expiration of fifteen years, those places in *Scania* which had been mortgaged to them for that term ^b. *Charles* (B), without interesting

* BARRE, t. vi. p. 812.

^b PONTAN. Hist. Dan.

(B) While he was one day hunting in a forest, he observed a stag and an hound fall into a fountain, and afterwards lose their hair. In consequence of this remark, he ordered the

spring to be examined; and the water being found hot and medicinal, it was called by the name of *Carlsbad*, or *Charles's Bath* (1).

War between the emperor's brother Wincel-
laus and
the duke of
Juliers.

A. D.
1371.

himself greatly in these contentions, enjoyed himself at his ease in *Prague*, where the arts and sciences flourished under his protection; but, in the midst of these literary amusements, he was alarmed with the news of a quarrel between his brother *Wincellaus*, duke of *Luxemburg* and *Brabant*, and the duke of *Juliers*,* which last is said to have countenanced a band of robbers, who committed outrages on the highway. *Wincellaus* being vicar of the empire in the *Low Countries*, and intendant of the highways, sent deputies to the duke of *Juliers* to complain of his conduct; and these being treated with contempt, he raised an army, at the head of which he entered the dominions of the duke, who defeated and took him prisoner. The emperor, being apprised of his brother's disaster, resolved to take ample vengeance on the victor; and, in a diet at *Aix la Chapelle*, commanded all the dukes, counts, barons, and noblemen, there assembled, to furnish their proportions of troops, that he might lay waste the dukedom of *Juliers* with fire and sword. But he was diverted from his purpose by the intercession of the ecclesiastical electors, and the princes of *Bavaria*, who prevailed upon their cousin the duke of *Juliers* to release *Wincellaus* and all the prisoners without ransom, and ask pardon on his knees before the emperor, who raised him up, and embraced him, in token of reconciliation.

Proceedings of a diet at Nuremberg.

So many mischievous consequences were produced by these petty wars between the noblemen of the empire, that *Charles*, in order to remedy this disorder, convoked a diet at *Nuremberg*, where it was decreed by an edict, that no prince or nobleman, who conceived himself aggrieved by another, should have recourse to arms, till the expiration of two months after the offence received; and this law, called *The Regulation of Sixty Days*, was of signal service in the empire. This constitution being enacted, *Charles* relapsed into his former indolence, and seemed to renounce intirely the interests of the empire in *Italy*. He winked at the enterprizes of *Gregory* upon the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*: he refused to assist the holy see against the incursions of *Bernabo Visconti*, whom no treaty could restrain; and he lent a deaf ear to all the solicitations of the pope, who exhorted him to engage in a crusade for the relief of *Hungary*, which was threatened with an invasion by *Amurath* emperor of the *Turks*†.

Hungary is threatened by the Turks.

1373

* Hist. Luxemb. l. iv.
ad an. 1373.

† TRITH. Chron. Hirsang.

NOTWITHSTANDING this indifference towards the affairs of the empire, he exerted himself with great industry when the concerns of his own family were in question. For a considerable sum of money he purchased of *Otho* the marquisate of *Brandenburg*, with which he invested his second son *Sigismund*; and he, by his emissaries, privately canvassed among the princes of the empire, in order to secure the succession of the imperial throne to his eldest son *Winceslaus*. For this purpose he made a journey into *Germany*, where he managed matters with so much address, and applied his money to such good purpose, that, in consideration of 100,000 ducats paid to each of the electors, his son, though but fifteen years of age, was chosen king of the *Romans* at *Rentz*, where a diet was assembled for that purpose, and afterwards crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*. That he might not, however, intirely exhaust his ready money, he mortgaged to some of them the toll which he had upon the *Rhine*, and sold towns to others. Those of *Bopart* and *Oberwesel* were purchased by the elector of *Triers*; he disposed of *Kaiserlauter*, *Oppenheim*, *Obernheim*, and *Ingelheim*, to the elector *Palatine*, and some other cities to the duke of *Austria*; so that people were wont to say, He had enfeebled the empire, and plucked the eagle. At length *Charles*, having seen his son *Winceslaus* received in several of the imperial towns, returned to *Prague*, where he received the news of the pope's return to *Rome*, which did not greatly relish his presence, after having so long enjoyed the sweets of independence while the pontiffs resided at *Avignon*. *Gregory*, at the same time, wrote a letter to the emperor, desiring he would mediate a peace between his nephew the king of *France* and the *English* monarch; and *Charles*, who had this affair at heart, resolved to make a journey to *Paris*, that he might be nearer at hand to act as the emergency of the case should require. Having therefore quelled some intestine commotions in *Germany*, and seen a war between the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Mecklenburg* happily terminated, he sent an intimation of his design to *Charles V.* of *France*, and set out by the way of *Brabant*, accompanied by his son *Winceslaus*, and a moderate retinue. At *Cambray* he was met by a number of noblemen, whom the king had sent to receive him; at *Compiègne* he was complimented by the duke of *Bourbon*, the count *d'Eu*, and several bishops; and he made his entry into *Paris* riding on horseback on the right-hand of the king, who treated him with great splendour and magnificence. Whatever his pre-

* SPOND. CONT. t. i. p. 818.

† KRANTZ. SAX. l. x. c. 3.

*Declares
the dau-
phin perpe-
tual vicar
of the
kingdom of
Arles.*

*Enguer-
rand de
Couci pro-
secutes his
claim to
the succe-
ssion of the
house of
Austria.*

His death.

tence might be for visiting *France* on this occasion, his real motives seem to have been the desire of seeing the *French* monarch, for whom he expressed great tenderness of affection, and a superstitious zeal for paying his devotions to *St. Maur*; for it does not appear that he transacted any other affair in *France*, except his declaring the dauphin his perpetual vicar in the kingdom of *Arles* and county of *Dauphiny*, and his permitting a private gentleman, called *Enguerrand de Couci*, to maintain by arms the right he pretended to have to the succession of the house of *Austria* by his mother *Catherine*, grand-daughter of the emperor *Albert*.

Couci having obtained this permission, and received a supply of troops from the king of *France*, he published a manifesto, ravaged the territory of *Strasburg*, and in the winter season entered the country of the *Swiss*, where his soldiers perished with cold and hunger in such numbers, that he was obliged to retire into *Picardy*, and desert from his enterprize.

As for the emperor, he, in his return from *France*, took the road to *Luxemburg*, where he prevailed upon duke *Winceslaus*, who had no issue, to declare him and his sons heirs of his duchy and all its dependencies^b; and soon after his arrival at *Prague* he died of a fever, having reigned about one-and-thirty years since the death of *Lewis IV.* his predecessor, leaving behind him the character of a good prince, but a bad emperorⁱ (C),

WHEN.

^a BARRE, tom. vi. p. 361.
ⁱ Id. ibid.

^b Hist. Luxemb. lib. xlvii,

(C) He was four times married; but had no children by his two first wives, who were *Blanche*, daughter of *Charles* count of *Valois*, and sister of *Philip* king of *France*; and *Agnes*, daughter of *Rodolphus the Young*, count palatine. His third wife was *Anne*, daughter of *Bogislaus* duke of *Svenitz*, by whom he had *Catherine*, married to *Rodolphus IV.* duke of *Austria*, and *Winceslaus*, who succeeded him in the empire. Her dowry was the county of *Tavarin* and the duchy of *Squenitz*. His fourth wife was *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Bogislaus V.* duke of *Stettin*, who

was niece or grand-daughter of *Casimir* king of *Poland*. By her he had *Sigismund*, who was king of *Hungary*, and afterwards emperor; and *John* marquis of *Moravia*, duke of *Gorlitz* and *Svenitz*; with several daughters; namely, *Margaret*, wife of *Lewis* king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; *Elizabeth*, married to *John Galeazzo* duke of *Milan*; *Anne*, matched with *Otho*, duke of *Bavaria* and margrave of *Brandenburg*; *Margaret*, married to *John II.* burgrave of *Nuremberg*; *Elizabeth*, wife of *Albert* duke of *Austria*; *Margaret*, wife of *Amadeus* count of *Savoy*; *Agnes*, married

WHEN the princes once intreated him to quit *Bohemia*, and shew himself in *Germany*, he is said to have conducted them into his treasury, in which there was a prodigious quantity of gold and silver bullion, and spoke to this effect: "The city of *Prague* gave me birth, the kingdom of *Bohemia* furnishes me with all these riches: were I more attached to *Germany*, I should be obliged, like you, to pluck the eagle. You know very well how to strip her of her feathers, when she flies towards your quarters, and she might in her turn be provoked to make reprisals. In which case, the wings of some of you would not grow again for a considerable length of time.

BESIDES the golden bull, which we have mentioned, *Charles* published divers laws and constitutions. By an act, dated at *Prague*, he decreed, that, in case the royal family should fail, the states of the kingdom should be at liberty to choose a new king, and that same year he confirmed the right of electorate to the crown of *Bohemia*. He granted to *John* duke of *Brabant* a privilege, in consequence of which none of his subjects could be carried out of his own jurisdiction, nor arrested in the empire, for any cause whatever. He confirmed to the abbot of *Fulde* the dignity of arch-chancellor to the empress; together with a new privilege at the time of her coronation, and all other ceremonies; namely, the right of putting the crown on her head, and of taking it off again. He invested *Rupert the Old* with the right which he had to the electorate palatine. He published a decree for exempting the estates of the clergy from all secular jurisdiction. Chancing to pass through *Westphalia*, he had the curiosity to go and see the tomb of the great *Wittichind*, which was repaired by his order; the arms of *Charlemagne* being placed at the head, and those of *Bohemia* at the feet: finally he ordered the feast of *Charlemagne* to be annually solemnized in the church of *Aix la Chapelle* (D).

* THEOD. NIEM. Union. tract. vi. c. 24.

married to *William the Ambitious*, duke of *Austria*; and *Helen*, queen of *Henry IV.* of *England* (1).

(D) It is generally supposed, that cannon were first used in the reign of this emperor in consequence of the invention of gun-powder, which is attribut-

ed to an accidental discovery of one *Bertholdus Schwartz*, or *the Black*, a monk of *Friburg*: yet there is in the arsenal of *Amberg* a piece of cannon made in the year 1303, so that those instruments of death must have been known before the reign of *Charles* (2).

(1) *Heist*, l. xi. c. 27.

(2) *Barre*, t. vi. p. 367.

C H A P. VIII.

Comprehending the Wars of the Hussites in Bohemia.

W I N C E S L A U S.

Winceslaus succeeds to the empire ;

A. D.
1378.

WINCESLAUS, at the age of seventeen, succeeded his father in the government of the empire, and on the throne of *Bohemia*, at a time when the church was divided by a great schism. The *Romans* had elected *Urban VI.* who confirmed the election of this new emperor, and the *French* had chosen *Clement VII.* for pope. During these troubles, *Winceslaus* appointed *Jadoc*, marquis of *Moravia*, his vicar-general in *Italy*, laid injunctions upon him to inquire which of the two was the true pope, to acknowledge and protect him, whom he should find to be canonically elected, and to expel by force the other, who had intruded himself into the chair. He likewise held a diet at *Nuremberg*, and afterwards at *Frankfort*, where, after having examined this affair of the popes, *Urban VI.* was acknowledged by the archbishops and bishops, and *Winceslaus*, together with the princes of the empire, engaged to protect him in the papacy ¹.

A. D.
1381.
resides at
Aix la
Chapelle ;

AFTER the diet of *Frankfort*, the emperor repaired to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he resided for some time, because the plague raged in *Bohemia* ; and here he gave himself up to all kinds of debauchery, neglecting the affairs of the empire to such a degree, that the provinces became a prey to those banditti, whom we have already mentioned by the name of *Late Comers* and *Grand Companies* : and the princes and towns were obliged to engage in associations for their mutual defence. These free-booters, however, were afterwards taken into the pay of *Winceslaus*, who, on his return to *Prague*, by his misconduct, provoked his subjects to revolt, and, in order to punish them for their rebellion, allowed those vermin to destroy the country without remorse. Having pillaged the whole kingdom of *Bohemia*, they enlisted in the service of *Jane* queen of *Naples*, who had lately married *Otha* of *Brunswick*, and was in the sequel barbarously put to death by *Charles Durazzo*, even after she had declared that prince her successor to the crown.

his misconduct in
Bohemia ;

his depraved

NOTWITHSTANDING the seeming attention which *Winceslaus* paid to the peace of the church, he was a prince of a

¹ SPOND. CONT. t. ii. p. 11.

depraved taste, and the most vicious inclinations. His cruelty ^{taste, cruelty, and baseness.} seemed to be prefigured, by his being the occasion of his mother's death when he was born, and the impurities with which he profaned the font at his baptism, and the altar at his being crowned king of *Bohemia*, looked like omens of the unworthy actions, with which he dishonoured his reign ^m. His whole conduct was a series of debauched cruelty and baseness. In imitation of his father, he disposed of all the rights of the empire in *Germany*, which remained unfold; ^{he sells the rights of the empire.} and as for the cities and provinces of *Italy*, which his father had alienated, he exacted money from them for a confirmation of their privileges. He expedited blank patents, signed and sealed, to be filled up at the pleasure of the purchasers; by which means the rich and powerful were authorized to oppress the weak and poor ⁿ. This was accordingly done with such impunity and licence, that there was no security for commerce, no policy, no order in the empire. Such confusion could not fail to produce civil wars. The cities of *Suabia* and the *Rhine* took arms against the princes in their neighbourhood, of which the chief were the count palatine, the count of *Wurtemberg*, and the duke of *Austria*.

THE electors, and other princes and states, tired of all these disorders, and chagrined to see *Germany* without a head, and the privileges of the empire alienated, in order to fill the purse of *Winceslaus*, sent an embassy to *Prague*, beseeching him to come and reside among them. When this proposal was made to him, "Our dear ambassadors (said he), all the world knows that we are emperor, and if there is any person in the empire, who is desirous of seeing us, let him come to *Bohemia*, and we will freely give him audience ^o." This was all the answer they could obtain, and the electors were so scandalized at the contempt with which he received their advice, that, seeing no prospect of his reformation, they of themselves took cognizance of the general affairs of the empire, and interposed in the quarrels and disputes subsisting between several states, which they with difficulty accommodated; to such a degree was their animosity inflamed.

THE towns of *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and the *Rhine*, formed what they called the *Great League*, and the princes formed associations for their mutual defence: by these precautions the public tranquillity was maintained, and even *Lower Ger-*

^m Chron. Riddag. ex MEIB. v. iii. p. 373. ⁿ TRITH. in Chron. Naucler. gener. 47. KRANT. Wand. l. x. c. 1. ^o Hist. Luxemb. l. lviii.

many secured from those shocks, which were occasioned by Margaret, a revolution in *Sweden*. At the death of *Olaus*, king of *Denmark*, his mother *Margaret* ascended the throne, with the unanimous consent of the people, and even recommended herself so strongly to the *Swedes*, who were oppressed by their own king *Albert*, that they renounced their allegiance to that monarch, and made her a solemn tender of the crown; in consequence of which she marched to their assistance, defeated *Albert*, who was deposed, and obliged to retire to the dominions of his brother the duke of *Mecklenburg*, and then she assumed the reins of government, and was distinguished by the appellation of the *Semiramis of the North*.

Leopold
of Austria
overcome
and slain
by the
Swiss.

A. D.
1388.

NOTWITHSTANDING all the measures which had been taken to prevent civil broils in *Germany*, war broke out between the house of *Austria* and the confederate towns, which had shaken off the yoke of dependence. *Leopold of Austria*, son of *Albert the Sage*, confiding too much in his own strength, raised a considerable army to reduce the *Swiss*, eight cantons of which had already withdrawn themselves from his dominion. He accordingly gave them battle, which he lost, together with his life, so that they intirely freed themselves from the *Austrian* chains, and their dependence upon the empire, while their success encouraged other cities to follow their example.

THE towns of *Alsace*, *Suabia*, and the *Rhine*, made preparations for defending themselves against those princes, who attempted to domineer over them: *Spire*, *Worms*, and *Mentz*, levied a body of forces, which ravaged the territories of *Robert the Young*, count palatine, who took the field, and made reprisals with great cruelty: the inhabitants of *Strasburg*, aggrieved by the marquis of *Baden*, plundered the lands of the margraviate, and destroyed the town of *Brumpt*, belonging to the count *de Linange*, who joining the marquis of *Baden*, and the old count palatine, made incursions to the very gates of *Strasburg*, and laid waste the whole country, from *Husbergen* to *Malsheim*, with fire and sword: in a word, *Alsace* was, by these mutual ravages and cruelties, reduced to the last extremity; when peace was re-established by the mediation of some princes of the empire.

WINCESLAUS, without giving himself the least trouble about these transactions, still resided in *Bohemia*, plunged in all manner of debauchery, by which he rendered himself every day more and more contemptible in the eyes of his

• HUITFEL. Hist. Dan. t. iv.
• WENCHER. coll. i. p. 145.

• Delices de la Suif. t. i.

subjects (E). He ordered *John Nepomucene*, his wife's confessor, to be drowned, because he would not reveal the particulars of her confession; and in all other respects behaved with such barbarity and indiscretion, that his subjects looked upon him with detestation and abhorrence. But while he thus attracted the odium and contempt of all good men, his brother *Sigismund* distinguished himself by his valour and capacity, and at length ascended the *Hungarian* throne, after the death of *Charles Durazzo*, who had been elected by the *Hungarians*, and assassinated by order of the queen mother; because her daughter, the princess *Mary*, was defrauded of her right by his election.

THE death of *Durazzo* involved the kingdom of *Naples* in great confusion. One party espoused the cause of his son *Brunswick Ladislaus*, still a minor, and another adhered to the interest of *Lewis of Anjou*, who pretended to the crown; while pope *Urban*, tho' equally courted by both, remained neutral, in hope of raising his own nephew to the throne, after other two competitors should have enfeebled each other. Mean while *Otho* of *Brunswick*, the last husband of the unfortunate *Jane*, was appointed captain-general for *Lewis* of *Anjou*, and marching to *Naples*, at the head of an army composed of *French* and *Germans*, reduced the whole kingdom to the dominion of his principal. *Urban* could not help repining at his success, which not only rendered his own scheme impracticable, but likewise strengthened the interest of his rival *Clement VIII.* who patronized the duke of *Anjou*: he found himself, moreover, hated for his severity and ambition, and abandoned by *Bologna*, and several other towns, who embraced the party of his competitor. These concurring mortifications affected him so nearly, that he died of chagrin; and, in a few days after his decease, the fourteen cardinals residing at *Rome* elected *Peter Thomacelle* in his room. This new pontiff assumed the name of *Boniface IX.* and excommunicated *Clement*, who retorted the sentence upon him with equal animosity.

THE repose of *Germany* was about this period disturbed by insurrections against the *Jews*, who being accused of having poisoned the fountains, and insulted the host (tho' in reality their wealth was all their crime), were burned in their

(E) In this year the doctrine that country who had studied in of *Wickliff* was introduced into *England* (1).
Bohemia, by a gentleman of

(1) *Heiss Hist.* l. xi. c. 28.

Ger-
many.
A. D.
1391.

synagogue at *Prague*, butchered at *Spire*, without distinction of age or sex, plundered in almost every province, and, as the authority of *Winceslaus* was not sufficient to protect that unhappy people, at last obliged to escape into *Lithuania*, where they found an asylum in the favour of *Jagellon*, who was enamoured of a *Jewish* damsel^a.

Troubles
in Alsace.

THESE disturbances were succeeded by commotions in *Alsace* and other provinces on the *Rhine*; the inhabitants of *Straßburg* reclaimed some towns which *Charles IV.* had mortgaged to *Robert* count palatine, alleging that the emperor had no power to dispose of their property; and, the count refusing to comply with their demand, they took the field, in order to subdue him by force. This war produced nothing but mutual ravages, and the *Straßburgers* were fain to retreat for the safety of their city, which was endangered by an affair of greater consequence. *Rapoltstein*, an *Alsatian* nobleman, on whom they had conferred the right of burghership, imprisoned an *Englishman*, called *Harleston*, because he had served in the army of *Enguerrand de Couci*, when that nobleman laid waste the territory of *Straßburg*. The king of *England* demanded the release of his subject: the emperor commanded the *Straßburgers* to set him at liberty; and they disregarding the order of such a weak place, he put the city to the ban of the empire.

Straßburg
is put to
the ban of
the empire.

1392.

ABUNDANCE of noblemen, jealous of the power of *Straßburg*, took this opportunity to engage in a league to humble her pride: the bishop himself joined in the confederacy; and, an army being raised, the allies undertook the siege of the place, which, however, they could not reduce. At length peace was effected by the mediation of the bishop of *Bamberg*, tho' the emperor would by no means consent to the treaty, until the citizens purchased his condescension with a present of thirty thousand florins^t.

Partition
of the do-
minions of
Bavaria.

A. D.

1393.

PEACE being thus re-established, *John*, *Stephen*, and *Frederic*, dukes of *Bavaria*, agreed to a partition of their dominions, which had hitherto been undivided, and subscribed a pactum or treaty for regulating the order of succession, and the alienation of their fiefs; by which any one of them was restricted from parting with his lands, until he should have first offered the purchase to the other two, and obtained their consent to alienate his property; and all disputes were referred to arbitration^u.

^a SOLOM. REN. Virg. æt. clx. p. 151.
^t vi. p. 30.

^t Arch. Imp.
^u ADLZR. Annal. Boior. Gent. part. ii. l. 6

MEAN while *Winceflaus* continued immersed in debauchery, and seemed industrious in acquiring the implacable hatred of his people, by the extraordinary taxes he imposed, and the cruelties he exercised indifferently upon all sorts of people; not even respecting the magistrates of *Prague*, whom he ordered to be beheaded without form of process. Nay, in order to familiarize himself to blood and carnage, he descended so low, as to contract an intimacy with the common executioner, whom he distinguished by the appellation of his gossip (F). Nevertheless, some authors allege, that this cruel disposition was not natural to him. He is said to have been twice poisoned, and the medicines he took prevented the doses from having their whole effect; but they left an extraordinary heat and dryness in his constitution, which he was obliged to assuage with drinking. Thus he contracted the habit of drunkenness, which sometimes inflamed him to such a degree of fury, that it was dangerous to be near him; for, in one of those fits of intoxication, he is said to have ordered his cook to be roasted alive *.

Winceflaus's cruelty the effects of poison which he had received.
A. D. 1394.

THE noblemen of *Bohemia*, perceiving that his cruelty and excesses daily augmented, thought it highly necessary to lay him under some restriction; and by the advice of his brother *Sigismund*, king of *Hungary*, actually confined him in close prison, from which, however, he found means to escape. After having laid several months in a dungeon, he obtained permission from the senate to be conducted to a bath to refresh himself. There perceiving a fisher's little boat on the banks of the river, hard by the bath, he embarked with the woman who attended him (both being naked), and, rowing to the other side of the river, retired to a fortress, which he had formerly caused to be built as an asylum against the enterprizes of his enemies †. He was suffered to resume

He is confined by the noblemen of Bohemia, and escapes from a bath.
1396.

* DUBRARI. l. xxiii. p. 606. † Hist. Luxemb. lvii;

(F) This executioner is said to have perished at last by the hands of his prince. *Winceflaus*, sending for him one day, said he wanted to know the situation of a man's mind, when he expected to have his head severed from his body; he, therefore, bound up his own eyes, and, kneeling, desired his friend to cut off his head. The executioner, instead of obeying this order, struck him with the flat part of the sword: upon which *Winceflaus* ordered him to be blinded in his turn, and, taking the sword in his own hand, actually shortened him by the head (2).

(2) *Aust. in Chron. Belg. p. 326.*

the

Is committed to the care of Albert duke of Austria.

Escapes by the assistance of one Grundler, a fisherman, and resumes his authority.

Measures taken to terminate the schism in the church.

Clement VII. dies, and is succeeded by Benedict XIII.

A D. 1397.

the reins of government; but as he did not reform his behaviour, his subjects had recourse to his brother *Sigismund*, king of *Hungary*, who marched into *Bohemia* at the head of a strong army, compelled the emperor to submit, was declared regent of the kingdom, changed the ministers and officers of state, and redressed the grievances of the people. *Winceslaus*, being again apprehended, was kept prisoner, sometimes in one castle and sometimes in another, till at length he was privately sent to *Vienna*, and committed to the care of *Albert* archduke of *Austria*, who ordered him to be shut up in one of the towers of the city: from thence also he made his escape by the assistance of an old fisherman, called *Grundler*, who used to come and distribute his charity among the prisoners. *Winceslaus*, perceiving him one day from his window, promised him an ample recompence, provided he would assist him in procuring his liberty (G). *Grundler*, induced by his promises, conveyed to him a silken cord, by means of which he descended from the tower; then, being rowed by him across the *Danube*, he returned to *Bohemia*, regained possession of the city of *Prague*, by means of some noblemen who were his friends, and was permitted to resume his authority, on condition of amending his way of life *.

DURING these vicissitudes in *Bohemia*, the theologicians in *Germany* endeavoured, by their writings, to finish the schism in the church, occasioned by the two competitors for the papacy. The university of *Cologne*, tho' it had owned *Boniface* as the lawful pope, nevertheless inclined to the convocation of a general council, as the only sure method of re-establishing the peace of the church; and wrote to the university of *Paris* on this subject. The death of *Clement VII.* which happened at this period, seemed to be a favourable conjuncture for attaining such a desirable end. The archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, and several other princes and prelates of the empire, conjured the cardinals at *Avignon* to desist from a new election, until some measures could be taken to terminate the schism; and the king of *France* wrote to the same purpose: yet, in spite of all these remonstrances,

* BARRE, t. vii. p. 58.

(G) He was not ungrateful to his deliverer; for, as soon as he re-ascended the throne, he sent for *Grundler* and his whole family from *Vienna*, ennobled, and granted to him a considerable revenue (3).

(3) *Remarg sur Heiss, ubi sup.*

they

they elected *Pedro de Luna*, cardinal of *Arragon*, who assumed the name of *Benedict XIII.* His election was no sooner known in *Germany*, than the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, together with the other princes, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*; where, after due deliberation, it was resolved to exhort both competitors to abdicate the papacy, so as that fort. a canonical election might take place; and this was the declared opinion of the *French* king, whose ambassadors were present in the assembly.

IN consequence of the determination of the diet, deputies were sent to *Rome*, to communicate the sentiments of the king of *France*, and the princes of *Germany*; but although *Rome*. they were caressed by *Boniface*, who affected to heap favours upon them, they could never bring him to treat upon the affair of the cession, which he evaded with great dexterity. *Winceslaus*, tho' he did not assist at the diet, believing his own personal importance sufficient to determine this dispute, proposed an interview to *Charles* king of *France*, at *Rheims*, where, tho' he was almost constantly intoxicated with strong liquor, he agreed with the *French* monarch to send the bishop of *Cambray* to *Rome*, in order to persuade *Boniface* to resign the papal chair. *Boniface*, having consulted his cardinals, answered, that he would willingly comply with the request of the emperor and the king of *France*, provided they would oblige the pretended pope of *Avignon* to quit his pretensions also, and appoint a proper place, where he might appear with his cardinals to proceed to a new election. In consequence of this answer, the same deputy was dispatched to *Benedict*, who flatly refused to comply with the proposal, and declared he would maintain his dignity to his latest breath: an instance of obstinacy which incensed *Charles* to such a degree, that he and his kingdom renounced *Benedict*, the marshal *de Boucicaut* was ordered to invest *Avignon*, and the antipope was kept prisoner in the castle for the space of five whole years.

PERHAPS his confinement would not have been of such long duration, had not the revolutions in the north hindered the kingdoms of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, from attending to the schism in the *Roman* church. *Margaret* was engrossed by the project of uniting these three kingdoms, and employed her endeavours to engage the *German* princes in the support of her scheme. Being importuned by the *Swedes* to marry, she lent a deaf ear to their remonstrance on this

^a FROISSARD. l. iv. c. 97.

and goes to
war with
the Teu-
tonic or-
der.

head; but, in order to quiet their apprehensions, she appointed the son of *Wratislaus*, duke of *Pomerania*, her successor, and her choice was approved by the states of the three kingdoms assembled at *Colmar*, where also they formed that union which she had so much at heart, and confirmed it by the famous edict called the *Union of Colmar*. After this transaction she engaged in a war with the *Teutonic order*, about the island of *Gothland*, which the knights refused to surrender, on pretence of having acquired the right of conquest, by expelling the tyrants by whom the greatest part of it was possessed. *Margaret*, finding her arms did not succeed to her expectation, had recourse to the mediation of the emperor, who appointed a congress at *Helsingbourg*, to which he sent his deputies, and there a treaty of peace was concluded, on condition that the knights should cede the island to *Margaret*, in consideration of a sum of money to indemnify them for the expence of the war ^b.

The emperor espouses *Sophia*, daughter of *Stephen*, duke of *Bavaria*.

A. D.
1359.

WINCESLAUS, having in this manner restored peace to those northern countries, espoused *Sophia*, daughter of *Stephen* duke of *Bavaria*; and, after this marriage, his extravagance increased to such a degree, that his revenues were not sufficient to defray the prodigious expence of his household. Notwithstanding the promise he had made at his restoration, he regarded the affairs of the empire as little as ever, except in those things that related to his own private emolument; and, as he neglected nothing that could produce money, he received, with extraordinary demonstrations of joy, an embassy from *John Galeazzo*, count of *Vertus*, nephew and successor of that *Bernabo Visconti*, who, as we have already observed, had seized the sovereignty of *Milan*, *Placentia*, *Cremona*, *Pavia*, *Lodi*, *Brescia*, *Bergamo*, *Vercelli*, *Novara*, *Tortona*, and others belonging to the *Milanese* and *Lombardy*, which depended upon the empire.

Winceslaus sells the royalty of sundry cities and territories in Italy.

THE subject of this embassy was to buy of him the seignories and royalties of all these countries, together with the title of duke of *Milan*. These *Winceslaus* sold for a considerable sum of money, without the participation or consent of the princes of the empire. This was one of the reasons, that some time after induced them to think of dispossessing him in good earnest. They perceived, that he seemed to take pleasure in dismembring the empire for his own fordid views, at a time when it was but too much divided by the schism which prevailed in the church; and when *Christen-*

^b HUITFELD. Hist. Dan. t. iv. ad ann. 1397; Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 642.

^c AVENT.

dom was weakened by the enterprizes of the *Turks*, who had gained divers signal advantages over the Christians, which were followed by the famous victory obtained over them by *Bajazet*, near *Nicopolis*.

THE electors, after long delays, concluding that the public safety demanded a chief capable of re-establishing and protecting the peace, as well as of supporting the dignity of the empire, assembled at *Boppard*, and afterwards at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon the present posture of affairs; and notwithstanding the representations of *Winceflaus*, who sent the margrave of *Nuremberg* to inform the electors, that he could not quit *Bohemia* on account of some domestic troubles, and the coronation of his empress, they convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, where they resolved to oblige the emperor to chuse an administrator, and made him acquainted with their determination. But, *Winceflaus* absolutely refusing to comply with their decision, they entered into a confederacy, confirmed by oath, to redress the grievances of the *Germanic* body, preserve the rights of the empire, and prevent the alienation of its domains.

THE result of this association was a diet at *Mentz*, to which they invited the emperor; and he refusing to appear, it was determined that he should be obliged to make a formal renunciation of the empire, and the imperial insignia, after which they would proceed to a new election. *Winceflaus*, far from abdicating the throne by a voluntary renunciation, gave the electors to understand, that he annulled, by anticipation, all the resolutions of their assembly, and that he would put all those to the ban of the empire who should presume to execute their decrees. Without paying the least regard to his menaces, they, by the advice of pope *Boniface IX.* assembled at the castle of *Laenstein* on the *Rhine*, in the archbishopric of *Triers*; and, having declared *Winceflaus* incapable, pronounced and published the sentence of his deposition, revoking at the same time all the rights, exemptions, privileges, and domains, sold or mortgaged by his own particular authority, without the consent of the princes and states of the empire^d (H). Then, proceeding to the election

^d Tom. Rer. Ger. URSTITII in fin. Bzov. in hoc ann. HARTMAN in ann.

(H) The authors of this deposition, were *John de Nassau*, archbishop of *Mentz*, *Frederic de Severden*, archbishop of *Cologne*, *Wernier de Konigstein*, archbishop of *Triers*, *Robert*, elector

is succeeded of a new emperor, they raised to that dignity *Frederic* duke by Robert of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, a wise and valiant prince; but

count palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Rodolphus*, duke of *Saxony* and *Lunenburg* (4).

After having summoned *Winceslaus* to appear, and waited ten days in vain for his arrival, they proceeded to his trial; and the sentence of deposition was pronounced by the archbishop of *Mentz* to this effect. "In the name of the lord, *Amen*. We *John*, by the grace of God, archbishop of *Mentz*, arch-chancellor of the holy *Roman* empire in *Germany*, to all men who now are; or may be hereafter, we give to understand, that, for many years, intolerable abuses have been introduced into the church of God, and, far from being repressed, multiply daily, to the great scandal of the good, and the utter perdition of the wicked. But the most melancholy circumstance is, that he, whom the holy empire and the church have appointed to reform these disorders, is himself the author of them; and, instead of remedying these evils, his pernicious example, and wicked government, have annihilated the *Police* of the empire, and occasioned civil wars in *Germany*, and in *Italy*."

"For which reasons, upon the pressing remonstrances of the holy church, the princes, noblemen, towns, and subjects of the empire, we the co-electors, and we for our own share, have often cautioned the most serene

prince *Winceslaus*, king of the *Romans* and of *Bohemia*, and represented to him, either verbally or by letter, his scandalous conduct, his negligence in the administration of affairs, his tolerating or authorizing, by his own example, the most enormous abuses, his dismembring the empire considerably, without assembling diets, or consulting the princes; and of all the grievances, of which he is attainted and convicted, we have drawn up an abstract, of which these are the particular articles."

"He has sold to *France* the town of *Genoa* and its territory, notwithstanding the opposition of the states of the empire, on which that tie depends: he has surrendered to *Galeazzo Visconti* the *Milanese*, and even *Lombardy*, under the title of duchy: he has alienated several domains, which had devolved to the empire on the death of the proprietors: he has sold to divers persons blank patents, sanctioned by his own seal, to be disposed of at their pleasure, to the great prejudice of the empire: he hath granted impunity to thieves and robbers: he hath, with his own hand, or by the help of his executioners, murdered, drowned, or burned, prelates, priests, and a number of other persons of distinction: in contempt of Christianity, he hath made a league with the king of *Poland*, protector of the *Tar-*

but he being basely murdered by the count of *Waldeck* ^{c, count palatine}, when he went to *Frankfort* to take the imperial crown, they ^{latine} elected *Robert* count palatine in his place ^f.

^c KRANTZ Metrop. xi. c. ii.
1405.

^f FABR. Ann Mifn. ad ann.

tars, against the knights of the *Teutonic* order: he hath, without sense or danger, squandered away the revenues of *Bohemia* and the empire, and put the government of his kingdom into the hands of unexperienced and evil-minded persons, who have loaded his subjects with excessive taxes: in his negotiations with the princes of the empire, he hath practised such equivocation and dissimulation, that none of them will trust his word: he hath destroyed the university of *Prague*, founded by the emperor his father: he hath expelled the doctors, and put many of them to death, without form of process or previous sentence: finally, he hath abandoned himself, night and day, to debauchery; he hath intirely neglected the affairs of the empire; and, having been more than once exhorted and solicited to reform his conduct, he hath persecuted those who gave him such salutary advice."

"We therefore, the electors, having invoked the holy name of God, and sitting in our tribunal of justice, moved by the grievances afore-mentioned, and other causes of still greater importance, have, by our present sentence, deposed *Winceslaus*, a dissipator of the *Germanic* body, as a useless member, and as a chief unworthy to govern the holy *Roman* empire;

and as such we have deprived him of the dignities thereunto annexed, we likewise intimate to all princes, potentates, knights, cities, dominions, and subjects of the holy empire, that they are absolved from the oath of allegiance they owed him as emperor."

"Moreover we caution and forbid them to obey the said *Winceslaus* for the future, or to serve him under any title whatever; but require them to reserve their obedience and service for a more useful and worthy prince, to be substituted in his place."

"On the faith of which, we *John* archbishop of *Mentz* have taken care to make a transcript of the present act of deposition, sealed with our great seal. Enacted and solemnly published at *Landstein*, in the year after the nativity of Christ 1400, on Friday, *August* 20, a little before nine o' clock, in the eleventh year of the pontificate of our holy father pope *Boniface IX.* in the presence of the noble princes *John* and *Robert*, *FredERIC*, burgrave of *Nuremberg*, *Philip* of *Nassau* and *Sarbruck*, *George* de *Leiningen*, *John* de *Zigenstein*, *Conrad* count palatine of the *Rhine*, *Renard* de *Wisterburg*, *John* de *Limburg*, *John* d' *Isenburg*, *Renard* de *Hanau*, and several other lords, knights, and persons, both secular and ecclesiastic (5)."

A. D. 1400. WINCESLAUS was so little mortified at the news of his deposition, that, when he received them, "We are overjoyed (said he) to be delivered from the burden of the empire, because we shall have more leisure to apply ourselves to the government of our kingdom;" and indeed, during the nineteen years that he afterwards reigned in *Bohemia*, his conduct was considerably amended, and he applied himself seriously to calm the disturbances which had been raised by *John Huss*, professor of theology in the university of *Prague*, who had embraced the doctrine of *Wickliffe* (I).

AFTER he had reigned twenty-two years as emperor, and fifty-five as king of *Bohemia*, being one day at dinner informed of a tumult in the city of *Prague*, he rose from table in great consternation; and one of his domestics imprudently saying, he knew three days before that this disturbance would happen, *Winceslaus* flew upon him, pulled him to the ground by the hair of his head, and would have instantly put him to death, had he not been restrained by the interposition and remonstrances of those who were present; such was the excess of his passion, that he fell down in an apoplectic fit, and in a few days after expired (K), in the fifty-seventh year of his age E.

E. *ÆN. Hist. Boem. c. 37. DUBRAR. l. xxiii. ad fin. COCHLÆ, lib. iv. ad fin.*

(I) *Wickliffe's* doctrine had gained ground in *Bohemia*, and been embraced by several masters of the university of *Prague*, particularly by *John Huss*, who became the head of a sect, which grew very formidable to the church. *Winceslaus* found his account in conniving at the progress of this reformation, by the taxes which he levied on pretence of quelling the tumults which it daily occasioned. He was even heard to say, that he must take especial care of a goose (the interpretation of *Huss* in the *Bohemian* tongue) which laid to him such eggs of gold (6).

(K) *Winceslaus* was twice married: his first wife was *Jane* daughter of *Albert* duke of *Bavaria* and count of *Holland*; who was crowned with him at *Aix la Chapelle*, and died in the year 1387. After he had escaped for the second time from prison, he, in order to fortify himself on the side of *Germany*, espoused *Sophia* daughter of *Stephen* duke of *Bavaria*; but he had no issue by either, tho' the annals of *Poland* import, that he had one daughter, named *Euphemia*, married to *Uladislaus II.* king of *Poland* (7).

(6) *Spond. Contin. Barr. tom. xi. p. 159. Remarq. sur Huss, ubi supra.*
(7) *Huss Hist. l. xi. c. 28.*

ROBERT.

ALTHOUGH *Rupert* or *Robert* count palatine of the *Rhine*, duke of *Bavaria*, surnamed *the Short* and *the Debonair*, had been formally chosen emperor by all the electors, in the field of *Rvintz* upon the *Rhine*, then consecrated and confirmed in the church of *Cologne*, by the archbishop of that metropolitan; yet the inhabitants of *Aix-la-Chapelle* would not allow him to be crowned in their city, alleging they were not yet absolved from the oath they had taken to *Winceslaus*; but the true reason was their affection and attachment to that prince. They were, therefore, put to the ban of the empire, and otherwise maltreated, until they had taken the oath of allegiance to *Robert*. But the citizens of *Nuremberg* were more fortunate; for in consideration of a present of the wine of *Bocharac*, that prince discharged them from the oath which they had taken in his favour.^b

NOTWITHSTANDING this tame resignation of *Winceslaus*, several powers of *Europe* disapproved of his deposition. The king of *France*, in particular, sent ambassadors to *Mentz*, to express his concern for the difference between *Robert* and *Winceslaus*, and desired that a certain day might be fixed, when all parties should assemble, and treat of an accommodation. For this purpose he offered his own good offices, and demanded that *Robert* would consent to a year's truce, and be personally present at the assembly, while he undertook for the appearance of the king of *Bohemia*, who had already referred himself to his arbitration. He himself likewise engaged to be there in person, or, in case of impediment, to send thither some princes of the blood. *Robert*, and the electors of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, pretended to listen to this proposal of an accommodation; which in order to effect, they promised to be at *Cologne* on the day of *Epiphany* of the following year; but as their sole intention was to gain time to strengthen their party, the negotiation did not succeed.ⁱ That which was set on foot by the king of *Hungary*, and the principal noblemen of *Bohemia*, had no better effect, altho' they had assembled, and agreed to assist *Winceslaus* in his endeavours to recover the imperial crown. This affair miscarried, because, when they were deliberating upon measures for raising money to defray the expence of the war, *Winceslaus* refused to contribute, and the assembly, being in-

^b KRANTZ, x. Wand. i.ⁱ HEISS, l. ii. c. 29.

themselves
for the de-
pos dem-
pior.

Robert
remedies
the dis-
orders of
the em-
pire, and
reclaims
the domi-
nions and
rights
which had
been
alienated.

He is
pressed by
the pope
and Flo-
rentines
to under-
take an
expedition
into Italy;
where he
is worsted
by John
Galeazo,
and oblig-
ed to re-

cented at the sordid refusal, broke up abruptly, without having come to any resolution. The king of *Bohemia*, indeed, earnestly intreated them to renew the negociation, and *Sigismund*, in consequence of his intreaties, consented to an interview, when he promised to supply him with considerable succours, provided he would yield to him some territories, and bequeath to him the kingdom of *Bohemia* at his death; conditions that werè so displeasing to *Winceslaus*, that he retired without taking leave of his brother ^k.

MEAN while the new emperor employed his whole care in remedying the disorders and divisions which had crept into the empire, during the reigns of *Charles IV.* and his son, and in reclaiming the dominions which they had alienated. For this purpose, in the first year of his reign, a diet was convoked at *Frankfort*, where he deliberated with the electors, princes, noblemen, and deputies of towns, upon ways and means for re-establishing tranquility, order, and security in the empire; and, in consequence of these deliberations, several laws were enacted and put in execution. As the electors, in their sentence of deposition pronounced against *Winceslaus*, had alleged, among other things, that he had, for a sum of money, created *John Galeazo* duke of *Milan*, tho' he was no other than governor of *Lombardy*; and that the new duke, not contented with this promotion, pretended to withdraw those countries from the sovereignty of the empire, and by force of arms make himself master of *Florence*, *Mantua*, *Bologna*, and other towns and countries, to be incorporated with his duchy; *Robert* found himself under the necessity of raising an army for restoring the affairs of *Italy* to their former situation; being moreover invited to this expedition by pope *Boniface*, and the *Florentines*, who promised to advance two hundred thousand florins for the expence of the undertaking ^l. He therefore made long marches to *Italy*, and encamped before the city of *Brixen*, in the duchy of *Milan*: but *Galeazo*, being well provided with cavalry, had in all their skirmishes the advantage of the imperialists, whom he fatigued and diminished in such a manner, that, notwithstanding considerable succours which arrived that same year, with the archbishop of *Cologne* and *Leopold* duke of *Austria*, *Robert* was obliged to return to *Germany*, without having been able to strike any one stroke of importance. Besides, his return was rendered necessary, because the other states refused to perform their promise to second the enter-

^k Id. *ibid.*

^l SPOND. CONT. BARON. t. xi. p. 114. Chron. Magdeb. ex MEIB. t. ii. p. 348.

prize, being in this particular influenced by the elector of *Mentz*, who, not contented with hindering the ecclesiastics from paying the tenth which the pope had granted to *Robert* for his *Italian* expedition, had also alienated their affection from the emperor. For these reasons he was obliged, next year, to march back into his own country ^m, without having advanced his own cause in *Italy*, either against *Galeazzo* duke of *Milan*, or done any thing in favour of the pope, against *Ladislaus* king of *Naples*, who some years after took the city of *Rome*, and expelled *Boniface* ⁿ (L).

THE retreat of *Robert* leaving the field free to *Galeazzo*, he proposed no less than the conquest of the whole kingdom of *Italy*; and fortune seemed at first to declare in favour of this undertaking; for he made himself master of the city of *Bologna*, and was on the eve of reducing *Florence*, when he was attacked by a malignant fever, which put an end to his life. As he left but one daughter, who was not of age, the pope availed himself of this opportunity to wrest from the *Milanese*, *Bologna*, *Perugia*, and some other places. The city of *Milan* shook off the yoke of *Galeazzo*: *Verona* submitted to the vicar of the empire established at *Padua*, but some time after the *Venetians* possessed themselves of that city. *Ladislaus*, who had been invited to ascend the throne of *Hungary*, found himself, in consequence of a strange revolution, unable to cope with his competitor *Sigismund*, and at the same time in danger of losing his hereditary kingdom of *Naples*, the nobility of which had revolted in his absence. Thither, therefore, he repaired with all imaginable dispatch, and punished the rebels with such severity, as seemed to be rather the effect of cruel revenge, than the sacrifice of deliberate justice^o.

THIS was a favourable conjuncture for retrieving the authority of the empire in *Italy*, if *Robert* had undertaken a second expedition into that country; but this he found impracticable, because the elector of *Mentz*, *Cologne*, and *Triers*, opposed the levy of the tenths. He, therefore, em-

^m ARET. lib. xii. ANTON. tit. xxii. c. 3. § 35. ⁿ AVENT. Ann. &c. lib. vii. p. 646. ^o GUESTIN. Hist. Venet. l. iv.

(L) *Ladislaus* was so successful in *Italy*, that he aspired to the empire, publicly assumed the title, and ordered this motto to be wrought in embroidery upon his robes; *Aut Cæsar aut nihil* (8).

The emperor employs himself in aggrandizing his own electorate.

employed himself at home, in pacifying the troubles of the empire, in reducing the towns that refused to acknowledge him for emperor, and in aggrandizing the dominions of his own electorate; for which purpose he purchased of *William*, bishop of *Straßburg*, the fiefs of *Gegenbach*, *Ortenberg*, *Offenbourg*, *Zell*, *Herménbach*, and several other lordships of *Alsace*, tho' not without great opposition from the chapter and body of burghers, who would by no means consent to this alienation; and the emperor did not think proper to use violent methods for the support of his acquisition, as he was not yet quite fixed on the imperial throne.

Makes war on Bernard marquis of Baden; A. D. 1401.

BERNARD, marquis of *Baden*, had established tolls in his dominions, contrary to the regulations of the public peace, compelled passengers to pay ransom, and imposed excessive duties upon commerce; so that complaints of these exactions were laid before the emperor, who desired *Bernard* to suppress these iniquitous impositions; but he, instigated by the elector of *Mentz*, refused to obey the orders of *Robert*, who declared war against him, took the castle of *Mulberg*, and compelled him to sue for peace; which was granted, on condition that he should, for the future, attempt nothing against the liberties and immunities of the noblemen, cities, and subjects, of the empire.

His majesty in a confederacy against him, with Straßburg and the towns of Suabia. 1405.

NOTWITHSTANDING this accommodation, he afterwards engaged in a treaty with *Eberhard* count of *Wurtemberg*, the magistrates of *Straßburg*, and the towns of *Suabia*; the principal article of which imported, that, should the emperor presume to encroach upon the rights and privileges of any one of the confederated parties, the rest should assist the said party with their troops and money. *Robert* complained of this injurious association, which supposed that he had an intention to invade the privileges of his subjects, and even summoned the towns of *Suabia* to appear at a general diet, and explain their motives for this confederacy, which, however, subsisted to the day of his death.

War breaks out between the house of Austria and the city of Basil. 1406.

IN spite of all his endeavours to preserve the peace of the empire, a war broke out between *Catherine* of *Burgundy*, wife of *Leopold* of *Austria*, and the inhabitants of *Basil*; and notwithstanding the interposition of *Lewis* count palatine of the *Rhine*, who attempted to compromise the dispute, hostilities were committed with various success, and great cruelty on both sides (tho' the *Austrians* were the greatest sufferers in the desolation of the province of *Suntgan*), until peace was at last established, after the war had raged for the space of two

years. The negotiations were renewed by means of *Rodolphus*, marquis of *Hochberg*, allied to the city of *Basil*. A congress being appointed at *Ensisheim*, the peace was happily concluded, and a league, offensive and defensive, for the term of six years, took place between the town of *Basil* and *Frederic* duke of *Austria*, successor to *Leopold*, who died without male issue; tho' his widow *Catherine* was left in possession of *Suntgau*, and the territories belonging to the house of *Austria* in *Alsace*†.

DURING this contest in *Alsace*, *Bohemia* was involved in John new disorders, in consequence of a new doctrine in religion, *Hufs* first broached by *Wickliffe*, in *England*, and now adopted by *preaches* *John Hufs*, rector of the university of *Prague*; who, tho' the doct- opposed by the archbishop, and censured by pope *Alexander V.* elected by the council of *Pisa*, continued to preach, *rine of* *Wickliffe* at *Prague*, and made converts with great success, under the protection of *Winceslaus* and his queen, who even condescended to reconcile him with the archbishop. A. D. 1408.

JOHN XXIII. who succeeded *Alexander*, cited *Hufs* to appear at his tribunal, and the rector, refusing to obey, was *Is excom-* excommunicated. At the same time the pope laid the city *by pope* of *Prague* under interdiction, and forbade all the priests to *John* celebrate mass, baptize, marry, or perform any other religious *XXIII.* function, while *Hufs* should reside in that capital. The publication of this sentence was followed by troubles and sedition: *Winceslaus* shut himself up in the fortress of *Visigrade*, and *John Hufs* retired to *Hussinet*, the place of his nativity, where he appealed from the judgment of the pope, to the holy trinity, and wrote to the cardinals, offering to give an account of his faith, even at the hazard of the fire, before the university of *Prague*, and in the presence of those who had attended his lectures and sermons‡.

THE success of *John Hufs*, however, was extremely prejudicial to the university of *Prague*; for he was no sooner *His success* admitted into that body, than, by his cabals and interest, *prejudicial* with *Winceslaus*, he deprived the *Germans* of two in three *to the uni-* votes which they had in the election of a rector; and this deprivation incensed them so much, that they abandoned the university; some repairing to the academy at *Leipsic*, lately founded by *Frederic William* duke of *Saxony*; and others settling at *Erford*, *Ingoldstadt*, *Regstock*, and *Cracovia*†.

† Annal. de l'Emp. t. ii. p. 489.
1409. ‡ ÆN. SXLV. c. 35.

• RAINALD. ad an.

*The schism
of the
church
continues.*

THE church of *Rome* not only suffered from these innovations, but also continued in a state of distraction from the schism which still prevailed, and which the emperor attempted in vain to extinguish.

*A cruel
war kind-
led by a
competition
for the
bishopric
of Liege.*

BENEDICT XIII. and *Gregory XII.* tho' they had sworn to resign the pontificate, still found new pretences to evade the performance of their oath; and in the mean time their dispute was attended with very tragical consequences. *John of Bavaria* was appointed bishop of *Liege* by *Gregory*, and *Theodoric de Pervis* nominated to the same see by *Benedict*. This competition produced a civil war, in which were engaged the counts of *Flanders*, *Namur*, *Holland*, and the elector of *Cologne*, as the supporters of *John*; while the party of *Pervis* was supported by *Liege*, *Louvain*, *Brussels*, and all the towns of *Brabant*, which raised fifty thousand men for his service. *Pervis*, at the head of this army, invested *Maastricht*, to which *John* had retired, and carried on the siege with such vigour, that the place was reduced to the utmost extremity; when it was relieved by the duke of *Burgundy*, who marched to the succour of *John*, defeated his adversary in a pitched battle, and conducted him in triumph to *Liege*, which was abandoned to pillage. *John*, upon this occasion, condemned one hundred and twenty noblemen to lose their heads; a greater number was hanged; and four-and-twenty were thrown headlong into the *Meuse*, together with the legate of *Benedict*, and all the officers of *Pervis*. The savage prelate, not contented with these sacrifices to his revenge, re-united to his see all the privileges of the city of *Liege*, the county of *Loos*, the *Hassaye*, *St. Tron*, and the duchy of *Bouillon*: he suppressed the offices of bailie, provost, mayor, and sheriff, and fined the province and the town of *Liege* in two hundred thousand crowns, for which he took hostages.

WHILE *Gregory XII.* who was acknowledged pope in *Italy*, convened a council at *Aquileia*, to which he invited *Robert* and other Christian kings; and *Benedict XIII.* who was owned for pope in *France*, held another council at *Catalonia*; the cardinals convoked a third at *Pisa*; and the emperor, assembling the electors at *Bacharat*, and afterwards at *Nuremberg*, appointed the meeting of a diet in the city of *Frankfort*; at which were present two cardinals, one from *Gregory*, and another from the sacred college. After long and public debates, the opinions of the assembly were divided between the two popes, the greatest part of the archbishops,

prelates, and princes, espousing the cause of the cardinals; and the emperor, together with the archbishop of *Triers*, the duke of *Bavaria*, and some others, declaring for *Gregory*, who proposed that a council should be held at *Udina*, in the *Friuli*, under the direction of the emperor, by whose decision he promised to abide*. *Robert*, therefore, sent an archbishop, two bishops, two doctors, and his chancellor, as ambassadors to *Pisa*, to prove, by learned arguments, that the cardinals ought not to have deposed *Gregory*; but finding they could gain no converts to this opinion, and that the cardinals, being attached to *Winceslaus*, would not even own their master for emperor, they appealed from the council of *Pisa* to an oecumenical council, and retired without taking leave†. Notwithstanding this appeal, the council proceeded to the deposition of the two popes, and raised *Alexander V.* to the papal chair; by which election the schism was augmented. The emperor wrote to several princes, assuring them, that the council at *Pisa* was not canonical, and that he would continue to acknowledge *Gregory* as the true pope, until a lawful and canonical sentence should be pronounced against him.

As for *Alexander*, he notified his elevation to the sovereigns of *Europe*, and, in his letter to *Winceslaus*, bestowed upon that prince the title of king of the *Romans*; a circumstance which intailed upon him the hatred of *Robert*, who complained of the insult to the princes of *Germany*, and prohibited them from acknowledging *Alexander* as pope. This last, in order to weaken the force of the emperor's resentment, found means to detach several *German* bishops from his party, by creating them legates of the holy see; and these exerted all their endeavours to establish the authority of the council at *Pisa*. But the efforts of their zeal were in a little time suspended by the death of *Alexander*, in whose room seventeen cardinals, in the conclave, elected *Balthazar Cossa*, cardinal dean of *St. Eustache*, who assumed the name of *John XXIII.* and was acknowledged by the greatest part of *Europe*; for *Benedict* was owned by no nation but *Spain* and *Scotland*; and all *Gregory's* influence extended no farther than some dominions of *Italy* and *Germany*, in which the authority of *Robert* prevailed‡.

LADISLAUS, king of *Poland*, was diverted from interesting himself in these events, by a war in which he was engaged

* NIEM. 3. de Schism. 39. GOREL. in Cosmod. & ap. Mag. Chron. Belg. † Moine de Saint Denys, l. xxviii. ‡ Chron. Sponheim.

Poland with the knights of the *Teutonic* order, who had detained *engaged in* twenty of his ships laden with corn for the use of the *Lithuanians*, and refused to make proper satisfaction. Both parties had recourse to arms; the knights made an irruption into Poland, and were defeated, with great slaughter, near *Kalisch*. This misfortune was the more severe, as it produced a revolt in the towns of *Prussia*, which returned to the dominion of *Poland*.

Robert
takes the
field a-
gainst the
elector of
Mentz;
but dies.

By this time *Robert* had almost extinguished all the factions in *Germany*, and would have enjoyed the peaceful fruits of his policy and discretion, had not *John*, elector of *Mentz*, who was his indefatigable enemy, still found fresh expedients to keep him in vexation. He had been the instrument of forming associations and leagues against the imperial authority; he had traversed him in all the steps he took for terminating the schism in the church; and another cause of misunderstanding between them was a castle, which the elector began to build in *Hochst* against the will of the emperor, who put his troops in motion, in order to hinder him by force from proceeding; but this design was frustrated by a fever, which attacked him at *Oppenheim*, and put a period to his life, in the ninth year of his reign ^b. He was buried at *Heidelberg* (M), where, before his elevation to the throne, he had founded an academy, which was confirmed by pope *Urban VI.* ^c.

His cha-
racter.

THIS prince acquired the surname of *Short*, on account of his stature, tho' he was extremely vigorous and active. Yet he is more celebrated for his justice and clemency to men, and his piety to God, than for his magnanimity, or warlike exploits. He had made some progress in letters, was endowed with uncommon penetration, and there is no other blemish in his character, than that of being a little addicted to the love of money. During his last illness, he named

^a DOUGL. Hist. Polon. l. x. ^b SPOND. Contin. BARON. t. ii. p. 175. ^c CUSPINIAN. p. 393.

(M) Some authors allege, he was royally interred in the church of the Holy Ghost in this city, but even inserts the inscription on his monument (9). testimony of *Cuspinianus*, who not only positively affirms that

(9) *Cuspinianus*. p. 393.

seven trustees (N) for the distribution of his dominions among his children ; and, according to their regulation, *Lewis with the long Beard*, otherwise surnamed *the Blind*, whose elder brothers, *Rupert*, *Pepin*, and *Frederic*, were dead, succeeded to the electorate of *Palatine* and the lordship of *Amberg*. *John* had *Sulzbach*, *Nuburg*, and the county of *Cham*. *Simmerin*, *Deux Ponts* ; *Lutzelstein*, fell to the share of *Stephen*, and *Sintzheim* was *Otto's* patrimony (O).

J O S S E, or J O D O C U S.

AFTER the death of *Rupert*, *Jodocus*, or *Josse*, marquis of *Jodocus Moravia*, is said to have been elected emperor ^d, and to have lived six months after his election ; but as he was never acknowledged, he cannot be justly ranked among the emperors. Not but that he was regularly elected at *Frankfort* by a majority of the members assembled at the diet convoked by *John* archbishop of *Mentz* : tho' *Sigismund* was at the same time proclaimed king of the *Romans* by the archbishop of *Triers* and the count palatine ; so that at this period there were three emperors and three popes, and each had a number of adherents ; for *Winceslaus* still maintained his title to the imperial throne ^e.

SIGISMUND, hearing that his cousin *Josse* was elected, threatened to invade the marquisate of *Moravia*, and was actually employed in making preparations for that expedition, when he received the news of his death ; which happened at *Brin* about three months after his election ^f.

^d GOLDBAST. t. iii. GÖBEL. Cosm. æt. vi. c. 90. AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 647. ^e ECCARD. t. i. ^f Hist. Sigif. apud VONDER HARD.

(N) The trustees were *Raban*, archduke of *Austria* ; *Agnes*, bishop of *Spire*, *John* of *Hertzborn*, *John* of *Dalturg*, *Herman* of *Rouffstein*, *Francis Wolbert* of *Sickingen*, *Rupert* of *Helmstadt*, and *Thum Knebel* (10).

(O) His daughters were, daughter of *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg* (11).

(10) *Remarq. sur Haisi, ubi sup.*(11) *Id. ibid.*

S I G I S M U N D.

THIS prince's death was no sooner known, than the archbishop of *Triers*, and the count palatine of the *Rhine*, pressed the electoral college to confirm the choice which they had made during the preceding year; but as it refused to decide an affair of such consequence, without the participation of the states, the archbishop of *Mentz* assembled a diet at *Frankfort*, where *Sigismund* was elected by the unanimous consent of the electors.

Sigismund succeeds to imperial throne.

Sigismund, the son of the emperor *Charles VI.* and brother to *Winceflaus*, had, before his elevation to the imperial dignity, reigned seven-and-twenty years in the kingdom of *Hungary*, since the death of *Lewis* his father-in-law, whom he succeeded. As this prince was promoted to the empire on account of his great qualities, and the wife conduct he maintained in his own government, in the midst of many difficulties, it will not be unseasonable to say something in this place of the means by which he was raised to that throne.

A retrospective account of this prince.

HE had been sent, while he was yet very young, to the court of *Lewis* king of *Hungary*; who had no other children than two daughters, *Mary* and *Heduvige*, the younger of whom had been promised to *Jagellon*, grand duke of *Lithuania*, who married her, and afterwards ascended the throne of *Poland*, while *Mary* the eldest was betrothed to *Sigismund*.

His education in Hungary.

Lewis, for this reason, caused him to be educated with great care, and prevailed upon the states of the kingdom to nominate him as his successor, on condition that his marriage with *Mary* should be consummated. But, before this condition could be fulfilled, *Lewis* died, and *Mary* succeeded to the throne, under the regency of queen *Elizabeth*, her mother, assisted by the counsels of *Nicholas Gara*, count or grand master of the palace, because *Sigismund*, being at that time but fifteen years of age, had not married the princess, nor was supposed capable of governing the dominions. This minister engrossed the whole authority under these queens, and became extremely arrogant in consequence of his success; yet, in order to render his power still more absolute, he began to sow suspicions and jealousies between his mistresses and the principal noblemen of the kingdom; a wicked piece of policy, which proved fatal to the state, by creating a general aversion against the government; and to such a degree did this dissaffection prevail, that the nobles privately sent the bishop of *Zagabria*, with an offer of the crown of *Hungary* to

The queen mother Elizabeth listens to the counsels of Nicholas Gara.

to *Charles Durazzo*, king of *Naples*, who was related to the young queen. That prince joyfully embraced the proposal, notwithstanding the dissuasions of his queen, and most faithful adherents; and, after having settled the affairs of *Sicily* to his own mind, began to prepare for his journey to *Hungary* *. Queen *Elizabeth*, apprised of these secret transactions, and understanding that *Charles* was actually upon the road to take possession of the kingdom, and effect a marriage between *Mary* and his son *Ladislaus*, in order to secure the crown to his own family by that alliance; the queen, I say, informed of these circumstances, resolved, if possible, to frustrate his designs, and, as the first step, solemnized the marriage of *Sigismund* with her daughter. This affair was no sooner concluded, than she sent *Sigismund* into *Bohemia*, because he was not yet powerful enough to maintain an open war against his competitor. In the mean time, *Charles* arrived at *Offen*, where the court of *Hungary* resided, and was very honourably received by the queens; who, dissembling their resentment, seemed even to concur with the *Hungarians* in raising him to the throne. He was no sooner acknowledged king, than he took the administration into his own hands, and the ceremony of his coronation was performed with great magnificence. But, as his promotion was intirely owing to popular passion and caprice, the noblemen and people in a little time grew tired of his government; and, changing their note, expatiated on all occasions upon the virtues of their queens. *Elizabeth*, who had amused *Charles* with the hopes of a treaty, by which *Sigismund* would resign the kingdom in his favour, having observed this happy change in the minds of the subjects, resolved to profit by the occasion, and rid herself of this new intruder; and this expedient she used to effect her purpose. She and her daughter, together with the *Palatine Cara*, invited him to their apartment in the palace, in order to communicate a letter, which she pretended to have received from *Sigismund*, touching his renunciation of the crown. *Charles* went thither without the least suspicion, and had no sooner sat down by *Elizabeth*, than the *Palatine* entered the room, accompanied by a man employed for that purpose; who, passing behind the king, cleft his head with a sabre, tho' he did not die till some days after he had received the stroke ^b (P).

Charles Durazzo, king of Naples, invited to ascend the Hungarian throne.

Sigismund retires to Bohemia.

Charles takes the administration into his own hands;

is amused by queen Elizabeth,

and treacherously murdered by her action.

• ELIZA-

* SPOND. Cont. BARRE, t. ii. p. 44.
PARV. c. 8. BONFIN. 3. Dec. 1. Car. Par. 3.

^b THUR. in Car.

(P) He was wounded by one *Blatus Forgatch*, a man remarkable for his bodily strength and audacity, while the palace
Mod. Hist. Vol. XXIX. B b was

She re-
sumes the
supreme
authority;

is put to
death by
Hiorn-
nard, go-
vernor of
Croatia;

and her
daughter
Mary
thrown in-
to a dun-
geon
Sigif-
mund

ELIZABETH, thinking she had thus dissipated the faction of *Charles* by his death, re-established herself in her former authority, and few people presumed to call her conduct in question, as this cruel scheme had been executed in consequence of the assurances she had received of the fidelity of her subjects. Nevertheless, this murder did not pass unpunished; for some time after, the queens being on a progress through *Lower Hungary*, with the *Palatine Gara* and their ordinary retinue, *Hiornard*, governor, or judge provincial, of *Croatia*, who had been appointed by king *Charles*, resolved to surprise the assassins. For this purpose he assembled a good number of men, and laid an ambuscade upon the road; by which the court was surrounded, the *Palatine* and murderer of *Charles* were cut to pieces, and all the domestics of *Gara* killed, without pity, in their endeavours to save the life of their master. Nor was less inhumanity used towards the queen-mother *Elizabeth*, whom they pulled out of her vehicle, and dragged by the hair of the head before the judge provincial¹. There she, in a pathetic manner, pleaded her own cause; alleging, that king *Charles* had treated the princess *Mary* with contempt and derision, and unjustly dispossessed her of her kingdom. She, moreover, threw herself on her knees before him, implored his pardon for the assassination, and conjured him to remember the favours he had received from the late king *Lewis* her husband. The princess *Mary*, kneeling also before him, reinforced the supplications of her mother, beseeching him to manifest his gratitude to her father's house; but their grief, humiliation, and remonstrances, had no effect. *Mary* was inclosed in a dismal dungeon, and the queen-mother, notwithstanding all her tears and intreaties, miserably drowned in the rivulet of *Roseth*. Such was the fruit of her minister's violent counsels, to which she had paid a blind and implicit regard. *Sigismund* no sooner understood the particulars of this piteous catastrophe, than he set out with a powerful army, which he

¹ BONFIN. ubi sup. TITUR. in Sigif. cap. i.

was secured against his attendants and friends by *Nicholas Gara*. After having received the wound, he was thrown in prison, a poisoned plaster applied to his head, and, that not producing the desired effect, he

was strangled. His body was buried, without pomp, in the church of *St. Andrew*; and afterwards, being dug up, lay a long time exposed, on account of his having died under a sentence of excommunication (12).

had gradually assembled, and marched strait into *Hungary*, with a powerful
 where he was received with open arms, and universal ap-
 plause. His arrival in that kingdom did not a little discon-
 cert *Hiornard*, who had no reason to expect that his cruelty
 would pass unpunished. With a view, therefore, to divert,
 or at least diminish, the fury of the impending storm, he re-
 moved queen *Mary* into a comfortable apartment, and or-
 dered her to be treated according to her quality. He even
 visited her in prison, and proposed that she should be allow-
 ed to return to *Hungary*, provided she would insure his life,
 his office, and his fortune. This was such a welcome pro-
 posal, that she confirmed the promise by an oath; adding,
 that she would look upon him as her father, from the mo-
 ment she should obtain her liberty. In consequence of this
 promise, the judge provincial sent her with an escort of troops
 to *Ossen*, where her husband king *Sigismund* waited for her
 coming, and where she was received with all the demonstra-
 tions of public joy ^k.

SOME days after her return, the states of *Hungary* as-
 sembled at *Cronweissembourg*, where *Sigismund* was crowned,
 in the twentieth year of his age; and this ceremony was no
 sooner performed, than he resolved to revenge the cruelty
 which had been exercised upon the queen his mother-in-law:
 his wife, indeed, had promised, and even swore, that she
 would never punish the perpetrators of that murder; but she
 could not undertake for the conduct of her husband, who
 determined to make an example of the chief actor in that
 tragedy. He accordingly sent proper persons into *Croatia*,
 who apprehended the judge provincial and his accomplices,
 and conducted them to the city of the *Five Churches*, or *Fünfscherchen*.
 There, in consequence of a sentence pronounced
 by *Sigismund*, *Hiornard*'s hands being tied behind his back,
 he was dragged through the streets, his flesh tore off with
 red hot pincers, and, being quartered, the four parts of his
 body were hung up in the four most conspicuous places of
 the city; while all his accomplices were beheaded, except
 the bishop of *Zagabria*, whose life was spared on account of
 his function, tho' he was expelled from the see, and his
 estate confiscated. *Sigismund* had not been many years in
 possession of his good fortune, when, upon a journey, he
 received the news of his queen's death, which affected him
 to such a degree, that he detached himself from the world for
 some time, and indulged his grief in retirement at *Ossen*.
 Whether this melancholy occasion recalled the remembrance

*powerful
as my into
Hungary,
and is re-
ceived
with open
arms.
Mary, his
queen is
set at li-
berty by
Hiornard.*

*Revenge
the death
of his mo-
ther-in-
law.*

*Loses his
queen.*

*Resolves
to punish
those noble-
men who
had in-
vited
Charles
to the
throne.*

*They are
apprehend-
ed,*

*and put to
death.*

*Bajazet
marches
towards
the fron-
tiers of
Hungary,*

of the revolt, in consequence of which *Charles* had been invited to the throne ; or that he could no longer suppress the resentment which he harboured against the authors of that revolution, who seemed to brow-beat him in security, without having ever condescended to solicit his forgiveness ; certain it is, he resolved to call them to a severe account for the rebellion in which they had been engaged ; and employed an officer, whose name was *George Weidassen*, to arrest them privately, without reflecting on the troublesome consequences of such a measure. A prince cannot too cautiously revolve every circumstance of a step which he proposes to take without the advice of his council, every member of which is, in some measure, an addition to the sagacity, as well as a sanction to the conduct, of his sovereign. *Weidassen*, having assembled a good number of troops, on pretence of going to visit *Lower Hungary*, fell in with the delinquents ; who, suspecting his design, had united in a body and taken the field : but he attacked them in the night, took them all prisoners, loaded them with fetters, and sent them to the king at *Offen*. When they were brought to their trial before *Sigismund*, and some princes and noblemen, they would not make an obeisance to the king, nor answer to the questions that were asked ; so much did they despise the danger of their situation. An instance of indifference and disrespect, which provoked *Sigismund* to such a degree, that he ordered them to be instantly beheaded¹ ; and the sentence was accordingly executed upon two-and-thirty noblemen, distinguished not only by their birth, but also by the services they had done the state. *Stephen Contus*, one of the chiefs of this confederacy, looked upon death with such fortitude and contempt, that he desired the executioner to strike him on the fore part of the neck, because he could never brook the thought of receiving a wound behind. This cruel execution made such an impression on many of the princes, that they conceived an abhorrence for *Sigismund*, whom they inveighed against as a tyrant, and against whom they afterwards rebelled.

BAJAZET, the *Turkish* sultan, taking the advantage of these intestine troubles, and probably invited by the malcontents of the kingdom, marched towards the frontiers, in order to invade the country ; but chancing to intercept a messenger with a letter from *Emanuel*, emperor of *Constantinople*, to *Sigismund*, apprising this last of the *Turkish* expedition, he was so much incensed against the tender, that, postponing

¹ Hist. v. l. ii. c. 30.

his design upon *Hungary*, he turned his arms against *Constantinople*, which he suddenly invested by sea and land : ^{and defeats} being there informed that *Sigismund* had taken the field with ^{Sigismund at} a numerous army, reinforced by *French* and *Germans*, to the amount of 100,000 men, and advanced to the city of *Nicopolis*, ^{Nicopolis.} he instantly raised the blockade ; and, marching thither with great expedition, attacked the Christians in the night, and cut their whole army in pieces ^m. In this battle, a great part of the *Hungarian* nobility was slain, and the kingdom sustained such a loss, as laid it open to the incursions of the enemy (Q). As for *Sigismund*, who escaped the carnage by flight, instead of exerting his endeavours to repair this fatal overthrow, he abandoned himself wholly to his pleasures, without bestowing the least attention to the necessities of the state ; so that the aversion and contempt of his subjects every day increased against him ; the nobles and governors of provinces openly taxed him with indolence and mal-administration ; and, finding the people ripe for revolt, secured his per- ^{The Hun-} son, and committed him to the custody of the two sons of ^{garians} *Gara*, whom he had put to death, because they were known ^{confine} to be his most bitter enemies ⁿ. Then they proclaimed *La-* ^{their king;} *dislaus* king of *Hungary* ; and this prince, who was son of *Charles* king of *Naples*, entering *Dalmatia*, was received as sovereign in the city of *Zara* : nevertheless, the castle of *Buda*, and the other fortresses of the kingdom, together with *High Hungary*, still faithfully adhered to the oath which they had taken in favour of *Sigismund*, even while he was a miserable prisoner, subjected to all the insolence and

^m CHALCOND. l. ii. LEUNCL. l. vi. THUR. in Sigif. cap. 6. BONFIN. 3. Dec. 2. ⁿ THUR. in Sigif. c. 9, & seq.

(Q) Historians are much divided about the battle of *Nicopolis*. *Leunclavius* affirms, that it was fought in the year 1393 ; and *Juvenalis Ursinus*, Archbishop of *Rheims*, an historian of those days, confirms this date, by observing, that *Sigismund* wrote a letter that same year to the king of *France*, describing the battle, and soliciting succours to repair his loss. On the other hand, *Bonfinius*, *Thorstius*, and *Aventinus*, agree in placing it three years later ; so that, in all probability, the *Hungarians* were twice beaten near the same place ; but the overthrow they sustained in the year 1396 seems to have been the most important : for we do not find, that *Sigismund* made another effort against the victor. It appears also, that there was a great number of *French* in his army at this battle, who were probably sent in consequence of his solicitations, after his first defeat.

as he pre-
wails upon
his keepers
to set him
at liberty.

rancour of his most inveterate foes. Notwithstanding this deplorable situation, such was his address, that he gradually insinuated himself into the favour of *Gara's* widow, who, at length, fairly undertook to effect his enlargement. With this view she held frequent consultations with her sons, to whom she observed, that such attempts upon the person of a sovereign were usually attended with fatal consequences; that the people were unsteady in their resolutions, and might as suddenly restore as they had deposed the king; and, even if such a revolution should not happen, that the successor would revenge upon them the cause of *Sigismund*, thro' fear of meeting with the same ill usage. She likewise displayed the honour and advantage which they might acquire by setting the king at liberty. These remonstrances were not lost upon her sons, whom the king promised, upon oath, to invest with *Moravia*, provided they would enable him to make the grant effectual. Thus persuaded, they enlarged, and conducted him to that province, from whence he repaired to *Bohemia*.

He retires
to Bohe-
mia;

returns
with an
army, and
resumes
his autho-
rity;

THERE having raised a considerable army, he marched back into his kingdom, and, without opposition, reduced the whole country to obedience. He kept the promise which he had made to his deliverers; and, during the rest of his reign, comported himself with such clemency and affability towards his enemies, as well as friends, that he soon retrieved the friendship and confidence of his people. From his own experience, which cost him so much, he extracted this maxim, that he who can neither forgive, nor occasionally connive, will never make great proficiency in the art of reigning.

He is call-
ed to the
empire.

His reputation extended to the neighbouring nations; and the states of *Germany* thought they could not find a more accomplished prince to wear the imperial crown.

*Sigis-
mund*
alienates
the electo-

THE news of his confirmation found him in *Hungary*, from whence he immediately set out for the empire; and, in order to fulfil the expectation of those who called him to this high dignity, he resolved to employ his whole attention in remedying two grievances, under which *Germany* at that time groaned; these were, the confusion, oppression, and disorder, which prevailed in the provinces, and the schism which had for thirty years distracted the church. He began his reign with alienating the electorate of *Brandenburg* in favour of *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg*, sprung from the counts of *Hohenzollern*, a prince of great merit, from

whom the present marquisses of *Brandenburg* are descended (R). ^{orate of} For this purchase he gave four hundred thousand florins; ^{Brandenburg.} but *Sigismund* reserved to himself and his brother the right of redemption for the same sum, in case the male heirs of the burgrave should fail.

At this assembly too, he mediated an accommodation between *William* count de *Berg* and *Theodoric* de *Meurs*, who had been at war for several years about the archbishopric of *Cologne*, for which *William* and *Theodoric* were competitors. The first had been confirmed by *Gregory XIII.* and the other by *John XXIII.* The dispute was left to the decision of arms. ^{A. D. 1411. He effects an accommodation between} *William* ^{count de} *Theodoric* defeated his adversary, and returned in triumph to *Cologne*, where he was received with extraordinary acclamations; while *William* was fain to sue for peace, which he ^{Berg and} *Theodoric* obtained, on condition of renouncing all his pretensions to the archbishopric, and marrying *Theodoric's* niece, daughter of the count of *Tecklembourg* ^{de Meurs;}.

THIS affair being happily compromised, the emperor endeavoured, by remonstrances, to reform the court of his brother *Winceflaus*, which was a scene of riot, luxury, and excess, and afforded a dangerous example to the whole kingdom of *Bohemia*; but all his representations proved ineffectual, even tho' *Sigismund* threatened to put him to the ban of the empire, unless he would amend his way of life. ^{exerts Winceflaus to reform his conduct;}

THE next affair that engrossed the emperor's attention, was the war between *Ladislaus* king of *Poland*, and the *Teutonic* order, which, tho' generally disadvantageous to the knights, was still maintained by the industry of *Henry de Plavcn*, the grand master, who raised sums of money, by mortgaging to *Winceflaus* some fiefs belonging to the order in *Bohemia*, and even found means to detach the duke of *Lithuania* from the interest of *Poland*. *Ladislaus*, in this emergency, made advances towards a peace, which was accordingly effected, on condition that his *Polish* majesty should relinquish all his pretensions upon *Prussia* to the *Teutonic* order. But he afterwards engaged in a private treaty with

P HEISS, ubi supra.

⁹ Cosmod. ubi supra.

(R) At the same time he granted, by letters patent, to the city of *Nuremberg*, the privilege of keeping the imperial ornaments and the jewels of the crown, which are sent to the coronations of emperors by a solemn deputation from that city (13).

(12) Remarq. sur l'Hist., l. xi. ch. 30.

engages in a treaty with Ladislaus, king of Poland, against the Teutonic order ; marches against the Venetians in Dalmatia. the emperor, who repaired to *Cracovia* on pretence of a visit ; by which agreement the two princes promised to join their forces, invade *Prussia*, destroy the *Teutonic* order, and divide between them the conquered dominions^r. At the same time, both these princes made an offensive and defensive alliance with *Saladine*, cham of the *Tartars*, who engaged to assist them against all their enemies.

SOME time after this agreement, he was obliged to march towards *Dalmatia*, in consequence of a quarrel with the *Venetians*, touching the possession of that country, on which they had laid violent hands, as well as upon many places that belonged to the empire : provoked by these invasions, he marched against them with an army of *Hungarians*, and reduced several castles and strong places ; but as he had, by a public edict, commanded the *German* princes to take the field, and assist him in this war, and not one of them had obeyed the summons, he did not think it prudent to proceed at his own expence ; but concluded a peace with the first opportunity^s. After this treaty, he advanced into

Advances into Lombardy ; and confers with pope John, who convokes a council at Constance.

A. D.

1413.

Lombardy, under various pretences, tho' his sole aim was to finish the negociation which he had begun with pope *John XXIII.* touching the convocation of a general council, by which the peace of the church might be restored, in extinguishing the schism produced from the factions of three pretended popes. Upon this subject, he had several conferences with the legates of *John*, who waited upon him in person at *Placentia*, and then accompanied him at *Lodi*, where they came to a determination of convoking a council. Bulls were accordingly expedited, appointing it to be held at *Constance*, and to be opened on the first day of *November*, in the following year^t.

THE emperor, upon this occasion, published a memorial, inviting all the bishops of Christendom to the council, and promising safe conducts to all those who should think them necessary : he sent ambassadors to *Charles VI.* of *France*, to solicit his personal appearance at this assembly ; he wrote on the same subject to *Benedict XIII.* who had retired into the dominions of *Spain* ; and in a letter to *Gregory XII.* who resided in the kingdom of *Naples*, earnestly desired he would repair to *Constance*, and refer his cause to the decision of an oecumenical council, which he (the emperor) had agreed with *John* to assemble, in order to terminate the fatal disputes of the church^u.

^r DUGL. Hist. Polon. l. xi.

^s AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii.

p. 659, & seq.

^t SPOND. Contin. BARR. t. ii. ad ann. 1415.

^u VOND. HARB. t. vi. p. 5.

OVER and above these precautions, *Sigismund*, overflowing with zeal for the interests of religion, repassed the *Alps*, and made a progress through divers provinces in *Germany*, in order to dispose the minds of the people for concurring with his pious intention of finishing the schism. He reconciled the bishop and chapter with the citizens of *Strasbourg*, and confirmed the privileges granted by his predecessors to the imperial towns united to the prefecture of *Alsace*; but the two antipopes exerted all their endeavours to traverse his design: both protested against the council with great virulence. *Benedict* convoked an assembly at *Perpignan*, where he did not fail to fulminate bulls of excommunication; and *Gregory*, who sojourned at *Rimini*, appeared in public with the pontifical ornaments, and enjoyed the protection of *Ladislaus*, whom he had gained over to his interest.

THIS prince, contrary to the peace which he had lately *Ladislaus*, made with pope *John*, took possession of the city of *Rome*, together with the church-lands, and resolved to make himself master of all *Italy*. With this view he marched towards *Tuscany*, with a powerful army, to act against the *Florentines* and pope *John*, who had retired to *Bologna*; but being attacked with a violent disorder, which was the effect of poison, he retired to *Naples*, where, in a few months, he expired *. The peace of *Italy* being restored by his death, left the pope, cardinals, archbishops, and prelates, at liberty to repair to *Constance*, where *John* arrived in the end of *October*. In the mean time *Sigismund*, who had returned to *Germany*, in order to be crowned before he should set out for the council, being at *Spire* upon some business which had called him thither, granted a safe conduct, on the faith of which *John Huss* repaired to *Constance*, to give an account of his doctrine. Then *Sigismund* set out for *Aix*, where he was crowned on the eighth of *November*; and the ceremony was no sooner performed than he departed, with his empress queen, and a very numerous court, for *Constance*, where he arrived on the twenty-third day of *December*, in the evening (S). Next day he assisted at the midnight mass, which pope *John* celebrated in his pontificals, the emperor himself being clothed in the imperial dalmatic, and performing the office of a deacon, according to the custom on such occasions. On his first arrival

* BARRE, t. vii. p. 144.
ad ann. 1415.

† SPOND. Cont. BARRE, t. ii.

(S) For the particular transactions of this famous council, see the History of the Popes.

*assists at
the council
of Con-
stance.*

at *Constance*, he convoked a general congregation, in which he gave an account of his negotiations with *Gregory* and *Benedict*, and, in particular, gave them to understand, that he had sent a doctor of laws to *Spain*, to expostulate with *Benedict*, who had promised to give the emperor a meeting at *Nice* in *Provence*, in the month of *June*. At the same time, measures were taken for preventing that confusion, which might have arisen from a concourse of above one hundred thousand strangers, who repaired to *Constance* on this occasion; and *Sigismund* left the fathers of the council at free liberty to treat of the affairs of the church.

*John pro-
mises to
renounce
the papacy,
retracts
his pro-
mise, and
flies into
Switzer-
land.*

In the first session, which was held on the sixteenth of *November*, the meeting was prorogued to the second of *March*, in the next year, when they expected the emperor in person; and that day being arrived, the fathers of the council having deliberated upon expedients for removing the schism, and re-establishing the union of the church, concluded, that nothing would so effectually conduce to this salutary end as the resignation of the competitors. *John* himself, who presided in the council, assented to this opinion, and promised authentically to renounce his title, provided *Angelo Corrario*, who had assumed the name of *Gregory XII.* and *Peter de Luna*, distinguished by that of *Benedict XIII.* would imitate him in that act of self-denial. He had no sooner made this declaration, than the emperor, rising from his chair, ran and embraced his feet, applauding him for such a Christian resignation; for which also he was solemnly thanked by the patriarch of *Antioch*, in the name of the whole council; but some days after he repented of this condescension, and, by the advice and assistance of *Frederic* duke of *Austria*, fled from *Constance* in the night, disguised in a lay habit, and retired to *Schaffhausen* ²; whither he was followed by several cardinals, and from whence he afterwards withdrew to the castle of *Luttenberg*. Tho' this sudden retreat at first disconcerted the council, which *John* declared to be dissolved in consequence of his secession, they at length agreed that a council was superior to the pope; and, after many debates and proceedings, confirmed the sentence of his deposition, decreed that no other pope should be chosen without the deliberation and consent of the council; and that he, together with his competitors, *Angelo Corrario* and *Peter de Luna*, should be for ever excluded from the papacy. *John*, finding them determined, thought proper to yield to the torrent, rather than run the risque of meeting with worse treatment in attempting to op-

A. D.
1415.
*The coun-
cil con-
firms his
deposition,
excluding
also Ange-
lo Corra-
rio and
Peter de
Luna
from the
papacy.*

² THEOD. DE NIEM. in Vit. Joan. XXIII. ex Meib. t. i. p. 27.
pose

pose it, and quietly acquiesced in the sentence, freely renouncing the pontificate, the marks of which he immediately resigned. Some days after this resignation, *Gregory XII.* sent a legate to the emperor and council, to renounce his title in the same manner. As for *Frederic*, duke of *Austria*, he had been summoned by the emperor to appear and answer to the charge of being accessory to the flight of *John*; and as he did not think proper to obey, was outlawed, put to the ban of the empire, and divested of his dominions; which the *Swiss* were impowered to subdue for their own benefit^a. They accordingly conquered the country of *Tergow*, which they afterwards refused to restore, upon the emperor's reconciliation with *Frederic*; who was obliged to confirm their conquest by an authentic deed.

The duke of Austria is divested of his dominions.

IN the following sessions of this council, the affair of *John Huss* and *Jerom* of *Prague* was brought upon the carpet; the former, as hath been already said, had imbibed his new doctrine from the writings of *Wickliffe* (T), and converted to his opinions several masters of the university of *Prague*, together with an infinite number of other people. Among others, his sect was espoused by *Jerom*, master of arts, whom he engaged as his colleague, and prevailed upon to preach against the primacy of the pope; who, being apprised of their presumption, had cited them both to appear at *Rome*. Tho' they refused to obey this citation, they afterwards condescended to appear at the council of *Constance*, in order to justify the doctrine they professed. *John Huss*, being provided with a fair conduct from the emperor, attempted to defend the articles of his faith before the fathers of the council, who were disposed to condemn him unheard, when *John* of *Chlum* and *Wincelhaus* of *Duba*, having protested against such unjust proceedings, the emperor sent the count palatine and margrave of *Brandenburg* to desire the cardinals would hear what *Huss* had to say in his own defence. He was accordingly questioned in presence of *Sigismund*, and accused of heresy in thirty-nine articles, part of which he denied, and part he offered

John Huss appears before the council;

A. D. 1415.

is accused of heresy

^a COD. VICT. part ix. fol. 36.

(T) *Wickliffe*, who was principal of *Bahol* college in *Oxford*, wrote and preached against the infallibility and supremacy of the pope, the temporal power of ecclesiastics, the order of mendicants, auricular confession, and the doctrine of transubstantiation, (14).

in thirty-nine articles; convicted, degraded, and condemned to the flames.

to defend; but his voice was drowned by the noise which was purposely made by the fathers of the council (U). At length, being asked if he was willing to abjure all the thirty-nine articles, he answered in the negative. He was immediately declared by the council a fower of sedition, a hardened heretic, a disciple and obstinate defender of *Wickliffe*. As such he was degraded by four bishops, stripped of his sacerdotal habit, and cloathed with another dress. His hair was cut in form of a cross; upon his head was put a paper mitre, painted with the representation of three devils, and he was delivered over to the secular judge, who condemned him and his writings to the flames, and fixed the sixth of *July* for his execution.

Dies with great constancy.

BEING brought to the place of punishment, he was tied to the stake, and surrounded with faggots of wood and bundles of straw, and before they were kindled, the duke of *Bavaria* and the count of *Papenheim* approached, and exhorted him to recant; but as he rejected their advice with disdain, protested his own innocence, and began to declaim against the emperor and fathers of the council, the duke retired, and ordered the executioners to do their duty^b. That his adherents might not carry off his ashes, they were thrown into the *Rhine*; but this precaution did not hinder his followers to take up the earth on which he suffered; of this they transported parcels to their separate homes, and preserved them as sacred relicks. Nay, they protested, in public writings, against the execution, as an act committed contrary to the law of God, of nature, and of nations, as well as to the inclination of the emperor himself. Certain it is, that prince took umbrage at these proceedings, which he thought prejudicial to his honour, on account of the safe conduct which he had granted. But he was given to understand, that his word could not be called in question, because the

Sigismund is displeased, because no regard

^b Chron. Magd. ex MEIB. 353, & seq. AVENT. Ann. l. vii. p. 650. SPOND. Cont. t. ccvi. & seq.

(U) *John Hufs* is said to have here present, and who undertook for the security of my person." So saying, he fixed his eyes upon *Sigismund*, who blushed at this address, as being ashamed of his breach of promise (1).

(1) *Idem ibid.*

council, being superior to the emperor, his safe-conduct had *was paid* been over-ruled and annulled by the sentence of the church, *to his safe-* to which the princes ought to submit in matters of faith *conduct.*

AFTER the execution of *John Hufs*, the council resumed the affair of *Peter de Luna*, who still obstinately refused to quit his pretensions to the papacy. Upon this occasion *Peter de Luna re-* *Sigismund* offered to go to *Spain* in person, and engage the mediation of *Ferdinand*, king of *Arragon*, with whom *Peter* *sign his* had taken refuge, by which he hoped to effect a voluntary renunciation like that of the other two, before the council *pretensions* should proceed to extremity. His journey had before been *to the pa-* resolved upon; but the time and place of meeting were *pacy.* changed. He set out for *Spain*, accompanied by twelve deputies from the council; and on his arrival at *Perpignan*, he *Sigismund* entered into a negotiation with *Peter de Luna*, the result of *undertakes* which was sent to the council, though his interposition had *to mediate* not the desired effect *d.* *that af-* *fair, but* *miscarries.*

THE obstinacy of *Benedict* incensed the emperor to such a degree, that he threatened to obtain by force that assent, which the other refused to give by fair means; and *Benedict*, in consequence of these menaces, retired suddenly to the forests of *Paniscola*, where he resolved to preserve his pontifical dignity to his latest breath. This unexpected flight deprived him of all his partizans. The king of *Arragon*, with all the princes and bishops of his party, sent deputies to the emperor at *Narbonne*, with whom they agreed, that the council should invite all the former adherents of *Benedict* to come to *Constance*, and join their endeavours for re-establishing the peace of the church; and that, on their arrival, a new pope should be chosen. This agreement, known by the name of the *Capitulation of Narbonne*, being transmitted to the fathers in council, was forthwith put in execution; and *Sigismund*, that he might neglect nothing which could contribute to the peace of the church, or the re-establishment of concord among Christian princes, particularly the kings of *France* and *England*, resolved to visit *Charles VI.* by whom he was *He repairs* so magnificently received, that the people took umbrage at *to France,* the honours that were paid to him; for he sat in parliament *and pro-* as if it had been his own tribunal, and created knights by his *ceeds to* sole authority. From thence he crossed the sea to *England.* and proposed a truce between the two crowns, which, however, was not concluded, because in the interim the *English* received an account of their having been worsted by the

A. D.
1416.

^c VONDER. HARDT. t. v. part ii p. 12, 50.
NIEM in vit. Joh. XXIII. p. 34, ex MEIB.

^d THEOD.

French at *Harfleur*; and as they had been very much elated by the victory of *Agincourt*, they could not brook the thoughts of peace, until they should have wiped off the stain of this subsequent disgrace ^e.(X). *France*, in all probability, suspected *Sigismund* of partiality in favour of *England*; for his proposals of mediation were rejected: and indeed that suspicion seems to have been well grounded; for the emperor, before he quitted *England*, engaged in a treaty with king *Henry*, by which he obliged himself to assist the *English* monarch against *Charles* VI. in recovering *Guienne* and *Normandy*; and in consideration of this assistance, the king of *England* promised to compel *Charles*, and some other princes, to do homage to the emperor, for certain countries to which the empire had some old pretensions. On his return to *France*, he, at the earnest intreaty of *Amadeus* VIII. of *Savoy*, erected his county into a duchy, and invested him in the castle of *Chambery* ^f.

In the absence of *Sigismund*, the affair of *Jerom* of *Prague* engaged the attention of the council. This man had repaired to *Constance*, with a design to assist *John Hufs* in making his defence; but perceiving he had nothing to hope from the clemency and justice of the fathers, he resolved to retreat with all expedition into *Bohemia*; but being apprehended upon the road, he was loaded with chains, and brought back to *Constance*, where, in order to avoid the punishment which had been inflicted upon his colleague, he solemnly abjured the heresies of *Wickliffe* and *Hufs*. He afterwards, however, espoused the same doctrines, was, in the twenty-first session of the same council, condemned as a wicked apostate to the flames, and suffered with great constancy and fortitude ^g.

Jerom of
Prague is
burnt for
heresy.

In the public sessions of the council were less frequent in the absence of the emperor, something always occurred to employ the deliberation of the fathers. The bishop of *Trent*, who had been imprisoned by the duke of *Austria*, and deprived of the towns and castles depending on his see, com-

^e Ibid. p. 43. KRANTZ 10. Wand. 23. ^f MONSTREL. lib. i. cap. 164. ^g SPOND. CONT. tom. ii. p. 230.

(X) *Æmilius*, who assigns this reason as an obstacle to the peace, pretends, that 400 *English* were cut in pieces by the *French* at *Harfleur*. Perhaps there may have been some skirmish in which the *English* were worsted; but at the battle of *Harfleur*, which was fought in this very year, the constable of *France*, who had invested the town, was entirely defeated (1).

plained to the council of these outrages; and *Frederic*, who remained as an hostage at *Constance* since his reconciliation with *Sigismund*, was ordered to release the bishop, and restore his lands, on pain of privation. But, instead of complying with this decision, he withdrew privately from *Constance*, and repaired to the *Tyrol*, which he found in great confusion, occasioned by the intrigues of his brother *Ernest*, who had usurped his dominions, and gained over the greatest part of the nobility and clergy to his interest; so that the two brothers began to make preparations for a bloody war.

MEAN while the council, incensed at the refusal and re-
 treat of *Frederic*, complained of his conduct to the emperor, who caused him to be put to the ban; and the bishop of *Lodi*, president of the *Italian* nation at the council, ordered, in the name of the fathers, the syndics of the church of *Trent* to compel *Frederic* to set the bishop at liberty and restore his domains. At the same time *Ernest* resolved to support his usurpation by force of arms; and, abundance of bloodshed must have ensued, had not the neighbouring princes, interposed and brought about an accommodation; in consequence of which *Frederic* recovered the *Tyrol*, and *Ernest* returned to *Stiria*, which was his inheritance ^b.

SIGISMUND, on his return to *Constance*, bestowed the investiture of their fiefs upon *John de Nassau*, archbishop of *Mentz*, the elector of *Saxony*, the count palatine, the count of *Nilembourg*, and the duke of *Pomerania*; and upon this occasion, he conferred upon *Frederic*, burgrave of *Nuremberg*, the electorate of *Brandenburg*, which reverted to the emperor by the death of *Jesse*, marquis of *Moravia*; though this alienation was not made without the murmurs of the *Bohemians*, who alleged, that it was a fief belonging their kingdom: nor did the new elector find the *Brandenburgers* very well disposed to receive him; but in a little time conciliated their affection, by his mild and prudent administration. Among the princes who appeared at *Constance*, he who shone with greatest magnificence was *Frederic*, surnamed the *Warlike*, margrave of *Misnia*, and landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, by his noble qualifications, had acquired the emperor's particular esteem; notwithstanding which they now parted with great animosity. Besides the investiture of *Misnia*, *Frederic* demanded that of some towns in *Bohemia*, which he possessed by right of conquest: and *Sigismund*, who was himself heir of that kingdom, absolutely refused to comply with his desire; so that he left *Constance* in great wrath. But the emperor-

The duke of Austria is put to the ban of the empire. His brother Ernest usurps his dominions.

Frederic, burgrave of Nuremberg, created elector of Brandenburg.
 A. D.
 1417.

Frederic, margrave of Misnia, in dudgeon.

^b VONDER. HARDT. tom. i. p. 200.

appealed him in the sequel, by putting him in possession of the electorate of *Saxony*, vacant by the death of *Albert III.* the last elector of the house of *Anhalt* ¹.

Peter de
Luna de-
posed by the
council,
and Mar-
tin V. e-
lected pope.

AFTER these transactions, the council proceeded against *Peter de Luna* for contumacy; and in the thirty-seventh session, the definitive sentence of his deposition was pronounced and published. Then their next care being to elect a new pope, *Odo* or *Otho Colonna*, a *Roman*, was proposed, and chosen on St. *Martin's* day, whence he took the name of *Martin V.* and his elevation met with universal applause. The conclave was no sooner opened after the election, than the emperor entered, and prostrated himself before the new pope; then his holiness, mounting a white horse, rode in procession to the cathedral, *Sigismund* holding the reins on one side, and the elector of *Brandenburg* on the other: during the cavalcade, the *Jews* of *Constance* did him homage in certain prayers, while certain elders held the pentateuch in his hand. The pope gave them his benediction, saying, "You have a law, but you do not understand it; may the Lord take the veil from before your eyes."

Martin re-
conciles
the empe-
ror with
Frederic,
duke of
Austria.
A. D.
1418.

MARTIN being consecrated and crowned, sent the cardinal of *Pisa* to exhort *Benedict* to resign his pretensions; but all his remonstrances proved ineffectual. Then holding a public consistory in the episcopal palace of *Constance*, he endeavoured in vain to accommodate matters between the dukes of *Bavaria*, who had quarrelled about the division of their dominions; though his endeavours were more successful in reconciling the emperor with the duke of *Austria*, who promised to take the oath of allegiance, and pay 70,000 florins by way of fine to *Sigismund*, who, on his part, undertook to restore him to the possession of those dominions, which he had lost when he was outlawed. In consequence of this agreement, *Frederic* waited upon the emperor at *Constance*, and was absolved, by the pope's order, of the sentence of excommunication which he had incurred, by oppressing and imprisoning the bishop of *Trent*. *Sigismund* restored part of his dominions; but, as we have already observed, the *Swiss* refused to part with what they had conquered, and several towns had been mortgaged by the emperor; so that the duke could not recover them until the debts should be paid. *Sigismund's* finances being very scanty, he was fain to have recourse to various expedients for raising money. He borrowed a considerable sum from the city of *Bruges*; and the *English*, with the consent of the elector palatine, paid him part

¹ BARRE, tom. vii. p. 195.

of the portion of the princess *Blanche*, who was married to that elector ^k. But all these resources being insufficient to defray the expence, pope *Martin*, after having crowned him king of the *Romans* with great solemnity, granted him a tenth of all the ecclesiastical effects in *Germany*, as a remuneration for the pains he had taken to establish the peace of the church; though this imposition gave great offence, and had well nigh involved the empire in trouble and confusion.

WHILE *Sigismund* practised these schemes for filling his exhausted treasury, *Holland*, *Hainault*, and *Brabant*, groaned under the miseries of a civil war, kindled by a contest between *Jaquelina*, daughter and heiress of *William*, duke of *Friesland*, and *John* of *Bavaria*, her uncle, bishop of *Liege*, who pretended to the tutorage of his niece, and even to the succession of these provinces: The country was divided into two factions, one of which espoused the cause of the princess, while the other adhered to the bishop. The duke of *Burgundy* declared for his niece *Jaquelina*, who married the duke of *Brabant*, and obtained a victory over her competitor; while the emperor countenanced *John* of *Bavaria*, who having resigned his bishopric, in consequence of a dispensation from the pope, espoused *Elizabeth de Gorlitz*, duchess of *Luxemburg*, after *Sigismund* had promised to invest him with the dominions in dispute, as fiefs devolved to the empire, upon the demise of the last possessor without male issue. Thus supported, both parties carried on the war with equal vigour. *John* equipped a fleet at *Dordrecht* and the *Brill*, with which he insulted the coast, and surprised some of the towns in *Holland*; while the duke of *Brabant* sent an army into the field, in order to maintain the pretensions of his wife.

His operations, however, were not successful; and *John* having made himself master of *Rotterdam*, the duke was fain to make advances towards a pacification. A congress being accordingly held at *Gorcum*, peace was concluded, on condition that the duke of *Brabant* should appoint *John* of *Bavaria* governor of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friesland*, for the term of three years, and cede to him several towns; in consideration of which *John* renounced his pretensions to *Holland* and *Hainault*. *Sigismund*, for his part, acknowledged that this last province did not hold of the empire, and *Jaquelina* continued in possession of it, without being solicited to do homage for the fief to the emperor of *Germany* ^l.

^k Idem ibid.

^l Hist. de Hainault. p. 375.

A tumult
in Prague
by the
Hussites.

A. D.
1419.

THE important affair of the schism being concluded, every thing else was regulated by the council, which at length broke up in its forty-fifth session. The disputes about religion still raged with greater violence than ever. The decrees against the *Hussites* were no sooner published, than *Winceslaus*, king of *Bohemia*, began to put them in execution; forbidding all communicants to partake of both species; a prohibition which incensed the inhabitants of *Prague* to such a degree, that they raised a desperate tumult, forced the town-house, and murdered the magistrates who were concerned in publishing this order.

THE news of this massacre filled the court of *Winceslaus* with the utmost consternation, and made such an impression on that pusillanimous prince, that he was seized with an apoplexy, of which he died in a few days. *Sigismund* being acknowledged king of *Bohemia*, conferred the regency upon his brother's widow *Sophia*, who fortified herself in the castle of *Wyschade* against the *Thaborites*, or followers of *Zisca*, who was at this time general of the *Hussites*, and revenged the death of *Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, by committing the most terrible outrages.

A. D.
1420.

Sigismund
enters that
kingdom,

WITHOUT entering into the particulars of the war, in which *Bohemia* was involved by this persecution, we shall only observe, that *Sigismund* having succeeded to his brother *Winceslaus* in the kingdom of *Bohemia*, was, after his coronation, obliged to employ that army against the *Hussites*, which he had raised for an expedition against the *Turks*. He could not reduce them to obedience; for as they had been incensed to a degree of enthusiastic rage, by the tyranny which had been exercised over their consciences, and the cruelty with which they and their brethren had been persecuted, they were now also encouraged to persevere in their own defence, by several advantages which they had gained over the king's troops, by the valour and conduct of *John Zisca*, who is said to have retorted those barbarities upon the catholic party, to have sacrificed the priests, and to have destroyed the churches with fire and sword^m. Nor was this famous leader's sagacity inferior to his valour. *Sophia*, being informed that he was in the territory of *Pilsen* with an handful of *Thaborites*, assembled a body of troops, which were reinforced by the lord of *Schwamberg*, and marched against him; in hope of surprizing him unawares; but the event did not answer his expectation. *Zisca*, knowing himself too weak for such a formidable opposition, had recourse to a stratagem,

^m Chron. Magd. ex Mæib. tom. ii. p. 255.

which

which succeeded according to his wish. He posted his troops ^{and is de-} behind hedges, in such a manner, that the emperor's cavalry ^{seated by} could not act against them without dismounting; and the ^{Zisca,} women, according to his direction, went forth from this fort ^{chief of} of intrenchment with bundles of linen in their arms, like so ^{the Huf-} many children in swaddling cloaths, whom they offered as ^{sites.} hostages for their husbands: perceiving that the imperial horsemen had alighted in order to attack on foot, they found means to loose their bundles, by which the spurs and arms of the troopers were so entangled, that they could not disengage themselves; and Zisca, seizing that opportunity, attacked them with great fury, cut in pieces the best part of them, and obliged the rest to consult their safety by flightⁿ.

ТНО' Sigismund was very well informed of all these dis- Sigismund orders, he did not think himself in a condition to repress ^{puts the} them, because the fear of a *Turkish* invasion detained him in ^{frontiers} his kingdom of *Hungary*: and indeed *Mahomet* I. who re- ^{of Hun-} sided at *Adrianople*, was employed in preparations for mak- ^{gary in a} ing an irruption into that kingdom; but the vigilance of Si- ^{posture of} gismund, who fortified all the frontier places, disconcerted ^{defence a-} his design, and he turned his forces against the *Greeks*. The ^{gainst the} emperor was no sooner delivered of this apprehension, than he ^{Turks.} sent succours to enable *Sophia* to act against Zisca, who was ^{Sends suc-} by this time deprived of his eyesight, and the arrival of these ^{cours to} troops enabled him to obtain a truce for four months, at the ^{the regent} expiration of which the *Hussites* broke out in a general re- ^{of Bohe-} volt against the emperor. Alarmed at this rebellion, Sigis- ^{mia.} mund convoked a diet at *Brin*, the capital of *Moravia*, where ^{Convokes a} he received affectionate addressesⁿ from all the towns and no- ^{diet at} blemen of *Bohemia*; but absolutely refused liberty of con- ^{Brin.} science to the inhabitants of *Prague*, a great number of whom retired to their general at *Thabor*, who continued to surprize and pillage the towns and castles belonging to the catholics, so as to find his followers and his fame daily increased. He ^{Zisca de-} obtained a complete victory over *Albert*, duke of *Austria*, ^{feats the} and *Henry de Kravatz*, commandant of *Moravia*; then he ^{duke of} made himself master of the new town of *Prague*, and re- ^{Austria.} duced the citadel of *Wifrhade*, which, however, was afterwards retaken by the imperialistsⁿ.

WHILE the chief of the *Hussites* proceeded in his opera- War car- tions with such rapidity of success, *Lower Germany* was ex- ried on by posed to the calamities of war, by a quarrel between *Eric*, *Eric, king* king of *Denmark*, and the princes of *Helfstein*, who refused ^{of Den-} to hold the duchy of *Sleswic* as a fief of the *Danish* crown. ^{mark, a-} ^{gainst the}

ⁿ Hist. Hufs, t. i. l. 6.

ⁿ Idem ibid.

princes of
Holstein.

They were supported in their right of independency by their uncle *Henry*, duke of *Brunswic-Lunenburgh*, and the dukes of *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburgh*, and *Stetin*; and though the emperor decided in favour of the *Danish* king, the princes chose rather to hazard the determination of arms, than comply with a sentence, which they deemed oppressive and unjust. *Eric* equipped a formidable fleet, and assembled a numerous army, with which he marched into the duchy of *Sleswic*, where he built several forts, and gained other advantages; while the counts of *Holstein* and their allies, reinforced by the *Frieslanders*, *Humburghers*, and *Henry* of *Osnabrug*, took the field, in order to oppose his operations. The war was carried on with various success for some time, until *Eric* was totally defeated in the battle fought at *Immerwed* in *Jutland*, and compelled to sue for a truce, during which he intreated the emperor to act the part of mediator between him and his enemies; and, lest his interposition should not prove effectual, he strengthened his interest, by forming alliances with the towns of *Wandalia*, which afterwards enabled him to maintain the war ^P.

Sigismund
marches
into Bohe-
mia,

and is de-
feated by
Zisca.

BUT, before *Sigismund* could effect this accommodation, he was obliged to take measures for appeasing the troubles of *Bohemia*, which still groaned under the miseries of a religious war. With this view he assembled a body of troops, and being joined by *Frederic*, elector of *Brandenburg*, *William* and *Frederic the Warlike*, marquisses of *Misnia*, *Albert*, duke of *Austria*, and the princes of *Bavaria*, he invested *Prague*, which was possessed by the *Thaborites*; but in one of his attacks he was repulsed by *Zisca* with great slaughter, and obliged to retreat into *Moravia*, while the *Hussites* undertook the siege of *Wistrhade*, in which they proceeded with incredible vigour. *Sigismund* having recruited his army in *Moravia*, marched to the relief of this fortress, and attacking *Zisca* in his intrenchments, had the mortification to see his whole army cut in pieces.° That same day the citadel of *Wistrhade* surrendered to the *Hussites*, who, elevated with the repeated advantages they had obtained over *Sigismund*, resolved to choose another sovereign, who should maintain them in their religious liberties. They accordingly, by a solemn embassy, offered the crown of *Bohemia* to *Jagellon*, king of *Poland*; and he declining the proffer, they made a tender of it to *Corebut*, nephew to the duke of *Lithuania*: and in the mean time, until that prince should assume the

reins of government, they chose a regency of twenty persons, and afterwards to take charge of the administration.

THE emperor, alarmed at these proceedings, sent a commissary to their diet, with proposals of accommodation, which they rejected: while the army of crusaders, raised in Germany to war against the *Hussites*, and commanded by the archbishop of *Triers*, was defeated and dispersed by the invincible *Zisca*. *Sigismund* in person had no better success: he levied another army, advanced into *Bohemia*, made himself master of *Cuttenburg*, and resolved to besiege *Breda*, when *Zisca* attacking him with his usual impetuosity, routed the imperialists, of whom a great number was slain, acquired as much plunder as loaded forty waggons, and compelled the emperor to take refuge in *Hungary*.

IT was immediately after this battle that *Corebut* made his entry into *Prague*, where the catholics protested against his election, which was equally disagreeable to the *Thaborites* under *Zisca*, who professed themselves enemies to monarchical government. The first step he took was to besiege *Carlsstein*, whither the catholics had transported the crown; but the besieged made such an obstinate defence, that he was obliged to abandon the enterprize, especially as he understood some disturbances were raised in *Prague* by the *Thaborites*, whom he quelled and punished with great severity.

ZISCA, incensed at his behaviour, and jealous of his power, exhorted the *Hussites* to send him back to his own country; and they refusing to close with this advice, he resolved to ruin the city of *Prague*. As a previous step to the execution of this design, he defeated the count *de Vartemberg*, who endeavoured to hinder him from surprizing *Graditz*, which he afterwards entered in triumph. He expelled from the kingdom *Albert* of *Austria*, to whom the emperor had ceded *Moravia*, ravaged the circle of *Pilsen*, defeated *Corebut*, compelled that prince to abdicate the crown of *Bohemia*, and entered *Prague*, where he was received with great splendour and magnificence. In a word, the repeated victories of this chieftain compelled *Sigismund* to propose such honourable and advantageous terms of peace, that *Zisca* set out in order to conclude the accommodation, in a personal conference with the emperor; but he was unfortunately infected with the plague, of which he died upon the road. His death, no doubt, produced a manifest change in the affairs of the *Hussites*. Nevertheless their resolution did not fail; nor did they slacken in their zeal for the common cause,

which they cherished to such a degree of superstitious policy, as to stretch the skin of their deceased captain upon a drum, that the sound might awake the remembrance of his valour, and inspire them with the notion that they still marched to battle under the auspices of *Zisca* †.

The emperor pronounces a final sentence against the princes of Holstein.

SIGISMUND, instead of prosecuting the *Bohemian* war, indulged the indolence of his disposition at *Buda*, where he was visited by *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, who summoned the counts of *Holstein* to the tribunal of the emperor, and obtained a final sentence, importing, that all the southern *Jutland*, comprehending the towns of *Sleswic* and *Gottorp*, with the *Danish* forest, the isle of *Alsén*, and the province commonly called *Frischiden*, with all their rights and dependencies, did belong, under the title of a direct and profitable domain, to the crown of *Denmark* *. In the same assembly at *Buda*, *Sigismund* determined a dispute between the duke of *Savoy* and the prince of *Orange*, which last laid claim to the county of *Geneva*, in right of his great aunt; but, as the emperor had already granted the investiture of this county to *Amadeus VIII.* he now decided the process in his favour, and forbade *Lewis de Chalon*, prince of *Orange*, to assume the quality or arms belonging to the count of *Geneva* †.

The Teutonic order degenerates from the valour of their predecessors.

ABOUT this period the knights of the *Teutonic* order, of which some account hath already been given, degenerating from the courage and virtue of their predecessors, lost a great part of *Prussia*, which was wrested from them by the *Poles*, who had defeated them in several engagements. From this date we may derive the decay of the knights in those countries; for they continued to sustain one loss on the back of another, and to forfeit their reputation more and more, notwithstanding some assistance which they received from *Sigismund*, in the heat of his operations against the *Hussites*; which last entering *Silesia*, and separating into three bodies, at the same time attacked *Hungary*, *Poland*, and *Austria*, which they ravaged without mercy †.

The Hussites ravage Hungary, Poland, and Austria. Troubles in Holland and Brabant.

WHILE *Bohemia* continued a prey to these ravages, *Holland* and *Brabant* did not enjoy tranquillity. These unhappy provinces were exposed to the cruelties of a civil war, by the partizans of *John of Bavaria* and the adherents of *Jaquelina*, who exercised all sorts of violence upon each other. That prince, disgusted by the duke of *Brabant* her husband, had prevailed upon *Benedict*, the antipope, to annul the marriage,

* THEOB. Bell. Huss. p. 115.

† Hist. Gen. de Savoye, t. i. p. 462.

BAPON, l. ii. p. 285.

* PONTAN. Hist. Dan.

† SPOND. Cont.

and actually given her hand to the duke of *Gloucester*, brother of *Henry V.* king of *England*, who resolved to recover by force of arms the dominions of his new wife, which were in possession of her former husband. The duke of *Brabant* made preparations to oppose his progress; and being assisted underhand by *Philip*, duke of *Burgundy*, defeated the troops which the duke of *Gloucester* had sent to support the interest of the princefs. Her last marriage was dissolved by a sentence of pope *Martin*; but as the duke of *Brabant* died in a few months after the decision, *Jaquelina* flattered herself with the hope of taking peaceable possession of her own dominions. In this disappointment, however, she was mistaken. The duke of *Burgundy* had employed emissaries in *Hainault*, *Friesland*, *Holland*, and *Zealand*, to detach their inclination from her government; and they succeeded so well in their endeavours, that the greatest part of the nobility and people refused to acknowledge her as their sovereign. In this emergency she referred her case to the duke, who, before he would undertake the office of mediator, obliged her to put the government of her dominions in his hands, and declare him her successor.

Jaquelina declares the duke of Burgundy her successor.

In this manner *Philip* acquired *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friesland*. He had already purchased the reversion of *Zutphen* and *Namure*; and he inherited the duchies of *Brabant*, *Lothier*, *Limbourg*, and the marquisate of *Antwerp*, by the death of his kinsman *Philip* of *Brabant*, who died without issue. All these acquisitions, added to *Flanders*, *Artois*, the two *Burgundies*, and several towns situated upon the *Somme*, rendered *Philip* one of the most powerful princes of *Europe* *.

A. D.
1435.

BOHEMIA was still in agitation. The fanaticks were divided into three bodies, which assumed the appellations of *the Thaborites*, *Orphans*, and *Horebites*; and their chief general was *Procopius the Shaven*, whom *Zisca* had recommended as his successor in command. This leader, who had been a priest, seemed to emulate his predecessor in courage, capacity, cruelty, enthusiasm, and success. He reduced the town of *Grazditz* to ashes, committed terrible outrages against the catholics, defeated the duke of *Austria*, and obtained a complete victory over a numerous army which had been raised by the princes of *Germany*, and attacked the *Thaborites* in their intrenchments. After having obtained this signal advantage, *Procopius* reduced *Kamenitz*, routed *Meinard de Maison Neuve*, pillaged *Austria*, took *Ritzen* on the confines

Progress of the Thaborites in Bohemia.
A. D.
1426.

* Hist. de Hainault, l. xii.

of *Moravia*, and nothing seemed capable of resisting the torrent of his arms and his fortune.

Sequel of the troubles in the north of Germany. THE war in the north kept pace with the troubles in *Germany*. The princes of *Holstein* refusing to comply with the decision of the emperor touching *Sleswic*, *Eric* levied a numerous army, in order to maintain his pretensions, which, by the bye, were not very justly founded, inasmuch as neither he nor *Sigismund* had alleged any good reason to prove, that *Sleswic* alone was a personal fief, when all the other fiefs of the empire were hereditary. The towns of *Wandalia*, which had formerly espoused his interest, conscious of *Sigismund's* partial decision, and tired of a long war, which interrupted their commerce and laid waste their country, presented a remonstrance to *Eric*, intreating him to listen to equitable terms of accommodation; but he paying little regard to their representations, they declared for the counts of *Holstein*, and equipped a considerable fleet for their service. Hostilities were immediately recommenced; and though the allies sustained some disadvantages, *Eric* not only made advances to an accommodation with the towns, but also prevailed upon the emperor to give them notice, that, as almost all the princes and towns of the empire had resolved to join their forces for quelling the sedition in *Bohemia*; it was incumbent upon them to make peace with the king of *Denmark*, that he, as well as they, might be at liberty to join in this confederation; and that in case they should obstinately persist in acting offensively against his *Danish* majesty, he, the emperor, would take effectual measures to punish them for their contumacy and disobedience. In order to strengthen this intimation, he sent *Nicholas Stack* to the city of *Lubeck*, with proposals of peace to the senate; from thence he repaired to the counts of *Holstein*, who insisted upon the king of *Denmark's* declaring *Sleswic* an hereditary fief; and as for *Eric*, he agreed to comply with every thing the emperor should propose. A congress was appointed at *Niköping*, in the isle of *Falster*; but as hostilities were not suspended, the conferences produced no effect, because the demands of the parties concerned rose or fell according to the success of their arms, which sometimes declared for one side, and sometimes for another. The princes of *Holstein* offered to refer their cause to the determination of the pope; but rejected the emperor as judge or arbitrator, because he was related to the king of *Denmark*. *Sigismund*, on the other hand, forbade all the ecclesiastical judges whatever to take cognizance of this dispute, and or-

The emperor endeavours to mediate a peace between Eric and the counts of Holstein.

Conferences begun at Niköping.

dered the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, together with the duke of *Lunenburg*, to support *Eric* with their whole force, and compel the counts to obey the imperial decree. Perhaps this vigorous step contributed to detach the cities of *Stralsund* and *Rostock* from the confederacy; for they made a separate peace with *Eric*, who, about this period, gained some advantages over the allies; but the negotiations begun at *Nikoping*, and afterwards carried on at *Helsenbourg*, proved altogether ineffectual.²

They produce no effect.

A. D.

1427.

INDEED both parties were extremely obstinate; nor did they abstain from the most virulent recrimination. The confederated towns accused *Eric* of having abolished the privileges and interrupted the freedom of trade, of oppressing the princes of *Holstein*, and of being author of a war that desolated the north of *Germany*. On the other hand, the king of *Denmark* reproached them as the favourers of rebellion, not only in the north, but also in *Bohemia*, where the *Thaborites* still carried all before them, under the conduct of *Procopius the Shaven*. Not but these sectaries were by this time divided into two factions, one of which, called the *Calixtins*, had favoured the return of *Corebut*, though they now shut him up in a monastery, on suspicion of having carried on an intelligence with *Procopius*.

Both parties have recourse to recrimination.

Procopius still dominates in Bohemia. Corebut is shut up in a convent.

DURING the captivity of this prince, the *Thaborites* and *Orphans* ravaged *Silesia*, took a number of strong places, defeated the imperial army sent thither to reduce them, under the command of *Henry*, cardinal of *Winchester*, made an irruption into *Moravia*, which they laid waste; then pillaged the circle of *Glatz*, and proceeded in such an uninterrupted course of victory, that the emperor was fain to sue for peace, in a deputation to *Procopius*, who gave the deputies audience at *Cuttemberg*, and was by this time heartily tired of a war, which kept him in a continual alarm. He prevailed upon the different orders of the kingdom to assemble at *Prague*, and proposed that they should receive *Sigismund* for their king, provided he would indulge them with liberty of conscience. In a word, he sent some noblemen of his adherents with proposals of peace to the emperor, who was then at *Moravia*. A general truce was agreed to for three months, during which a diet was convoked at *Presburg*, where *Procopius* appeared as chief of the *Bohemian* deputation, and demanded, in the name of his constituents, that they should be allowed to communicate of both species; that *Sigismund*

A. D.

1428.

The emperor sends a deputation to the Thaborites.

A diet convoked at Presburg.

1429.

² MEURSIUS Hist. Dan. ad an. 1328.

should confirm all their privileges, and promise upon oath to defend them against all innovation.

The conferences break up, and hostilities are recommenced.

The Thaborites are everywhere successful.

To these demands the emperor replied, that the first article was not in his power; and that, before he could grant the rest, he must examine into the nature of those immunities to which they alluded, and if he should find them equitable, he would confirm them without hesitation. This answer was deemed evasive, and even interpreted into a refusal by the *Thaborites*; so that the negotiation was laid aside, and hostilities recommenced. The *Hussites*, to the number of 20,000 horse and 30,000 foot, commanded by *Procopius*, *William de Rostka*, and *John Smirzlik*, entered *Misnia*, which they ravaged with fire and sword; and having routed *Pollnitz*, general of the troops sent to the relief of that province by the emperor, subdued one place after another, until the whole country was reduced and pillaged. From thence they marched into *Thuringia*, which, finding in a posture of defence, they immediately quitted, in order to fall upon *Francia*, where they ravaged the duchy of *Cobourg*, obliged a number of princes and towns to redeem themselves from plunder, and then returned to *Bohemia* with a very considerable booty ^a.

Divisions among the princes of the empire.

A. D.
1430.

HAD the princes of the empire united against these adventurers, their career, in all probability, would have been stopped long before this period; but such unanimity was prevented by intestine divisions and feuds that hardly ever ceased to rage among the towns and noblemen. *Conrad*, archbishop of *Mentz*, having been appointed *Sigismund's* vicar in the empire, the electors of *Saxony* and the *Palatinate* took umbrage at his being invested with a dignity to which they claimed pretensions; and he prudently resigned the office, rather than endanger the public peace: but, notwithstanding his peaceful disposition, he was afterwards involved in an obstinate war with the landgrave of *Hesse*. *Ernest* and *Lewis*, dukes of *Bavaria*, had been for several years at variance about some fiefs of that province; and the electorate of *Triers* was subjected to the horrors of a civil war; by two competitors for the archbishopric ^b.

THE kingdom of *Hungary* was no less exposed to continual alarms from the incursions of the *Turks*, under *Anurath II.* who, without paying any regard to the truce subsisting between him and *Sigismund*, committed terrible out-

^a BYZANTIUS *Diarium Belli Huss.*

^b BARRY, t. vii. p.

rages in *Servia*, and generally defeated the small bodies of troops which the emperor sent to oppose his progress. All Sigismund's remonstrances to the sultan having proved ineffectual, Sigismund had recourse to *Uladislaus*, king of *Poland*, and his brother *Withond*, grand duke of *Lithuania*, with whom he had an interview at *Lutzko* in *Upper Vohinia*, where a congress was opened to deliberate upon the affairs of *Hungary*, and the reduction of the rebels in *Bohemia*: but the Poles seemed extremely backward in engaging himself in these troubles. He had no affection for the person of Sigismund, who had supported the *Teutonic* order in their enterprises against the *Poles*; and he was far from being desirous of entailing upon himself a war with the *Hussites* of *Bohemia*, who were by this time so much accustomed to victory, and even deemed altogether invincible. He therefore evaded the solicitations of the emperor when he demanded succours, and proposed, that the method of negotiation should be tried, preferably to the hazards of war.

At this assembly Sigismund resolved to erect the duchy of *Herefolves Lithuania* into a kingdom; and *Withond*'s vanity was so much flattered by the proposal, that his brother *Uladislaus* in vain used all his rhetoric and influence to divert him from such an extravagant project: nor did he pay the least regard to the remonstrances of the *Poles*, who gave him to understand, that they would never consent to any scheme so prejudicial to their country, which, by the erection of *Luthania* into a kingdom, would be dismembered of one of its fairest provinces. *Uladislaus*, perceiving the obstinacy of his brother, solicited the interposition and good offices of pope *Martin V.* who, in pathetic letters to Sigismund and *Withond*, conjured them to desist from the prosecution of a design which would certainly kindle a civil war in *Europe*, and involve their allies in confusion and calamity. The emperor and duke lent a deaf ear to all these insinuations, and the day was fixed for the coronation; when *Uladislaus*, thinking it incumbent upon him to exert himself on this occasion, caused the emperor's envoys to be apprehended in their journey to *Lithuania*, while all the nobility of *Poland* took arms and distributed themselves in different bodies, in order to guard the passages, and oppose the progress of Sigismund's ambassadors, who had halted in *Frankfort* on the *Oder*.

Withond, finding it would be impracticable for him to obtain the crown without the consent of the *Poles*, affected to lay aside the scheme, reconciled himself with his brother, and died at *Trocko*, whither he had accompanied *Uladislaus*, who had come to make him a friendly visit.

WHILE this idle scheme was on the carpet, the *Turks* extended their devastations with impunity, and the *Thaborites* ravaged *Bohemia* and the neighbourhood without controul c.

A crusade
published
against
them.

A. D.
1431.

POPE *Martin* being informed of this their progress, had sent orders to cardinal *Julian*, who was legate *a latere* at the court of *Sigismund*, to press the princes of *Germany* to engage in the crusade which he had ordained against those heretics. It was accordingly published anew at the diet of *Nuremberg*, where the emperor had assembled the electors and other princes, ecclesiastic as well as secular, a great many of whom embarked as volunteers in the expedition; and that each might contribute proportionably to the expence, *Sigismund*, with their own consent, made a regulation, which is the first register that ever was made for distinguishing the quota of money or soldiers to be furnished by each prince and state, not only for this purpose, but also for every other occasion, in which the interest of the empire might be concerned. In consequence of this regulation, the princes prepared for the war against the *Hussites*, which they undertook with the more eagerness, because they were excited by fresh instances of *Eugenius IV.* who had succeeded *Martin V.* lately deceased. The army which they assembled consisted of 40,000 horse and the same number of infantry: the emperor bestowed the command upon *Frederic*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, and the legate resolved to attend the expedition in person. With these forces they marched into *Bohemia*, and committed horrible barbarities upon the *Hussites* that fell in their way; but as soon as the forces of that sect appeared, they were seized with an universal panic, and fled with great precipitation, notwithstanding all the remonstrances, prayers, and threats, of the legate, who finding his endeavours ineffectual, thought proper to fly with the rest. Such was the hurry and trepidation with which they fled, that all their baggage, furniture, and riches, together with the cross of the legation, and vestments of the legate, fell into the hands of the enemy d.

The forces
of the em-
pire march
into Bohe-
mia, and
are routed.

ALBERT of *Austria*, who had begun his march in order to reinforce the imperial army, was obliged to return to *Moravia*, and thence to *Austria*, before *Procopius*, surnamed *the Little*, in contradistinction to the other of that name, who had acquired the epithet of *Great Chieftain*. He found all the villages abandoned, and pillaged the whole country

c DUGLASS. Hist. Polon. l. ii. lib. vi. ÆN. Hist. Boem. c. xlviii. lib. iv. c. 52.

d Cochl. in Hist. Huss. Mechnov. in reb. Polonic.

without opposition. Then joining his namesake, they entered *Hungary*, where they reduced several places, and enriched themselves with booty; but some disputes arising between the *Orphans* and *Thaborites*, the two generals parted. *Procopius the Shaven* marching towards *Moravia*, while the other remained in *Hungary*, though it would have been more for his advantage to retire with the plunder he had acquired; for the noblemen of *Hungary* no sooner understood that the *Hussites* were divided, than they took the field, under the command of *Rozgon*, governor of *Hava*, and advancing to the river *Wag* gave battle to the *Orphans*, who were intirely defeated; so that scarce 2000 returned to *Bohemia* with *Procopius* ^e.

The Hussites enter Hungary, and are defeated.

CARDINAL *Julian*, after his defeat, returned to *Nuremberg*, and advised *Sigismund* to summon the *Bohemians* to the council at *Basil*, in which he, the cardinal, was appointed to preside. Pope *Martin V.* had nominated *Julian* as his representative at this assembly, to concert measures for abolishing heresy, and restoring the tranquillity of the church; and this nomination was now confirmed by his successor *Eugenius IV.* who, nevertheless, resolved to transfer the council from *Basil* to *Bologna*, where he might preside in person. His pretence for this translation was, that it would facilitate the union of the *Greek* and *Roman* churches: but his real motive was the dread of the *Hussite* interest, and the armies of *Austria* and *Burgundy*, which hovered over the city of *Basil*. In vain did the cardinal represent to his holiness the bad consequences that would attend such a translation; in vain were his representations supported by repeated remonstrances of the emperor, who refused all the reasons *Eugenius* urged for removing that assembly. The pope issued a bull for dissolving the council of *Basil*, and convoking another at *Bologna*; while the fathers, already assembled, continued their session, to which the *Bohemians* were invited in consequence of *Julian's* advice ^f.

Pope Eugenius issues a bull for dissolving the council at Basil.

MEAN while the emperor assembled a diet at *Presburg*, to which he summoned the *Bohemians*, who sent thither deputies, though they could not be persuaded to enter the town, lest they should be detained, but sojourned in tents pitched in the open field, where the conferences were begun with all the marks of sincerity on both sides. *Sigismund* expressed his surprize and concern at their rejecting his administration, after they had been governed by his father and grandfather;

Diet at Presburg.

^e THEOB. Bell. Huff. c. 77. ^f PAGI, Brev. Gest. Pont. Rom. t. iv. p. 527.

The Bohemians insist upon a security for the personal safety of their deputies.

An assembly at Egra.

A. D.
1432.

and promised to redress all their grievances, provided they would acknowledge him as their sovereign. The deputies replied, that their refusal of him was not owing to any aversion which the nation entertained for his person, but the effect of their being overawed by the adverse armies which had ravaged the kingdom. They said the *Bohemians* had no objection to the proposal of sending deputies to *Basil*, provided proper security could be given for the safety of their persons: but that they had a right to take this precaution, considering the treatment of *John Huss* and *Jerome of Prague*, who had been burnt at *Constance*, in direct opposition to public faith.

THE emperor, who could not help assenting in his heart to the truth of what they alleged, assured them he would convoke the assembly at *Egra*, where they should be informed of the intentions of the council, and satisfied with respect to the security they demanded. Accordingly, the *Bohemian* deputies and those of the council, together with *Frederic*, elector of *Brandenburg*, *John*, duke of *Bavaria*, and several other princes of the empire, repairing to that place at the appointed time, the *Hussites* demanded hostages of the nobility, for the safety of those they should send to the council; and, after great and violent altercation, the princes and deputies assembled agreed to engage their word for the safety of the *Bohemians*, and a safe-conduct was expedited for them at *Basil* in the most ample form.

Cardinal Julian repairs to the council of Basil, and Sigismund to Italy. He is crowned at Milan.

Is incensed against the duke of Milan.

SIGISMUND having taken these measures for restoring the quiet and tranquillity of *Bohemia*, and appointed *William*, duke of *Bavaria*, protector of the council, chose this conjuncture to pass the *Alps*, and repair to *Milan*. In that city he received the iron crown from the hands of the archbishop, together with the ring, the sword, the scepter, and the golden apple; though *Philip*, duke of *Milan*, would not assist at the ceremony, but staid at *Placentia*, on pretence of an indisposition. The real cause, however, was a grudge which he had conceived against the emperor, whom he suspected of an attachment to the *Florentines* and *Venetians*, the professed enemies of *Philip*. By this suspicion he was altogether alienated from *Sigismund*, who had come to *Italy* on his invitation, though he now refused to admit him with a few attendants into the city of *Milan*, which he wanted to see out of

pure curiosity^a. This instance of disrespect, together with the non-performance of the promise he had made to assist the emperor with money and troops, provoked *Sigismund* to such

^a THEOB. Bell. Hussit. ubi supra.
par. 5. BLOND. iii. Dec. 4 & 5.

^b COR. Hist. Mediol.

a degree, that he became the duke's implacable enemy. Nevertheless, he found it convenient to dissemble his resentment, and even to reject the offers of the *Genoese*, who having been for some years oppressed by *Visconti*, made a tender of their city and territory to *Sigismund*, which he declined accepting, that he might not add such a powerful prince as the duke of *Milan* to the number of his enemies.

MEAN while he employed his whole attention in compromising the difference between pope *Eugenius* and the council. The fathers assembled at *Basil* demanded his protection against the pope, who had dissolved the council; and this being granted, they sent a legate to persuade *Eugenius* to annul what he had done in prejudice of their deliberations; or in case he should not revoke the dissolution of the council within the term of ninety days, to declare they would proceed against him in the severest manner. He was accordingly declared contumacious, and summoned to appear in person, or by proxy, to give an account of his conduct; and as he did not comply with this citation, they certainly would have proceeded to his deposition, had not the emperor interposed his mediation, in consequence of which the pope confirmed the council of *Basil*.

He at the same time empowered them to concert measures for the reformation of manners, as well as the extinction of heresy; while *Sigismund*, having succeeded in his endeavours, resolved to be crowned at *Rome*, after having wintered at *Parma* and *Piacenza*. When he approached the city, the pope sent out several cardinals, prelates, and *Roman* noblemen, together with a great part of the clergy and people, who conducted him to *Rome* with great magnificence. He was received by the pope at the steps of the *Vatican* church, with the usual ceremony, and on the day of *Pentecost* crowned with the appellation of emperor and *Augustus*¹, after he had taken an oath of fidelity to the church, and truckled to the pope in all his demands. Having staid some time at *Rome*, he retired to *Ferrara*, and afterwards to *Mantua*, where he created *John Francisco Gonzaga*, lord of that city, a marquis, and allowed him to bear the imperial arms. He afterwards crossed the *Alps*; and, what was singular in his journey, he quitted *Italy* in enmity to the duke of *Milan*, who had invited him to that country, and in friendship with the *Venetians*, whom he had formerly mortally hated.² (A).

A. D.

1433.

Crowned
at Rome.Creates
Gonzaga
marquis
of Man-
tua.

AT

¹ SPOND. Cont. tom. ii. p. 313.

² BLOND. iii. Dec. 5.

ANT. tit. xxii. c. 10. sect. 1.

(A) While the emperor was have arrived from the *Turks* with at *Basil*, ambassadors are said to offers of a perpetual peace, and mag-

Negotiation between the fathers of the council and the Hussites, AT this time the fathers of the council of *Basil* were employed in a negotiation with the deputies of the *Hussites*, whom they wanted to re-inclose within the pale of the church. They had sent *Procopius the Shaven*, at the head of their deputies, to *Basil*; and after a fruitless dispute with the catholics, which lasted fifty days, he returned to *Bohemia*, made an alliance with the king of *Poland*, and ravaged the new march of *Brandenburg*, belonging to the knights of the *Teutonic* order, whom they considered as the emperor's adherents.

who are defeated by the catholics. DURING these deliberations, the emperor being informed that the *Hussites* began to disagree among themselves, and that the barons and nobility of that sect, who could not bear the tyranny of their chiefs, had separated from the rest in a distinct body, he resolved to draw towards *Bohemia*, in order to take the advantage of this division. Besides, he foresaw that the difference between the council and the pope could never be totally determined, while the first persisted in the opinion of its superiority over the pope, and he continued to arrogate to himself a pre-eminence over the council. His imperial majesty therefore set out for *Germany*, and on his arrival at *Ulm*, received information that the *Thaborites*, who had for several months been engaged in the siege of *Pilsen*, had been totally defeated by the catholics, whom the *Bohemian* barons, already mentioned, had joined in this expedition.

THE *Calixtins*, and almost all the nobility of *Bohemia*, agreed to the famous treaty of peace called *Compactata*, which was drawn up by the bishops in council; but the *Orphans* and *Thaborites* opposing it with all their might, *Risemberg* and *Maison Neuve*, at the head of the noblesse, attacked them unawares in the city of *Prague*, and cut 20,000 of them in pieces on the spot. Flushed with this success, they marched against *Procopius the Shaven*, who was employed in the siege of *Pilsen*, and charged him such fury, that, notwithstanding the incredible efforts he made, his troops were totally defeated, he himself being mortally wounded, and his namesake left dead on the field of battle. The bravest of

magnificent presents to *Sigismund*, who ordered a throne to be erected in the church, where he received them with great state, embraced the proposals of peace, accepted the presents, acted munificently towards the ambassadors, and sent by them royal testimonies of his esteem for their monarch (1).

(1) Krantz, Sax. ii. c. 22.

the prisoners were burnt alive in a large barn; those that fled were pursued, and massacred without mercy; and, in a word, the whole sect was utterly exterminated. A. D. 1434.

SIGISMUND did not fail to avail himself of this conjuncture, in his endeavours to regain the affection of both parties; and he managed matters with such dexterity, by means of ambassadors, that they afterwards owned him as the lawful heir of his brother *Winceflaus*: and when he advanced as far as *Ratisbon*, to hold a general diet of the empire, the deputies of the states of *Bohemia*, and of the remains of the *Thaborites*, went thither, and did homage to him as to their king. But, in the mean time, he was obliged to employ his attention in remedying other disorders of the empire. Lewis, duke of *Bavaria*, of *Ingoldstadt*, being accused of tyranny, extortion, peculation, robbery, and sacrilege, was summoned to his trial at the diet of *Ulm*; and as he refused to appear, the emperor put him to the ban of the empire. In pursuance of this sentence, the bishops and noblemen in the neighbourhood declared war against him, and levied troops to make reprisals on his dominions; but he averted the storm, by making his submission to *Sigismund*, who pardoned him, on condition that he would make good the damage he had done to his neighbours, and renounce all the rights he had to the sovereignty of *Donawert*, which henceforward enjoyed the liberty of an imperial town. Lewis, duke of Bavaria, of Ingoldstadt, is put to the ban of the empire.

• WITH respect to the restitution he consented to make, it was referred to the diet which the emperor convoked at *Frankfort*, in order to determine the difference between *Frederic the Warlike*, marquis of *Misnia*, Lewis count palatine, the marquis of *Brandenburg*, and *Eric V.* of *Saxe-Lawembourg*, who were competitors for the electorate of *Saxony*, vacant by the death of *Albert III.* the last of the electoral branch of the antient family of *Ascania*. The emperor, upon the demise of this prince, ten years ago, had sequestered the electorate *per interim*, and declared *Frederic the Warlike* elector of *Saxony*, as a fief devolved to the empire; but *Eric of Lawembourg* appealed to pope *Martin V.* and afterwards to the council of *Basil*; and *Frederic*, surnamed the *Peaceable*, son and successor of *Frederic the Warlike*, having protested against this step, as an encroachment upon the German liberty, *Sigismund* issued an imperial decree, importing, that the cognizance of fiefs, the administration of justice, and imposition of taxes in *Germany*, had no dependence upon the church, but were the prerogatives of the emperor, electors, and princes; and, finally, at the diet of *Frankfort*, with the advice and consent of the noblemen

and deputies that were present, he confirmed the house of *Misnia* in possession of the duchy and electorate of *Saxony*, which belongs to it at this day; though the family of *Lawembourg* still protest against their possession (B).

Ambassadors are sent by the Bohemians to the emperor. THE next diet was assembled at *Ratisbon*, where *Sigismund* gave audience to ambassadors from *Bohemia*, who came to congratulate him upon his happy return to *Germany*, and to propose, that all the *Bohemians* should be obliged to communicate of the two species: but this proposal was rejected by the emperor; and one of the *Thaborites* belonging to the embassy chancing to die, his body was denied Christian burial.

Death of Uladislaus king of Poland. LEWIS of *Ingoldstadt* having, at this assembly, made full satisfaction to the noblemen of *Bavaria* and *Suabia*, whom he had pillaged, the parties were reconciled, and the emperor repaired to *Alba Regalis*, where he received an embassy from young *Ladislaus*, king of *Poland*, notifying his father's death, and proposing a match between him and the daughter of *Albert*, duke of *Austria*, who was son-in-law to the emperor; but this alliance was postponed, until the differences between *Hungary* and *Poland* could be adjusted.

The Thaborites are reconciled to the church of Rome. IT was during his residence in this place, that the deputation arrived from the states of *Bohemia*, promising to acknowledge him as their sovereign, and *Albert* his successor, provided he would agree to certain articles, which he solemnly swore to fulfil: and this affair being so happily established, he interested himself with the deputies of the coun-

¹ FABRIC. orig. Sax. l. vii.

(B) One great design for convoking the diet at *Frankfort*, was to concert measures for a reformation of the empire, both with respect to its head and members; that the reciprocal duties of the emperor and subjects should be ascertained; that the rights and possessions of the empire might be recovered, and all her revenues settled upon a solid footing. But great difficulties arose, on account of the alienations which had been made by *Charles VI.* in favour of

those who refused to part with their possessions, in which the kings at their election promised, upon oath, to maintain them: and though the grievances of the empire, which required an immediate remedy, were specified in sixteen articles, yet, as there was not present a sufficient number of electors and princes to give a proper sanction to their proceedings, the assembly was prorogued, and the attempt proved abortive (1).

(1) *Krantz. ii. Sax. 25 & 11. Wandal, 33.*

cil, in order to facilitate a total reconciliation between the *and ab-*
Bohemians and the church. After abundance of disputes *solved*
 and negotiations, an assembly was called at *Iglave*, in the *from the*
 diocese of *Olmütz*, at which these deputies, as well as those *sentence*
 of *Bohemia*, were present. There every thing was regulated *of excom-*
 by an authentic act, signed and sealed by the emperor and *munica-*
 deputies; in consequence of which act, the *Bohemians*, hav-
 ing protested that they would for the future be obedient to
 the church of *Rome*, were absolved from the excommunica-
 tion, and other censures, which had been fulminated against
 them, and introduced into the church by the deputies of the
 council ^m.

A D.
1436.

THE emperor resolving to establish a solid peace in that
 kingdom, and concluding that nothing could contribute so
 much to re-involve it in new disorders as the affair of church
 lands, which had been usurped during the war, and might
 be a bone of contention, he made an accommodation upon
 that subject with the principal noblemen, who thought
 themselves the more obliged to him for this condescension,
 as the deputies of the council had refused to comply with
 their demands. In order therefore to manifest their gratitude,
 they conducted him to *Prague*, where he was magnificently
 received, and crowned on the 24th of *August*. Then the
 barons and deputies of the cities did homage to him, and
 took the oath of allegiance ⁿ.

Sigismund
is crowned
at Prague.

A SMALL residue of the *Thaborites* still held out against
Sigismund, under the auspices of a gentleman called *John de*
Robac, who was besieged in his castle, taken by stratagem,
 and hanged, with 100 of his adherents. The town of *Gratz*
 likewise refused to acknowledge the emperor for its sovereign,
 and sustained a long siege with great valour and perseverance,
 until, being quite exhausted, it submitted on honourable
 terms.

He re-
duces the
Thabor-
ites and
the whole
kingdom
of Bohe-
mia to obe-
dience.

IMMEDIATELY after this pacification, the empress *Barba-*
ra was crowned queen of *Bohemia*, with great magnificence;
 and this ceremony being performed, *Sigismund* applied him-
 self in earnest to the police of the kingdom, which he found
 in terrible confusion, occasioned by the miseries of the civil
 war. He established tribunals, appointed *Maisson-neuve* go-
 vernor of *Bohemia*, recalled the clergy who had been exiled,
 and, in order to prevent all possibility of a religious revolt
 for the future, enlisted the remains of the *Thaborites* and
Orphans to be employed against the *Turks*, who had made
 an irruption into *Hungary*. •

Reforms
the police,

and enlists
the re-
mains of
the Huss-
ites,

^m COCHL. lib. viii.

ⁿ ÆN. SYLV. c. 52.

who de-
feat the
Turks in
Hungary.

A. D.

1437.

He for-
feits the
favour of
the Bohe-
mians, by
tyranniz-
ing over
their con-
sciences.

Is seized
with a
distemper,
which
was the
effect of
poison.
The em-
press in-
trigues
with the
barons
touching
the succes-
sion.

THESE infidels had ravaged the country, and would have maintained themselves in possession of the whole district between the *Save* and the *Drave*, had not they been prevented by the *Thaborites* in the imperial pay, who attacked them with such fury, that they were utterly defeated, with the loss of 20,000 men, besides those who were butchered by the peasants, or drowned in attempting to swim across the *Save* °.

THO' *Sigismund* had address enough to regain the affection of the *Bohemians*, his prudence was not sufficient to preserve it. His zeal for religion, and implicit obedience to the church, had entailed upon him the war with the *Hussites*, in which he had suffered abundance of damage and disgrace; and now, after he had concluded an advantageous peace with those people, instead of improving the footing he had gained in their good-will, by gentle remonstrances and a mild administration, the same indiscreet zeal prompted him to tyrannize as formerly over their consciences, and to use violence in compelling several of their principal men to abjure the religion which they professed. These arbitrary proceedings disoblighed his friends, and revived the hatred of his subjects, which increased to such a degree, that, finding it uncomfortable and inconvenient to live among a people by whom he was not beloved, he resolved to quit the kingdom, and retire to some place where he could end his days in peace and tranquillity. But before he could put this resolution in practice, he found himself attacked by a distemper, which was the consequence of poison. One of his toes was cut off by the advice of his physicians, who believed a cure might be effected by such amputation; but some time after, the disorder re-appearing, the empress began to think of securing to herself the throne by a new marriage. For this purpose she privately assembled the greatest part of the barons, who had great authority in that kingdom; and assuring them that the emperor must die in a very little time, observed, that the only expedient for preventing the troubles which could not fail attending his death, would be a regulation before-hand, obliging *Sigismund's* successor to marry his widow. This advice being relished by the barons, a secret agreement was made for that purpose, and confirmed by the oath of all parties concerned. Yet this treaty was not managed with such secrecy, but that it reached the ears of the emperor, who at the same time was informed by his physicians that he had not long to live. He ordered himself to be transported

from the kingdom of *Bohemia*, which he had great reason to suspect of disaffection, to *Znaim* in *Moravia*, that he might see his daughter before his death^p. There he ordered his empress, who had followed him, to be arrested, and the barons of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* being called into his bed-chamber, he, in their presence, nominated his son-in-law *Albert*, duke of *Austria*, for his successor, appointing ambassadors, who should, immediately after his death, repair to *Bohemia*, and present his last will to the grandees of that kingdom. In the mean time all those who were present assented to his nomination, and agreed to acknowledge duke *Albert* as king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In a little time after he had thus settled the succession, he died, on the 9th day of *September*, in the 70th year of his age, having reigned 50 years in *Hungary*, 27 in quality of emperor, and 17 as king of *Bohemia*. His body was, in consequence of the direction which he himself had given, carried to *Waradin* in *Hungary*, and honourably interred in the Church of St. *Ladislaus* q.

The emperor is carried to Znaim in Moravia.

Settles the succession and dies.

SIGISMUND was remarkable for the beauty of his person, *His character*, and the majesty of his air. He was liberal, and a patron of *scholar*, learned men (C), he himself having been so well versed in the languages, as to obtain the epithet of the *Light of the world*. Though he neither wanted courage nor military skill, he was very unfortunate in all his warlike expeditions, and, what is very remarkable in the disposition of a prince, he had a mortal antipathy to all flatterers, who he usually compared to crows, which pick out the eyes of their fellow-creatures. The *Roman catholic* writers extol him for his piety and zeal for the advantage of the church, manifested in his concessions to the pope, in his endeavours to remove the schism of the church, and his repeated efforts to extinguish

^p ÆN. cap. 55. BONFIN. iii. Dec. 3. NAUCLER. gen. 49. COCHL. lib. viii. in fin. DUBRARI. lib. 27. ^q KRANTZ Sax l. ii c. 28. AVENT. Ann. &c. l. vii. p. 663. HEISS. liv. ii. ch. 30.

(C) Having honoured with the order of knighthood one *George Fiselin*, the ablest lawyer of his time, and he chancing one day to have some dispute about his new rank, the emperor, by way of rebuke, said to him, "I can create a thousand knights in one day; but, in the space of one thousand years, I could not create one learned man (1)."

(1) Remarq. sur Heiss, liv. ii. ch. 30.

those doctrines, which they thought proper to brand with the name of heresy; but it plainly appears, that every step he took in consequence of this zeal, was the effect of blind superstition, exciting him to the prejudice of sound policy and common sense.

and that
of the em-
press Bar-
bara.

As for his widow, she is said to have equalled the famous *Messalina* in point of libertinism; and though *Sigismund* had often caught her in the act of adultery, he always forgave her backsliding, because he knew himself addicted to the same vice. When she recovered her liberty after his death, she retired to *Koniggratz* in *Bohemia*, where she lived to a great age, in the midst of a number of courtizans, whom she maintained to administer to her infamous pleasures. To such an excess of debauchery did she degenerate, that she held the sovereign good to consist in the sensual delight. She treated those nuns who, during the religious troubles, preferred death to violation, as so many infatuated wretches who did not understand the true end of their being. She denied a future state; for that reason alleging, that we ought to make the most of life; and when a certain lady of reputation mentioned to her the example of the turtle, who, after having lost its mate, never chuses another, "Wherefore (said she) do you instance a bird who lives in solitude among the mountains, rather than the example of pigeons and sparrows, those domestic animals, who are always in our view, and whose loves and joys are without interruption?" (D)."

ÆN. SYLV. c. 53. Idem in vit. Fred. III. p. 43. DUBRARI. l. xxviii. p. 736.

(D) *Sigismund* had two wives. Perhaps the empress *Barbara* The first was *Mary*, daughter of *Lewis*, king of *Hungary*, and owes part of this character to the enmity of the catholics, the second *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Herman*, count of *Celley*, by which she incurred by embracing the doctrines of *Hufs*. whom he had one only daughter *Elizabeth*, wife of *Alvert*, his successor (1).

(3) Heiss, Hist. liv. ii. ch. 30.

C H A P. IX.

Containing the History of

A L B E R T II.

ALBERT II. duke of *Austria*, surnamed *the Grave* and *the Magnanimous*, was the son of *Albert of Austria*, called *the Wonder of the World*, and married *Elizabeth*, daughter of the emperor *Sigismund*. Upon the death of his father, his cousin *Leopold IV.* was, by the states of *Austria*, declared his guardian; but *Ernest*, the brother of *Leopold*, having protested against this disposition, the office was divided between them; and when the former died, *Albert* took the reins of government in his own hands. By his wife conduct he re-established the security of his subjects in *Austria*, which had a long time been interrupted by intestine wars, rapine, and licence, the authors of which he severely punished, until the peace and tranquillity of his dominions were restored. The great reputation which he acquired by his merit, joined to the favours of fortune, which never forsook him, would in all probability have rendered him the greatest prince that ever sat upon the imperial throne, had heaven thought proper to prolong his life^s. In one year he was honoured with three crowns; in the first of *January* he was raised to the *Hungarian* throne, in consequence of the last will of *Sigismund*, whose daughter and heirs he had espoused; on the sixth of *May* he was elected king of *Bohemia*, the choice being founded upon an antient convention between the two families, implying, that when the lawful heir male of the house of *Bohemia* should chance to fail, they should bestow the crown upon a prince of the house of *Austria*. Yet notwithstanding this agreement, and the other pretensions of *Albert*, he met with a strong opposition from one part of the states of *Bohemia*, who, by the intrigues of *Tasch*, a *Bohemian* nobleman, and chief of that faction, elected *Casimir*, brother of the king of *Poland*^t, and even crowned him in the city of *Prague*. These were the very people who had conspired with the empress *Barbara* against *Sigismund*. This competition produced a war against *Al-*

Albert II.
duke of
Austria,
succeeds to
the impe-
rial
crown.
A. D.
1438.

He is op-
posed in his
election by
Casimir,
brother of
the king of
Poland;

^s SPOND. Contin. BAR. tom. ii. p. 348.
cap 25. CKOMAR. lib. ii.

^t ÆN. Boem.

bert, in which *Casimir*, being assisted by the *Polish* troops, for some time disputed the throne.

CASIMIR, and his brother *Ladislaus*, advanced with a body of troops into *Bohemia*, where joining the *Calixtins*, by whom he had been invited, he obtained several advantages over the *Austrians*, and great barbarities were committed by both sides. At length *Albert* assembled all his forces, of which he gave the command to the marquis of *Brandenburg*, who had acquired the appellation of *the German Achilles*, and then sent a defiance to the enemy, whom he attacked in their intrenchments, and compelled to retreat to *Thabor*.

AFTER this action the marquis of *Brandenburg* made an irruption into *Upper Poland*; and this diversion obliging *Ladislaus* to retire for the defence of his own dominions, *Albert* returned to *Prague*, where he again exacted the oath of allegiance from the citizens, appointed the count *de Celley* governor of *Bohemia*; and having taken other means for securing the tranquillity of that kingdom, repaired to *Breslau*. Here he found *Roderic*, bishop of *Burgos*, deputed from the council of *Basil*, to negotiate a peace between him and his competitor for the *Bohemian* crown: but all the endeavours of this able minister proved ineffectual, neither would he resign his pretensions; and all that the prelate could obtain was, that both would continue to own the authority of the council against the pope, who attempted to transfer it to *Ferrara*. At length, however, *Albert's* fortune prevailed; he dispersed the forces of his competitor, made himself master of the whole kingdom, except one or two places, which still held out for his antagonist, and was crowned at *Prague* with universal applause, after he had made an accommodation with those noblemen who had espoused the cause of *Casimir*, and promised, though unwillingly, to be governed by their advice ^u.

whom he
defeats.

THE empress *Barbara*, about this time, having resigned her right to the fortresses of *Hungary*, was set at liberty, and accommodated with an allowance of 12,000 ducats a year. in the midst of his expedition against *Casimir*, *Albert* received the news of his being elected emperor at *Frankfort*, by the electors and princes there assembled, in order to concert measures for terminating the differences between the pope and the council of *Basil*. He was, however, obliged to conceal his sentiments on his election, until he had obtained the consent of the states of *Hungary*, who had chosen him king on condition that he should not accept the imperial

^u STRUV. Hist. Germ. per. x. sect. 1.

crown, in case he should be solicited to receive that honour. For the barons of *Hungary* alleged, that it was a great disadvantage to their state to be governed by an emperor, on the experience they had of *Sigismund*, who, while he was occupied in the affairs of *Italy*, *Germany*, and his other dominions, left the kingdom of *Hungary* exposed to the incursions of the *Turks*, who pillaged it with impunity. Nevertheless the states, seeing *Albert* strongly pressed to accept of the imperial dignity, consented to his elevation, rather than run the risque of losing a prince whose merit was so conspicuous *.

The states of Hungary consent to his elevation to the imperial throne.

BUT two days before he was declared emperor, the electors of the empire, perceiving that the council of *Basil* and the pope did nothing but publish decrees against each other, resolved to adhere to neither side, until they should have deliberated six months upon their different claims. This was the beginning of the *German* neutrality, which was protracted to the eighth year, and was equally disapproved by *Eugenius* and the council (E). Nevertheless, *Albert* was no sooner in possession of the imperial throne, than he sent ambassadors to the council, to renew the engagements of public faith and security which they had received from *Sigismund*: while the fathers, in return for this favour, granted him the money which had been raised by indulgences in *Austria*, on account of the arrival of the *Greeks* (F).

The electors, princes, and prelates of Germany embrace a neutrality between pope Eugenius and the fathers of the council of Basil.

AFTER his election and coronation at *Aix la Chapelle*, *Albert* regulated his chief care was to reform the abuses which had crept into the administration of justice: he laid the tribunal of *Austregues* under proper restrictions; suppressed what was called the secret and *Westphalia* judgment, said to be as old as

the tribunal of the empire.

* *ÆN. d. c. 55. NAUCLER. gener. 48. TRITHEM. in Chron.*

(E) Pope *Eugenius* having published bulls for transferring the council of *Basil* to *Ferrara*, the electors, princes, and prelates, assembled at *Frankfort*, resolved to continue neutral, that they might be the more able to negotiate a pacification. With this laudable view they wrote letters to the fathers in council, the pope, and *Paleologus*, emperor of the *Greeks*, ex-

horting them to peace and unity, and intreating them to contribute their several endeavours to prevent a schism in the church (1).

(F) This was a sum of money raised to defray the expences of the *Greek* emperor and the eastern princes, to the number of 700, who arrived this year in *Italy*, in order to celebrate an œcumenical council (2).

(1) *Barre, tom. vii. p. 407a.*

(2) *Vide History of the Popes. Charle-*

Charlemagne, in consequence of which people were condemned to death on simple information, without knowing the crime that was laid to their charge, until the very moment of the execution; and yet, amidst all these salutary regulations, he never dreamed of abolishing the manner of proceeding observed at *Klagenfurt*, the capital of *Carinthia*, where a person accused, or even suspected, of theft, is hanged upon the spot, and tried next day, when, if he is convicted, his body is left suspended on the gibbet; but if his innocence appears, his corpse is honourably interred at the public expence ^y.

Confirms the neutrality of the electors and princes. ALBERT confirmed the neutrality which had been embraced by the electors, and by their advice proposed, that a general council should be convoked in some third town, distinct from the assembly at *Basil*, as well as from that which was maintained at *Ferrara*. Though both parties seemed averse to this proposal, the princes of the empire assembled at *Mentz*, in order to facilitate the expedient: as a previous step to which, they agreed that the council of *Basil* should be obliged to suspend the deposition of the pope, which was

Gives his opinion in favour of a new council. at that time the subject of their deliberations. The deputies of many *European* states, which were present on this occasion, approved of the step; yet, the legates from the fathers would not acquiesce in this measure, but returned to *Basil*; and those that were sent by the pope repaired to *Mentz*, where they in vain employed all their efforts in persuading the princes to reject the council, and then retired, after having protested against the neutrality ^z.

Makes peace with the king of Poland. NEVERTHELESS, both pope and council courted the friendship of the emperor, and even exerted themselves in mediating a peace between *Hungary* and *Poland*. Their legates employed their influence in his favour, during the diet at *Petricow*: and a congress being opened at *Breslau* in *Silesia*, a treaty of peace was concluded, on condition that *Albert* should bestow his eldest daughter in marriage upon *Ladislaus*, and give his younger to prince *Casimir*, together with the kingdom of *Bohemia*, by way of dower ^a.

HITHERTO every thing succeeded prosperously with *Albert*, and his subjects began to presage happy things under his government, when *Amurath*, sultan of the *Turks*, who had employed a whole year in preparing to invade *Bulgaria*, now resolved to put his design in execution. He accord-

^y KNICHIN Jur. Territorii Synoptica Tract. c. 5. ^z ÆN. SYLV. de Con. Basil, part. ii. n. 7, 9. ^a DUGLASS, l. xii. p. 712.

ingly entered that province, though it belonged to his own father-in-law, *George*, the duke or despot, and began his operations with the siege of *Semendria*. *Albert*, who before his elevation to the imperial throne had rendered himself formidable to the infidels, and engaged in a treaty with this prince, armed for the defence of his ally, as well as of his hereditary dominions, which, in all probability, would be attacked in their turn, and took the field with such force as he could assemble in those kingdoms and in the empire; but in the midst of excessive heats, having indulged himself in eating a great quantity of fruit, he was attacked with a violent dysentery, which obliged him to quit *Buda*, in order to return to *Vienna*; but he never reached that city; for death overtook him on the road, at the village of *Long*, and his body was interred at *Weissenburg*^b. He left the empress with child of a son, who was called *Ladislaus*, and by the bishop of *Strigonia* crowned king of *Hungary*, four months after his birth (G).

Albert dies on his return to Vienna.
A. D. 1439.

His death was no sooner known, than *Frederic*, son of *Ernest*, count of *Tyrol*, his nearest relation, was chosen administrator of *Austria*, by the states assembled at *Vienna*, until the empress should be delivered, that in case she should bring a prince into the world, he might take upon him the office of tutor; or if the fruit of her womb should be a female, succeed to the duchy as coheir with his brother *Albert*.

At the same time the catholics and *Calixtins* of *Bohemia* laid aside their mutual animosity; and in consequence of pathetic letters from the empress *Elizabeth*, assembled in a friendly manner at *Prague*, and resolved to wait for her delivery, before they would proceed to the election of a new king^d.

In the short course of *Albert's* reign, several diets of the empire were held in the city of *Nuremberg*. In one of these, at which were present a great number of princes, all *Germany*, except *Bavaria* and *Austria*, was divided into four circles; the first comprehended *Bavaria* and *Franconia*; the

^b GER. ROD. l. v. p. 164.

^c HEISS, tom. ii. p. 258.

^d THEOB. Bell. Huff. c. 8.

(G) He had by the same ven- the other to *William*, duke of
ter two daughters, *Elizabeth Saxony*. There was likewise
and *Ann*, the first married to another son, who died in his in-
Casimir, prince of *Poland*, and fancy (1).

(1) Heiss, liv. iii. ch. 1.

second including the countries about the *Rhine*, together with *Allemania*; *Westphalia* and the *Low Countries* were contained in the third; and the fourth was constituted by *Saxony* alone. In another diet it was proposed to divide the empire into six circles; and this division was afterwards established and followed for the first time by the emperor *Maximilian* the first, as the death of *Albert* for the present frustrated the scheme. This prince having inherited the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in quality of son-in-law of the emperor *Sigismund*, he may be said to have been the basis of that power and grandeur to which the house of *Austria* hath since attained. He was of a tall stature and extraordinary strength, liberal, just, and virtuous; he cherished a warm affection for his people, a great zeal for religion, and an uncommon esteem for learned men ^c.

CHAP. X.

Including the Emperor's Contests for the Crowns of Bohemia and Hungary.

FREDERIC III.

A. D. 1440. **A**FTER the death of *Albert*, the electors, assembling at *Frankfort*, unanimously agreed to fill the vacant throne with *Frederic* of *Austria*, surnamed *the Pacific*, son of *Ernest* of *Austria*, of the *Stirian* line, and *Cimburge*, daughter of the duke of *Mazovia*; he was also cousin-german of his predecessor *Albert*, and no more than twenty-five years of age at his election ^f (H). The electors had at first agreed to name *Lewis* III. landgrave of *Hesse*, as *Albert's* successor; but he having declined the dignity, on account of the troubles in which the empire was involved, all the suffrages were reunited in favour of *Frederic*, and the archbishop of *Triers*

^c *ÆN. SYLV. Europ. c. 3.*

^f *KRANTZ Sax. lib. xi. c. 30.*

(H) This prince is by some called *Frederic* IV. and by others *Frederic* V. but the greatest number of writers give him the denomination of *Frederic*, III. because the last *Frederic* of *Austria*, who was only chosen by part of the electors, afterwards

renounced his pretensions to the crown, and the election of *Frederic* of *Brunswic* was not according to form; so that neither the one nor the other are inserted in the number of the emperors.

was sent to *Vienna* to notify his election, and invite him to come and take possession of the throne.

WE have already observed, that the infant *Ladislaus* was crowned king of *Hungary* by the cardinal archbishop of *Strigonia*. This ceremony was no sooner performed, than his mother *Elizabeth* carried him to *Vienna*, and put him under the protection of the emperor, to screen him from the ill offices of one part of his subjects, who had actually offered the crown to *Ladislaus*, king of *Poland*, and concluded a treaty with him on that subject.

As for *Bohemia*, it was still divided between the catholics and *Calixtins*, the former of whom were inclined to appoint administrators, until the young *Ladislaus* should be capable of assuming the reins of government: but *Ptaceck*, at the head of the *Calixtins*, made violent efforts in favour of a new election, and even sent ambassadors to *Munich*, to notify to *Albert*, elector of *Bavaria*, that they had elevated him to the throne of *Bohemia*; that prince, however, having made proper acknowledgements for their good opinion and intended favour, declined interfering with the interest of the lawful heir.

BEING disappointed in this quarter, the *Calixtins* agreed to assemble with the catholics, in order to provide for the security of the kingdom; and as it appeared absolutely necessary to appoint some person who should take upon him the administration of affairs, they pitched upon the emperor, who desired to be excused from accepting such a troublesome office. Nay, such was the moderation of this prince, that when the states of *Bohemia* made him a tender of their crown, he refused their offer, protesting he would preserve it for *Ladislaus*, the son of *Albert II.* his relation and pupil, whom he considered as the lawful heir of the crowns of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*.

THE *Bohemians* having suffered these two repulses, proceeded to the election of administrators from among their fellow subjects, when *Ptaceck* was chosen by the *Calixtins*, and *Maison-neuve* by the catholics; and their government was for some time very quiet, those of both communions enjoying full liberty of conscience.

MEAN while the king of *Poland*, assisted by the famous *Hunniades*, had obtained a victory over queen *Elizabeth*, mother of young *Ladislaus*; though his progress was soon stopped by his *German* allies, commanded by a *Bohemian* gentleman called *John Gisor*, who gave surprising proofs of

Accommodation between the king of Poland and queen Elizabeth A. D. 1441. his gallantry and conduct. Pope *Eugenius* being informed of these troubles in *Hungary*, sent cardinal *Julian* thither to negotiate a peace, which was effected on these conditions. That the king of *Poland* should be declared regent of *Hungary* during the minority of *Ladislaus*, and succeed him on the throne, in case he should die without issue; that the *Pole* should espouse queen *Elizabeth*'s eldest daughter, and his brother *Casimir* take the younger to wife; and that all the acts and military promotions made in *Hungary* by the king of *Poland* should be confirmed ^h.

Prussia revolts from the Teutonic order. WHILE these measures were taken for restoring the peace of *Hungary*, the knights of the *Teutonic* order were guilty of such outrages and oppression in the neighbourhood of *Culm*, that the nobility entered into an association for their mutual defence, and the difference was referred to the arbitration of the emperor, who decided in favour of the knights; this sentence reduced the states of *Prussia* to such despair, that they revolted from the *Teutonic* order, and acknowledged the king of *Poland* as their sovereign, after he had promised to confirm the rights and privileges of *Prussia* ⁱ.

Frederic inter-ests himself in the affairs of the church. FREDERIC, in the beginning of his reign, made sundry regulations touching the administration of justice, the police, and coin of the empire; nor did he manifest less concern in his endeavours to extinguish the schism that still continued in the church. He convoked several diets, to deliberate upon this subject, in consequence of an embassy which he received at the same time from *Eugenius* and the council of *Basil*, which had elected to the papacy *Amadeus*, duke of *Savoy*, under the name of *Felix*. These ambassadors attended him during his coronation at *Aix la Chapelle*, which being performed, they returned to the assembly at *Frankfort* (1), where each party pleaded their own cause; and, after long debates, it was agreed, that the empire should still adhere to the neutrality, until another council should be convoked in some part of *Germany*, in order to determine all differences, and re-establish the tranquillity of the church ^k. Deputies

^h DUGLASS. Hist. Pol. l. xii.

ⁱ BARRE, tom. vii. p. 538.

^k SPOND. Contin. t. ii. p. 418.

(1) In this diet farther regulations were made touching the combat proof, the secret judgment of *Westphalia*, and the current coin, the precise value of

which was now ascertained; and the *pacta familiaræ*, between the houses of *Brandenburg* and *Mecklenburg*, were confirmed (1).

were accordingly sent to notify what had passed to the fathers of the council at *Basil*, and to pope *Eugenius* at *Florence*, though the behaviour of the states of the empire on this occasion was agreeable to neither party.

MEAN while *Frederic* set out in person for *Basil*, where he exhorted the fathers to concord and accommodation with *Eugenius*, and had an interview with *Felix*, whom, however, he would not acknowledge as pope, though he is said to have been tempted with an offer of one of his daughters in marriage, a young princess of exquisite beauty, and a portion of 200,000 ducats: a proposal which he rejected with disdain, and upon which he said to one of his courtiers, by way of pleasantry, "This man would fain purchase holiness, if he could but find a seller (K)." *Has an interview with Felix, whom, however, he refuses to acknowledge for pope.*

A. D.
1442.

ALTHO' *Frederic* failed in his efforts to abolish this schism in the church, he was more successful in the war which he carried on against his brother *Albert VI.* surnamed *the Prodigal*. This prince, under the pretext of having been defrauded of his share of his father's estate, had assembled some forces, with the assistance of *Walrick de Celley*, and several other noblemen, besieged the city of *Laubach*, the capital of *Carniola*, and suffered a repulse from the inhabitants, supported by some *Austrian* troops which had come to their succour. *Albert* being incapable of paying the auxiliaries, they abandoned his cause, and resolved to invade *Austria*, in order to extort money from *Frederic* the emperor. They accordingly began their ravages, and the disorders continued till *Frederic* was obliged to set on foot a treaty with his brother, to whom he paid a certain sum of money, and yielded *Suabia*, and his territories bordering upon the *Swiss*, for the space of six years. He was likewise obliged to gratify his brother's soldiers with 70,000 ducats, before they would desist from the rapine and robbery which they had so long practised with impunity ¹. *Makes peace with his brother Albert, who had ravaged his dominions.*

¹ FUGGER. l. v. c. 3.

(K) About this time the art of printing was first invented, or at least first known in *Europe*. The *Dutch* ascribe this excellent and happy invention to *Laurentius Janson*, an inhabitant of *Leyden*, while the city of *Mentz* attributes that honour to a gentleman of their city, called *John Guttentburg*, and others contend for *John Mentzel*, and *John Faustus*, inhabitants of the same place (1).

(1) *Barre*, tom. vii. p. 439.

Eric, king of Denmark, makes peace with the princes of Holstein. DURING all these disputes, the war had still raged between the king of *Denmark* and the princes of *Holstein*; and now, in the 18th year of this dispute, an accommodation took place between the contending parties, who agreed, that count *Adolphus* should retain, during life, the portion of *Sleswic* which he then possessed, together with the isle of *Femeren* and lesser *Friesland*; but that, on the expiration of two years after his death, the king of *Denmark* and his heirs should submit to a fair trial of his pretensions. In consequence of this treaty, the towns of *Lubec*, *Hamburg*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Wismar*, made their submission to his *Danish* majesty, who did not, however, long enjoy the fruits of this pacification.

Is deposed, and Christopher of Bavaria elected in his room. HE resolved to settle the succession upon his nephew *Bugislaus*, duke of *Pomerania*; and this attempt, so contrary to the liberties of *Denmark*, the crown of which was elective, gave such disgust to the states, that they summoned him to the diet at *Horsoe*, and he refusing to appear, they deprived him of the sovereign power, and elected *Christopher* of *Bavaria*, who was accordingly acknowledged king of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, and solemnly crowned at *Ryphen* by the archbishop of *Lunden*.

A. D. 1443. The Swiss besiege Zurich, and the emperor solicits the assistance of the king of France. THIS revolution was succeeded by a war between the *Austrians* and *Swiss*, which engrossed the emperor's whole attention. A difference had happened between the *Swiss* and the city of *Zurich*, on account of *Toggenburg*, and of its having put itself under the protection of the emperor, who not only refused to confirm the privileges of the *Swiss*, but likewise demanded the restitution of all the territories which they had wrested from the house of *Austria*. The inhabitants of *Zurich* refusing to renounce the treaty which they had made with the emperor, the *Swiss* had recourse to arms, and actually invested the city. *Frederic*, in this dilemma, demanded succours against the *Swiss* from the princes of the empire, not one of whom would take the field in his behalf. He then solicited the assistance of *Charles VII.* of *France*, who sent the dauphin his son into *Germany*; at the head of 40,000 men, although he had only engaged to furnish 5000; for whom the emperor promised to find free quarters in *Alsace*. The king of *France* may have been induced, by several motives, to send such a considerable army into the empire. Perhaps he wanted to revenge an irruption which had been made by the governor of *Montbelliard* into the territories of *France*. He might have had designs upon *Alsace*: his intention might have been to assist *Rene*, duke of *Lorraine*, to make himself master of the city of *Metz*; and it is not im-

probable that he was solicited to make such a powerful ar-
mament by *Sigismund of Austria*, or pope *Eugenius*, in order
to dissolve the council of *Basil*. Be that as it will, the dau-
phin approached this city at the head of his army, in which
were 8000 *English*, under the name of auxiliaries. The
Swiss, though few in number, not only kept the field, but
also gave them battle; but they were almost all cut in pieces
by the *French* cavalry, who, nevertheless, paid dear for the
victory^m (L). About the same time the *Swiss* received
another check before *Zurich*, which obliged them to raise
the siege, and the dauphin returned to *Germany*. He
thought proper, however, to seize upon *Montbelliard*, and
some other cities of *Alsace*.

IN the midst of these transactions, *Ladislaus*, king of *Po-*
land, taking advantage of his namesake's minority and ab-
sence, as well as of the sloth of the emperor, who neglected
the interest of his people; encouraged, I say, by these fa-
vourable circumstances, the *Pole* formed a strong party in
Hungary, and was actually acknowledged sovereign of that
kingdom. Immediately after his elevation, he, at the desire
of pope *Eugenius*, espoused the cause of *Stephen*, despot of
Rascia, whom *Amurath* had stripped of his dominions, and
raising an army of *Poles*, *Walachians*, *Germans*, and *Bohemi-*
ans, under the command of the gallant *Gisera*, he passed the
Danube, made himself master of the town of *Sophia*, and by
the valour and conduct of his general *Hunniades*, obtained
a complete victory over the *Turkish* army, commanded by
the famous *Scanderbeg*, who, by the bye, was suspected of
partiality towards the Christians.

AMURATH was greatly disheartened by this defeat, espe-
cially as he found himself attacked on one side by *Ibrahim*,
prince of *Cilicia*, and on the other side by *Scanderbeg*, who
immediately after this battle revolted, declaring himself a
Christian, and took possession of *Albania*, which was his
paternal inheritance. The sultan therefore, in this emer-
gency, sued for peace, which was ratified on conditions very
advantageous to the *Hungarians*, and solemnly sworn to by

^m MEZ. Abr. Chron. t. ii. p. 698.

(L) The *Swiss* army is said to have amounted to no more than 4000 men, who slew double their number of the *French*; and, rather than own themselves con-
quered, died upon the spot, except one man, who, at his return to his canton, was beheaded for cowardice (1).

(1) MEZ. abreg. Chron. tom. ii. p. 698.

but afterwards loses his life in the battle of Varna. *Ladislaus*; who, nevertheless, regardless of his oath, from which he was absolved by the pope, and instigated by the Greek emperor *Paleologus*, he and *Hunniades* resumed their arms, and inviting *Scanderbeg* to join them, advanced by the way of *Thrace* towards the *Euxine* sea. They came in sight of the *Turkish* army, commanded by *Amurath* in person, at a village called *Varna*^m, where a bloody battle ensued, in which *Ladislaus* lost his life, *Hunniades* his liberty, and the Christian army was intirely defeatedⁿ.

Casimir is elected king of Poland. Hunniades is appointed governor of the kingdom of Hungary. THE fate of *Ladislaus* was no sooner known in *Poland*, than the diet, assembling at *Gracovia*, elected his brother *Casimir* in his room; and the *Hungarians* having in vain solicited the emperor to send his young pupil as their king, committed the administration of their kingdom to *Hunniades*, whom they revered as the saviour of their country. This general having been ransomed after the battle of *Varna*, had defeated the *Turks* in *Upper Mesia*, and compelled the count *de Celley*, though the emperor's father-in-law, to do homage for his dominions to the kingdom of *Hungary*.

THE states assembled at *Pest*, sent deputies to the emperor to demand their crown, which had been delivered to him by queen *Elizabeth*; and, upon his refusal to give it up, they resolved to obtain it by force of arms. With this view they declared war against him, and *Hunniades*, at the head of 10,000 chosen men, made an irruption to the very gates of *Vienna*, from whence he returned to *Presburg* loaden with booty, and terrified the emperor to such a degree, that he durst not quit the fortrefs of *Ncustadt*, until a truce for three years was established through the good offices of the count *de Celley*^o.

The diet of Prague send ambassadors to the emperor and the pope. BY this time the *Bohemians*, tired and harrassed by the factions supported by their two administrators, began to long for the arrival of their young king, under whose authority they hoped peace and union might be re-established in the kingdom. Mean while, *Ptaczek* dying, the *Hussites* elected *George de Paliebrad* in his place, that he might counterbalance the power of *Maison Neuve*, who was their enemy; and their religious disputes continuing, the diet of the kingdom was convoked at *Prague*, where it was resolved to send one embassy to the emperor to demand their young king, and another to the pope, soliciting the confirmation of their archbishop *Rockizinc*, who had been excommunicated by the court of *Rome*^p.

^m See the History of Hungary.
1. vii. ^o BARRE, t. vii. p. 477.
Huss. par. ii.

ⁿ BONFIN. Decad. iii.
^p THEOB. BELL.

FREDERIC's attention was at this period employed in contriving expedients for defending the dominions of the empire from the troops of the dauphin, called *Armagnacs*, which committed terrible ravages in *Alsace*; when the princes of the empire, incensed at these hostilities, resolved to take arms against *France*, and entrusted *Lewis* count palatine with the conduct of that expedition; but, before things came to that extremity, a diet was held at *Spire*; in which, by the mediation of the archbishops of *Cologne* and *Triers*, who were in the *French* interest, it was resolved first to try the expedient of a negotiation. In consequence of this resolution, ambassadors were sent to the dauphin to demand satisfaction, upon which he nominated five persons of rank as his deputies, who had orders to declare, in his name, that, as the emperor had invited him into *Germany*, he insisted upon a confirmation of the treaties made with the nobility of *Alsace*, and upon having winter-quarters assigned to his troops, otherwise the hostilities should be continued. The *French* had been for some time in possession of *Lauffenburg*, *Sickingen*, and some other places; but, not contented with these, they likewise demanded *Brisac* and *Fribourg*; finally, they proposed that *Sigismund* duke of *Austria* should repair to *France*, and consummate the marriage with the daughter of king *Charles*; the dauphin's sister, and for that purpose remit the jewels and money which had been left to them by *Frederic* of *Austria*. To these demands the emperor replied by the mouth of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, that he had indeed solicited the king of *France* for a succour of 5000 men, but had never dreamt he would send 40,000; and that, by the custom of *Germany*, the treasure and jewels of princes always devolved to their successors. At length it was agreed, that the dauphin should retreat with his troops from the territories of the empire, and that the *Germans* should demand no reparation for the damage they had sustained.

THE dauphin's retreat did not re-establish the peace of *Alsace*; for the troops of the count palatine plundered the fiefs belonging to the noblemen and towns that favoured the *French*; and the *Austrians* committed the same excesses upon the territory of *Basil*, which was in alliance with the *Swiss*. These outrages were retorted with great rancour upon the lands, subjects, and allies, of the house of *Austria*, and the whole country became a scene of rapine, cruelty, and confusion, until peace and order were restored by the

1 HEIERS, l. iii. p. 269.

A. D. mediation of the elector palatine, the marquis of *Baden*, and
 1445. the count of *Willemburg*†.

The electors assembled at Frankfort, and enter into an association against pope Eugenius; THESE troubles being appeased, the electors of the empire assembled at *Frankfort* on account of *Theodoric* archbishop of *Cologne*, and *James* archbishop of *Triers*, whom *Eugenius* had deposed, because they adhered to *Felix* and the council of *Basil*, agreed among themselves, that unless *Eugenius* would declare their deposition void, suppress the taxes with which the *German* nation was burthened by the court of *Rome*, and own the authority of councils, such as it had been declared at *Constance*, they would assent to the sentence which had been pronounced against him at the council of *Basil*. This resolution being intimated to *Frederic*, he sent *Aeneas Sylvius*, his secretary, to *Eugenius*, exhorting him to treat the electors of the empire with more respect, and, above all things, to restore the archbishops to their former dignity, if he expected to see an end of that schism, which divided the church. His remonstrances had such weight with *Eugenius*, that he promised to be swayed by the emperor's advice; and sent ambassadors to another assembly at *Frankfort*, in which certain articles of accommodation were proposed, and afterwards ratified at *Rome*‡.

who is brought to reason by the emperor's remonstrances.

The fathers of the council of *Basil* assent to the convocation of a new council.

A. D. 1447. *Maison Neuve* is imprisoned and dies.

THE fathers of the council of *Basil*, finding themselves in danger of being utterly deserted, had, a little before this accommodation, published a decree, in which, after having observed, that the best method for removing the schism would be to hold a new council, they professed their readiness to concur with that expedient, and agree to any place that should be pitched upon by the emperors and electors assembled at the diet of *Frankfort*. But no measures could be contrived to heal the divisions that still remained in *Bohemia*. The politicians convoked diet after diet, without being able to form any resolution, but that of sending another deputation to demand *Ladislaus* of the emperor, who would not even indulge them with an audience. In vain did the pope send cardinal *Carvajal* to pacify the troubles at *Prague*: tho' the Catholics and *Maison Neuve* submitted to the directions of the holy set, *Podiebrad* and his *Hussites* persuaded the people that the pope and *Frederic* intended to deprive them of their religious liberties; and taking advantage of the commotion they had raised, attacked and imprisoned *Maison Neuve*, who died in a few days after this misfortune, not

† CRUSSIUS, p. 385. § ÆNE. Comment. l. i. ANT. tit. 22, c. 11, sect. 17. COCHLÆ. Hist. Hussit. l. ix.

without suspicion of poison. In consequence of his death, Podiebrad Podiebrad remained in peaceable possession of Prague and the whole kingdom, and Rokizane was re-established in his cathedral.
Podiebrad remains in peaceable possession of Bohemia.

JUST as Bohemia began to respire from the horrors of a civil and religious war, Alsace was involved in fresh confusion by a quarrel between Frederic elector palatine and the counts of Lutzelstein, who declared war against him on, pretence of his having seized their castle of Einertzhauseu, and plundered their subjects. They first of all wrote him a letter, containing a detail of their grievances, and then committed hostilities on his lands and officers. Frederic, incensed at their presumption, levied a numerous army, and, investing the castle of Lutzelstein, carried on the siege with such vigour, that notwithstanding the brave defence made by count James, who commanded the besieged, he was fain to make his escape over the Palatine's intrenchments, and the garrison surrendered upon honourable conditions. As for the counts, they were obliged to go in quest of a livelihood in some other country, where they died without issue, after having made some fruitless efforts to relieve their castle.

THE emperor concerned himself very little in these private quarrels, so much was he engrossed in the affairs of religion: however, his endeavours to terminate the schism were at last crowned with success; for about this time he prevailed with Felix to abdicate upon certain conditions, which were confirmed by Nicholas V. who had succeeded Eugenius (N).
The schism occasioned by the council of Basil is finally terminated.

FREDERIC, who acknowledged Nicholas for lawful pope, had ordered the inhabitants of Basil to put an end to the council which was held in their city, and dismiss the fathers of it before the feast of St. Martin. To this first order, which was published on Michaelmas-day, the citizens of Basil having paid no regard, the emperor, towards the latter end of the same year, sent to them a second imperial decree, and

ÆN. SYLV. Hist. Boh. c. 58, p. 100.

(N) In the year 1447, pope Nicholas, after his election, sent a legate into Germany, to take cognizance of certain grievances touching church benefices, of which the Germans loudly complained. These grievances were accordingly discussed in presence of the emperor and the ecclesiastical and secular princes, and

certain articles agreed upon under the name of Concordata, which were afterwards confirmed and ratified by the pope. These concordata, which are almost as famous as the articles of the golden bull, shall, for the information of the reader, be inserted at the end of this history.

afterwards a third, in which he threatened to put them to the ban of the empire for disobedience. In consequence of these menaces, the fathers were obliged to transfer their council to *Lausanne*, where they earnestly exerted their endeavours to terminate the schism; and this grand affair was afterwards concluded, on condition that *Felix* should renounce the papacy in favour of *Nicholas*, who should confirm the decrees of the synod of *Basil*.^u

A war between the marquis of Brandenburg and the city of Nuremberg. *FREDERIC*, besides his endeavours to re-establish the peace of the church, employed his good offices, though in vain, to terminate a contest, which had lasted some years, between the city of *Nuremberg* and *Albert* marquis of *Brandenburg*, who was distinguished by the appellation of *The German Achilles* (O). The city pretended to be free, and independent of any other sovereignty than that of the emperor and empire; while the marquises of *Brandenburg*, being likewise burgraves of *Nuremberg*, affirmed, that not only the city, but all the country adjacent belonging to the city, depended upon and held of their burgraviate. This dispute was gradually inflamed to an open war. *Albert*, by the assistance of seventeen princes of the empire, who were his friends or relations, had raised a strong army, with which he attacked the city; and the magistrates and burghers of *Nuremberg*, being well provided with ammunition, provision, and men, which they received from several imperial cities, sustained the siege with great bravery and resolution. In a word, the war be-

^u VANDERT. in Hist. Sabaud. PLATIN. in Nich. V.

(O) The foundation of *Albert's* claim was this: *Frederic IV.* his father, had appropriated to himself the title of burgrave of *Nuremberg*, not that he had any right of sovereignty over the city, but only because he had acquired a sort of right of protection, from having frequently assisted it against his neighbours. The emperor, *Lewis of Bavaria*, had, in the year 1315, mortgaged *Nuremberg* to *Adolphus* of *Austria*, who did not enjoy it above twenty years; for the people, having shook off his yoke, entered into an association

with the *Swiss* cantons for the mutual defence of their liberties, and engaged in their confederacy the cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, and *Straßburg*, which still retained their freedom (1).

This *Albert* was distinguished by the names of *the German Achilles* and *the Fox of Germany*. He was a prince of great personal prowess, and abounded with all the stratagems of war; was remarkable for his vivacity, eloquence, and craft, as well as for the innumerable scars with which his whole body was covered (2).

(1) *Remark. sur Heiss*, l. iii. c. 2.

(2) *Campan. &c.* l. vi.

ing maintained on both sides in ravaging and ruining the little towas, boroughs, and villages, in the neighbourhood, together with the whole adjacent country, both sides were constrained, by the dearth of provisions, to listen to proposals of peace, which was accordingly concluded *.

IN the course of this year *Christopher* of *Bavaria*, king of *Christian Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, dying, was succeeded by *II. succeeds Christian II.* son of *Theodoric* count of *Oldemburg*, from *Christopher* whom the present king of *Denmark* is descended; but the *phers king of Swedes*, being tired of a foreign domination, elevated *Canut-Denmark: son* their grand marshal to the throne of that kingdom; and *But Ca-* at the same time he had address enough to acquire the sove- *nution is* reignty of *Norway* by the unanimous election of the states of *that antient monarchy*, to which he repaired; and, after his *coronation at Drontheim*, conferred the charge of the admi- *nistration* upon two principal noblemen of the country[†].

HUNGARY being again threatened by *Amurath*, *Hunniades* made preparations for giving him a warm reception, and, hurried on by the impetuosity of his courage, passed the *Danube*, and advanced to the frontiers of *Bulgaria*, in order to stop the sultan in the midst of his career. Though his *Hunni-* troops were greatly inferior in number to the *Turks*, he at- *ades is de-* tacked them with undaunted valour; but, after having main- *scended by* tained the battle three days, was at length overpowered, and *the Turks,* intirely defeated. The greatest part of the nobility, toge- *A. D.* ther with the pope's legate, were left dead upon the spot; *1448.* and *Hunniades* himself, after having sustained incredible hardships in making his escape, fell into the hands of *George*, despot of *Rascia*, who would not release him until he had given one of his sons as hostage[‡].

ONE would imagine the inhabitants of *Ladislaws* had been in a peculiar manner destined to unceasing calamities. The *Catholics of Bohemia*, being oppressed by *Podiebrad* and his *Calixtins*, had recourse to arms, and the war revived with all its former vivacity, though it was in a little time suspended by a truce; during which the states assembled at *Czasslaw*, in order to concert measures for appeasing the troubles; and the party of *Podiebrad* proposed, that they should elect a sovereign from among the natives, without exposing themselves to further repulses from the emperor: but the majority were of opinion, that they should send another embassy to redeem *Ladislaws*; and *Podiebrad* assenting to this proposal, it was forthwith put in execution.

* KRANTZ Sax. l. ii. c. 32.

† BARRE, t. vii. p. 507.

‡ FUGGER. l. v.

The emperor sends Æneas Sylvius to the states of that kingdom, and gains over Podiebrad to his interest. FREDERIC, however, still excused himself, on account of the minority of his pupil; but being alarmed at the design of the *Hussites*, he sent his secretary *Æneas Sylvius* to remonstrate to the *Bohemian* diet upon the injustice and ingratitude they should be guilty of in chusing another king to the prejudice of *Ladislaus*, whose ancestors had laid their country under such obligations. In a word, this minister, by his ability, eloquence, and insinuating address, disposed the *Bohemians* to acquiesce in the conduct of the emperor, who promised to send *Ladislaus* to *Prague*, as soon as he should be capable of performing the kingly function; and at the same time he gained over *Podiebrad* to the interest of *Frederic*, who afterwards acknowledged his services, by creating his

A. D. 1450. two sons princes of *Munsterberg* ^a.

The affairs of Italy; THE peace of *Bohemia* being thus restored, and the important dispute touching the council, in which all Christendom had been interested, happily compromised, *Frederic* began to direct his attention to the affairs of *Italy*. Upon the death of *Philip Maria*, the last of the family of *Galeazzo*, who had no legitimate male issue, several pretenders to the succession started up, though the duchy, as a fief, of right devolved to the empire. Nevertheless, *Alphonso* king of *Naples* demanded it, on pretence, that the last duke had declared him his heir. On the other hand, *Charles* duke of *Orleans*, son of *Valentina*, who was daughter of *John Galeazzo*, the first duke of *Milan*, claimed that duchy, by virtue of his mother's contract of marriage; in which it was expressly stipulated, that her children should succeed to the duchy of *Milan*, in case her brother should die without heirs male; and this clause was confirmed by the pope's approbation. The third competitor was *Francis Sforza*, one of the greatest warriors of his time, who having married *Blanche Maria*, natural daughter of *Philip Maria Galeazzo*, by whom he was also adopted, aspired to the possession of his fortune, and resolved to support his pretensions by force of arms. The city of *Milan* was of course divided into factions, who espoused the cause of this or that pretender; but the people, desirous of profiting by this occasion, chose twelve persons, into whose hands they put the administration of the state, and offered a certain annual sum to the emperor, provided he would allow the city to be erected into a republic. Mean while the succession of duke *Philip* became a prey to all who had inclination and force to seize it. *Placentia*, *Cremona*, and *Lodi*, fell into the hands of the *Venetians*; the duke of

^a COCHL. Hist. Huss. l. xii. p.

Savoy made himself master of *Valentia* and *Conflans*; other territories were usurped by other powers; and *Francis Sforza* attached himself to the city of *Milan*, the siege of which he undertook in form. The inhabitants, seeing themselves thus invested, had recourse to *Frederic*, who sent two of his ministers to assist them with their advice. The besieged offered to put themselves wholly under his power, provided he would raise the siege; but after having in vain waited for succour two whole months, and endured the utmost extremity of want, they were fain to capitulate, and open their gates to the conqueror ^b. *The city of Milan taken by Sforza.*

NEXT year *Frederic* resolved upon a journey to *Italy*, in order to be crowned at *Rome*, with *Eleanora*, sister of the king of *Portugal*, to whom he was contracted in marriage, and whom he had promised to meet at *Sienna*. Mean while he dispatched *Æneas Sylvius*, with an intimation of his design, to the pope, who at first seemed very well disposed for his reception; but was afterwards so terrified by the insinuations of the duke of *Milan* and other *Italian* noblemen, who represented *Frederic* as an ambitious prince, who wanted to invade the ecclesiastical dominions, that he sent his secretary to dissuade the emperor from his journey, as an expedition impracticable in the winter. But *Æneas Sylvius*, who tarried at *Sienna*, being informed of his apprehensions, found means to dispel them so effectually, that *Nicolas* no longer dreaded the views of the emperor, whom he now invited to *Rome*, with great cordiality; for, at bottom, he was ambitious of having the honour to confer the imperial crown ^c. *The duke of Milan endeavours to create a jealousy between the emperor and the pope.*

FREDERIC's departure, however, was retarded by a revolt in *Vienna*, excited by a *Bavarian* gentleman, called *Eisfinger*, who had quarrelled with the emperor about the purchase of a castle belonging to the duke of *Austria*. He alleged, that *Frederic* had defrauded him of his purchase, and, in order to be revenged, instigated the *Austrian* noblemen to assemble at *Meilberg*, and demand that the emperor would send *Ladislaus* among them, otherwise they would renounce his authority, and expel the governor, whom he had established. The malecontents afterwards entering *Vienna*, raised an insurrection among the people, and, finally, being joined by the counts of *Celley*, ravaged all the towns, villages, and lands, belonging to the friends and adherents of *Frederic*, who, having tried to appease these disorders by remonstrances, in- *departure is retarded by a revolt in Austria.*

A. D.
1451.

^b Mez. Chron. Abreg. t. ii. p. 700. ANTON. tit. 22, c. 12, sect. 2. COR. Hist. Mediol. par. v. ^c Comment. Pii II. l. i. COCHLÆ. I. KRANTZ. Sax. l. xi. c. 33.

vested the duke of *Austria* with full power and authority to levy troops for opposing the progress of the rebellion; and, in the mean time, he himself departed for *Italy*, accompanied by young *Ladislaus*, and great part of the *Bohemian* and *Hungarian* nobility^d. The princess *Eleonora* at the same time embarked at *Lisbon*; and arriving at *Pisa*, was conducted to *Sienna*, where she found the emperor waiting to receive her^e. *Frederic* was met, just as he had crossed the *Alps*, by the ambassadors of *Venice*, who conducted him to their city, where he made his public entry with great magnificence (O): from thence he repaired to *Ferrara*, where he found ambassadors from *Francis Sforza* duke of *Milan*, inviting him to return by that city, where he should receive the iron crown; and here too he was waited upon by the deputies of *Florence* and *Bologna*, who craved the honour of entertaining him at these cities, which he accordingly visited: from *Florence* he took the route of *Sienna*, where (as we have already observed) he was joined by the princess *Eleonora*, attended by a splendid and numerous retinue; and in this city he gave audience to the pope's legates, who represented to him, that by antient custom, and established right, the emperors always took an oath to the pope before they entered the territories of *St. Peter's* patrimony; and demanded, that, if he designed to proceed, he should conform to the same practice. *Frederic*, in this particular, complied with the desire of his holiness (P).

WHILE

^d *ÆN. SYL. vit. Fred. II. p. 136.*
^e *p. 528.*

^e *BARRE, t. vii.*

(O) When he was about to depart from that city, a curious cup-board of glass was brought as a present from the inhabitants, and placed upon a table in his apartment. It was scarce set down, when his jester, directed by his nod, shook the table to such a degree, that the cup-board fell off, and broke into a thousand pieces; upon which the emperor observed, with a smile, that, if it had been made of gold, it would not have

met with such a misfortune; a hint, in consequence of which he was afterwards presented with some other curiosities of that precious metal (1).

(P) The oath, which the emperor took, was conceived in these terms: "Sanctissimo Domino nostro, domino Nicolao, Divina Providentia papæ, Ego Fredericus, rex Romanorum, promitto et juro, per Patrem, et Filium, et Spiritum Sanctum, et per lignum vivificæ

(1) *Dalbrav. lib. xxviii.*

"crucis,

WHILE he spent a few days in this place, until the princefs should be recovered from the fatigue of her voyage, which had been long and dangerous, he was follicited for recommendations to the court of *Rome* by the chief of an embassy from the *Austrians*, who pretended they were sent by the states to request some favours of his holiness; but *Frederic*, suspecting his sincerity, ordered his papers and instructions to be seized, and found that this deputation was from *Eisinger*, and the malecontents, who represented *Frederic* to the pope and cardinals as a tyrant, oppressor, and usurper of the dominions belonging to young *Ladislaws*; and gave the college to understand, that for these reasons they had withdrawn themselves from his authority. These remonstrances might have operated at the court of *Rome* to the prejudice of the emperor, had not he luckily made this discovery; in consequence of which he anticipated the malice of the *Au-*

He intercepts an embassy from the malecontents of Austria to the pope.

“ crucis, et per has reliquias
 “ sanctorum, quod si, permitten-
 “ te Domino, Romam venero,
 “ sanctam Romanam ecclesiam,
 “ et sanctitatem suam rectorem
 “ ipse exaltabo, secundum
 “ meum posse. Et neque vitam,
 “ neque membrum, neque hono-
 “ rem, quem habet, mea volun-
 “ tate, meo consilio, meo con-
 “ sensu, aut mea exhortatione,
 “ perdet: et in Roma nullum
 “ placitum aut ordinationem fa-
 “ ciam, de omnibus quæ ad sanc-
 “ titatem suam, aut ad Roma-
 “ nos pertinerit, sine vestro con-
 “ silio. Et quicquid de terra
 “ Sancti Petri ad nostram potes-
 “ tatem pervenerit, suæ sancti-
 “ tati reddam. Et cuicumque
 “ Italicum regnum commiserò,
 “ jurare faciam illum, ut adju-
 “ tor suæ sanctitatis sit ad defen-
 “ dendam terram S. Petri secun-
 “ dum suum posse: sic me Deus
 “ adjuvet, et hæc sancta Dei
 “ Evangelia (1).”

Thus englished: “ To our
 “ most holy lord, *Nicholas*, by
 “ the Divine Providence, pope,

“ I *Frederic*, king of the *Romans*,
 “ promise and swear, by the Fa-
 “ ther, Son, and Holy Ghost, by
 “ the wood of the vivifying
 “ cross, and of these relics of
 “ saints, that if, by the permis-
 “ sion of the Lord, I shall come
 “ to *Rome*, I will exalt the holy
 “ *Roman* church, and his holi-
 “ ness, who presides over it, to
 “ the best of my power. Nei-
 “ ther shall he lose life, limb, nor
 “ honour, by my will, council,
 “ consent, or exhortation. Nor
 “ will I, in the city of *Rome*,
 “ make any law or decree, touch-
 “ ing those things that belong
 “ to his holiness or the *Romans*,
 “ without your advice. What-
 “ ever part of *St. Peter's* patri-
 “ mony shall fall into our hands,
 “ we will restore to his holiness:
 “ and he, to whom we shall
 “ commit the administration of
 “ our kingdom of *Italy*, shall
 “ swear to assist his holiness in
 “ defending *St. Peter's* territory
 “ to the best of his power. So
 “ help me God, and his Holy
 “ Evangelists.”

(1) *Fugger. lib. v. c. 7. n. 4.*

strians, and found means to justify himself to the pope in such a manner, that his holiness entered into his resentment, and promised to excommunicate the rebels as soon as *Frederic* should be in a condition to chastise them with the temporal sword.

Is endangered by a tumult in Viterbo.

THE emperor was received at *Viterbo* with great splendour, according to the directions of *Nicholas*. Nevertheless a great tumult happened when he approached the palace at which he was to alight. Some young people, who had taken possession of an elevated place, drew towards them, with iron hooks, the cloth of gold that adorned the canopy under which the emperor rode; and a dispute arising among themselves, it was torn to pieces. This example encouraged others to practise the same licence. The pope's soldiers advancing, endeavoured to pull the emperor from his horse, which they imagined would become the property of that person who should have address enough to seize him; and others, still more presumptuous, attempted to snatch off his hat, which they saw adorned with a jewel of great value. In the midst of this tumult, *Frederic* turning towards the legates, "I find, said he, we must make use of our hands, "and think of repelling force by force." With these words he snatched a staff from one of his domestics, and, disengaging himself from those who attacked him, wheeled about, put spurs to his horse, and charged them with great fury, overturning all that stood in his way. The legates followed the example of the emperor, and, arming themselves with the same kind of weapons, employed them to the same purpose. The gentlemen of *Frederic's* retinue drew their swords, and rushed among the crowd, and this sort of battle lasted upwards of an hour; when the populace, being no longer able to resist the blows and wounds which were dealt among them, betook themselves to flight. The governor of the patrimony, who was the pope's own nephew, committed several of those seditious people to prison; but *Frederic*, who was more apt to forgive than to revenge an insult, interposed in their behalf, and obtained their release ^f.

Arrives at Rome; FROM *Viterbo*, *Frederic* repaired to *Rome*, accompanied by the empress and the young king of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, who was still under his tuition. He was no sooner in the sight of that capital, than the whole college of cardinals went out to meet him; and as it was customary for the emperor, who went thither to be crowned, to stay some time before the town, *Frederic* ordered tents to be pitched before

^f HEISS, l. iii. c. 2.

the walls, where he passed that night. Next day he made a *Li crowned* public entry, and was crowned king of *Lombardy*, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the deputies of *Milan*, who *king of Lombardy* protested against this coronation, which was performed, at the request of the emperor, on account of the plague at *Milan*, as well as of the umbrage which that city had given to *Frederic*, in embracing the yoke of a stranger, to the prejudice of the empire, to which it properly belonged.

THE cardinals, being consulted upon this subject, were of opinion, that the pope, by virtue of the plenitude of his power, could confer the crown of *Lombardy*; and that the emperor's request ought not to be refused; though they instituted a new oath, which he took upon the occasion. Three days after this ceremony, he was married to *Eleonora*, and married with her received the imperial crown; then he and the pope *and crowned* ratified the *Concordata* of the German nation, touching the collation of prelaties and other benefices, which had been *with his* some years before agreed to by cardinal *Carvajal*, his legate *empress*; in *Germany*. A few days after his marriage he and the em- *ratifies the* press set out for *Naples*, on a visit to king *Alphonso*, who was *Concorda-* her uncle. There being treated with incredible magnificence, *ta*; during *Holy Week* and *Easter*, he returned to *Rome*, where, in *visits the* two orations spoken publicly by his secretary, he returned *king of* thanks to the pope and cardinals for the great favours he had *Naples*; received, and exhorted them to promote the general *passa-* *A. D.* *gium*, or military expedition, in favour of the *Greeks* against *1452.* the *Mahometans* & (Q).

HAVING transacted his affairs at *Rome*, he departed from that city on his return to *Germany*, and in his passage thro' *Ferrara* was waited upon by *Borfi* marquis of *Este*, a prince of extraordinary merit, whom he created duke of *Modena* and *Reggio*. There also he knighted *Galeazo*, son of *Francis* duke of *Milan*, a youth of most engaging behaviour and great expectation^b. Being afterwards royally received at *Venice*, he quitted *Italy*, leaving behind him a very contemptible character, both in point of understanding and libera- *from* *Rome*; lity; nor was he altogether pleased with the success of his

^a Comment. Pii II. l. i. Ext. apud Æne. ep. 399. ^b NAUCLER. sub ann. 1449.

(Q) He was again invited by *Sforza* to go and receive the iron crown at *Milan*; but, as he had been offended by that nobleman, he declined the invitation on pretence of the plague, which then raged in that city (1).

and returns to Germany. journey, as having had occasion to see a great many territories of the empire usurped by those who had no other right to possess them, than that which was derived by force of arms. The duke of *Milan* had applied to him for the investiture of his duchy, which the emperor refused to grant; unless he would agree to pay him a certain yearly sum, or put him in possession of the city of *Corno* or *Parma*.

On his return to *Austria* he found himself involved in abundance of difficulties, particularly in a dispute with the *Hungarians*, who had often intreated him to send home their king *Ladislaws*, whom he still detained at his court, on pretence of being guardian to that young prince. They had likewise, by the most earnest and repeated instances, besought him to restore their crown and regalia, which were in his custody; but he found means, under various pretences, to postpone his compliance with their demands. The *Austrians*, being joined by a number of *Bohemians*, and encouraged by several princes of the empire, sent another deputation to expostulate with him upon the same subject: but he still lent a deaf ear to their request, and amused them with fresh evasions, till at length, tired with his excuses, and provoked by his delays, they had recourse to arms, took the field under the conduct of *Eisfinger*, surprized and besieged him at *Neustadt*, and compelled him to sign an accommodation; in which it was concluded, that *Ladislaws*, being yet of too tender an age to take upon him the administration of his kingdom, he should be put under the tuition of *Ulrick* count *Celley*, his uncle by the mother's side, and that the dispute, touching the wardship of the emperor, should be discussed and determined at *Vienna* ⁱ.

COUNT *Celley's* ambition increased with the power which he derived from being governor of *Ladislaws*. He attempted to make himself absolute master in *Austria*: he secured the principal fortresses, by giving the command of them to his creatures; and gradually removed *Eisfinger* and the *Austrian* nobility from all offices of importance, which he bestowed upon his own friends and favourites. *

Ladislaws is crowned at Prague. THESE proceedings gave great umbrage to the people; and *Eisfinger*, protesting by their discontent, roused their resentment to such a degree, that the count was obliged to retire to his own country, after having delivered up the person of *Ladislaws*, who consented to take the oath imposed upon him by the *Bohemians*, and repaired to *Prague*, where he was crowned with great solemnity ^k.

A. D.

1453.

ⁱ *ÆNE*, Boem. c. 60, 61, & *Europ.* c. 22, & ep. 409. *NAUCLER. Gener.* 49. ^k *COCHL.* p. 392. —

DURING these contests, *Mahomet II.* succeeding his father *Amurath II.* and being equally ambitious of extending his conquest, subdued the rest of *Greece*, took the city of *Constantinople* by assault, in which the emperor *Constantine Palæologus* was slain with all his followers. By this expedition the *Roman* empire in the east was utterly annihilated, under a prince of the same name with him to whom it owed its beginning; and the *Turks* at that time seemed bent upon adding the western empire to their conquest. This progress of the *Mahometans* alarmed the princes of Christendom, and induced them to unite, in order to check the career of the common enemy. A diet was convoked at *Ratisbon* on this subject, and the members unanimously agreed, that there was a necessity for taking some speedy methods to stop the progress of the infidels; but what these methods should be, was a consideration referred to another assembly at *Frankfort*, where, though there was a great concourse of princes, and a vast appearance of zeal, very little was done for the common cause. It was agreed, indeed, that the *Hungarians* should be reinforced with ten thousand horse and two-and-thirty thousand infantry; and that the electors and princes should repair to *Neustadt*, to concert measures with the emperor for raising these troops. Pope *Nicholas* dying in the interim, was succeeded by *Calixtus III.* who sent legates to all the princes in Christendom, exhorting them to engage in a crusade; and all of them expressed abundance of zeal for the interests of Christianity: but, how promising soever appearances might be, they produced very little effect to the advantage of the common cause. The pope himself, indeed, by dint of presents and solicitations, excited the sopher of *Persia* to make a diversion on his side, while the Christians should attack them on the other. The *Germans*, by the exhortations and remonstrances of cardinal *Carvajal*, legate of the holy see in that country, were prevailed upon to raise troops and send them to *Hunniades*, who alone sustained the efforts of the *Mahometans* in *Hungary*. Reinforced by Hunniades these succours he marched directly to *Belgrade*, which was besieged by *Mahomet*, and, after a very obstinate engaging reinforcement, compelled him to raise the siege, and retreat with the forced loss of 40,000 killed upon the spot¹. But *Hunniades* dying a few days after of a fever, occasioned by the fatigue he had undergone in the battle, the Christians were so disconcerted by the loss of their general, that, in minding their own par-

Constantinople is taken by Mahomet II.

A. D.
1455.

¹ ANTONIN. tit. 22, c. 14. in pr. ÆNE. Europ. c. 8. Boem. c. 65. THUR. Chr. Hun. in Ladis. c. 55.

and re-
treats
with great
loss.

A. D.
1456.

Frederic's
backward-
ness.

A misun-
derstand-
ing be-
tween Ca-
lixthus III.
and the
princes of
the empire.

Articles of
their com-
plaint.

particular affairs, they utterly abandoned the common cause. Indeed all the schemes, which had for two years been projected for the support of this holy war, proved abortive, thro' the interruptions occasioned by particular quarrels in *Germany*, as well as by the sloth and timidity of the emperor himself; for *Frederic*, notwithstanding the pressing instances of the pope, the zeal and industry of the legate *Carvajal*, who had effected the convocation of two diets to deliberate upon measures for the support of this war, preaching up the crusade with great energy and eloquence; I say, notwithstanding these incitements, the emperor would never heartily embark in the undertaking. He even declined an interview with *Philip* duke of *Burgundy*, who had come into *Germany* on purpose to confer with him and the princes on that subject; being, in all probability, averse to a war, which would infallibly expose him to danger and expence.

BESIDES, a misunderstanding happened between pope *Cali-
xthus* III. and the princes of the empire. *Frederic* had sent an ambassador to congratulate the new pope upon his elevation, and to assure him of his implicit obedience. This step he had taken contrary to the inclination of some electors, who used their utmost endeavours to persuade him, that it was time to bridle the power of the popes, who could not reasonably expect to be obeyed, until they should have granted better conditions; for the *Germans* were much more oppressed by them than either the *Italians* or *French*. The electors of the *Rhine* also assembled and drew up a schedule of the grievances, which the nation sustained from the tyranny of the court of *Rome*. This remonstrance, among other things, imported, that the pope did not observe the decrees of the councils of *Constance* and *Basil*: that he did not think himself obliged by the *Concordata* made with pope *Nicholas* V. his predecessor: that he despised the *German* nation, and seemed bent upon exhausting it intirely: that the elections of prelates were generally rejected: that the benefices and dignities of any consideration were reserved for cardinals and prothonotaries: that livings, for the most part, were promised before they became vacant: that the annates were not only exacted with extreme rigour, but more was extorted on that account than was really due: that the government of churches was not conferred according to merit, but always upon those who paid the highest price: that new indulgencies were granted every day, by which the empire was drained of its money: that, under the pretext of a war against the *Turks*, the ecclesiastic tythes were seized, without the privity or consent of the bishops: that causes which

ought

ought to be tried in *Germany*, were continually appealed to the tribunal of the pope; and a thousand methods invented to attract all the money of the empire to *Rome*. The emperor himself was disposed to join the electors in this remonstrance, but he was hindered by the influence which his ministers had over him; and the pope answered this accusation article by article in several epistles contained in the collection of *Aeneas Sylvius*, who indeed wrote them for the justification of his holiness^a.

A. D.

1457.

As it was absolutely necessary, for checking the progress of the *Turks*, that the Christian princes should act with concord and unanimity, the pope, understanding that the old grudge between the emperor and *Ladislaus*, originally owing to *Frederic's* having detained him longer than he desired under his tuition, had now broke out into open war, he not only wrote letters to both, exhorting them to peace and reconciliation, but also sent his apostolic legate, *John* cardinal of *St. Angelo*, to use his endeavours for an accommodation, which *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria* undertook to effect as mediator between them^b: but, before this peace could be established, *Ladislaus* being at *Prague*, in order to celebrate his nuptials with *Magdalen*, daughter of the king of *France*, he was suddenly taken ill, and died, not without suspicion of poison, which the Catholics fix upon *Rockizane*, who had declared himself protector of the *Hussites*, to whom he knew the king was averse; while others charge it to *Podiebrad*, who was supposed to aspire to the sovereignty. Upon the death of this young prince several competitors arose for the succession of the crown of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*^c.

THE emperor pretended to dispose of the crown of *Bohemia*, because *Ladislaus* had neglected to do homage to the empire, and intended to bestow it either upon himself or upon some other prince of his house. *Casimir*, brother-in-law of *Ladislaus*, claimed it in right of his wife; *William* duke of *Saxony* demanded the preference of this prince, because he had married the eldest sister of the last king; while *Albert* and *Sigismund*, dukes of *Austria*, founded their title upon a *pactum familia* between the two houses, touching a reciprocal succession, in case of failure of male issue; but *Podiebrad*, by means of *Rockizane*, had the good fortune to proclaim all his competitors, and was actually proclaimed king of *Bohemia*, almost without opposition^d.

Bohemia.

A. D.

1458.

^a *ÆNE. Ep.* 371.^b *Id. Ep.* 329. 331. 339.^c See theHistory of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*^d *KRANTZ. Sax.* l. xi.

c. 33.

Matthias **HUNGARY** likewise was claimed by fundry pretenders; but elected king the remembrance of the great services done to that kingdom by *Hunniades* united all the suffrages in favour of his son *Matthias*, who was then a prisoner in *Bohemia*, whither he had been removed by *Ladislaus*, in consequence of the murder of the count *de Celley*, for which the elder brothers of *Matthias* had been beheaded at *Buda*.

PODIEBRAD, understanding that this young prince was elected king of *Hungary*, promised to set him at liberty, provided he would marry his daughter; and this condition was fulfilled with the consent of the *Hungarian* states.

Two other competitors dispute the duchy of Austria with Frederic. As for the dominions of *Austria* that belonged to *Ladislaus*, the succession involved the emperor in a war with two princes, from which he reaped nothing but damage and disgrace. These were his own brother *Albert IV.* surnamed *The Prodigal*, and *Sigismund* count of *Tyrol*, his cousin-german, who, as well as himself, were descended from *Albert the Sage*. *Frederic*, as eldest, claimed the possession of *Austria*; *Albert*, his brother, alleged that he already was in possession of too many provinces; that he had already too much availed himself of his birth-right in sharing the succession of his father; and that, in the case of this duchy, it was but reasonable he should have some regard to the rights of his brother and cousin. On the other hand, the states of *Austria* would not yield obedience to either of these competitors; so that all three concurred in desolating the country. After these ravages had continued for some time, the affair was accommodated by the mediation of *Lewis* count palatine. By this agreement the emperor acquired the possession of *Lower Austria* as far as the river *Ems*; the country on the other side of that river was given to *Albert*; *Upper Carinthia*, in the neighbourhood of *Tyrol*, became the portion of *Sigismund*; and it was agreed, that each of these princes should have a separate palace in the castle of *Vienna*.

**Pope Pius II. con-
vokes an
assembly at
Mantua.**

THIS dispute furnished *Frederic* with an excuse for absenting himself from the assembly at *Mantua*, convoked by *Aeneas Sylvius*, who had by this time succeeded to the papacy by the name of *Pius II.* To this congress the new pope invited all the princes of Christendom, that they might form a league against the *Turks*: but so many countries, and *Germany* in particular, were embarrassed with intestine broils, that the success of this assembly did not answer the real and expectation of his holiness. The northern parts

of the empire were embroiled by *Christian* king of *Denmark*, who seized upon the duchies of *Holstein* and *Sleswic*, upon the death of duke *Alphonfus*, and did homage for both to the emperor.

PODIEBRAD was not yet firmly established upon the throne of *Bohemia*, which he had mounted in direct opposition to *Frederic* and the pope: *Matthias* did not think himself secure of the kingdom of *Hungary*, because he had not yet received the crown, which the emperor detained without any shadow of pretence; and this defect in *Matthias* had great weight with his superstitious subjects. The kings of *France* and *England* absolutely refused to engage in this crusade; *Sigismund* of *Austria* had incurred the sentence of excommunication from the pope for having outraged and imprisoned cardinal *Cusa*: the dukes of *Bavaria*, the elector of *Mentz*, the count palatine of the *Rhine*, and almost all the princes of *Germany*, were so much disgusted at the indolence, pusillanimity, and sordid disposition of *Frederic*, that they held private consultations, in order to deliberate on the means for setting him aside, and electing a new king of the *Romans*. *A storm ready to burst upon the head of the emperor.*

He found means, however, to appease *Matthias* with fair promises, and to attach *Podiebrad* to his interest, by renouncing his pretensions to the crown of *Bohemia*, and undertaking to support the new king with all his influence; and he was screened from the resentment of the other princes by the interposition and good offices of *Albert* marquis of *Brandenburg*.

BESIDES those dissensions, which in a great measure prevented the success of the assembly at *Mantua*, other disputes intervened to harass and distract the empire. *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria-Landsbut* revived his pretensions upon *Donawert*, of *Bavaria*-which the emperor *Sigismund* had declared a free imperial *Landsbut* town, and actually invested the place with an army of 20,000 men, which he was enabled to raise by a treaty he had made with *Frederic* elector palatine, *Otho* and *John* counts palatine of the *Rhine*, *Ulric* of *Wurtemberg*, and several other noblemen of the empire. *Lewis duke revives his pretensions to Donawert.*

A. D.
1460.

FREDERIC complained of these proceedings to the diet held at *Nuremberg*; and the *Bavarian* refusing to withdraw his troops, war was declared, and a strong body of forces sent against him under the command of *Albert* the German *Achilles*, who soon retook the city of *Donawert*, which had surren-

dered to *Lewis*; and conducted himself with such intrepidity and discretion, that the emperor created him judge through all *Germany*, with a delegated power to summon all persons guilty of state crimes before his tribunal.

He is put
to the ban
of the em-
pire.

Engages in
a war
with Al-
bert mar-
quis of
Branden-
burg,
whom he
defeats.

LEWIS duke of *Bavaria-Landsbut* appealed from this authority to the diet at *Nuremberg*, and demanded a sight of the patent that established his office, which, being presented to him for his perusal, he read, and tore it in pieces, even in presence of the emperor, who was so much incensed at his presumption, that he forthwith put him to the ban of the empire. The states were ordered to furnish the margrave of *Brandenburg* with troops to execute the sentence; and tho' the imperial towns of *Suabia* obeyed, those of *Franconia* refused their contingent; while the *Hussites* of *Bohemia*, part of *Austria*, and all *Bavaria*, declared for *Lewis*. Both armies took the field, hostilities commenced, and notwithstanding the efforts of *Podiebrad*, who endeavoured to mediate a peace, the war was protracted about three years with various success: *Brandenburg* and *Lower Bavaria* were ravaged in their turns: *Lewis* was assisted by the count palatine of the *Rhine*, the bishops of *Wirtzburg* and *Bamberg*, and *Otho* duke of *Mosbach*; the elector of *Brandenburg* numbered among his allies the count of *Wurtemberg*, the margrave of *Baden*, and thirty-two imperial towns of *Suabia*. At length the two armies met between *Ulm* and *Noddingen*, and a very obstinate and bloody battle ensued, in which *The German Achilles*, being utterly defeated, was obliged to sue for peace. This was accordingly effected by the mediation of *Podiebrad*, in a treaty concluded at *Prague*, importing, that the emperor should permit *Lewis* to enjoy the rights he claimed to the bishopric of *Archlet*, the honorary of the *Jews* at *Ratisbon*, and the fiefs he demanded as of right belonging to the *Bavarian* house in *Austria*†.

THIS was not the only war that distressed the interior parts of the empire. Another flame broke out between *Diethric* count d'*Ysembourg*, and *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, who were competitors for the archbishopric of *Mentz*. The first had been elected by a majority of the canons; but he was excommunicated by pope *Pius II.* because he had not paid the annates; and, by direction of his holiness, recourse was had to a new election, which determined in favour of *Adolphus*. Then both parties appealed to the decision of arms, and mutual ravages were committed for some years, until *Diethric*;

† DUMONT. Corp. Dipl. t. i. p. 283.

tired of the dispute, ceded his right to *Adolphus*, received absolution from the pope's nuncio, and spent the remainder of his life as a private gentleman.

BEFORE these differences were compromised, *Albert of Austria*, still dissatisfied, and being supported by *Lewis of Bavaria*, took up arms again against the emperor, still on pretence that he had been injured in the division of his father's dominions; though he now reinforced that pretext by alleging the *Austrians* complained that the emperor had encroached upon their privileges. This quarrel was also made up for the present by the interposition of the king of *Bohemia*, who prevailed upon both parties to lay down their arms; but the dispute was afterwards inflamed to a greater degree of rancour, which broke out in a more cruel intestine war. *Albert*, appearing before *Vienna* at the head of his troops, was engaged by the emperor's forces, who obliged him to retreat. The inhabitants of that city, though very little attached to the emperor, were divided into two factions: the senate, and wiser part of the burghers, seemed to espouse the interest of *Frederic*, while the people, and the consul *Holzer* at their head, inclined to *Albert*. In the midst of these transactions, the emperor presented himself before *Vienna* at the head of 4000 men, and was at first refused admittance. Some time after, however, the gates were opened; but not before he had promised to overlook the affront he received. He then took cognizance of their affairs, changed the magistrates according to the inclination of the burghers, and re-established the tranquillity of the city, which, however, was soon interrupted by a tumult that arose among the people. In the neighbourhood of the city were some soldiers, part of whom, during the preceding wars, had been in the service of the emperor, and part of them in the army of *Albert*. These, joining in a body, demanded the arrears that were due to them; and, as no satisfaction was given, they began to pillage the country. Complaints of these ravages were carried to *Frederic*, who being either distressed for want of money, or desirous of trying the affection of the people, demanded of the city a loan of 6000 ducats, to which, he said, he would add the like sum, in order to maintain the troops necessary to quell the disturbances of which they complained. The inhabitants of *Vienna*, refusing to comply with this request, or even to furnish the half of that sum, to which he afterwards lowered his demand, he threatened the city with his resentment, and would neither satisfy the soldiers, nor take any step for putting an end to the violences which they daily committed. The disorders of consequence

The quarrel afterwards renewed.

A D.
1462.

The emperor takes possession of Vienna, which is divided into two factions.

An insur-
rection
against
Frederic;

who is ba-
fled in
the castle;

and reliev-
ed by the
interposi-
tion of
George
Podiebrad
king of
Bohemia.

Another
ineffectual
treaty.

increased, and the mutineers, rendered more audacious by impunity, insulted the vintages, and would not suffer them to carry their wine into the city; while those inhabitants who were in *Albert's* interest, took this opportunity to raise an insurrection against the emperor. The populace accordingly assembled in a tumultuous manner, renounced their allegiance, and seized all the money that was found in the public offices. *Frederic*, who with the empress, and his young son *Maximilian*, resided in the castle, thought he could appease the sedition by sending two of his officers to make representations to the ringleaders, and exhort the rest to return quietly to their homes: but, instead of listening to these remonstrances, they imprisoned the two officers, and actually formed the siege of the castle, after having concluded, for two years, a treaty of alliance with *Albert*. In a word, the emperor was so harrassed, and reduced to such extremity, that he and all his attendants must have perished by famine, had not he been relieved by the interposition of *George Podiebrad*, king of *Bohemia* ^u. By his management a treaty was concluded, importing, that the prisoners on both sides should be released: that *Albert* should restore the fortresses, towns, and territories, of which he had possessed himself: that he should for eight years enjoy the government of *Lower Austria* in quality of vicar, and pay yearly to his brother the sum of 14,000 ducats ^x. Yet the articles of this agreement were observed by neither side. *Albert* could not prevail upon himself to part with his acquisitions, and *Frederic* not only refused to bestow upon him the administration of *Lower Austria*, but even put him to the ban of the empire, and persuaded the pope to saddle him with the sentence of excommunication.

A. D. 1463. THESE violent proceedings induced them both to have recourse again to arms; and their troops engaging near *Neustadt*, a battle ensued, in which a great deal of blood was spilt on both sides. *Sigismund* of *Austria*, *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, the empress *Eleonora*, and the pope, used their utmost endeavours to promote a reconciliation between the two brothers; but all their efforts proved ineffectual: *Albert* would not yield what was in his possession, and *Frederic* insisted upon being master of all *Austria*, in consideration of a sum of money, which he was willing pay. What could not be compromised by human intercession, was determined by the decrees of Heaven. *Albert* was overtaken by a sudden death,

They have
again re-
course to
arms.

The differ-
ence is ter-
minated by

^u Comment. Pii. II. l. x. COCHLÆ, l. xii. HEISS Hist de l'Em-
pire, l. iii. c. 2. ^x DUMONT. ut supra.

which

which some considered as a punishment from above, on account of his wicked life, and undutiful behaviour; while others ascribed it to poison; and a third set to an apoplexy, occasioned by his debauchery and incontinence. The physicians confirmed the suspicion of poison, by declaring they had observed marks of it when they inspected the body, and several persons were apprehended in consequence of their declaration; but, as no proofs of their guilt appeared, they were in a little time set at liberty. In the beginning of the following year, *Sigismund* yielded to the emperor that portion of *Austria* which he inherited from *Ladislaus*; so that *Frederic* at length found himself in peaceable possession of that whole duchy².

THE Hungarians, as we have already observed, seeing the difficulties in which the emperor was involved, instead of choosing a king from the house of *Austria*, had elected, in the room of *Ladislaus*, *Matthias Corvinus*, son of the valiant Hunniades; but the ceremony of his coronation was not performed at that time, because the emperor still detained the crown which they had always used for that purpose; besides he had actually declared open war against them, with design to add that kingdom to his hereditary dominions; but his efforts were so feeble, that they had no apprehension of his being able to accomplish his aim by force of arms. At length, however, being heartily tired of the war, he consented to restore the crown, and concluded a treaty with *Matthias*, in which it was stipulated, that a mutual adoption of father and son should take place between these two princes; and that, in case the king of Hungary should die without legitimate children or nephews, the crown should devolve to *Frederic* and the heirs of his body³.

POPE Paul II. who had succeeded to the pontificate on the death of *Pius*, understanding that *Mahomet II.* was employed in making great preparations against *Scanderbeg* king of *Albania*, wrote to the states of *Germany*, demanding the 32,000 men to fight against the *Turks*, according to the promise their deputies had made in the assembly at *Mantua*; and at the same time he sent a legate to exhort *Christian* king of *Denmark* to join the *German* troops in this expedition; but the princes paid very little regard to his representations, and his *Danish* majesty was too much embarrassed at home to engage in a foreign war. *Gerhard* count of *Oldembourg*, on pretence of demanding certain sums that were due to him

A. D. 1464.
The Hungarians choose Matthias for their king.

Makes peace with the emperor, who, being alarmed by the incursions of the Turks,

sets out for Italy.

A. D. 1465.

Affairs of Denmark.

¹ Roo. l. vii. p. 251.
NITZ. Cod. Dipl. p. 422.

² WEISS, l. iii. c. 2.

³ LEIB-

as successor to his brother *Maurice*, took advantage of *Christian's* absence in *Sweden* to invade *Holstein* and *Lower Friesland*, from the inhabitants of which he exacted the oaths of allegiance. The king of *Denmark*, being informed of this irruption, postponed his operations in *Sweden* against *Charles Canutson*, who had ascended the throne of that kingdom, and began his march towards *Holstein*, to check the progress of his brother *Gerhard*. Nevertheless, he was prevailed upon, by the mediation of his senators, to pardon this prince, who made his submission to him at *Segeberg*, and the *Friezlanders* took the oath of allegiance anew to *Christian* ^b.

MEAN while every thing tended to a rupture in *Bohemia* and *Silesia*. *Podiebrad* laid such religious restraints upon the Catholics of *Silesia*, that the pope declared them exempted from all submission to that prince, and put them under the protection of *Matthias* king of *Hungary*. At the instigation of *Rockizane* he exerted the same tyranny over his catholic subjects of *Bohemia*, forcing upon them the ritual of the *Calixtins*, and punishing severely those who refused to communicate of both species. This spiritual oppression drove them to such despair, that they revolted against their sovereign, and were absolved from their allegiance by the pope, who summoned *Podiebrad* to appear at *Rome* within a specified time, impowered his legate to publish a crusade against him, and, finally, declared him convicted of perjury, sacrilege, and heresy, deprived of his crown, and all his children and posterity incapable of receiving any dignity whatsoever ^c.

The pope excommunicates *Podiebrad*, and absolves his subjects from their oath of allegiance.

A. D.
1465.

Peace between the Poles and the Teutonic knights of Prussia.

THOUGH *Rodolphus* did not succeed in his endeavours to excite the *German* princes against *Podiebrad*, he was more lucky in another negotiation, which he undertook at the same time; namely, that of mediating a reconciliation between the *Poles* and *Teutonic* knights, which, after a war of fourteen years, was confirmed by a treaty, importing, that all *Pomerania*, and some other provinces, should revert to the *Poles*; and that the *Teutonic* order in *Prussia* should be feudatory to the king of *Poland* ^d.

As for the emperor, he indulged his indolence and timidity to such a degree of carelessness and indifference for the affairs of the empire, that he never dreamed of interposing his good offices or authority in order to prevent the desolation and slavery of *Liege*, which had revolted against its bishop, *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, on account of some privileges he

^b HUITFELD, t. vi.
CHOM. l. iv. c. 62.

^c PAPIEN. Ep. 209.

^d Mi-

wanted to retrieve, and by this insurrection intailed upon it-Philip self a war with his uncle, *Philip* duke of *Burgundy*. He had by this time united *Luxemburg* to his dominions by a solemn contract with the duke and dukes of *Saxony*, who quitted all their pretensions to that duchy, in consideration of 50,000 crowns of gold; and this purchase was ratified by *Lewis XI. of France*, who likewise pretended to have some right to *Luxemburg* and its dependencies: but a war afterwards breaking out between the *French* king and *Philip*, the inhabitants of *Liege* solicited the assistance of that monarch, who sent them a small reinforcement; and now they breathed nothing but reproach and defiance. The citizens of *Dinant* in particular, trusting to the strength of their fortifications, let slip no opportunity of mortifying the pride and reviling the person of *Philip's* son, the count *de Charolois*, who had taken the field, and entered the territory of *Liege*. But they soon repented of their insolence; for he invested the town, which he carried by assault, and reduced to ashes, after having put all the men to the sword, without mercy or distinction; and those of *Liege* were fain to deprecate his wrath by the most abject submissions, reinforced with 300 hostages chosen by their bishop.

NEVERTHELESS, upon the death of *Philip*, they had recourse to arms again, confiding in the timidity and inexperience of *Charles* his successor; and arrested the bishop, who found means, however, to escape, and repaired to his patron at *Brussels*. Duke *Charles*, incensed at this outrage, levied an army, with which he entered the *Liegeois*, and invested *St. Trou*; and the inhabitants of *Liege* marching out to the relief of the place, were intirely defeated. In consequence of this battle, *St. Trou* surrendered, and was dismantled: 300 of the principal citizens of *Liege* came with the keys of their town to implore the clemency of the duke, who entered the place sword in hand, ordered all the fortifications to be razed, the territory to be pillaged, and the whole country to be loaded with taxes (S).

NOR did *Frederic* interest himself with more spirit in the troubles of *Bohemia*, which was now threatened with a civil

* Hist. du HAINAULT, t. v. l. xiii.

(S) About this period the celebrated *Scanderbeg* king of *Albania* died in the sixty-third year of his age, after having obtained a series of victories against the *Turks*, which raised his character to a level with the most famous heroes of antiquity (1).

(2) *Barre*, t. vii. p. 629.

war,

war, in consequence of the excommunication thundered out by the pope against *Podiebrad*. The Catholics, thinking themselves absolved by this sentence from their allegiance, sent deputies with a proffer of their crown to *Casimir* king of *Poland*, who had married the sister of their last monarch; but that prince declined accepting it, because he dreaded the power and policy of *Podiebrad*, who besides was supported by *Lewis* of *Poland*; *Bavaria-Landshut*, and some other princes of *Germany*. Then the pope made a tender of it to *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, who would have gladly embraced this occasion of gratifying his ambition, had not he dreaded the resentment of the emperor, naturally jealous of such an addition to his power; and, moreover, being engaged in a war with the *Transylvanians* and *Moldavians*, which did not much redound to his honour; for, in the course of his operations, he was surprised in *Batka*, dangerously wounded with an arrow, and obliged to fly for his life across the mountains of *Walachia*.

Diet at Nuremberg. POPE *Paul II.* disappointed in both these quarters, solicited the emperor to declare against *Podiebrad*; but all he could obtain was the convocation of a diet at *Nuremberg*, to deliberate upon this affair, as well as upon a war against the *Turks*. At this assembly, the bishop of *Ferrara*, as legate from the pope, used all his endeavours to engage the princes in a war against the king of *Bohemia*, who oppressed the Catholics, and refused to submit in matters of religion to the holy see: but their different interests influencing them differently, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria-Landshut* openly espousing the cause of *Podiebrad*, no step was taken to the prejudice of that prince. The diet broke up after having resolved, that, for the term of five years, the empire should maintain 25,000 men to serve against the *Turks*; and that the pope should be exhorted to negotiate a solid peace among the princes of Christendom^f.

MEAN while the Catholics of *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, assembling at *Iglau*, sent an embassy to offer the crown to *Frederic*, who seemed very well pleased with the compliment, but desired time to consider on an affair of such importance: but before he could take a final resolution on this subject, *Matthias*, at the pressing solicitations of the pope, accepted the crown, advanced with his troops into *Moravia*, and besieged *Gratisch*, while *Zdinion de Sternberg*, chief of the *Bohemian* malcontents, ravaged the fiefs of *Podiebrad*, as minister of the holy father, who had declared that prince an

^f AVENT. l. vii. c. ult.

excommunicated

excommunicated heretic. But all these efforts were ineffectual. *Matthias* was obliged to raise the siege; and after having had a fruitless conference with *Podiebrad* between the two armies, retired to *Hungary* at the approach of winter 8.

THE emperor being at the same time pressed by his holiness to reconcile the princes and towns of *Germany* that were at variance with each other, in order to draw succours from them against the infidels, he convoked a diet at *Milbenstadt*, Milben- where he expatiated upon the fatal effects of civil discord, *stadt and* and exhorted the states to forget their mutual animosities, *Neustadt.* that they might be the better enabled to revenge the cause of religion against the infidels. His exhortations had some weight with the members of the assembly; and it was proposed, that a tribunal should be erected for terminating the differences subsisting between particular towns and noblemen, as well as to punish rapine, repress violence, and re-establish good order.

THE confirmation of this scheme, however, was referred to a subsequent diet at *Neustadt*, where every article and appointment of the tribunal was regulated: but the towns, which complained of being already almost overwhelmed with burthenful taxes, refused to contribute to the expence of such a college, though its duration was limited to five years; and the assembly broke up without having done any thing material for the public peace ^h.

SOME states, indeed, seeing the necessity for establishing tranquillity in the empire, compromised their reciprocal disputes; and the electors, with several other princes, meeting *The princes* at *Landshut*, endeavoured to pacify the troubles of *Bohemia*; *take mea-* but this convention was also ineffectual, because the Catho- *lures for* lics demanded liberty of conscience, and *Podiebrad* insisted upon their communicating of both species. *compromis-*

WHATEVER precautions might have been taken by some of the princes and states for terminating their quarrels in an amicable manner, it was hardly possible that peace should long subsist between individuals who hated one another personally. The duke of *Bavaria-Landshut* omitted no opportunity of exciting the enemies of the elector of *Brandenburg*: *Sigismund*, archduke of *Austria*, could not abandon the hope and design of one day subduing the *Swiss*; and the people of *Liege* watched for an occasion to break with the duke of *Burgundy*, whom they detested with the most implacable rancour. Inspired by these sentiments, they surprised the *The inhab-* town of *Tongres*, put the *Burgundian* garrison to the sword, *bitants of*

Liege re-
volt
against
Charles
duke of
Burgun-
dy ;

who takes
and destroys
their town,
puts his
prisoners
to death,
and ra-
vages the
country of
Franche-
mont with
fire and
sword.

Arrives at
Rome ;

made their own bishop prisoner, and murdered several canons before his eyes, with circumstances of horrid barbarity.

THE news of this massacre arriving at *Peronne*, where *Charles of Burgundy* then resided, with *Lewis XI.* of *France*, who had visited him on the faith of a safe-conduct, and the duke being at the same time informed that the *Liegeois* had been instigated to this revolt by the intrigues of *France*, he was so transported with rage, that in all probability *Lewis* would have perished by his resentment, had not that prince signed the treaty of *Peronne* on the duke's own terms, and consented to serve as a volunteer in his army against the rebels of *Liege*. Thus appeased with respect to the *French* king, but glowing with indignation against the *Liegeois*, he marched directly to their city, whither he was accompanied by *Lewis* ; refused all their tears, intreaties, and submissions ; invested the place, which he carried by assault, after the besieged had made several desperate sallies ; ordered the prisoners to be murdered, without distinction of sex or age, and the city to be burnt to ashes. Not yet satiated with these spectacles of horror, he laid waste the country of *Franchemont* with fire and sword ; while the wretched inhabitants fled for shelter to the woods, where they perished by famine or the rigour of the winter, which was remarkably severe¹.

IT was in the course of this year that the emperor, finding himself exposed to numberless disquiets from the continual irruptions which the *Turks* made upon the frontiers of his dominions, was alarmed to such a degree, that he resolved to make another journey into *Italy*, to consult with pope *Paul II.* upon ways and means for engaging the Christian princes in a new association against the infidels, and to accomplish a vow which he pretended to have made, though he never explained himself on this subject. For these purposes therefore he set out, with a small retinue, in the severest season of the year, and on *Christmas-eve* arrived at *Rome*, where he was received by torch light^k. Mattins being begun in *St. Peter's* church, where he alighted, he was present during the service, performed his vow, and received the communion from the hands of the pope. He staid in this city fourteen days, during which he had divers conferences with his holiness, touching a war with the *Turks* ; but these consultations produced little or no effect. He proposed to hold a council at *Constance*, at which he and the pope should assist in person, with a view to promote a gene-

¹ Memoires de PHILIP DE COMMINES.
ment. lib. vii.

Papiens Com-

ral expedition against the infidels; but this expedient was declined by *Paul*, and all their deliberations amounted to this issue: That letters should be written, in the name of the emperor and the pope, to all Christian princes, desiring and exhorting them to send ambassadors to *Rome*, at an appointed day, to treat of measures for defending the faith; and that the *Venetians*, who were exhausted in a tedious war against the *Turks*, should be indulged with a tenth of the clergy, a twentieth of the *Jews*, and a thirtieth of the laity, within their own dominions¹. These negotiations being transacted, he set out on his return to his own dominions, whither he travelled with the greater expedition, as he received information that *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, taking the advantage of his absence, had made divers incursions into *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and laid waste the whole country. He was likewise given to understand, that *Charles* duke of *Burgundy*, who had three years before succeeded to the extensive dominions which *Philip the Good*, his father, had so long governed in peace, not contented with that fair inheritance, had increased it with the addition of the duchy of *Guelderland* and the county of *Zutphen*, and even intended to proceed farther in point of acquisition: for the ambition of this prince was unbounded; and, in order to gratify it, he had augmented the taxes, and saddled his subjects with new impositions: neither did he wholly depend upon his riches and power for accomplishing the scheme which he had projected to aggrandize his name: he set on foot secret negotiations in the empire, and privately tampered with the electors, in hopes of being chosen king of the *Romans*. *Frederic* was not ignorant of his practices, being apprised of all these transactions by *Lewis XI.* of *France*, who narrowly watched the conduct of *Charles*, with a view to countermine his ambition^m.

DURING these transactions, *Matthias* was proclaimed king of *Bohemia* by the Catholic party, and his interest increased every day in that kingdom, when *Podiebrad*, by the advice of the emperor, assembled the states at *Prague*, and proposed they should settle the succession upon *Ladislaus*, son of *Casimir* king of *Poland*. This proposal they readily embraced, not without admiration and applause of the disinterestedness of *Podiebrad*, who, for the peace and advantage of his subjects, had voluntarily made this motion, to the exclusion of his own children. This settlement composed the dis-

¹ SPOND. Contin. BARON. t. ii. p. 607.
lib. iii. c. 2.

^m HEISS,

quietude of the nation, so as to enable *Podiebrad* to oppose the progress of *Matthias*, to whom he gave battle, in which the *Hungarian* was vanquished, and obliged to fly for shelter to his own country ⁿ.

Measures concerted at Frankfurt for carrying on a general war against the Turks.

MEAN while a diet being called at *Ratisbon*, at the desire of the pope, in order to concert measures for carrying on the war against the *Turks*, the princes and states assembled in great numbers, ambassadors from *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* were present, and *Campanus*, in the name of cardinal *Francis Piccolimini*, who was sent thither from the court of *Rome* for that purpose, made an elegant harangue; in which he expatiated upon the glory of their ancestors, and the zeal which they on all occasions manifested in behalf of the church; and exhorted them, in imitation of such noble examples, to take arms against the infidels, whose progress and success were not so much owing to their own valour, as to the indolence and unjustifiable neglect of the Christian powers. The bishop of *Trent* spoke to the same purpose; and their remonstrances had such an effect upon the assembly, that they seemed zealously determined to prosecute the war with vigour. Accordingly, after much deliberation and debate, it was unanimously decreed, that every person, who enjoyed a revenue of a thousand ducats, should furnish one horseman; and that a foot soldier should be provided by every person who possessed one-half of that fortune. Had this expedient been carried into practice, an army of near 200,000 men might have been brought into the field; but the pacific and slothful disposition of the emperor, which was altogether averse to war and expence, threw a damp upon the scheme, and the spirit and zeal of individuals insensibly decayed. Notwithstanding the admonitions and solicitations of the *Venetians*, in whose behalf *Paul Morosini*, in a pathetic and nervous oration, represented the necessity of taking some measures to stop the career of the *Turks*, and plainly demonstrated the probability of putting a stop to their conquests, provided the *Germans* would attack them by land, while the *Venetians*, assisted by *Ferdinand* king of *Apulia*, should undertake to cope with them at sea ^o.

Rendered ineffectual by the avarice and sloth of the emperor.

A. D.
1471.

Ladislaus succeeds to the throne of Bohemia,

IN this year *George* king of *Bohemia* dying, great contests arose among the subjects touching a successor (for the party of *Matthias* still subsisted), till at length the friends of *Ladislaus*, the king of *Poland's* eldest son, prevailing, that young prince, whose mother was sister of *Ladislaus*, the predecessor

ⁿ BARRÉ, t. vii. p. 657. ^o KRANTZ SAX. l. xii. c. 7.
CAMP. Ep. l. vi. & ap. PAP. Ep. 375, 376, 377. 386, 387.

of *George*, ascended the throne, in the fifteenth year of his age, and was crowned at *Prague*, tho' not without considerable opposition from *Matthias*, who was exasperated at his election ^p. This *George Podiebrad* was not long survived by pope *Paul*, who had condemned him as an heretic, and deposed him by virtue of his apostolic power; for he was suddenly carried off by a fit of the apoplexy, after he had made a cheerful meal (no person being present when he expired ^T), and succeeded in the papacy by *Francis Ruverens*, cardinal of *St. Peter ad Vincula*, who, after his elevation, assumed the name of *Sixtus IV.* ^q. This new pope was no sooner raised to the chair, than he exerted his endeavours in perfecting the plan against the *Turks*, for the execution of which his predecessor had laboured so ineffectually. Legates were sent with full powers to reconcile the Christian princes, who were at variance with each other, that they might unite in the common cause against the enemies of their faith. Indulgencies were granted, and subsidies raised, to forward the expedition, and the emperor very warmly solicited to act with vigour as the chief power of this confederacy ^r. But *Frederic*, whose genius was better turned for negociation than war, found means to procrastinate all the measures that were concerted for the benefit of this grand association, employing his chief attention in those domestic affairs, which he thought more nearly concerned his interest. He had, for some time, been engaged in treating privately with the electors about obtaining their votes for choosing his son *Maximilian* king of the *Romans*; and the steps which he had taken in this affair, were the chief obstacles which *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* met with in aspiring to the same honour. That enterprizing prince, therefore, finding it impracticable to carry his point, altered his scheme, and resolved to cultivate the friendship of the emperor, who, he did not doubt, would be prevailed upon to erect his dominions into a kingdom, and confer upon him the title of king of *Burgundy*, and vicar of the empire in these parts. In consequence of this resolution, he made the proposal to *Frederic*, by which he said all the countries, which had been dismembered, would be re-united to the em-

^p MICHOV. iv. c. 62. Chron. lib. 27. ^q SPOND. Cont. BARRE, ^r ONUFHR. in Vit. Sixt. IV.

(T) See the very ...

Charles,
duke of
Burgun-
dy, in-
vites the
emperor to
an inter-
view at
Triers.

A. D.
1473.

From
whence
Frederic
retires ab-
ruptly.

pire, and at the same time offered his only daughter *Mary* in marriage to *Maximilian*, son of the emperor. While this treaty was upon the carpet, he invited *Frederic* to a conference at *Triers*, where he did not doubt of being able to manage him for his own interest. Nay, so sure was he of his compliance, that he had prepared his royal ornaments and regalia, together with the throne, canopy, and all the other requisites for a pompous coronation. The emperor, who had his own private designs upon *Charles*, accepted of the invitation, and repaired to *Triers*, where he was treated with infinite splendor. The match was seemingly agreed to, tho' the emperor desired it might be consummated before the duke should be crowned; but *Charles* insisted upon its being deferred until that ceremony should be performed. At last *Frederic*, in all appearance, yielded to his intreaties, and, the following day being fixed for the coronation, he in that expectation did homage to the emperor, and took the oath of fidelity for *Guelderland*, and all the other territories he possessed within the dominions of the empire. *Frederic*, having thus accomplished his aim, and being unwilling to cater for the ambition of a prince, who was already too proud, insolent, and formidable, retired next morning from *Triers*, in the dawn, on pretence of going to compromise a difference between the archbishop and city of *Cologne*, leaving the duke overwhelmed with shame and vexation * (U). Affronted and chagrined as he was at this disappointment, he did not desist from his enterprize; but, on the contrary, employed all his efforts to achieve it, sparing neither men nor money in the exertion of his endeavours. Among other things, he thought proper to grant his protection to *Robert* count palatine, who disputed the archbishopric of *Cologne* with *Herman* landgrave of *Hesse*. For this purpose he besieged the town of *Nuys*,

* PHIL. DE COMM. l. ii. c. 8. HEISS, l. iii. c. 2. KRANTZ Sax. l. xii. c. 11.

(U) *Heiss* alleges, that the duke of *Burgundy* incurred the suspicion of *Frederic*, in consequence of the under-hand insinuations of *Lewis XI.* of *France*, who was alarmed at the prospect of such a formidable alliance; while the author of the notes upon that historian pretends, that *Charles*, having as-

sumed the arms of *Austria*, because some territories belonging to that family had been mortgaged to him by *Sigismund*, *Frederic* was extremely incensed at this instance of his presumption, and for that reason commenced his inveterate foe.

situated upon the *Rhine*, which was defended with great valour and perseverance by *Herman*, for the space of a whole year, until the besieged were reduced to the utmost extremity and want; when the troops of the empire marched to his relief, and obliged him to raise the siege¹ (X).

LEWIS XI. of *France*, having attempted ineffectually to engage the *Germanic* body in a war with *Charles*, endeavoured to form an alliance against that ambitious prince, with *Rene* duke of *Lorraine*, *Sigismund* duke of *Austria*, and the *Swiss* cantons; and in these negotiations he succeeded to his wish. The first was persuaded, by the emissaries of *Lewis*, that *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* intended to include *Lorraine* in the kingdom which he had projected for himself; *Sigismund* was flattered with the hope of recovering the country of *Ferrefe*, *Suntgau*, and other fiefs in *Alsace*, which he had mortgaged to the *Burgundian*; and the *Swiss* entered into the pay of *France*, after *Lewis* had terminated, in an amicable manner, a war that raged between them and *Basil*, assisted by *Strasburg* and the imperial cities of *Alsace*; and reconciled them with *Sigismund*, whose family they had stripped of the towns of *Raperswil*, *Dressanhar*, *Frewensfeld*, and the county of *Turgow*.

THIS league being established, *Sigismund* offered to redeem the mortgage with a sum of money, which he had borrowed from the imperial towns for that purpose; and *Charles* refusing to part with the fiefs, he had good reason to complain of the injustice. At the same time *Hagenbach*, governor of the towns for the duke of *Burgundy*, oppressed them in such a manner, that their patience forsook them, and they revolted from his authority. *Ensisheim* was the first that shook off his yoke, and repulsed him in the attempt he made to enter and destroy the town. Enraged at his disappoint-

The duke besieges the town of Nuys.
Lewis engages in a league with Rene, duke of Lorraine, Sigismund of Austria, and the Swiss, against Charles, duke of Burgundy.

A. D.
1476.

Hagenbach, the duke's governor, oppresses the towns of Alsace.

¹ Id. c. 12. Chron. Mindenf. ex MEIB. p. 573.

(X) *Krantz* affirms, that the siege was raised in consequence of a treaty with the emperor, confirming the match which had before been projected between his daughter and *Maximilian*; while *Philip de Commines* imputes his retreat to the remonstrances of the *English*, who had made preparations for invading *France* at his infliga-

tion, and now threatened to desert from the expedition, unless he would immediately march into that kingdom, that they might the more easily act in conjunction. He was alarmed by the incursion of the duke of *Lorraine*, who had declared war against him, and invaded his dominions, at the desire of *Lewis XI.* of *France*.

He is be-
headed by
the inha-
bitants of
Brisac.

ment, he retired to *Brisac*, where he laid a scheme for massacring the inhabitants; but the garrison, composed of *Germanians* and *Walloons*, refused to execute his orders. His person was seized upon by the burghers; he underwent a fair trial, in which being convicted of tyranny, murder, and treason, he was condemned to lose his head, and suffered accordingly, by torch light, in the presence of an innumerable concourse of people.

His brother
ravages the
Suntgau.
The Swiss
and their
allies take
Hericourt
in Franche
Comte.

The duke
loses a
battle,
and his
life.

A. D.
1477.

THE duke of *Burgundy*, exasperated at this execution, sent six thousand men into the *Suntgau*, under the command of *Hagenbach's* brother, who committed horrible ravages; but he was soon obliged to retire before the *Swiss*, who hastened to the relief of that province. They were joined by the inhabitants of *Basil*, *Straßburg*, and other towns on the *Rhine*; and, advancing into *Franche Comté*, they defeated *Blamont*, the marshal of *Burgundy*, who had come to raise the siege of *Hericourt*, which afterwards surrendered to the victors.

THIS was the prelude of a war, that ended in the destruction of *Charles*. Had that prince contented himself with maintaining the war against *Lewis*, he might have acquired reputation and advantage from his riches and his power; but, blinded by ambition, he neglected to cultivate the friendship of the duke of *Lorrain*, and his confederates the *Swiss*, who entered into alliance with *Lewis*, and defeated *Charles* in three battles; in the last of which, fought at *Nancy* on the fifth of *January*, he was mortally wounded, and next day found dead upon the ice^u (Y).

As he had exhausted his finances, and ruined his troops with continual wars, so as to impoverish his subjects, the principal noblemen of his dominions resolved to bestow his daughter upon some prince, who should be capable to protect them in their independency. *Lewis XI.* demanded the princess for the dauphin, and the emperor claimed her as being already betrothed to his son *Maximilian*. *Lewis*, immediately after the death of *Charles*, re-united to his crown all *Burgundy*, *Picardy*, and *Ponthieu*, *Artois*, with the cities of *Arras*, *Tournay*, and those upon the river *Somme*, as fiefs and appendages of *France*, which could never be possessed by a woman. The precipitation and rapacity with which he made these acquisitions, and the wars he maintained for that purpose, gave such umbrage to the inhabitants of *Ghent*, that

^u COMM. I. v. KRANTZ SAX. I. xii. c. 15.

(Y) See the History of the *Swiss*.

they refused to break with him intirely, seized the person of their princess, beheaded two of her counsellors, and dismissed the rest, because they were in the *French* interest, and levied an army, the command of which they bestowed upon *Adolphus* duke of *Guelderland*, whom *Charles* of *Burgundy* had imprisoned in the castle of *Namur*, as an unnatural wretch, who had treated his own father with unheard-of barbarity. They even destined this wicked and debauched prince for the husband of the young duchess, who was delivered from the horrors of such a marriage by death; for he was slain in an action with the *French*, whom he undertook to drive from *Tournay*, which they had surpris'd. Upon his demise, the people of *Ghent* no more interest'd themselves in the fate of their princess, who at one time received the addresses of the dauphin of *France*, the son of the duke of *Cleves*, the earl of *Rivers*, and the archduke *Maximilian*. The interest of the dauphin was supported by *Lewis* bitant of *Bourbon*, bishop of *Liege*, and uncle to the duchess; but *Liege* he was betrayed by *La March*, his own favourite, who caused an insurrection against the bishop, at *Liege*, where that prelate was hated, as author of all the mischief which *Charles* of *Burgundy* had done to that city and its territory. *La March*, having stipulated with the *Liegeois*, that one of his sons should be raised to the vacant bishopric, levied a powerful army, with which he besieged *Lewis*; who, hazarding a fall, was betrayed by his own people, and slain by the treacherous *La March*. This miscreant not only killed his benefactor with his own hand, but afterwards stripped his dead body, and threw it into the river *Meuse* *.

THE death of this prelate destroyed the interest of *France* at the court of *Flanders*; the young duchess herself declared against the son of the duke of *Cleves*, who was a youth of very unpromising parts; and the earl of *Rivers* was rejected on account of his birth, which was not deemed illustrious enough for the husband of the heiress of *Burgundy*; so that all these competitors gave place to the fortunate *Maximilian*, who had nothing to boast of but his birth and natural endowments; for his father was so sordidly avaritious, that he would not bestow the least expence upon his education.

FREDERIC, however, seemed to shake off his natural indolence, when the business was to acquire a rich inheritance for his posterity: he sent ambassadors to demand the young duchess in marriage for his son; and at the first audience

* Hist. Eccles. Leop. part ii. l. 10.

they produced the letter and ring, which she had formerly sent to *Maximilian*, with the consent of her father. *Lewis XI.* of *France* endeavoured to traverse the success of this embassy, by the intrigues of *Robert Gaguin*, general of the *Trinitarians*, whom he sent to *Flanders* for that purpose: but the duchess dowager's efforts co-operated with the inclinations of her daughter-in-law, in favour of *Maximilian*, and the emperor managed his interest so successfully, that the marriage was effected between *Mary* of *Burgundy* and his son *Maximilian*, who was then about twenty years of age¹. This young prince was no sooner married, than, in order to gain the esteem and good will of his people, he, with the assistance of the *Flemings*, put himself in a condition to oppose the enterprises of the *French*, whom he compelled to restore *Quefusi* and *Bouchain*; in consideration of which restitution, he granted them a truce, and *Lewis* took this opportunity to make new preparations for war.

A. D. 1479. *A treaty concluded between Casimir, king of Poland, and Matthias of Hungary.* DURING these transactions, *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, and *Casimir* of *Poland*, took the field against each other, in order to maintain their different pretensions to the crown of *Bohemia*, and an obstinate battle was fought near *Breslaw*, in which *Casimir* saw himself defeated. However, as the *Turks* had invaded *Moldavia*, taken *Groia* in *Albania*, and threatened *Italy* itself, the pope employed all his influence in mediating a peace between the *Pole* and the *Hungarian*, that they might turn their arms against the common enemy; and a treaty was concluded on the following conditions: that *Matthias* should possess *Moravia* and *Silesia*, with the titular dignity of king of *Bohemia*, during life; but the sovereignty of that kingdom should be vested in *Ladyslaus*, son of *Casimir*; tho', in case of the death of that prince without issue, *Matthias* should be acknowledged as his successor².

Matthias *lays siege to Vienna* AFTER this accommodation, *Matthias* continued very quiet, until *Maximilian* was engaged in the war with *France*, when, either instigated by some new provocation from the emperor, or allured by the prospect of advantage, he marched into *Austria* with a strong body of forces, and laid siege to *Vienna*. *Frederic*, terrified at this irruption, and being altogether unprovided, and naturally averse to war, proposed and purchased an accommodation, by renouncing all his pretensions to the crown of *Hungary*, and giving the investiture of *Bohemia* to *Matthias*, together with a present of one

¹ FUGGER. l. v. c. 26.² BARRE, t. vii. p. 682.

hundred, and fifty thousand crowns; in consequence of which, the king of Hungary raised the siege and retired ^a (Z).

IN a few months after this event, the archduchess *Mary* was delivered of a son, baptized by the name of *Philip*, and *Maximilian*, seeing the succession of the *Low Countries* confirmed to his family by the birth of this prince, renewed hostilities against *Lewis XI.* in order to recover the dominions of which the *French* had dismembred the duchy. He was assisted in these endeavours by *John de Chalons*, prince of *Orange*; but as his father, and uncle *Sigismund*, refused to assist him with money or troops, and the *Flemings* were almost quite exhausted, he made but small progress in the war; while *Lewis* renewed his alliance with the *Swiss*, who furnished him with six thousand men, and gained several advantages over the *Flemings* and the prince of *Orange*.

IN this emergency, *Maximilian*, addressed himself to the diet of the empire convoked at *Nuremberg*, representing that the king of *France* had made himself master of *Cambray*, *Bouchain*, and *Quesnoy*, three towns that were under protection of the empire; and at the same time *Frederic* exhorted the states to arm for the recovery of these imperial fiefs.

LEWIS, intimidated by these representations, in consequence of which he expected to see the forces of the empire in his dominions, evacuated the places in question, and proposed a truce for a year; which was accepted by *Maximilian*, who found himself unable to maintain the war. During this cessation, however, he found means to interest the people of *Liege* in his cause, by sending back their peron, or great standard, which duke *Charles* had transported to *Bruges*; and they reinforced him with a body of troops; so that, when the truce expired, he found himself in a condition to act with advantage.

^a CROMER. l. viii. in fin.

(Z) In the course of this year, *Christian* king of *Denmark* arrived at *Ratembourg*, on a visit to the emperor, who, at his request, erected the country of the *Dithmarschen*, *Stormaria*, and *Holstein*, into a duchy, of which *Christian* received the investiture. Then he proceeded on a

pilgrimage to *Rome*, and, on his return to his own dominions, solemnized the marriage of his son *John* with *Christina*, daughter of *Ernest*, elector of *Saxony*: on which occasion he is said to have instituted the order of the elephant (1).

(1) *Barre*, t. vii. p. 714.

HE accordingly took the field against *Des Cordes*, the French general; and hazarding a battle at *Guinegaste*, near *Terouane*, obtained a victory, which, in some measure, re-established the affairs of the *Low Countries* ^b.

A. D. AFTER this action, a truce was agreed to for seven
1480. months, during which the pope offered his mediation to effect a solid peace: but *Lewis* in the mean time being seized with a dangerous distemper, *Edward IV.* king of *England*, who was in alliance with *Maximilian*, counselled that prince to evade a treaty; but, if possible, to prolong the truce for two years, before the expiration of which, the death of the French king would, in all probability, enable him to procure a more advantageous accommodation.

As for the pope, his efforts of intercession were suspended by the progress of the *Turks*; who, having taken *Otranto*, filled all *Europe*, and *Italy* in particular, with such consternation, that his holiness made peace with the *Florentines*, against whom he and the king of *Naples* had been engaged in a war, and wrote to the emperor and the states of *Germany*, as well as to all other princes of Christendom, to compromise their differences, and march against the infidels. The *German* princes were likewise solicited to the same purpose by *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, to whom *Mohammed* had offered the kingdom of *Bosnia*, provided he would grant him an unmolested passage through his dominions. In compliance with the pope's request, several princes and states engaged in a league against the *Turks*; but the emperor's sloth and avarice would not allow him to contribute to the success of this expedition, and it was well for *Európe* that *Mohammed II.* died at *Nicomedia*, before he could execute the schemes he projected ^c.

Mohammed dies at Nicomedia.

MAXIMILIAN, far from inheriting the sluggish disposition of his father, exerted uncommon activity during the truce with *France*, in appeasing the troubles of the *Low Countries*. He suppressed a mutiny at the *Hague*, and exacted a considerable fine from the burghers of *Leyden*, who had afforded an asylum to some of the mutineers; then he repaired to *Luxemburg*, where he renewed the oath of allegiance from the magistracy of the town, and the noblemen of the country; and, on his return to *Holland*, created his son *Philip* knight of the golden fleece.

Maximilian appeases the troubles of the Low Countries.

AFTER having been proclaimed duke of *Brabant*, he defeated the people of *Guelderland*, who had made incursions into the province of *Holland*, and he and his wife were pub-

^b KRANTZ Sax. l. xii. c. 119.

^c BONFIN. dec. iv. l. 6.

licly acknowledged at *Nuremberg*, as duke and duchess of *Guelderland*. This expedition being happily terminated, he besieged and took *Venloo*, which had revolted; from thence he marched to *Mons*, which surrendered, after having been reduced to the utmost extremity; and there he received the accustomed oath from the nobility, clergy, and commons, in quality of count of *Hainault*.

LEWIS, terrified at the rapidity of his conquests, sent *Philip de Commines* to *Flanders*, to negotiate an accommodation; but the archduke kept aloof, in expectation of the king's death, when he hoped *France* would purchase a peace at the expence of all she had taken from the house of *Burgundy*; and, in all probability, *Philip's* endeavours would have been ineffectual, had not an unforeseen accident contributed to his success. *Mary* died while she was big with child, leaving a son called *Philip*, and a daughter, whose name was *Margaret*; and great disputes arose about the guardianship of these children, which *Maximilian* claimed as the father, tho' he was opposed by the near relations of the deceased princess, supported by the suffrages of the states general. Mean while both sides agreed, that it was necessary to negotiate a peace with *France*, which was accordingly concluded at *Arras*, and signified by *Maximilian* himself^a; and, in pursuance of this accommodation, the young princess *Margaret* was sent to *Amboise*, in order to be educated for a wife to the young dauphin; whose father dying soon after the peace, he ascended the throne of *France* by the name of *Charles VIII*.

A. D.
1482.
Mary
dies.

MAXIMILIAN's hands were no sooner rid of this troublesome war, than he turned his arms against the *Liegeois*, made himself master of *Tongres*, and defeated their general *La Marck*, who marched to the relief of the place. He met with the same success in several other petty quarrels, and perhaps his pride increased with his good fortune. Certain it is, the *Flemings* were very much disgusted with his administration, and loudly complained, that he bestowed the best offices and governments upon *Germans* and *Burgundians*: nor did he seem to regard their complaints; on the contrary, some of his council, for their own private ends, having persuaded him that he had a right, not only to the guardianship of his own children, but also to the government of his dominions, he resolved to take both into his own hands; and, with this view, possessed himself, by surprise, of *Dendermond*, *Oudenarde*, and some other places. The inhabit-

A contest ensues about the guardianship of her children.

^a *Peuves. de Mem. de COMMINS. t. iv. p. 272.*

A. D.
1485.
An accom-
modation.

ants of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, dreading the same fate, secured the person of his son *Philip*, and sent to demand protection from the king of *France*; who, in order to take the advantage of this quarrel among his neighbours, detached some forces to their assistance, under the command of the *Sieur Crèvecoeur*; so that *Flanders* was involved in a civil war, which lasted three years, to the ruin and desolation of the country. At length, by the interposition of some of the principal noblemen, peace was concluded, on condition that *Maximilian* should continue tutor to his own son, under certain restrictions.

War be-
tween Al-
bert of
Bavaria
and his
brother
Christo-
pher.

DURING the troubles of *Flanders*, there were several commotions in *Germany*, one of which was produced from a quarrel between *Albert* of *Bavaria* and his brother *Christopher*, about the domain of *Landshut*, which the latter continued to possess, in opposition to a previous agreement. The inhabitants, being oppressed by *Christopher*, complained to *Albert*, who asserted his own right by force of arms, and hostilities commenced with various success; until, at length, *Albert* made advances to peace, which was concluded at *Landshut*, on condition that he should enjoy *Landshut* and its dependencies, and yield *Schongaw*, with all its fiefs, in exchange to his brother.

Albert
reduces
Ratisbon
under the
dominion
of his
son
and
marries
the em-
peror's
daugh-
ter Cune-
gunda.
Matthias
declares
war a-
gainst the
emperor,
and in-
vades
Austria.

IN the following year, he prevailed upon the inhabitants of *Ratisbon*, which had been enfranchised, and declared a free imperial town, by *Frederic Barbarossa*, to submit again to the sway of the *Bavarian* house; and afterwards espoused the emperor's daughter *Cunegunda*, with whom her uncle *Sigismund* gave him the county of *Tyrol* by way of portion. This match being made without the consent or privity of the emperor, he complained of the alliance as an incroachment upon his paternal authority, as well as upon the rights of the empire, and threatened to proscribe both *Sigismund* and *Albert*; but, as they knew his indolence and incapacity, they gave themselves no concern about his menaces.

MATTHIAS, piqued at a repulse he had sustained from the emperor, when he demanded this princess in marriage, and incensed, moreover, at *Frederic's* still continuing to assume the title of king of *Hungary*, declared war against him, entered *Lower Austria* with an army of twenty thousand men, and invested *Haimbourg*, which surrendered after a siege of four months. From thence he advanced into the territory of *Vienna*, from which he carried off an immense load of booty.

* FUGGER. l. v. c. 50.
part ii. l. 9.

† ADLZR. Ann. Boior. Gent.

NEXT year he divided his forces, which had acquired the appellation of *Black Bands*, into two armies, one of which he led in person to the frontiers of *Lower Hungary*, which was threatened by the *Turks*, and sent the other, under the command of *David Hazi*, to besiege *Pruck* on the river *Leit*, one of the strongest places in *Austria*; which he took by assault, and made himself master of all the other towns, except *Vienna* and *Cornembourg*. The next enterprize he undertook was the siege of this last place, which was gallantly defended by the governor, in the hope of his being speedily succoured.

FREDERIC had retired to *Gratz*, where he convoked the states of his provinces, to demand subsidies; but, as he was not at all beloved by his subjects, they lent a deaf ear to his intreaties. His chancellor advised him to open his treasures, and enlist foreign troops; but he could not be prevailed upon to try that expedient, until his friends represented, that should *Matthias* once make himself master of *Cornembourg* and *Vienna*, he would easily subdue *Carinthia*, *Stiria*, and *Carniola*; then the fear of losing all his dominions triumphed over his avarice; he set on foot levies in *Bavaria* and *Suabia*, and a considerable body of forces being enlisted, were ordered to march; with all expedition, to the relief of *Cornembourg*.

Hazi, informed of their motions, quitted his lines, and gave them battle; when, after an obstinate dispute, they were totally routed; then he re-commenced the operations of the siege, and tho' he himself lost his life in a fall made by the besieged, his place was filled with *Stephen*, count *Scepu*, and the town at last obliged to surrender.

MATTHIAS, encouraged by this success, took the command of the army upon himself, and sat down before *Vienna*, which he reduced after a very desperate resistance, while count *Stephen* blocked up the fortress of *Neustadt* in such a manner, that no supplies could enter the place, and the governor having held out six months, during which one half of his garrison perished by famine, submitted to the king of *Hungary*; who, in this manner, became master of all the *Lower Austria* &c.

WHILE *Matthias* was thus employed, *Frederic* kept aloof, and looked upon the loss of his capital with indifference; answering to those, who pressed him to take measures for its relief, that it had not yet suffered that extremity, to which he himself had been formerly reduced by its rebellious adherence to the interest of his brother *Albert*. Instead of exerting himself, therefore, in its behalf, he coolly abandoned it to the fate

The indifference of the emperor.

His forces are defeated by the Hungarians; who take Cornembourg, Vienna, and Neustadt, and make themselves masters of all the Lower Austria;

A.D. 1486. while Frederic refuses to take any step for its preservation.

of war ; and in order to divert his imagination from a misfortune, which he either would not or could not avoid, he resolved to visit his son *Maximilian* in the *Low Countries*, consoling himself with an observation, which he had long adopted as an infallible maxim, “ that oblivion is the best “ remedy for irreparable ill^s. ” At length, however, he condescended to solicit the assistance of the states, and *Albert* duke of *Saxony* was appointed to march into *Austria*, at the head of some forces ; where finding *Matthias* too powerful to be attacked, and being unwilling to involve *Germany* in a war, he endeavoured to compromise the affair, and at length brought it to a tolerable conclusion. In a word, it was agreed, that there should be a truce for eight months ; that *Matthias* should keep possession of *Austria*, until he should receive the sum of money which he had before stipulated for defraying the expence of the preceding war ; and that, provided *Matthias* should die in the mean time, *Austria* should return to its old master, who should also retain the title of king of *Hungary*. These articles were ratified by the emperor, and peace for the present re-established ^h.

An accom-
modation
effected.

IN the mean time, the emperor repaired to the *Low Countries*, where he resided three months ; at the expiration of which, he set out on his return, by the way of *Aix la Chapelle*, where he bestowed upon *William the Young* the investiture of *Juliers* and *Bergue* ; then he visited *Cologne*, where he received the oath of allegiance from the prince of *Cleves*, for his duchy, together with the counties of *La March* and *Genap* ; and from thence he took the road to *Frankfort*, accompanied by *Maximilian*, who was unanimously chosen king of the *Romans*, by six electors, notwithstanding the opposition of *Matthias*, who made sundry efforts to traverse his election.

Maximi-
lian is
chosen
king of
the Ro-
mans, and

THE princes of the empire had long ago solicited *Frederic* to assemble a diet for this purpose ; but, knowing the activity of the archduke, he was afraid of losing the little authority he had left, and still evaded their request till this occasion, and even now consented with reluctance.

LADISLAUS, king of *Bohemia*, protested against this election, to which he had not been summoned, and, on the supposition that the *German* princes designed to deprive him of his vote, he threatened to do himself justice by force of arms ; but he was appeased in the sequel, by an authentic act of the diet, confirming the right of voting to him and his successors ; and *Maximilian* was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, with the con-

crowned
at Aix la
Chapelle ;

sent of the pope, who congratulated him upon his promotionⁱ (A).

AFTER this ceremony, he repaired to *Bruges*, to put the finishing stroke to the treaty between him and the states of *Flanders*, which was confirmed in the presence of the emperor, who had gone thither at the head of a good body of troops; and perceiving that his son would have occasion for them, to support the war against *France*, left them under his command, when he himself returned to *Germany*. As these forces committed great ravages in the country, which was already desolated; and the nearest relations of the deceased princess *Mary* were excluded from all share in the education of their young prince *Philip*, who was intirely under the management of *Margaret* dowager of *England*, and some other strangers; the subjects soon forgot the duty they owed to their prince, and now listened to nought but the suggestions of suspicion and disgust. To such a degree did this dissatisfaction prevail, that, upon *Maximilian's* arrival at *Bruges*, where the states general of *Flanders* were assembled, in order to apply some remedy to the disorders which were daily committed by his troops, a report was spread, that he intended to use them for making himself master of the city. The citizens and tradesmen, alarmed at this intimation, ran immediately to arms, and secured his person under a guard in the castle^k; at the same time imprisoning some of his coun- fellow and favourites, four of whom were afterwards be- headed. The inhabitants of *Ghent*, following the example of *Bruges*, brought *Payart*, archdeacon of their church, to his trial, together with ten other persons, who lost their heads, for having allowed *Maximilian* to enter the city with

is im-
prisoned by
the inha-
bitants of
Bruges.
A. D.
1488.

ⁱ FREHER. t. iii. Rer. Ger. ^k OLIV. MARCHIAN. l. ii.
KRANTZ, xiii. Sax. 8. & seq. BEUTER. de Reb. Maximil. l. iii.

(A) In this diet at *Frankfort*, a law was made for preserving the peace of the empire for ten years, during which, if any person should injure another in body or estate, he should be prosecuted by all the rest as a violator of the public peace. This law was religiously observed by a great many, particularly by the *Suabians*, who entered into an association with each other, by which they were rendered so formidable to their neighbours, that several cities of the empire, and powerful princes, desired to be included in their confederacy, which was distinguished by the name of the *Suevicum Fœdus*, or the *Suabian league* (2).^o

five thousand men; in lieu of five hundred; to which number his train had been limited by agreement. On account of this imprisonment of *Maximilian*, the states of the country were convoked at *Merblin* by the young prince *Philip*, in order to concert measures for obtaining his father's enlargement; and the assembly, at the unanimous desire of the members, was transferred to *Ghent*, which they considered as a more convenient place for their deliberations. The *Flemings* began the conferences with heavy complaints against *Maximilian*, whom they accused of having committed divers misdemeanours and acts of arbitrary power: these articles were answered by his friends and partisans, who defended his conduct with great warmth and resolution; and strong debates ensued upon the reasons alleged on both sides. At length, pope *Innocent* and the emperor interposed in behalf of their imprisoned sovereign; the first threatening them with spiritual, and the other with temporal arms, in case they should persist in detaining him in custody; and the states, in consequence of these remonstrances, engaged in a treaty with *Maximilian*, which being concluded, signed, and ratified, he was set at liberty, after a detention of ten months, and conducted to his troops, who kept the field, and advanced to meet their delivered monarch. Such was the precaution of the states, in executing this treaty, that they obtained an obligation from *Philip* duke of *Cleves*, in consequence of which he accompanied *Maximilian* into the middle of his forces, and intreated him; now he was at full liberty, to confirm the accommodation by word of mouth. To this request that prince answered, "Nephew, I will keep my promise." Nevertheless, at his arrival in *Brabant*, where he was met by his father with a strong army of *Germans*, he changed his resolution; at the sollicitation of the emperor, the princes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Brandenburg*, *Brunswick*, *Hesse*, *Baden*, and others, who accompanied *Frederic*, and could not approve of such an extorted peace, which was immediately declared void, and the war re-commenced.

He is set at liberty.

He renounces the articles of the peace.

THE emperor and *Maximilian* at first endeavoured to engage the duke of *Cleves* in their party, and threatened him, as a vassal, with the ban of the empire, and proscription, unless he would obey his sovereign: but the duke excused himself, on account of the oath, which, by the express order of *Maximilian*, he had sworn to the states of *Flanders*; and, protesting against the infringement of the treaty, he continued firmly to oppose them, resolved to live and die with ho-

¹ Chron. Car. VIII. &c.

^m Chron. Brabant. c. 161.

nour, rather than incur the charge of perjury and equivocation. *Frederic*, finding him thus obstinately determined, resolved to inflict upon him exemplary chastisement: for this purpose, being at *Antwerp*, he ordered a throne to be raised in the court of *St. Michael's* cloister, upon which, seating himself in his imperial robes, he solemnly put the duke Philip of Cleves to the ban of the empire, declaring him a traitor, and divesting him of his honours and dominions^a. He at the same time undertook the siege of *Ghent*, in which, after he had spent six weeks, without being able to do any thing of consequence, he abandoned his enterprize, laid waste the country, and returned to *Germany*, leaving the command of his troops to *Albert* duke of *Saxony* (B).

THIS abrupt return was owing to the information he had received that the *Hungarians* had again invaded *Austria*, because he still delayed the payment of that sum with which he had formerly purchased their forbearance. He therefore, in his own name, and in that of his son *Maximilian*, sent an embassy to *Matthias*, who was at that time sick in *Vicenna*, desiring that a negotiation might be set on foot; and when his ambassadors returned to *Lintz*, they were accompanied by the bishop of *Waradin*, who was invested with full powers to conclude a treaty of peace. The negotiation lasted a long time without success, because *Frederic* demanded the restitution of *Austria*, and refused to reimburse *Matthias* for the expence of the war; whereas the king of *Hungary* now raised his demand to a very considerable sum. *Maximilian*, equally displeased at the extortion of *Matthias*, and the interested proceedings of the emperor, proposed to observe a medium, and purchase a peace with part of the sum which the king of *Hungary* demanded: but whether this moderate advice was not agreeable to the emperor, or that he had taken umbrage at the good intelligence that subsisted between the enemy and his own son, he would not allow *Maximilian* to assist at the conferences. Whatever his motive might be, certain it is, he sought nothing less than the conclusion of a peace; for he could not bear the thoughts of parting with

^a HEISS, Hist. liv. iii. c. 2.

(B) About this time the emperor erected *Austria* into an archduchy, and conferred the title upon *Philip* the son of *Maximilian*, who was the first of the family of *Hapsburg* distinguished by the name of archduke (1).

(1) Marian, lib. xxv. c. 22.

who dies,
and is suc-
ceeded by
Ladislaus,
notwith-
standing
the opposi-
tion of the
emperor ;

who con-
cludes a
peace with
the new
king,

his money for the redemption of a province which he saw himself on the eve of retrieving without expence, as the dis-temper of *Matthias* was said to be incurable : in effect, his malady every day increased, and *Frederic* found means to invent new delays, which retarded the treaty until the king of *Hungary* actually expired, when, instead of concluding a peace, he demanded the vacant throne, either for himself or his son *Maximilian*. Notwithstanding this request, the *Hungarians* elected *Ladislaus* king of *Bohemia*, though *Maximilian* had already recovered all *Austria*, made himself master of a good part of *Hungary*, and had the promise of powerful succours from the empire : in spite of these advantages, *Frederic* made peace with *Ladislaus* °, on condition that he should be reimbursed in one hundred thousand florins, to defray the expence of the war ; that he should remain sole possessor of *Austria* ; that *Ladislaus* should retain the crown of *Hungary* ; and that *Maximilian* and his descendants should enjoy the title, with the right of succeeding to the crown in default of issue.

DURING these disputes, *Frederic*, by an authentic act, annulled the donation of the *Tyrol*, which his brother *Sigismund* had made in favour of *Albert* duke of *Bavaria*, on his marriage with *Cunegunda* ; declaring that, like the other fiefs belonging to *Sigismund*, it ought to have reverted to the king of the *Romans*, who was his sole and lawful heir. *Albert* protested against this act, and engaged a number of princes and towns in his interest ; while the emperor, tho' dissuaded by *Maximilian* from such violent measures, put the duke of *Bavaria-Munich* to the ban of the empire, together with the inhabitants of *Ratisbon*, who had acknowledged the sovereignty of that prince. In a diet convoked at *Nuremberg* he adjusted the proportion of money and troops to be furnished by each prince and town of the empire, in order to execute this sentence, and the command of the army was given to the elector of *Brandenburg*, who, though he took the field, could do nothing of consequence against the *Bavarian*, so well had this prince secured his dominions.

At length *Frederic*, being tired of the war, which was not at all adapted to his disposition, listened to the remonstrances of *Maximilian*, who mediated a peace, on condition that *Ratisbon* should be re-established in the privileges of an imperial town ; and that *Albert* should restore *Tyrol* to the house of *Austria*, in consideration of being put in possession of the

• To the Hungar. post BONFIN. RANZ. Indic. 37.

lordship of *Abensberg*, and receiving a proper dowry with the princess *Cunegunda*.

In *Flanders* the war still continued to the utter ruin of the country, till at length an accommodation was patched up between *Maximilian* and *Charles* king of *France*, who wanted to cultivate the friendship of the king of the *Romans*, that he might, in the course of their correspondence, find some favourable occasion for disengaging himself, without giving offence, from his match with *Margaret*, *Maximilian's* daughter, who had been educated at the court of *France*, and actually betrothed to *Charles*. Besides this motive, he longed for an opportunity of weaning *Maximilian* from the thought of consummating his marriage with *Ann* heiress of *Brittany* (C), which had been performed by proxy, and which the king of *France* intended, if possible, to dissolve in his own favour; for his design was to reunite *Brittany* to his kingdom. With this view, *Charles* had recourse to arms, invaded the duchy of *Brittany*, made himself master of the greatest part of it by force, besieged *Rhiden* where the princess was with her court, and, by presents and promises, brought over to his interest the noblemen of that country, who delivered the city and the duchess into his hands. A few days after this achievement, he married *Ann*, by virtue of a double dispensation from the pope, setting aside his former contract with *Margaret* the daughter of *Maximilian*, as well as removing the impediment of consanguinity with his new bride. The king of the *Romans*, incensed at this double affront, by which his daughter was dishonoured and his marriage annulled, resolved to be revenged upon the author of his wrongs, and solicited the assistance of the princes of the empire and the *Swiss*; but, at a time when every thing threatened war and confusion, a treaty of peace was concluded at *Senlis*, in which it was agreed that the king of *France* should send back *Margaret* to her brother the archduke, and restore with her the counties of *Artois* and *Burgundy*; but that he should retain

^p Vide TIL. in Traité. int. reg. Franc. & Angl. in Carol. VIII.

(C) This marriage was publicly celebrated in the church, and, that it might be held the more binding, the proxy, by order of *Maximilian*, consummated it, by putting his naked leg, as far as the knee, into the bed where the princess lay undressed; this being the first time that such a ceremony was performed (2).

(2) *Remarg. sur Heiss*, lib iii, c. 2.

the

the citadels in the four cities in *Artois*, until *Philip* should be of age to ratify the peace.

IN the course of this year died *Casimir* IV. king of *Poland*, and father of *Ladislaus*, who now reigned over *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; and the death of the *Polish* monarch was soon followed by that of pope *Innocent* VIII. succeeded in the papacy by *Roderic Borgia*, who assumed the name of *Alexander* VI.

NOR did the emperor long survive these alterations. After the last effort of his resentment against the duke of *Bavaria*, which roused him from the lethargy of his sloth, to the astonishment of the whole empire, he resolved to give himself no farther trouble with the affairs of government, but to spend the remainder of his life in a peaceful retreat.

The emperor Frederick retires to Lintz, where he dies.

A. D.
1493.

WITH this view he retired to *Lintz*, and applied himself to the study of chemistry, astronomy, and astrology; but, in the midst of these amusements, he was seized with a violent disorder, which being increased by his eating melons to excess, put a period to his life, in the fifty-fourth year of his reign, and the seventy-ninth of his age. His distemper is said to have arisen from a cancerated ulcer in his leg, which was amputated by the advice of his physicians, though he died of the fever that attended the operation. On this occasion, when he beheld the limb cut off, "I am now convinced," said he, "that a healthy peasant is much better than a sick emperor; and yet I hope I shall enjoy the greatest good that can happen to man, namely, a happy exit from this life." It is observed of *Frederick*, that his reign was longer than that of any other emperor, since the days of *Augustus*, and that he never swore but twice during the whole course of his life; one of these oaths he took at his coronation at *Aix*, and the other when he received the imperial crown at *Rome*.

His pacific character.

Dilatory disposition

He was surnamed *the Pacific*, because he was averse to war; yet there was an inconstancy in his temper, which often prompted him to quarrels and disputes, though when they came to an open rupture he generally sued for peace. He held an infinite number of diets, in which nothing was ever determined, because he always postponed the business to another meeting. In a word, he seems to have been a prince of a contemptible character, absolutely void of generosity, courage, and resolution; yet, by the alliance made with the house of *Burgundy*, he greatly aggrandized the wealth and power of the *Austrian* family. He seldom or never had re-

¹ Mez. Chron. abr. tom. ii. p. 770.

² NAUCLER. gen. 50. MICHOV. dit. iv. c. 77. BONFIN. v. Dec. iii.

course to the advice of his friends, was endowed with a fund of low cunning, and a tenacious memory, and scrupulously exact in the offices of devotion, in which he was rather superstitious than sensible. His person was agreeable, and his countenance dignified with an air of majesty. He was plain in his apparel, moderate in his passions, and an enemy to all sorts of excess. He ate so little, that his life was one continual fast, and diluted his wine to such a degree, that it was little stronger than water. He chose for his device the five vowels (D), which were imprinted upon all his books, carved on his buildings, and engraved on his plate. His body was interred at *Vienna*, and his tomb distinguished by an epitaph, which contains an enumeration of his titles, an encomium upon his sagacity and moderation, and an account of the acquisition he made of the *Low Countries*, by the marriage of his son *Maximilian* (E).

His abstemious manner of living, his device, funeral, and epitaph.

C H A P. XI.

Explaining the Beginning of the Reformation in Germany.

MAXIMILIAN I.

MAXIMILIAN, who had been chosen and crowned king of the *Romans* during the life of his father, received the imperial crown with the unanimous consent of all the electors, immediately after the last offices were performed to *Frederic*; and he brought with him to the throne all the qualities requisite to signalize a great prince, being equally adapted for the administration during war and in the time of peace. His childhood had been so remarkably unpromis-

A. D.
1493.

Maximilian succeeds to the imperial throne.

* HEISS, liv. iii. c. 2.

(D) Among several explanations of this device, *a, e, i, o, u*, that which is most generally received, is

Anstr. est imperare Orbi universo.

(E) This emperor, by *Eleonora*, daughter of *Edward* king

of *Portugal*, had three sons and two daughters; namely, *Christopher*, who died in his infancy; *Maximilian*, his successor in the empire; *John*, who did not live to be of age; *Helen*, who died an infant; and *Cunegunda*, who married *Albert the Wise*, duke of *Bavaria* (3).

(3) *Hist.* liv. iii. c. 2.

His educa-
tion.

ing, that, even when he was ten years of age, it could not be determined whether he would be absolutely dumb, or altogether idiotical; but this infirmity was so perfectly removed when he attained to a riper age, that in the sequel he attracted the admiration of all those who conversed with him, by the eloquence and facility with which he spoke the *Latin*, *French*, and *Italian* languages. He was particularly addicted to letters, and not only perused the best books with great application, but also employed many hours in writing history with his own hand: yet he owed all this progress solely to his own genius; for he often complained of the preposterous method in which he had been instructed by his preceptor, whose name was *Peter Engelbert*, afterwards bishop of *Neustadt* in *Austria*, a person of great piety, but very ill qualified for forming the mind of a young prince. That very day on which *Maximilian* was elected king of the *Romans*, "Whatever obligations, said he, we may have to our

Concern
for the im-
provement
of learn-
ing.

"preceptor, if mine was now alive, I believe I should make him repent of the manner in which I received his instructions;" and in one of the first diets he held, he engaged all the electors to establish academies in their respective dominions.

Marches
against the
Turks.

WHILE he was making preparations for his father's funeral, he was informed that the *Turks* had invaded *Croatia*, upon which he began immediately to take measures for opposing their progress; and assembling a powerful army in *Austria*, advanced towards them, with all possible expedition; but the *Moslems*, affrighted at his army, and astonished at his dispatch, retreated with great precipitation; so that, finding no enemy to cope with, he disbanded his army, and applied himself to the domestic affairs of the empire¹.

He mar-
ries
Blanche,
sister to the
duke of
Milan.

A. D.
1494.

As he had now been a long time a widower, he was pressed to take another wife, and it was proposed that he should espouse *Blanche Maria*, sister to *John Galeazzo* duke of *Milan*, and niece to *Lewis Sforza*, surnamed *the Moor*, who being guardian to his nephew *Galeazzo*, took possession of the state of *Milan*, not without suspicion of having poisoned his ward. As this princess was reckoned one of the most beautiful women of her time, possessed of a thousand amiable qualities, and a fortune of four hundred and sixty thousand ducats, *Maximilian* received the proposal with all the demonstrations of the most perfect joy, and married her on the sixth day of *March*, of that same year; by which means *Lewis Sforza*, who had been the chief negotiator in this

¹ NAUCLER & BONFIM ubi supra.

match, reaped all the advantage which he expected from it, in acquiring the favour of the emperor, so as to be able to maintain himself in possession of the duchy, the investiture of which *Maximilian* in private conferred upon him as a fief vacated by the failure of homage and acknowledgement *. By this alliance, the emperor being engaged in the interests of *Italy*, resolved to take the advice of the states of the empire, touching the pretension which *Charles VIII.* king of *France* had to *Naples*, and the expedition he had undertaken to make a conquest of that kingdom. For this purpose, after he had assembled the states of *Flanders* at *Louvain*, where he appointed his son *Philip* governor of the *Low Countries*, and saw the deputies take the oath of fidelity to that young prince, he convoked a diet at *Worms*, where he proposed they should determine whether it would be more for the advantage of the empire to oppose the designs of *Charles*, or to engage in a war against the *Turks*: but this alternate being deemed intirely foreign to the interests of the *Germanic* body, the proposal was left undiscussed, and the deliberations of the diet altogether restricted to the intestine affairs of *Germany*. An authentic constitution was enacted for the preservation of the public peace among the princes and states of the empire, that they might have recourse to it as to an oracle, in all cases of difficulty; and the emperor, reflecting upon the trouble to which people were subjected in following the imperial chamber, which always travelled about with the court, fixed that tribunal at *Worms*, from whence it was some time after transferred to another city, and at last settled at *Spire* *. In this diet also the county of *Wirtemberg* was erected into a duchy in favour of *Frederic* of *Wirtemberg*, with the unanimous consent of all present; the league of *Suabia* was renewed; the investiture of *Sforza* confirmed; the electors took the oath of fidelity, and *René* duke of *Lorraine* did homage for some of his fiefs which he held of the empire, though he declared his duchy free of all such dependence † (F).

NOZ

* KRANTZ. Sax. lib. iii. c. 21.
 † Cartulaire de Lorraine, p. 406.

* SERRAZ. Hist. Mo-

(F) The elector of *Mentz* alleged, that the duke ought to use the same form of taking the oath, which was practised by the other states of the empire; but *René* positively refusing to

comply with that proposal, it was agreed, that he should swear in these terms: " I *René*
 " king of *Jerusalem* and *Sicily*,
 " duke of *Lorraine* and *Bar*,
 " marquis of *Pons*, count of
 " *Provence*,

Proceed-
ings of the
diet at
Worms.

NOR would he engage with the emperor in a war with the king of *France*, though *Maximilian* offered to support his pretensions to the kingdom of *Naples*, and even to create him vicar-general of the empire in *Italy*. The diet, however, in consequence of the emperor's representations, resolved to keep an army on foot, in order to stop the progress of the *French* king on the other side of the *Alps*, and decreed that the states of the empire should raise one hundred and fifty thousand florins for its maintenance².

The king
of France
conquers
Naples.

CHARLES VIII. king of *France*, had compelled the *Florentines* to put four of their strongest places into his hands, and lend him a sum of money : then he marched to *Rome*, to the great terror of the pope, who shut himself up in the castle of *St. Angelo*, made himself master of the best fortified towns in the ecclesiastical state, and, having received *Alexander's* bastard, *Cesar Borgia*, as an hostage, marched to *Naples*, where he was acknowledged as sovereign, while king *Alphonso*, terrified at his approach, and knowing himself hated by his subjects, proclaimed his son *Ferdinand* king, and retired with that prince to the isle of *Ischia*, to wait for some favourable revolution³.

The mar-
riage of
Philip
with the

THE pope and the princes of *Italy*, seeing the king of *France* master of *Naples*, *Siena*, and *Florence*, engaged in a league against that monarch, and their confederacy was joined by *Maximilian*, who pretended that the *French* king had usurped the rights of the empire in *Tuscany* ; and *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, king and queen of *Arragon* and *Castile*, acceded to the same treaty. *Maximilian* took the opportunity of this conjuncture to propose a match, which was afterwards effected, between his son *Philip*, who had now attained to the eighteenth year of his age, and the Infanta *Jane*, one of the

CUSPIN. p. 488.

² GAGUIN. l. ii. p. 284.

" *Provence, Vaudemont, Har-*
" *court, &c.* swear and promise,
" *as duke of Lorraine and Bar,*
" *to you Maximilian, king of*
" *the Romans, to the sacred*
" *Roman empire, and your suc-*
" *cessors in the empire, fidelity,*
" *submission, and obedience,*
" *according to the tenor of the*
" *charters of my fiefs: So help*
" *me GOD, and his holy Evan-*
" *gelists.*"

Having taken this oath, he was insoffed by the emperor, who sat upon a throne, with the sceptre of *Charlemagne* in his hand; then he paid seven hundred francs for the ransom of his horse, cloaths, and privileges, exclusive of the sum due to the elector of *Mentz*, arch-chancellor of the empire (4).

(4) *Struv. period. x. sect. l. iii.*

daughters of their Catholic majesties; and though at that time this princess was, by the order of birth, posterior to her brother the Infant *John*, who, some months after, was married to *Margaret* the sister of *Philip*, and also to her sister *Isabella*, wife of *Emanuel* king of *Portugal*, nevertheless, contrary to all appearance, she, by the death of her brother and sister, and the children of their respective marriages, became sole heiress of the kingdoms of *Spain*; so that this alliance was no less advantageous to the house of *Austria*, than that of *Maximilian* with the princess of *Burgundy* ^b.

THE league formed by the emperor, the pope, their Catholic majesties, the duke of *Milan*, the marquis of *Mantua*, and the *Venetians*, being published at *Rome*, *Charles VIII.* thought it was high time for him to return to *France*, before the allies could oppose his passage. He therefore began his march with all expedition; but when he advanced into the plain of *Fornova*, about four leagues from *Parma*, he found them already drawn up in order of battle, and an engagement ensued, in which they were defeated, so that he pursued his route to the county of *Asti* without farther interruption, while the duke of *Milan* laid siege to *Novarra*, which had been surprized by the duke of *Orleans*. By this time *Charles* was reinforced by fifteen thousand *Swiss*, with which he intended to attack *Sforza*; but, understanding that these mercenaries, who were much more numerous than his native troops, designed to exact of him a large sum of money, on pretence of arrears, he clapped up a peace in a great hurry, restoring *Novarra* to the duke of *Milan*, on condition that he should not assist the king of *Naples*, and retired to his own dominions.

As for *Ferdinand*, he no sooner heard of the league against *Ferdinand Charles* than he quitted his retreat, and assembling an army, which was joined by a reinforcement of *Spaniards*, retook the places which had submitted to the *French*, compelled the count *de Montpensier*, whom *Charles* had appointed viceroy, to abandon *Naples*, and, in a little time, reduced the whole kingdom to his obedience.

CHARLES, on the other hand, as soon as he arrived in *France*, began to make preparations for retrieving his conquests, and the emperor, being pressed by the duke of *Milan* and the *Venetians* to march into *Italy* with a certain number of horse and foot, to oppose these designs, he accordingly, without staying for the supplies voted in the diet, crossed the *Alps* with a small body of troops: but, being too weak to

Charles marches from Naples; defeats the allies in the plain of Fornova, and returns to France.

recovers the kingdom of Naples.

The emperor's expedition into Italy.
A. D.
1496.

attempt any thing of consequence, he, by the advice of *Sforza*, marched to *Pisa*, where he was received as sovereign by the inhabitants, who pulled down the arms of *France* which they had set up, and, in the room of them, erected those of the emperor. He afterwards invested the city of *Leghorn*, but was obliged to raise the siege with disgrace: then he retired into *Lombardy*, where having staid some time, fluctuating in his counsels, and altogether undetermined, he at last returned to *Germany*, leaving behind him a very contemptible opinion of his capacity and power ^c.

Proceedings of the diets at Lindaw and Worms.
A.D. 1497.
HE had convoked a diet at *Lindaw*, in order to forward the supplies, and it was determined to execute the resolutions of the former assembly, under certain regulations, which were, however, referred to the consideration of a subsequent diet, convened at *Worms*, where *James* marquis of *Baden*, *Wolfgang* count of *Nassau*, and the landvogt or governor of *Guelderland*, presided in the name of the emperor. The elector of *Mentz* opened the diet with a long harangue, expatiating upon the disorders that afflicted the empire, and the means for remedying those evils; and the grand master of the *Teutonic* order demanded immediate succour against the *Prussians*, who had desolated *Livonia*. But in this, as in the preceding diets, nothing was executed, though many schemes were projected.

The Frieslanders revolt against Maximilian;
THIS irresolution served only to nourish the dissensions of *Germany*, and in particular to encourage the *Frieslanders* and *Gueldrians* in their revolt against the emperor. The inhabitants of *Friesland* had refused to pay the ordinary tax imposed by the diet for the occasions of the empire; alleging that, as their country was not a fief thereof, they were not obliged to obey the decrees of the *Germanic* body: and indeed their dependency had never been clearly ascertained; for, although the emperors had appointed governors or podestats of that province, these were always well or ill received, according as they favoured or opposed the liberties of the people: they had even threatened to hang the commissary of the late emperor, and, in all probability, would have executed the threat, had not he left the country without hesitation. *Maximilian*, resolving to assert his right of sovereignty over this stubborn people, nominated the duke of *Saxony* as podestat of *Friesland*, and ordered them to receive and obey him as such, on pain of being declared rebels to the empire.

^c MEZ. abr. Chron. tom. ii. p. 78. — RER. German. tom. iii. edit. FREHER.

INSTEAD of submitting to this command, they revolted ^{and put} against the duke, expelled him from their country, renounced ^{themselves} all dependence upon the empire, and put themselves under ^{under the} the protection of *Charles* duke of *Guelderland*, who was then ^{protection} engaged in a war with *Maximilian*, in order to recover the ^{of Charles} investiture of his father ^{duke of} *Guelderland*.

THE emperor being still in great want of money and troops, assembled another diet at *Fribourg*, in the *Brisgau*, ^{Proceed-} where the princes whom he appointed to represent his per- ^{ings of the} son complained, that the states had given him no assistance in ^{diet at} his war against the *French* in *Italy*, and demonstrated the ne- ^{Fribourg.} cessity of taking vigorous measures against the *Frieſlanders* ^{A. D.} and the *Swiss*, who were declared enemies to the confederacy ^{1498.} of *Suabia*. The states having deliberated upon these topics, agreed to raise a powerful army against the *Swiss*, though in the sequel they acquitted themselves very ill of this engagement. Mean while they gave audience to the ambassadors of his *Polish* majesty, who demanded succours against the *Turk*, and sent a deputation to engage the pope to accommodate that monarch with the money raised in *Germany* by the nuncio, against whose exactions they bitterly complained (G). This embassy had likewise orders to represent to his holiness, that the *German* noblemen would exact as their undoubted right one-third of the money arising from indulgences, if the holy see should refuse to restrain the excesses of her minister; and to complain, that the *Concordata* were not observed in the article of benefices, which the pope either bestowed on strangers, when vacant, or disposed of by way of reversion, to the prejudice of the patrons.

A LAW was enacted in this assembly to regulate the suc- ^{Albert} cession of grandsons in the room of their deceased fathers; and ^{duke of} *Albert* duke of *Saxony* was confirmed in the prefecture of *Saxony* ^{created he-} *West Frieſland*, which was rendered hereditary in his fa- ^{reditary} mily. ^{podeſtat of}

^d Descript. Hist. de Provinces unies, p. 91.
GRAVAMIN. C. 7. §. 1. e

^e GREG. DE

(G) This prelate had power to permit people to eat flesh on fasting days, and to distribute indulgences to all those who should contribute a certain sum towards the crusade against the Infidels. He collected this money with all the rapacity of a tax-gatherer; and, not content with the considerable sums of which he drained the empire, he employed part in trade, and the rest at usury, for his own advantage (5).

(5) Struv. period. x. sect. 3.

West
Friesland.

ALBERT being invested with this new dignity, endeavoured to attach to his interest one of the factions that divided *Friesland*, but, notwithstanding his utmost endeavours, they united against his authority, and looked upon the hereditary settlement of his office as an invasion of their rights and privileges, granted to them by *Charlemagne* and his successors (H) : so that the duke of *Saxony* was on the point of resigning his government, when he was dissuaded from that renunciation by *Edfard* count of *Embsen*, who undertook to form a party in his favour by means of the friends he had among the *Frieslanders* f.

Lewis
XII. of
France
claims the
duchy of
Milan.

IN the midst of these transactions, *Charles* king of *France*, having died suddenly at *Amboise*, was succeeded by the duke of *Orleans*, under the name of *Lewis XII.* This prince pretending to have an incontestible right to the duchy of *Milan*, resolved to put himself in a condition to pass the *Alps*, and take possession of that duchy; which *Lewis Sforza*, that he might be able to withstand the tempest, took all the necessary precaution to put himself in a posture of defence, and had recourse to the assistance of *Maximilian*.

HE spared neither pains nor money to involve *Lewis* in quarrels with his neighbours. *Rene II.* duke of *Lorraine* was well paid for laying claim to *Provence*, in right of his mother *Yoland*, a daughter of *René of Anjou*, titular king of the *Two Sicilies*, and real count of *Provence*; but this dispute was referred to the examination of commissaries, and the duke acquiesced in their decision in favour of *Lewis*.

BUT a more formidable neighbour was *Philip* archduke of *Austria*, who reclaimed a great many towns of the succession, of *Burgundy*, which had been seized by *Lewis XI.* As *Philip* was very powerful, and well beloved by his subjects, and *Lewis* bent upon his *Italian* expedition, he restored part of those places to the archduke, who did homage to him at *Arras* for *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Charolois*, while his right to

f Chron. de Holl. & de Zeland, l. vi.

(H) They, in their diets, elected their own podestats, and deposed them when they were displeased with the administration. They paid but a very slight tax or tribute to this governor; would contribute no other way to the welfare of the state, but in marching to war when the business was to defend their own province, and they would fight under none but chiefs of their own chusing (6).

(6) Chron. de Holl. & Zel. l. vi.

Burgundy was referred to the decision of the parliament of *Paris* ^b.

WHATEVER inclination the emperor had, to succour his Maximilian ^{en-} ally the duke of *Milan*, he was obliged to suspend his favourable intention, in order to attend to the war of *Guelderland*, ^{gages in} in which he was now engaged. That the reader may have a distinct idea of this affair, it will be necessary to trace it back ^{the war} to its origin, and observe that *Arnold of Egmont*, duke of *Guelderland*, after having been detained prisoner for several months, and extremely ill used by his son *Adolphus*, had found means to obtain his liberty, and retort his imprisonment on his ungrateful son. As he had been very much obliged to *Charles* the late duke of *Burgundy*, who, upon this occasion, had interposed his good offices and assistance in his favour, he, in order to manifest his gratitude, and punish his rebellious son at the same time, alienated his duchy for the benefit of that prince, who paid to him ninety-two thousand crowns for the reversion of it, and agreed that *Arnold* should enjoy the revenues during his natural life. In consequence ^{The cause} of this purchase, *Arnold* was no sooner dead than the duke ^{of that} of *Burgundy* took possession of his dominions; but *Charles* ^{quarrel.} being slain soon after at *Nancy*, the people of *Guelderland* set *Adolphus* at liberty from the castle of *Vilverden*, in which he had hitherto been detained; and he being afterwards entrusted with the command of the troops belonging to the city of *Ghent*, miserably perished, as we have hinted above, in an expedition against the inhabitants of *Tournay* ^c. *Mary* of *Burgundy*, and, after her death, *Maximilian*, as guardian of her son *Philip*, had endeavoured to maintain, by force of arms, the right which they pretended to have to that duchy, as part of the succession of the house of *Burgundy*. Nevertheless, the possession of it was a long time contested by *Charles* of *Egmont*, the son of *Adolphus*, who, to his dying day, enjoyed a part of that duchy, notwithstanding the power of the house of *Austria*, and the decision of the princes of the empire, who had adjudged it to *Philip* ^d.

WHEN *Maximilian* was engaged in the very hottest of this ^{The empe-} war, he was obliged, all of a sudden, to desist, and even to ^{ror turns} make advances towards an accommodation with *Charles* of ^{his arms} *Egmont*, that he might be able to turn his arms against the ^{against the} *Swiss*, who had begun to make incursions upon the *Austrian* ^{Swiss.} territories; for the good intelligence between the emperor and that people no longer subsisted. *Maximilian*, when he first ^{A. D.} ^{1499.}

^b DUMONT. Corps. Dipl. tom. iii. part ii. p. 413.
^c Sax. l. xiii. c. 22.

^d HEISS, l. iii. c. 3.

^e KRAN.

succeeded to the dominions of *Sigismund* of *Austria*, by virtue of his being adopted by that prince, had often desired that the *Swiss* would renew with him the friendship and alliance which they had formerly maintained with *Sigismund*; but this renewal they always declined: besides, the greatest part of the princes, and all the nobility, looked upon these people with an evil eye, since they had erected themselves into republics, and renounced the alliance of *Suabia*: on the other hand, the city of *Constance*, which had hitherto refused to enter into this league, or into the confederacy of the *Swiss*, notwithstanding repeated invitations from both, had at length united with the circle of *Suabia*. Finally, the revival of the antient quarrel between the inhabitants of *Etschland* and the city of *Coire*, which had been frequently referred to arbitration to no purpose, contributed to bring matters to an open rupture.

The Grisons are checked by the Austrians,

WHEN the bishop of *Coire* died, the regency of *Tyrol* seized upon some fiefs of the bishopric, in hope of obliging the chapter to owe the archdukes of *Austria* as their avoyers; but these refusing to comply with this demand, several boroughs and castles were pillaged and burnt. The *Grisons*, informed of these outrages, hastened to the assistance of their allies, and were defeated by the *Austrians*, who pursued them to the valley of *Engadina*, which they laid waste with fire and sword.

who are defeated by the Swiss.

IN this emergency they solicited succours of the *Swiss*, who forthwith marched to their assistance, and crossing the *Rhine*, came in sight of the enemy, in the neighbourhood of *Bregentz*, where a battle ensued, in which the *Austrians* were routed with great slaughter.

DURING this expedition, the inhabitants of the *Brigaw* and *Suntgaw* fell upon the lands of *Nuremberg* and *Rosenburg*; but their career was soon stopped by the *Swiss* of the neighbouring canton, who assembled to the number of two thousand, and attacked them with such fury, that they were forced to betake themselves to flight, after having left a great part of their number killed upon the spot.

The Swiss renew their alliance with the French king.

LEWIS the French king, taking advantage of this favourable conjuncture, renewed with the *Swiss* the antient alliance which they had formed with his predecessors, and the treaty was concluded at *Lucerne*, with this reserve, that *France* should not molest the allies of the *Swiss*; an article which secured the cities of *Strasbourg*, *Basil*, *Kayserberg*, *Cohmar*, *Scelestadt*, and other towns of *Alsace*.

Rout the imperial

THE emperor, enraged to find such resistance from a people he affected to despise, ordered a numerous army to rendezvous

dezvous near *Constance*, which, being divided into small bodies, pillaged the villages and castles in the canton of *Schaffhausen*; but, while they were employed in acquiring booty, without dreaming of the enemy's approach, the *Swiss*, who had assembled privately, and reconnoitred their motions, took the opportunity of falling upon them when they were thus divided and incumbered, and cut them all in pieces. The same fate overtook a body of the *Suabians*, who had surprized *Tungen*, and plundered the cantons of *Appenzel* and *St. Gall*: they fell into an ambuscade, and were destroyed by the *Swiss*, who retook *Tungen*, and demolished its fortifications.

army in
the canton
of Schaff-
hausen,
and at
Tungen.

THE news of these successes having reached the emperor, while he was engaged in the war against *Charles* duke of *Guelderland*, over whom he had gained sundry advantages, he left the command of his army to the duke of *Saxony*, and, with four thousand chosen men, took the route of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, entered *Suabia*, crossed the *Black Forest*, arrived at *Constance*, and from thence repaired to the *Suntgaw*, where he collected a body of fifteen thousand men, and gave the command of them to *Henry* count of *Wirtemberg*.

THEN he demanded succours from the towns and princes of the *Suabian* league; and though some of them supplied him with troops, the greater number evaded his request, and pressed him to convoke a diet at *Worms*, which was summoned accordingly; but, before the meeting of this assembly, the forces furnished by the towns of *Franconia* and the states of *Suabia* were, in their march to *Titenang*, on the lake of *Bregentz*, met in the valley of *Engading*, by the inhabitants of *Coire* and the *Grisons*, who put them to the sword, and then ravaged the *Tyrol* without mercy.

Maximi-
lian re-
ceives sup-
plies of
men from
the cities
of Fran-
conia and
Suabia,
who are
cut in

MAXIMILIAN hoped that the troops he expected from *Austria* would repair this loss; but he was disappointed in his expectation: for when they had advanced as far as *Oberdorf*, the *Swiss* army appeared, and a very obstinate battle ensued, in which the *Austrians* were totally defeated.

pieces by
the Gri-
sons.
A body of
Austrians
cut off
near

THE victors having secured the ammunition and stores of the vanquished, marched towards *Dorneck* upon the *Rhine*, which was invested by the count of *Furstenberg*; and taking the advantage of this general's want of precaution, charged him unawares, while his troops were dispersed; and, though the fight was maintained for some time with equal fury on both sides, the imperialists received a total overthrow; the counts of *Furstenberg* and *Bitsch*, together with four thousand foldiers, fell upon the spot, and all the cannon and baggage were seized by the enemy, who gave no quarter during

Oberdorf.
The count
of Fur-
stenberg
defeated
and slain
by the
Swiss.

ing this engagement, which was the seventh battle lost by the *Austrians* in less than six months.

The war
is termi-
nated by a
treaty and
arbitra-
tion.

A. D.
1500.

MAXIMILIAN was at *Lindaw* when he received the melancholy news of this misfortune, which effectually humbled his pride, and induced him to make the first advances to a peace, which, after some negotiations at *Zurich Schaffhausen*, was at length established by the mediation of the duke of *Milan*, and some other princes, and the articles were not very disadvantageous to his interest, considering the ill fortune of his arms during the war. By this peace it was agreed, that the country of *Prettigaw* should belong to the emperor, that the quarrel between the city of *Coire* and the inhabitants of *Tyrol* should be referred to the arbitration of *Frederic* bishop of *Augsburg*, and that all other differences should, in like manner, be decided by impartial umpires. At the desire of *Maximilian*, the house of *Este*, the duke of *Milan*, the electors and other members of the empire, the cities of *Strasbourg* and *Basil*, with their bishops, and the other imperial towns of *Suabia* and the *Rhine*, were comprehended in the treaty; while the *Swiss* on their side included the king of *France* and his allies, the abbot and city of *St. Gall*, together with the canton of *Appenzel*^k.

The emperor
makes
peace with
Charles
duke of
Guelder-
land.

THIS peace was succeeded by an accommodation between *Maximilian* and *Charles d'Egmont*, to whom the emperor restored the towns he had taken in *Guelderland*, permitting him at the same time to assume the title of duke, on condition that he should acknowledge the duchy as a fief of the empire. As for the *Swiss*, they acquired such reputation by this war, which they maintained against *Maximilian*, that *Basil* and *Schaffhausen*, and afterwards *Appenzel*, engaged in their league, and completed the number of thirteen cantons which now compose their alliance^l.

MAXIMILIAN being freed from these broils, assembled a diet at *Augsburg*, in order to re-establish the public peace, and reform the abuses which had crept into the administration of justice; and the session was opened with complaints touching the annates, benefices, and taxes, which the court of *Rome* exacted of the provinces, to defray the expences of a war against the *Turks*. The sums thus levied had been remitted to *Cesar Borgia*, who had squandered them away in debauchery; and the princes inveighing loudly against this abuse, ambassadors were sent to complain of it to pope *Alexander*, who promised that such profusion should be prevented for the fu-

^k KRANTZ, ubi sup.

^l BARRE, tom. viii. p. 824.

ture. This step being taken, they prolonged the league of *Suabia* for twelve years, re-established the imperial chamber, which was grown into disuse; and, as this could be of little advantage, unless proper measures should be taken to execute its decrees and support its authority, the empire was divided into the six circles of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Saxony*, the *Rhine*, and *Westphalia*: but as the provinces possessed by the house of *Austria* in *Germany*, and those of the electors, were not comprehended in these six circles, *Maximilian* formed his own *German* dominions into a circle, as an example to the other electors, and four new divisions were added to the former six, namely, the circles of *Austria* and *Burgundy* for the provinces belonging to the house of *Austria*, that of *Upper Saxony* for the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, and that of the *Upper Rhine* for the ecclesiastical electors and the *Palatinate* (I).

THE kingdom of *Bohemia* was not comprehended in this division, because it was not then connected with the *Germanic*

(I) Each circle chose a director to conduct the civil affairs, and a duke or general to command in all military expeditions, and to keep the troops and fortresses in proper order. At first it depended upon the imperial court to nominate any prince it should judge a proper person to convoke the diet and direct the affairs of the circle; but as this office was naturally bestowed upon him who maintained the chief rank in every circle, it became hereditary in the sequel; and it is now exercised in the circle of *Austria* by the archduke of that name; in the circle of *Bavaria* by the elector and the archbishop of *Salzburg*; in *Franconia* alternately by the bishop of *Bamberg*, and the margraves of *Brandenburg*, *Barent*, and *Anspach*; in *Suabia* by the duke of *Wurtemberg*, and the bishop of *Constance*; in the *Upper Rhine*

by the bishop of *Worms* and the count *Palatine de Simmeren*; in the *Lower Rhine*, by the elector of *Mentz* alone; in *Westphalia*, by the bishop of *Munster*, conjointly with the elector of *Brandenburg* and the *Palatine*, who inherited the office of director from the last duke of *Juliers* and *Bergue*, as part of his succession, which was divided among them.

The directors of *Lower Saxony* are the dukes of *Magdeburg* and *Bremen* (formerly archbishops) and the dukes of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg*. The elector of *Saxony* is sole director of *Upper Saxony*; and the circle of *Burgundy*, which heretofore comprehended *Franche-Comté*, and all the provinces of the *Lower Countries*, was directed by the kings of *Spain*, while these countries were under their dominion (7).

(7) *Barre. tom. viii. p. 223.*

body, and a misunderstanding subsisted between *Ladislaus* and the emperor ^m.

John king of Denmark takes the field against the Dythmarsians ;

ALTHOUGH the interior parts of the empire enjoyed the happy fruits of *Maximilian's* paternal care, the war continued to rage between *John king of Denmark* and the *Dythmarsians*, who had revolted against him as duke of *Holstein*, and put themselves under the protection of the archbishop of *Bremen*. Before the commencement of hostilities he offered them a general amnesty, and a confirmation of all their privileges, provided they would own their dependence upon the duchy of *Holstein* ; and they, rejecting his advances, he took the field against them. Their towns and villages soon fell into his hands, and their country was abandoned to pillage ; yet they seemed to draw fresh courage from despair ; they destroyed several detachments which he sent to reconnoitre their situation ; for when they received the first account of his approach they had abandoned *Mildorp* their capital, and retired into the centre of their country, where their dykes and canals served them for intrenchments.

by whom he is totally defeated. THESE they fortified with great skill and precaution, and when the king advanced to attack them, they waited until they saw his army hampered among defiles and morasses, and then falling upon them with incredible fury, made a terrible slaughter, and obtained a complete victory. *Adolphus* and *Otho* counts of *Oldembourg*, together with one hundred and sixty officers, were killed upon the spot, and the king obliged to fly for shelter to *Holstein*, where he set on foot new levies, in order to retrieve his reputation ; but he was diverted from his purpose by the neighbouring princes, who negotiated an accommodation ⁿ.

Lewis of France sends an army to Italy and subdues the Milanese ;

MEAN while *Lewis XII.* of *France*, having made his preparations for wresting the *Milanese* from *Ludovic Sforza*, sent a strong body of troops into *Italy*, took, plundered, and burnt, the town of *Novi*, made himself master of *Valentia*, *Tortona*, and *Alexandria*, while *Ludovic*, betrayed by his officers, fled for refuge to the emperor : *Milan* submitted without resistance, and *Genoa* received a garrison of French troops. *Lewis*, being informed of these conquests, set out from *Lyons*, and repaired to *Milan*, where he made a public entry, and was acknowledged as sovereign ; where all the powers of *Italy*, except the king of *Naples*, sent ambassadors to congratulate him upon his good fortune.

^m MULLER, l. i. c. 2 & 3.

ⁿ MEURSIUS Hist. Dan.

lib. ii.

HAVING appointed governors to all the conquered places, ^{which is} and made a truce with the emperor, he returned to France; ^{reconquer-} but, in his absence, *Trivulci*, who commanded in *Milan*, rendered himself so odious to the people by his arrogance and cruelty, and oppressed the *Gibelines* in such a manner, that they began to cabal against his administration, and, in less than three months, disposed almost all the towns of the *Milanese* to receive the banished *Ludovic*. That prince, finding the emperor neither very able nor willing to give him effectual assistance, had begun to levy a body of horse in the provinces of the empire, and having contracted with the *Swiss* for eight thousand infantry, begun his march with that army, and entered the *Milanese*, where the people opened their gates to him, and renewed their oath of allegiance; while *Trivulci*, perceiving the citizens of *Milan* ripe for revolt, quitted the city, and shut himself up in *Novarra*, which was immediately invested by *Ludovic*, and, in a few days, capitulated: but the chevalier *Bayard*, who commanded in the citadel, refused to be comprehended in this capitulation, and held out with incredible fortitude and perseverance. Mean while *Maximilian*, having received the subsidies that were voted in the great diet at *Worms*, for the preservation of the public peace, began to levy troops in all the provinces, in order to oppose the progress of *Lewis*: but, all of a sudden, these levies were suspended, and the French king sent a strong body of forces into *Italy*, under the command of the cardinal *d'Amboise*, and the *Sieur de la Tremouille*, who, without hazarding a battle, carried on a secret negotiation with the *Swiss* in *Ludovic's* army; and these, in a most treacherous manner, sold and delivered that unhappy prince to the French king, who ordered him to be confined in the castle of *Loches*, where he lived ten years, deprived of all the comforts, and even the necessaries, of life, and at last died of grief and mortification.

Lewis having secured himself in the possession of the *Milanese*, concluded with *Ferdinand* king of *Arragon* a treaty, in consequence of which they joined their forces in order to conquer and divide the dominions of the king of *Naples*; and this poor prince was obliged to renounce his kingdom, and depend upon the generosity of the French king, who bestowed upon him and his heirs the county of *Maine* and all its dependencies, together with a pension of thirty thousand livres, and all the rights and privileges granted to the princes of the blood.

Proposes a match between his daughter and the son of the archduke Philip, afterwards Charles V.

Concludes a treaty with Maximilian.

A. D.
1501.

IN order to preserve this conquest, and confirm the *Milanese* to his family, *Lewis* resolved to cultivate the friendship of the emperor, and actually demanded the investiture of that duchy from *Maximilian*, who was at first very averse to the proposal, because a report prevailed, that *Lewis*, by the help of the pope, aspired to the imperial crown. However, the *French* monarch soon undeceived him and the princes of *Germany* in this particular, by the most solemn protestation, and, knowing the avaritious and interested disposition of the emperor, he conquered his reluctance with a sum of money, and the proposal of a match between *Charles* son of the archduke *Philip* and his own daughter *Claudia*. This alliance was accordingly negotiated at *Trent*, by the cardinal *d'Amboise*, though the parties were in their infancy: a treaty of peace was concluded between the emperor and *France*, importing that *Lewis* should assist the king of the *Romans* against the *Turks*; maintain the rights of *Maximilian* and his successors to the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bovemia*, after the death of *Ladislav*, and facilitate his coronation at *Rome*; and, in consideration of these articles, the emperor should grant to *Lewis* the investiture of the *Milanese* (K).

OTHER additional articles of this treaty were signed and ratified at *Blois* in *France* by the archduke *Philip*, on his way with the archduchess, through this kingdom to *Spain*, where they were declared the presumptive heirs of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*.

Proceedings of the diet at Nuremberg.
1502.

THE city of *Basil* having joined in the league of the *Swiss*, in diametrical opposition to the authority of the *Germanic* body, which had forbid the imperial towns to engage in that confederacy, a diet was convoked at *Nuremberg*, in order to concert measures for detaching it from that connection, as well as for preventing other cities from following its exam-

P GUIC. l. v.

(K) This article of the treaty was signed by *Francis* of *Valois*, presumptive heir of the crown, the princes of the blood, and the grandees of the realm. The other articles imported, that the king should restore to their estates and honours those who had been banished from *Milan*, that he should receive from

Maximilian the investiture of that duchy, in consideration of a hundred and twenty thousand florins, payable in twelve months, a pair of golden spurs yearly on *Christmas-day*, and five hundred lances to be sent, when the emperor should go to receive the imperial crown at *Rome* (8).

(8) *Remarq. sur Heiss, liq. iii. c. 5.*

ple; and it was proposed to summon the citizens to abandon the *Helvetic* league, and unite with that of *Suabia*, on pain of being put to the ban of the empire; But, after much altercation and debate, they agreed to consider *Basil* as an imperial town, and compel it occasionally to pay those taxes that should be imposed by the diet on the other cities of the empire.

MEASURES were likewise taken to reform the current coin, and raise the *Teutonic* order to that importance they had lost since their last treaty with *Poland*, by which they forfeited *Pomerelia*, *Mariembourg*, *Elbing*, *Culm*, and *Oberm*, with their territories. The states of the empire interposed their good offices in behalf of the knights, and sent ambassadors to the diet which the king of *England* assembled at *Posnan*, to terminate the dispute; but that prince would neither restore the places, nor remit the homage they paid for the towns they still held in *Prussia*; and the order, being very much reduced, was vain to wait for a more favourable opportunity.

WHILE the pope sent cardinal *Raymond* as his legate, *The pope* to let the emperor know he had resolved to publish a crusade against the Infidels, and for that purpose had agreed *propos'd a crusade* with the ambassadors of several potentates, that the *Hungarians*, *Bohemians*, *Poles*, and *Germans*, should carry on the war against the *Turks* in *Thrace*, while the *French* and *Spaniards* should make their efforts in *Greece*, and his holiness, with the king of *England*, the *Venetians*, and princes of *Italy*, would attack *Constantinople* by sea. In consequence of this resolution, he had sent nuncios to all the courts, to exhort the sovereigns to compromise their quarrels, that they might unite their forces against the common enemy of *Christianity*.

ALTHOUGH *Maximilian* very well knew that *Alexander's* sole aim in this crusade was to amass money by voluntary contribution, he affected to applaud the project; but at the same time declared for himself, that his finances were by no means equal to his zeal, and therefore counselled the legate to address himself to the *Germanic* body.

RAYMOND, in all probability, followed his advice, and was amply rewarded with some promises by the princes and towns; for the electors engaged in an association at *Gelnhausen*, obliging themselves to furnish a certain proportion of troops to march against the Infidels; and they wrote to the kings of *France*, *Spain*, and *Denmark*, inviting them to join the alliance. At the same time they represented to the emperor, that the erection of the aulic council, lately established at *Ratis*, *The electors engaged in an association to furnish troops against the Infidels.*

1 MURPHREE, l. i. c. 16.

They com-
plain of
the aulic
council.

Refuse to
admit the
archduke
Philip into
the electo-
ral college.
New pre-
rogatives
attached to
the title of
archduke.

tifbon, was contrary to the laws of the *Germanic* body, as the princes of the empire had never consented to the establishment of that tribunal, which greatly interfered with the authority of the imperial chamber. *Maximilian*, however, paid little regard to these remonstrances, which were next year repeated in an assembly at *Frankfort*; and the princes, on the other hand, lent a deaf ear to his intreaties, when he solicited them to admit his son *Philip* into the electoral college. His design was to erect *Austria* into an electorate; but failing in that enterprize, he resolved to invest the sovereignty of that province with prerogatives that would as conspicuously distinguish him from the other princes. He began by confirming the title of archduke, which had been conferred upon him by *Frederick III.* Then he decreed, that the archduke, after having three times demanded his fief of the emperor, should be deemed to have obtained it, even though it had been refused; that he should receive it with the sword only, and that *gratis*, on the frontiers of *Austria*; and that he should not be obliged to answer any challenge to single combat. The electors, in order to counterbalance these privileges, which they did not approve, renewed their association of *Gelnhausen*, engaging to assist each other reciprocally against all violence, to maintain their rights in the election of an emperor, or king of the *Romans*; to oppose every attempt to diminish the authority of the *Germanic* body; and to appear every two years, personally, at an appointed time and place, to deliberate upon the affairs of the empire.

The empe-
ror con-
cludes a
treaty
with
Henry
VII. of
England.

AFTER this diet *Maximilian* concluded a league of friendship and commerce with *Henry VII.* king of *England*, who, though he refused to lend the emperor a sum he wanted to borrow, presented him with ten thousand pounds, as a contribution against the *Turks*; and about this period he was informed that *Joachim*, margrave of *Brandenburg*, had married *Elizabeth* princess of *Denmark*, and engaged to assist *John* king of that country against *Lubeck* and the other hans towns of the north, which had declared for the administrator of *Sweden* against the sovereign of *Denmark*. But before he denounced war, he endeavoured to detach the regency of *Lubeck* from the *Swedes*, by representing, that this people had shaken off the dominion of *Denmark*, in diametrical opposition to the treaty of *Colmar*, by which the three kingdoms were united under one sovereign; and that *Suante-Sture*, the administrator, had not only made an attempt up-

on the life of the king, but also detained the queen prisoner, contrary to his own promise, and all the laws of hospitality.

THE inhabitants of *Lubec* paying no regard to these remonstrances, *John* threatened to deprive them of their privileges, and, in the mean time, made prize of their ships and vessels, a circumstance which incensed them to such a degree, that they declared war against *Denmark*, and fitted out a powerful squadron, to annoy the *Danes* by sea. The administrator of *Sweden* made preparations for co-operating with these allies, and the whole north was on the eve of being involved in a war; when *Raymond*, the pope's legate, at that time employed in preaching the crusade through the provinces of *Germany*, used his best endeavours for disposing the parties to an accommodation: the queen of *Denmark* was released, and conferences were opened; but before they could agree about the articles, *Suante-Sture* died, and was succeeded by his son *Steno*. The senate of *Lubec* having, about this time, intailed upon themselves a war with the duke of *Mecklenburg*, and terrified at the prospect of falling a sacrifice to two such powerful enemies, sent ambassadors to his *Danish* majesty, to sue for peace, which was granted on pretty equitable conditions.

JOHN being now at liberty to prosecute the war against *Sweden* with his whole force, the administrator, by the intercession of the envoys of *Scotland* and *Brandenburg*, obtained his consent to the opening of conferences at *Cohnar*, where the *Swedes* refusing to appear, were convicted of rebellion, the administrator declared a traitor, deprived of his nobility, and his estate confiscated; and this sentence, being confirmed by *Maximilian*, was published through the whole empire.

THIS confirmation being obtained, the king of *Denmark* confiscated all the estates belonging to *Swedish* noblemen in *Denmark* and *Norway*, and gave the *hans towns* to understand, that, should they continue to trade with *Sweden*, or assist that kingdom in any shape whatsoever, he would revoke all the privileges granted by his predecessors to their ships in the ports of *Denmark*.

THE *Swedes*, alarmed at the emperor's decree, as well as at his *Danish* majesty's resolution, sent ambassadors to *Copenhagen* to sue for peace; but, as they had already deceived the king, all they could obtain was a short suspension of arms.

An insurrection of the peasants.

DURING these commotions, there was such a formidable insurrection among the peasants in Germany, that it was found necessary to raise a strong army, in order to bring them to reason; for they had resolved, like the *Swiss*, to shake off the yoke of their masters, and live independent, in the form of a republic^t. Scarce was this disturbance quelled, when a new war broke out in the empire. *George the Rich*, duke of *Bavaria*, of the branch of *Landshut*, had made his will in favour of his son-in-law *Rupert* count *Palatine*, son of *Philip* the elector; and tho' he could not prevail upon the emperor to confirm this disposition, he had, some time before his death, not only bestowed the vicariate of the *Lower Bavaria* upon *Rupert*, but also laid impositions upon the states of these provinces to obey that prince. At his death, *Albert* and *Wolfgang*, dukes of *High Bavaria*, his nearest relations of the branch of *Munich*, had obtained the investiture of his dominions. *Rupert* pretended to the succession in consequence of the will, as husband of *Elizabeth*, daughter of duke *George*, and because the greatest part of the fiefs were allodial. *Albert* and *Wolfgang*, on their side, affirmed, that the will of *George* was contrary to the antient treaties of the family, by which it was stipulated, that if any prince of the house of *Bavaria* should die without male issue, the nearest relation of the collateral line should succeed to his dominions.

Rupert count Palatine put to the ban of the empire.

This affair was brought before the emperor, who adjudged the succession to collateral heirs, and *Rupert*, refusing to abide by that sentence, was put to the ban of the empire. His father *Philip*, who was threatened with the same penalty, provided he should espouse the cause of *Rupert*, hesitated for some time between his fear and paternal affection; at length, however, being encouraged with promises of succour from *France*, he armed for the support of his son, and underwent the same punishment from *Maximilian*. Armies on both sides immediately took the field: the emperor, who commanded the first, was accompanied by *Albert* and *Wolfgang*, dukes of *Bavaria*, *Frederic* margrave of *Brandenburg*, and the bishop of *Straßburg*; and invading the territories of duke *George*, committed great ravages, took possession of divers cities, and meeting with a body of troops which *Rupert* had levied in *Bohemia*, cut them in pieces near *Ratisbona*. After this action, *Maximilian* divided his forces, one half of which had orders to attack the territories of *Rupert*, while the other, headed by the emperor himself, marched towards *Alsace* against the elector *Philip*, took possession of seve-

The emperor takes the field against him and

^t SUR. in comment. Basil. — supplem. in NAUCLER.

ral places in the *Palatinate*, among others of *Kuffstein*, and *bis fat Geroldsecke*, and compelled the elector to sue for peace. *Philip. Udalrich* duke of *Wirttemberg*, who was at the head of a second army, composed of twenty thousand foot and eight hundred horse, entered the dominions of the count *Palatine*, *Terrible ravages committed* burned the monastery of *Maulbrunnen*, and took possession of several places. A third body, which had been raised by *Alexander* count *Palatine*, duke of *Bavaria*, and count of *Weldentz*, was no other than a number of peasants assembled in a hurry, and much better adapted for plundering and ravaging the country, than for carrying on a regular war. These, however, he sent into the *Palatinate*, some towns of which fell into their hands; but the greatest excesses were committed by the foot corps, which destroyed with fire and sword, under the conduct of *William* landgrave of *Hesse*, accompanied by *Henry* duke of *Brunswick*, *Henry* duke of *Mecklenburg*, *Emien* count of *Peinungen*, the counts of *Lippe* and *Koningstein*, and several other noblemen, some of whom had voluntarily taken arms, out of hatred to the elector *Palatine*, while others engaged with a view to support some particular pretensions, and a third sort embraced the service for pay and promotion.

DURING these operations, the elector *Philip* retired to his fortrefs of *Heidelberg*, a place strong by its situation, defended by good walls and towers, difficult of access, and provided with a noble train of artillery. The town was likewise well fortified, supplied with provisions for three years, and the garrison composed of people determined to sacrifice themselves for the defence of their prince.

THIS invasion of the *Palatinate* lasted five months, at the end of which *Rupert* dying, the emperor ordered both parties to lay down their arms; and that no person might have cause to complain that his rights were invaded, issued orders for convoking a diet at *Cologne*, where the pretensions on both sides should be heard and considered, and a definitive sentence pronounced by the princes of the empire. The elector *Palatine* repaired to this diet, and was by *Frederic* elector of *Saxony* presented to the emperor, of whom he asked pardon, and intreated peace. *Maximilian* received him into favour, and, with the advice of the princes of the empire, regulated the conditions of the treaty between *Philip* and the dukes of *Bavaria*. In this accommodation regard was had to the children of *Rupert*, who, besides the treasures of duke *George*, were left in possession of the territories lying

and the difference referred to the decision of a diet.
A. D. 1505.

between the *Danube*, the *Nab*, and the antient limits of the *Palatinate*. His other dominions were given to *Albert* and *Wolfgang*; the old quarrel between the elector *Palatine* and the duke of *Wurtemberg* was compromised, and, as it was stipulated in the treaty, that each should remain in possession of the lands and places which he had acquired during the war, the emperor remained master of the fortresses of *Rottemberg*, *Kufflein*, and several other towns. Yet the articles of this peace were not fully executed till two years after this period, in the diet which was held at *Constance* *.

Confirmation of the treaty of Blois.

IT was now that the treaty of *Blois* was concluded, and confirmed the alliance before projected between *France* and *Austria*; an alliance by which, indeed, *Lewis XII.* acquired the investiture of *Milan*, but importing at the same time, that in case *Lewis* should prevent the projected marriage between the princess *Claudia* and the archduke *Charles* of *Luxemburg*, this prince should, by way of indemnification, possess the duchy of *Burgundy*, the *Milanese*, and the county of *Artois*; whereas, should the match miscarry through the fault of *Maximilian* or of *Philip* prince of *Spain*, the young archduke's father, the house of *Austria* should cede her pretensions to the duchy of *Burgundy*, the *Artois*, *Charolois*, and other domains; so that this, at any rate, was a very impolitic agreement in *Lewis*; for by giving his daughter in marriage to *Charles*, he gave away *Brittany* as her dowry; and, by refusing the match, he lost the duchy of *Burgundy*, and his *Italian* fiefs. But this treaty was opposed by the states of *France*, with the private consent and approbation of *Lewis*, and the princess given in marriage to *Charles* count of *Angoulême*, presumptive heir to the crown.

Which is arranged by the French.

A. 14.

1506.

DURING these transactions *Isabella* queen of *Castile* dying, after having left her dominions to her husband *Ferdinand*, *Philip* of *Austria* repaired to *Spain* with his wife *Jane*, in order to reign in conjunction with his father-in-law. Pope *Julius II.* who succeeded *Alexander*, made himself master of *Bologna*, with the assistance of *Lewis* and cardinal *d'Amboise*, and projected schemes for raising a new sovereignty by force of arms.

Philip dies, having appointed Lewis.

MEAN while *Philip*, titular king of *Spain*, was overtaken by death at *Burgos*, and, to the astonishment of all mankind, appointed *Lewis XII.* tutor to his son *Charles*, notwithstanding the reason he had to doubt the friendship and integrity of that monarch; but this step was the consequence of the hatred

* HENSS Hist. de l'Emp. I. iii. c. 1

he bore to *Ferdinand*, whom he looked upon as a perfidious hypocrite; and he knew that the *Flemings* would never own the emperor as regent during his son's minority.

NEVERTHELESS the seventeen provinces, though they chose their own governors for the space of eighteen months, finding themselves involved in a war with *Charles* duke of *Guelderland*, who made great efforts to recover the whole extent of his dominions, were at length obliged to yield the regency to *Maximilian*, who declared his daughter *Margaret* of *Austria* their governante^y.

THOUGH the emperor had made a very good accommodation with the king of *France*, with regard to *Milan*, he could not forget the outrage which he thought he had received from the *Venetians*; by the part they acted in that affair; besides they possessed lands in *Istria*, to which he had pretensions. He therefore convoked a diet, where, though under another pretext, it was resolved to declare war against the republic and her adherents^z; and in order to execute this design the more effectually, he engaged in a league with pope *Julius II.* and the kings of *France* and *Spain*, who could not without regret behold the *Venetians* in peaceable possession of several cities in the duchy of *Milan*, and in other parts of *Lombardy*, to which they had no other right than that of conquest. But, before this alliance was made, *Maximilian* undertook an expedition into *Italy*, in order to oppose the progress of *Lewis*, who was suspected of a design to enslave that country; he accordingly began his march with a contemptible number of troops, and was by the *Venetians* refused a passage through the valley of *Trent*; so that he was obliged to desist from his enterprise after having sustained considerable loss in an engagement with *Battistone d'Alviano*, the general of the republic. Thus baffled, he was fain to conclude a truce; and, as he was disappointed in the other part of his design, which was his coronation at *Rome*, he, by a circular letter, laid injunctions upon all the states of the empire to give him the appellation of *Roman emperor elected*, a title which hath since been assumed by all his successors, at their election, in consequence, however, of the pope's permission.

As the *French* troops, which had joined the *Venetians*, refused to act offensively against the dominions of the emperor, the state of *Venice* were fain to listen to the proposals of *Maximilian*, and open a congress at their city, where, after

XII. tutor
to his son
Charles.
A. D.
1507.
Maximilian appoints his daughter Margaret governante of the Low Countries.

^y Annal. de l'Empire, tom. ii. p. 567.
in Chron. de France.

^z TRITHEM,

truce with abundance of altercation and political craft exercised on both sides, a separate treaty of truce was concluded between *Maximilian* and the *Venetians*, to which *Lewis XII.* had liberty of accession for the space of three months. The *French* king was so incensed at this exclusive accommodation, that, with the help of cardinal *d'Amboise*, he formed the project of a league against the *Venetians*, in order to divest the republic of all the dominions she had usurped in *Italy* from the empire in *Lombardy*, from the kings of *France* and *Spain* in the *Milanese* and *Apuglia*, and from the pope in *Romagna*.

A. D.
1508.

This scheme was particularly relished by the emperor, as it not only flattered his interest, but also his revenge; for the *Venetians*, immediately after the truce they had concluded with him, decreed a triumph to the general who had defeated his troops: an impolitic compliment, which he looked upon as an indelible affront offered to his reputation. He therefore entered into the association, which was effected by the treaty of *Cambray*, concerted between *Margaret* duchess-dowager of *Savoy*, sister of the deceased archduke, and cardinal *d'Amboise*, who met at that place, on pretence of terminating the difference between *Charles* the emperor's grandson and the duke of *Guelderland* (L).

THIS

* Mez. Abr. Chron. tom. ii. p. 814.

(L) The treaty or league of *Cambray* consisted of these articles. The pope, emperor, kings of *France* and *Arragon*, shall mutually assist each other in recovering the places and dominions which the *Venetians* had usurped or wrested from them. *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Faenza*, *Rimini*, *Imola*, and *Cesina*, shall be restored to the pope. *Rovereto*, *Vrona*, *Padua*, *Vicenza*, *Treviso*, and the *Frioul*, shall return to the emperor. The king of *France* shall retrieve *Brescia*, *Crema*, *Bergamo*, *Cremona*, *Gieradadda*, and all the ancient dependencies of the duchy of *Milan*. The king of *Arragon* shall be put in possession of *Trani*, *Brindis*, *Otranto*, *Galipoli*, and all the ports which the *Venetians* occupy in the

kingdom of *Naples*. Because the emperor is bound by a truce for three years with the *Venetians*, the pope, in order to furnish him with a pretence for breaking that treaty, shall summon him as avoyer of the *Roman* church, to come and assist him in recovering the dominions of the holy see. While the three princes shall attack the republic with temporal arms, his holiness shall press them to restore what they have usurped, on pain of excommunication. The kings of *Hungary* and *Saxony*, the dukes of *Savoy* and *Ferrara*, and the marquis of *Manua*, shall be exhorted to engage in this league. During this war, neither the emperor, nor his grandson the prince of *Spain*, shall in any shape molest the

THIS league was attended with all the success that could be expected ; for the emperor and the king of France wrested from the *Venetians* almost all the cities which they possessed in *Lombardy* ; nor was the pope backward in taking all that lay convenient for his purpose. In a word, the *Venetians* thought themselves so little able to withstand this alliance, that they abandoned all their territories upon the continent, after having lost the famous battle of *Ghiera d'Adda*, in which their whole infantry was cut in pieces ^b. While the French troops, under the marshal *de Chaumont*, reduced one town after another, *Maximilian* advanced at the head of his army towards *Innsbruck*, in order to attack the *Venetians* ; and *Christopher* count *Frangipani*, with the duke of *Brunswick*, who commanded the light troops, entering *Istria* and *Friouli*, retook all the places which had been lost the preceding year. The *Venetians* were now reduced to such extremity, that they sent a *charte blanche* to the emperor, and implored his clemency in the most submissive and pathetic terms. But the effects of his compassion in favour of the republic were prevented by the remonstrances of cardinal *d'Amboise*, who exhorted him to seize this opportunity of reducing this insolent state ; and, in all probability, it would now have been enslaved, had not the measures of the French and Germans been traversed by the king of *Arragon* and the pope, who would by no means concur in the ruin of the only power which had hitherto hindered these nations from subduing all *Italy* ^c.

The Venetians are defeated, and abandon the continent, A. D. 1509.

They send a charte-blanc to the emperor.

^b GUICCIARDINI, lib. viii.

n. 83.

^c MARIANA, lib. xxix.

the king of *Arragon*, with respect to their pretensions to *Castile*. *Maximilian* shall again bestow upon *Leavis XII.* the investiture of the duchy of *Milan*, in which *Brescia*, *Bergamo*, and all the other dependencies of the *Milanese* shall be included. If the republic shall have recourse to the *League*, the confederates shall redouble their efforts, and the association shall thenceforward be regarded as a league against the Infidels. None of the confederates shall

make peace or truce with the enemy, without the concurrence of the rest : and, in order to prevent the differences subsisting between the emperor and the king of *Arragon*, touching the possession of *Castile*, from obstructing the enterprizes of the league, commissaries shall be appointed on both sides to terminate these disputes in an amicable manner, as soon as the war against the *Venetians* shall be finished (9).

(9) Ser. *de la Ligue* 2 vol. in 12mo. Paris, 1709, tom. i. lib. i. p. 50.

Cardinal
d'Am-
boise re-
ceives the
investiture
of Milan
in the
name of
Lewis
XII.

MEAN while *Maximilian* repaired to *Trent*, accompanied by the cardinal, who there received the investiture of *Milan* in the name of *Lewis XII.* The league of *Cambray* was likewise renewed ; and an interview proposed between the emperor and the *French* king on the frontiers of the *Milanese.* *Lewis* kept the appointment ; but *Maximilian* sent an excuse : then the king of *France* repassed the *Alps* with part of his army, leaving the rest under the command of *Chau- mont.*

The empe-
ror invests
Padua,
but is
obliged to
raise the
siege.

HE was no sooner gone than the *Venetians* felt their courage revive. They surprized *Padua*, and retook several other places garrisoned by the troops of the emperor, who, being informed of these transactions, solicited succours of his allies, and they reinforced him so effectually, that he found himself at the head of fourscore thousand men, with whom he entered *Lombardy* by the mountains of *Vicenza*, in spite of an obstinate opposition he sustained from the peasants, who were devoted to the *Venetians*, and besieged *Padua*, which was defended so gallantly, that he was fain to abandon the enterprize and retreat to *Innsbruck.*

He con-
firms the
privileges
of Flo-
rence.

THE *Florentines*, knowing that his finances were quite exhausted, took this opportunity of buying their peace with him ; and, in consideration of forty thousand crowns of gold, he not only granted them an amnesty of all their revolts, but even confirmed their privileges in the most ample form.

THE republic of *Venice* soon retrieved its loss, and became more powerful than ever ; for, when their arms failed, they had recourse to their policy, reconciled themselves to the court of *Rome*, and effected a breach between the king of *France* and the pope, who now openly espoused their cause.

The pope
makes
unsuccess-
ful efforts
as media-
tor be-
tween the
emperor
and the
*Veneti-
ans.*

JULIUS, in order to weaken *Lewis*, counselled the *Venetians* to accommodate matters with the emperor, and he himself undertook the office of mediator. The conferences were opened in a commanderie, near *Scala* ; and the republic, conscious of *Maximilian's* avarice and poverty, offered not only to reimburse him for the expense of the war which he had incurred, but also to pay him a sum of money equivalent to what *France* had expended on the same occasion. But, as they refused to part with *Padua*, *Treviso*, and *Vicenza*, he rejected their proposals, and made a merit of having manifested this disinterested conduct with the diet assembled at *Augsburg*, which approved of his intention to re-establish the

authority of the empire in *Italy* (M), and promised to support him in the execution of that design, towards which he borrowed one hundred and fifty thousand crowns of the king of *France*, upon a mortgage of the town of *Wallegio*.

THEN he regulated with *Lewis* the operations of the ensuing campaign, and having, without effect, demanded succours of the king of *Arragon* and the pope, as his confederates, he appointed the count *de Hanau* his general in *Italy*, and ordered a body of troops to assemble in the neighbourhood of *Verona*. There being joined by the *French* under the marshal *de Chaumont*, they passed the *Po* and the *Adige*, and took *Vicenza*, which the inhabitants redeemed from pillage. In a word, they reduced a great number of places, and filled the whole country with carnage and conflagration; but *Chaumont* refused to assist the *Germans* in the siege of *Padua*, and a misunderstanding happening between *Maximilian* and *Lewis*, it was thought necessary to confirm their league by a new treaty, in consequence of which the armies acted with more vigour and unanimity.

MAXIMILIAN was now so well convinced of the *French* king's sincerity and affection, that he submitted his disputes with *Ferdinand* to his arbitration. This prince had, by the intrigues of cardinal *Ximenes*, secured himself in the possession of the whole kingdom, and the emperor had no friends in *Spain* but a few noblemen who were dissatisfied at the administration. Nevertheless, *Ferdinand* agreed that the king of *France* should be umpire of the contest, which he terminated in an amicable manner; pronouncing that the king of *Arragon* should govern *Castile* until the archduke *Charles* should have attained his twentieth year; that this young prince should not assume the title of king till the death of his mother; and that the male children which *Ferdinand* might have by his second marriage should have no pretensions to the kingdom of *Castile*.

By this arbitration *Lewis* thought to have attached *Ferdinand* to his interest, or at least to have hindered him from joining the pope against the *French* nation. . But he was de-

(M). It was in this assembly that *Hamburg* was anew declared a free imperial town, independent of the house of *Saxony*, the pretensions of which were referred to the decision of the imperial chamber.

This event was the more remarkable, as the city of *Hamburg* had, for three hundred years, disputed the sovereignty of its territory with the kings of *Denmark* and the counts of *Schawembourg* (10).

The pope
declares
war
against
Lewis and
the duke of
Ferrara.

ceived : the king of *Arragon* had already concluded a secret treaty with *Julius*, who bestowed upon him the investiture of the kingdom of *Naples*, and afterwards declared war against *Lewis*, on pretence of his having refused to cede some towns, to which the holy see had some pretensions ; and the duke of *Ferrara*, as the *French* king's ally, was included in this declaration.

The king of
France
concludes a
new
treaty
with Ma-
ximilian ;

LEWIS, incensed at his presumption, as well as alarmed at his preparations, and attempts to turn upon him those arms that were intended to check the progress of the *Turks*, allied himself still more strongly to *Maximilian* by a new treaty, concluded at *Blois*, and convoked an assembly of the clergy, to inquire how far he ought to respect the spiritual power of the church, which the pope exercised so unjustly. The assembly declared, that if the pope should unjustly attack any Christian prince in his temporalities, he might in consequence defend them by force of arms ; that *Lewis* might, on this occasion, re-establish the pragmatic sanction, and insist upon the common rights of mankind, according to the decrees of the council of *Basil*.

also forms
a design of
succeeding
Julius in
the papacy.

THIS declaration was equally agreeable to the *French* king and *Maximilian*, who had projected a scheme for calling a general council to try and depose *Julius*, whom he himself meant to succeed in the papacy. In order to accomplish this aim, he resolved to borrow a large sum of money from the *fuggers*, who were the richest merchants in all *Germany*, to buy the votes of the cardinals ; and he proposed to pawn his imperial ornaments, and to make over to these traders one third of the revenues of the holy see, until the whole debt should be liquidated.

THIS scheme, however, he kept very secret from every body but a few particular friends ; though that he intended to put it in execution appears from some of his own letters (N).

MEAN

c MARIAN. lib. xxix. n. 83.

(N) In the collection published by Mr. *Godofroi*, we find a letter of *Maximilian*, writ in these words : " Quod, quando ipse intelligis, ingenua pecunie summâ quæ impendenda erit, geri atque effici non posse, visum nobis est e re fore nostri propositi, ut cardinalibus & proceribus alijs

" Romanis ad res nostras
" pertrahere satagimus, polli-
" ceamur, ac pondere ter-
" centum milia ducatorum
" fuggeris mutuandorum &
" Romæ ab eorundem pannel-
" cha ad constitutum diem præ-
" sentandorum . . . Op-
" portet alimus artem illi (Ja-
" thay fuggero seniori) cleno-
" diorum

MEAN while the pope proceeded to hostilities against the duke of *Ferrara*, and, being joined by troops from *Naples*, made a very considerable progress, though he ran the risk of having his person seized, first by *Chaumont*, and afterwards by the chevalier *Bayard*.

THE emperor and the king of *France* sent ambassadors to *Burgos*, to complain of *Ferdinand's* having infringed the league of *Cambray*, and to exhort him to join for the convocation of a council : but that prince, jealous of their power, and dreading their influence in *Italy*, answered very coldly on both these subjects ; though he privately employed all his endeavours to detach *Maximilian* from the interests of *Lewis*, king of *Arragon*, which he demonstrated to be incompatible with those of the emperor. These suggestions had great weight with *Maximilian*, who was persuaded to leave his cause to the determination of a general assembly to be held at *Mantua*, and he intreated the king of *France* to send a minister to that congress. Though *Lewis* was very much chagrined to find his ally amused by such an expedient, in the midst of their conquests in *Italy*, he did not think proper to signify his disgust, by which means he might entail the whole burden of the war upon himself, but sent the bishop of *Paris* to *Mantua*, where he found *Matthew Langh*, bishop of *Gurck*, the emperor's plenipotentiary, accompanied by the ambassadors of *Ferdinand*.

JULIUS, who was then at *Ravenna*, being desirous of founding the bishop of *Gurck*, and, if possible, of winning him over to his interest, found means, by his emissaries, to induce that prelate to visit him at *Bologna*, where he employed all his artifice to engage him in his interest, and even cajoled him with the promise of a cardinal's hat ; but he found *Langh* unshaken and incorruptible : and while he amused him with conferences touching a general pacification, attempted to surprise *Genoa*, whither he sent the bishop of *Ventimiglia* in disguise. This relate, however, was discovered in driving a troop of oxen, and all his accomplices put to death. The bishop of *Gurck*, informed at this perfidy, broke up the congress at *Mantua*, while *Lewis* pursued his advantages in *Italy*.

"diorum nostrorum pretio-
"res quatuor circas, unà par-
"ter cum pallio investitura-
"qui non ad imperium, sed ad
"nostrum domum, quæ aicam

"pertinet, et cujus nos, post
"acceptum papatum, non am-
"plius erit, ut opus habeamus."
&c. (11).

A council
at Pisa.

A. D.

1511.

1512.

Lewis
sends a
body of
troops
under la
Palice to
obey the
emperor;
they defeat
the Vene-
tians, and
reduce a
number of
places.
The kings
of Eng-
land and
Arragon
endeavour
to detach
Maximi-
lian from
the interest
of Lewis.
He engages
in a league
with them
against
France.

THIS fruitless effort, however, was succeeded by a council at *Pisa*, convoked at the desire of the *French* king, under the protection of the emperor, though *Maximilian* did not send thither any ambassador, nor did any *German* bishop assist at the assembly. Indeed by this time the emperor was greatly cooled in his friendship for *Lewis*, who, though he perceived his indifference, still dreaded the thought of seeing him among the number of his enemies; and therefore not only overlooked his neglect, but cultivated his good graces with the utmost assiduity; for, while *Ferdinand* pulled off the mask, by sending troops to *Naples*, in order to hinder an exclusive accommodation between *France* and the pope, *Lewis* engaged in a new treaty with the emperor, and sent his general *la Palice*, with a body of forces, to join the imperial troops, and implicitly obey the commands of *Maximilian*, who would not head the army in person, but reinforced the *French* general with nine thousand men, and desired him to dislodge the *Venetians* from the strong posts which they occupied. In obedience to these orders, he attacked and routed the enemy, compelled the towns of the *Friuli* to submit, made himself master of the *Graditz*, and reduced *Castel Novo*, for the benefit of the emperor, who, notwithstanding these conquests, seemed to be still dissatisfied, because he would not undertake to besiege *Trevisa* with such a small army, but retired into the duchy of *Milan*.

THE kings of *England* and *Arragon*, taking advantage of his discontent, strongly solicited him to join in the league which they had concluded against *France*; and in the mean time negotiated a truce for ten months between him and the republic of *Venice*, and promised to furnish him with troops and money to conquer the *Milanese*, and subdue the duke of *Guelderland*.

STAGGERED by these insinuations, he industriously sought occasion to break with *France*: he loudly complained that he had reaped no advantage from the league of *Cambray*; that of the three towns to which he had an incontestable right, *Trevisa* and *Padua* were still in the hands of the *Venetians*, while *Verona* was mortgaged to the king of *France*. He demanded that these places should be conquered for him at the expence of *Lewis*; that *Anna*, the second daughter of *France*, should marry the infant *Ferdinand*, younger brother to the archduke *Charles*, and that *Burgundy* should be dismembered from *France*, as her dowry. The meaning of these and other extravagant proposals was plainly discerned by *Lewis*, who thought fit to refuse them. He endeavoured to amuse *Maximilian* with a subsidy of fifty thousand crowns; notwithstanding

notwithstanding which, this prince engaged in the league against France^f; so that Lewis was left alone to sustain the Lewis burden of the war. Even then he made a strong effort, and ^{forsook} set on foot a powerful army, the command of which was ^{by his} given to Gaston de Foix, who, upon Easter-day, obtained a ^{allies.} signal victory over the confederates near Ravenna; but it cost him so dear, that the affairs of France were in as bad a situation as if he had lost the battle, and, to crown the misfortune, the English at that time declared against Lewis, who, being obliged to quit all his advantages on this side, in order to defend his own dominions, Milan, and all that he had conquered in Italy, fell a prey to his enemies.

FERDINAND, taking the advantage of this conjuncture, wrested the kingdom of Navarre from John of the house of Albert, its lawful possessor, and afterwards endeavoured to find out a title to defend his usurpation^g. All his right, however, consisted in a pretended bull, which the pope had unjustly fulminated against John, on account of his adherence to the king of France, whom Julius had also excommunicated; and even this slender pretence was an authority *ex post facto*; for the invasion happened in June, and the bull was not published till July.

Loses Milan and all his conquests in Italy. A.D. 1512. Ferdinand of Spain seizes the kingdom of Navarre.

THE condition of Lewis XII. was now really deplorable: for though he found means to make peace with the Venetians, he was invaded on one side by the Swiss, and on the other by the English, who had denounced war against him, at the instigation of Ferdinand, and who were joined in Picardy by the forces of Maximilian, where they obtained a victory over the French, well known by the name of the battle of the spurs^h.

THE success of the confederates was in a great measure owing to a reinforcement of Swiss that joined the Venetians, and were for this service complimented by the pope with the title of *Defenders of the Holy See*: but the emperor gained very little by their good fortune; for the allies became jealous of his power, and resolved, at all events, to exclude him from the possession of the Milanese, which he destined as an establishment for his grandson Ferdinand.

The pope confers on the Swiss the title of Defenders of the Holy See.

IN vain did the bishop of Gurck, at an assembly held in Mantua, display his master's pretensions to that duchy; the pope's deputies and the Swiss insisted upon its being restored to the family of the Sforzas; and, after much altercation and

A congress opened at Rome.

^f GUICCI. l. x. p. 973.
l. xxx. c. 2. p. lxxvii.
tom. ii. p. 8

^g GUICCI. l. xi. MARIANA,
^h MEZ. abreg. Chron.

debate, it was agreed that *Maximilian Sforza* should receive the investiture. But other disputes still remaining between the emperor and the *Venetians*, as well as between the pope and the emperor, touching the possession of those towns which they had severally conquered during the war; a congress was opened at *Rome*, to terminate these conquests: The towns subdued by the pope in the exarchate of *Ravenna* remained in possession of the holy see, qualified by a clause in these words, *without prejudice to the rights of the empire*. But the *Venetians* refusing to do homage to the emperor for *Padua*, *Trevise*, *Brescia*, *Bergamo*, and *Crema*, and insisting upon his restoring the places he had conquered in their dominions, the pope declared against them, and entered into an association with *Maximilian*, whom he undertook to assist with spiritual as well as temporal arms. This affair being settled, the bishop of *Gurck* imparted to *Julius* his master's design with respect to the papacy, and intreated his holiness to take that prince as his coadjutor; but this proposal the pope absolutely rejected, although the king of *Arragon* had promised to support *Maximilian's* pretensions: nor could a sufficient party be made among the cardinals to enforce his succession¹ (O).

The emperor's minister solicits the pope to take Maximilian as his coadjutor.

JULIUS

¹ MARIAN. lib. L. c. 3.

(O) There is a letter preserved in *Godefroi's* collection, from the emperor to his daughter *Margaret*, in these terms:

" Tres-chiere, & tres-aimée fille, Je' entendu l'avis que vous m'avez donné par *Gyl-lam Pengun*, notre garderoberes vyels, dont nous avons encore mis pensé desus.

" Et ne trouons point pour nulle resun bon, que nous nous devons franchement marier, maes avons plus avant mys notre deliberation & volunté de jamés plus hanter faem nue.

" Et envoyons demain *Monf. de Gurck* eveſque a *Rome* vers le pape, pour trouver fachon que nous puyſſins accorder, avec ly de nous prendre pour ung coadjuteur, afin

" qu'après sa mort pouruns estre assuré de avoer le papat, & devenir prestre & après estre saint, & que yl vous sera de neceſſité que après ma mort vous serez contrainst de me adorer, dont je me trouverée bien gloryoes.

" Je envoie sur ce ung poſte devers le roy d'*Aragon*, pour ly prier qu'il nous vuelle aider pour à en parvenir, dont yl est aui content, moynant que resigné l'empire a notre comun en *Char*, de ſela auſſi je me ſuis contenté. Le peuple & genti homes de *Rom*. ont faet ung allyanse contrant les *Franchoes* & *Eſpaignois*, & ſont xx. m. combatans; & nous ont mandé que il veoulent ſervir pour nous, pour nous faire ung papa à ma

JULIUS did not long survive this refusal, and was succeeded by the cardinal *de Medicis*, who assumed the name of *Leo X.* the great patron of the liberal arts and sciences.

MEAN while the war continued in the north of Germany, War between *John* king of *Denmark* and the *hans towns*, which supported the *Swedes* in their revolt: he solicited the assistance of the kings of *England* and *Scotland*, while the regency of *Lubec* implored the protection of the emperor, who had laid injunctions upon the princes of *Lower Saxony* to defend the *hans towns* against the king of *Denmark*; and at the same time forbade *John* to interrupt their commerce. His *Danish* majesty, however, without paying the least regard to the prohibition, equipped a powerful fleet, with which he made prize of their vessels, and they fitted out another, with which they alarmed and ravaged the coasts of his dominions. This piratical war continued near three years, until the regency of *Lubec*, finding themselves impoverished by the interruption of their trade, sued for peace, and the treaty was concluded at *Flensbourg*, in consequence of which the *hans towns* undertook to assist *John* in asserting his right to the crown of *Sweden*. But that monarch died soon after this pacification, and was succeeded by his son *Christian III.*

DURING these commotions in the north, the pope, the emperor, and the kings of *England* and *Arragon*, formed a league against *Lewis*, who makes peace with the *Venetians*, and reinforces their army; and the operations of war re-

* HUITIÈME Hist. Dan. tom. vii.

"poste, & du l'empire d'Al-
"maigne, & ne voulant avoer
"ne *Francos*, *Arragones*, ne
"mains, null *Vencien*.

"Je commence aussi practi-
"ker les cardineaux; dont ij.
"C. ou iij. C. jnylle ducs me
"ferunt un grand service, &
"veque la paraisité qui est
"déjà entre nous.

Le Roi d'Arragon a mandé à
"son ambassadeur, que yl eult
"comander aux cardinaulx
"Espaignols, que yl veulert fa-
"voriser le papat à nous.

"J. vous prie tenir cette
"mauvaise empuissance, offi bien

"en briefs jours, je creins que
"yl fault que tout le monde le
"sache, car bien mal est pos-
"sible de practiker ung tel sy-
"grand matere secretement,
"pour laquell yl fault avoer de
"tant de gens, & de argent
"succurs & pratique; & à Dieu,
"faet de la main de votre bon
"pere *Maximilianus* futur pape,
"le xviii. jour de *Septembre*.

"Le papa à encore les vye-
"vers dubls, & ne peut long-
"ment syvre. La suscription,
"à ma bonne fille l'archedu-
"chesse d'Autriche, douairiere de
"*Savoie*, &c. en ses mains."

commenced in *Italy*, while *Henry VIII.* of *England* made a descent in *Picardy*, and gained the battle of *Guinegate*, at which *Maximilian* served in his army as a volunteer, for one hundred crowns a day.

Francis I. THIS war continued till the death of *Lewis*, when *Francis* makes peace with *Maximilian*.

A.D.
1515.

I. who succeeded him on the throne, found it his interest to make an accommodation with the emperor; and this he the more easily obtained, as the disturbances which at that time happened among several princes of the empire hindered *Maximilian* from bestowing his attention upon foreign affairs; and he was moreover solicitous about the settlement of his family, being then actually employed in a negotiation for matching the Infanta *Mary* his grand-daughter, with *Lewis*, eldest son of *Ladislaus* king of *Hungary*¹. This marriage was accordingly solemnized at *Vienna*; and, as the parties were very young, the consummation was deferred until they should attain a riper age.

He defeats the Swiss at Marignan. FRANCIS having established a good understanding with the emperor, he also concluded a treaty of peace with the *English* and the *Venetians*, and, thus secure from these quarters, he made preparations for re-conquering the *Milanese*, of which *Maximilian Sforza*, son of the late duke, had possessed himself, by the assistance of the *Swiss*. Having entered *Italy* with a powerful army, he gained some considerable advantages over the enemy; and meeting the *Swiss* army, which had come to the succour of the duke of *Milan*, gave them battle near *Marignan*. The engagement was very bloody, and so obstinate, that night alone could part the combatants. Next morning both sides returned to the charge, and fought with great fury, until the *Swiss*, hearing that the *Venetian* army was come to the assistance of the king, were so alarmed, that they began to give ground, and, in the confusion which necessarily ensued, were all cut in pieces. Next day after this victory, *Francis* attacked and carried the city of *Milan*, but he would not make his entrance, until the duke, who had retired into the castle, should have surrendered and submitted to the laws of the conqueror. *Sforza* was accordingly obliged to renounce his duchy and title, in consideration of a sum of money and a pension for life, to be spent in *France*, or wheresoever the king should think fit to fix his residence. This treaty being signed, he evacuated the castle, and all opposition being now removed, *Francis* easily made himself master of that whole state.

Recovers the Milanese without further opposition.

¹ DUBRARI. Rer. Boem. l. xxxii. Samb. c. 1. n. opp. 41. Bonfin.
* GUICCI. l. xii. BELCAR. l. xv. ANGEL. ep. 550, 555.

By this rapidity of conquest, *Maximilian* was so much alarmed, that he resolved to stop his progress, and, for that purpose, to march into *Italy* with an army of thirty thousand men. *Francis*, that he might be the more able to sustain this storm, had recourse to the alliance of pope *Leo X.* with whom he had an interview at *Bologna*, where a treaty of peace was signed, and no sooner ratified, than the king gave the necessary orders for the defence of his *Milanese* conquest, and returned into *France*. The pope engaged in this league partly through fear of *Francis*, who, being victorious and formidable, was not to be refused, and partly because *Ferdinand* king of *Spain* being infirm, and *Charles* his grandson and heir apparent very young and unexperienced, he could not much depend upon them or their allies. *Makes an alliance with the pope.*

ALL that the emperor could do when he arrived in *Lombardy*, was to besiege in the city of *Milan* the constable duke of *Bourbon*, whom *Francis I.* had left for the defence of his conquest, and who had abandoned the open fields to the emperor, and retired into the city. *Maximilian*, after having blocked the place for some weeks, began to be in want of provision. He also understood that *Ladislaus* king of *Hungary* was taken very ill, and that the *French* were reinforced by twelve thousand *Swiss*; for which reasons he interrupted his operations, raised the siege, and returned to *Germany* (P). *Maximilian invests the city of Milan, and quits the siege.* *Ferdinand* king of *Spain* dying about the same time, he found it necessary to send prince *Charles*, who was then in *Flanders*, to take possession of that kingdom, of which he was heir;

" *Guicci. ubi supra.*

(P) It was at this period that *Maximilian*, being in great want of money, began to cajole *Henry VIII.* of *England* with a promise of ceding the imperial throne in his favour, and actually desired the *English* ambassador to let his sovereign know, that *Maximilian* would assemble a diet at *Trier*, to regulate this important affair, and that he would afterwards accompany *Henry* to *Rome*, where he should be crowned, and assist him in conquering the *Milanese*. *Henry*

guessed the meaning of these advances, and remitted him a sum of money, in hope of being one day to profit by his offers: but, when he afterwards proposed an interview with the emperor in the *Low Countries*, where this affair might be transacted, *Maximilian* declined the conference, and, after some evasive excuses, plainly told the *English* ambassadors, that he had resolved to raise his grandson *Charles* to the imperial throne (12).

A. D.
1517.
*Accommo-
dates mat-
ters with
the king of
France.*

and that he might have a free passage through *France*, *Maximilian* was advised to make peace with *Francis*, who, by the articles of the treaty, remained in the peaceable possession of his *Italian* conquest. In this treaty, which was concluded at *Noyon* between the king of *France* and prince *Charles*, it was stipulated, that this last should marry *Louisa*, the eldest daughter of *Francis*, or, she failing, the second, provided a second should be born; if this should not happen, he should espouse *Rence*, the queen's sister, whose dowry should be that part of the kingdom of *Naples* to which the king had pretensions, with a reversion in his favour in default of issue; that *Charles* should pay annually 100,000 crowns for the maintenance of the princess, and restore in six months *Navarre* to *Henry d'Albret*, otherwise the king should be at liberty to assist him *.

*The origin
of Lu-
ther's doc-
trine.*

In this place it will be necessary to mention the circumstance which gave rise to the reformation of *Luther*, which was attended with such considerable events through the whole empire of *Germany*. Pope *Leo X.* intending to finish the church of *St. Peter* at *Rome*, which was begun by his predecessor, and being in want of money for this purpose, as well as for defraying the expence of a war which he had projected against the *Turk*, he imagined that the readiest and surest expedient for raising contributions among the nations of *Christendom*, would be to grant plenary indulgences. He therefore sent his bulls to *Albert*, elector of *Brandenburg*, with orders to publish them in *Germany*; and that prelate appointed people to distribute the indulgences, and receive the money, while he laid injunctions on *John Chatel*, a *Dominican*, and inquisitor of the faith in *Germany*, and the brothers of his order, to preach up the merits of this contribution. The directors of this collection committed such abuses in distributing those remissions, and the *Dominicans* behaved with such excessive indiscretion in magnifying their power, that the whole empire was scandalized at their proceedings (Q.).

*Abuses
committed
by the Do-
minicans.*

* MEZERAY Abregé Chronolog. tom ii.

(Q.) This commission ought to have been granted to the *Augustines* of *Germany*, according to the convention which had been made among the four orders of mendicants. Notwithstanding that agreement, *Al-*

bert, archbishop of *Mentz*, whether by his own authority, or by order of the pope, bestowed it upon the *Dominicans*. It was no longer a simple collection. Offices were every where set up, even in the houses of publicans,

The *Augustines*, jealous of the honour conferred upon the order of *Dominicans*, who had been preferred to them on this occasion, and desirous of sharing in the profit of the contributions, openly declared themselves against their proceedings, and pretended to refute what they advanced, as the effect of extravagant and misguided zeal. John Stulpitz, John Stulpitz openly attacks their conduct, and chooses Luther for his colleague, vicar-general of the *Augustines*, being supported by the elector of Saxony, who had a particular regard for him, was the first who openly attacked the sermons of the *Dominicans*, and the abuses which were committed in the distribution of the indulgences. In order to fortify himself against such a strong party, he chose for his colleague Martin Luther, whom he looked upon to be the most capable of all the monks and doctors of the new university of Wittemberg, to which he belonged. Accordingly this new associate proposed abundance of theses, which he supported with great spirit and strength of argument against indulgences and the pope's authority; so as that his doctrines were embraced by great numbers, and the other order immediately took the alarm. Nothing more was required to form two powerful factions. John Thetzel, in opposition to Luther, advanced other theses at Frankfort upon the Order, in defence of the pope and his proceedings, and carried things to such extremity, as to condemn, in quality of inquisitor, the writings of Luther to the flames. Martin, who was of a warm and enterprising temper, far from being intimidated by the conduct of the inquisitor, maintained a literary war against him, while his disciples burned, in their turn, the writings of the *Dominican* at Wittemberg. Thus both parties were heated into the most virulent altercation, though neither, as yet, withdrew themselves from their obedience to the church of Rome. True it is, the *Dominicans* reinforced their side of the dispute with underhand negotiation, and strongly solicited the pope to condemn their antagonists. Leo, who could not refuse his protection to an order which had laboured so effectually,

whose writings are burnt by John Thetzel at Frankfort A. D. 1518.

Idem, p. 842. SPOND. Contin. BARON. tom. iii. p. 3.

where the collectors consumed in debauchery a great part of the money produced from this traffic of the sacred treasures of the church. It was moreover, well known, that the pope applied considerable sums of this money

to his own particular occasions, his own finances being almost exhausted by the presents he had made to his relations and courtiers, and the pensions he bestowed on learned men (1).

(1) Rémarq. sur Hesse, liv. iii. c. 10.

Pope Leo and with such fervour, in his interests, summoned *Luther* to appear at *Rome* in sixty days, to be tried by judges whom he appointed for the purpose. At the same time the *Dominicans* pressed the emperor to declare against their adversaries; but that prince was too busy in finishing his accommodation with *France*, to intermeddle in a business, which he considered as a petty quarrel among monks. The troubles of *Hungary* seemed to him a matter of much more consequence, and indeed demanded his whole attention in settling those affairs that concerned the guardianship of king *Lewis*, who was at that time no more than ten years of age². Nevertheless, as soon as the emperor had terminated these two negotiations, he resolved not only to re-establish the tranquillity of the empire, which those religious disputes had begun to shake, but also to regulate the domestic concerns of his own family, as he perceived his strength beginning to decay.

Maximilian desires the pope to pronounce sentence upon the affair of Luther, WITH this double view he convoked a diet at *Augsburg*, where the first step he took, was to recommend his grandson *Charles* in the strongest manner to the electors, whom he cultivated with all sorts of good offices and marks of liberality, in order to engage them to choose that young prince for his successor in the empire. As the *Dominicans* gave him no respite in the affair of *Luther*, he was obliged, in order to satisfy them, to summon *Martin* to appear at that diet; he even furnished him with a safe-conduct, without waiting for the answer of a letter, which, at the beginning of that meeting, he had, with the advice of the states, writ to the pope, beseeching him to pronounce a definitive sentence, which was like to involve the empire in trouble and confusion. The electors of *Saxony*, and the university of *Wittenberg*, had also intreated his holiness to retract the citation which he had formerly sent to *Luther*, and to consent that the business should be transacted by cardinal *Cajetan*, who was at that time his legate in *Germany*, and actually present at the diet. *Luther* being thus excused from going to *Rome*, repaired to *Augsburg* and presented himself before the cardinal, under favour of the emperor's safe-conduct. Then, instead of retracting, he undertook to defend his doctrines which he had advanced in his writings; but that his intentions might not be mistaken, he, in presence of witnesses, made a voluntary protestation before a notary, importing, that he would submit to the judgment, or refer himself to other universities, and retract soon as they should appear to his own conviction. The le-

² HENR Hist. de l'Empire, liv. iii. c. 3.

gate, however, still continuing to press him to a recantation, and even mixing threats with his remonstrances, *Luther* began to be afraid of being apprehended, and retired in the night, after having, by a writing fixed up in a public place, appealed from the legate to the pope. He at the same time wrote to *Leo*, complaining of the harsh usage he had received from the cardinal, who was justly accused of partiality in favour of the *Dominican* order, to which he himself belonged ^a.

IN the mean time *Maximilian* canvassed for the election of his grandson *Charles*; but as there was no precedent for creating a king of the *Romans* before the emperor's coronation at *Rome*, the pope was solicited to send a legate into *Germany* with the crown, and other imperial ornaments, to perform that ceremony in the name of his holiness. Notwithstanding the intrigues of the king of *France* among the princes of the empire, as well as his efforts with the pope, whom he endeavoured to engage in an opposition to this election, by representing how formidable *Charles* must be, should he succeed to the imperial throne; I say, notwithstanding these endeavours, the emperor's proposal was not rejected, but, by a decree, postponed to the next diet of the empire ^b. Some authors allege, that *Maximilian* at first intended the crown for *Ferdinand* his other grandson; but that he was persuaded to prefer *Charles*, as a prince who, by the vast extent of his dominions, would be more able to maintain the splendor of the house of *Austria*, and support the dignity of the empire ^c.

THE emperor did not long survive the end of this diet: for having repaired to *Innsbruck*, in order to take further measures for the election of *Charles*, he was attacked by a slow fever, which, in order to dissipate by change of air, he embarked upon the *Inn* for *Austria*. On his arrival at the town of *Wells*, the fever augmenting, he endeavoured to expel it by violent exercise; but one day returning from the chace, he ate a great quantity of melons, in order to assuage his thirst, and having afterwards taken a medicine unseasonably, his disorder, which was before intermittent, changed into a continual fever, and a violent dysentery ensuing, he died in the 60th year of his age ^d. He was, in consequence of his own desire, interred at *Newstadt* in *Austria*. He gave directions on his death-bed touching his body, which was neither em-

The emperor proposes his grandson Charles for his successor.

Repairs to Innsbruck, is seized with a fever, of which he dies at Wells, A. D. 1519.

^a in. tom. iii. p. 6.

^b *HEISS Hist. de l'Empire,*

^c *GUIC. liv. xiii. MEZ. Abr. Chron. tom.*

^d *SUR. in comm. ex Jovio, lib. xix. LOCK.*

balmed nor embowelled, but the cavities were filled up with quick lime.

His character,

and education.

His favourite amusement,

and weakness.

HE was a prince of a very agreeable appearance, sober, quiet, and so modest, that he was never seen naked by any of his attendants. He had a passion for letters, a sprightly imagination, and was particularly addicted to poetry. His memory was so tenacious, that he never forgot the name of any man, whom he had once seen or heard mentioned, during the whole course of his life. In his youth he had applied himself to the warlike exercises; he handled his arms with great dexterity, and no person excelled him in horsemanship. He was patient in suffering hunger and fatigue, personally brave, liberal (R), magnificent, affable, and obliging. He reformed the military discipline among his soldiers with large muskets and long pikes, and made several new military laws and regulations. But his passion for the chase he indulged even to the prejudice of his affairs, which he often neglected for the enjoyment of that favourite exercise: in the course of which, he used to pursue on horseback the wild goats and other game among the rocks of the *Tyrol*, with such temerity, that the inhabitants of those countries were often obliged to lower him down with cords, half dead with hunger, from frightful precipices, among which he had engaged himself. Yet, with all these good qualities, he was inconstant, irresolute, and so profuse, that, by squandering away the money which ought to have been otherwise employed, a great many of his most important affairs miscarried, and his reign makes but an indifferent figure in the annals of the empire (S).

• Guic. lib. xiii.

(R) His liberality, or rather his profusion, involved him in numberless difficulties and disgraces, because he was often, by want of money, obliged to abandon enterprizes of very promising aspect. Yet, notwithstanding all these necessities, he would never encroach upon the gold, silver, and jewels, which had been left by his own father, his father-in-law, and his grandfather. These he preserved as a sacred treasure, very little to the credit of his sagacity (1).

(S) *Maximilian's* first wife was *Mary of Burgundy*, who died of a fall from her horse, when she was big with her third child. He afterwards married by proxy the daughter and heiress of *Francis*, duke of *Brittany*; but this marriage was never consummated, for the reasons mentioned above. His third match was with *Blanche Maria Sforza*, daughter of *Galeazzo Maria*, duke of *Milan*, who was the maker's son. She had no children, and broke her heart be-

(1) *Remarg. sur Helst*, liv. iii. c. 3.

cause she was despised by the emperor, and was buried in the monastery of *Stams* in *Austria*. Towards the latter part of his life, *Maximilian* was on the point of marrying *Ann*, daughter of *Uladislaus*, king of *Bohemia*; but he was dissuaded from this scheme, and the princess was given in marriage to his grandson *Ferdinand*. Of his children by *Mary* of *Burgundy*, *Margaret* alone now survived. She had been first of all betrothed to *Charles VIII.* of *France*; but being refused, and sent back to her father, she was married to the infant *John*, son of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*: he dying a few months after the marriage, she was again contracted to *Philibert*, duke of *Savoy*, who died before the nuptials could be consummated. As for her brother *Philip*, the emperor's eldest son, he died twelve years before his father, leaving by *Jane*, daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, six children, namely, *Charles*, who succeeded his grand-father

Maximilian in the empire; *Ferdinand*, and four daughters, the eldest of whom, *Eleonora*, married *Emmanuel*, king of *Portugal*, by whom she had one daughter, and afterwards *Francis I.* of *France*, to whom she bore no children. Her sister *Isabella* was wife to *Christian*, king of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, who was expelled from his dominions for his tyranny. *Philip's* third daughter was *Mary*, matched with *Lewis*, king of *Hungary*, by whom she had no children, and after his death she obtained the government of the *Low Countries*. The fourth was a posthumous child called *Catherine*, who was married to *John III.* king of *Portugal*. *Maximilian* had besides a son called *Francis*, born at *Brussels*, who died within a year after his birth. He moreover left eight natural children of both sexes; the sons he promoted to honourable employments, the daughters he matched to persons of the first quality.

